

# **A Journal of the Proceedings of His Majesty's Bark Endeavour, On a Voyage Round the World**

by Lieutenant James Cook, Commander

It is necessary to premise by way of explanation, that in this Journal (except while we lay at George's Island) the day is supposed to begin and end at noon, as for instance, Friday the 27th May, began at noon on Thursday 26th, and ended the following noon according to the natural day, and all the courses and bearings are the true courses and bearings according to the Globe, and not by Compass. The Lon is counted W from the meridian of Greenwich where no other place is particularly mentioned. The proportional length of the log-line to the half minute glass, by which the ships run was measured, is as thirty seconds is to thirty feet.

While the ship lay in port or was coasting in sight of land, or sailing in narrow seas, this Journal is not kept in the usual form, but the degree (°) of latitude (Lat) and longitude (Lon) the ship passes over are put down at the top of each page, by which together with the notes in the margin an easy reference will be had to the Chart.

## **Chapter 1: England to Rio Janeiro**

Friday, May 27th to Friday, July 29th 1768 Moderate and fair weather; at 11am hoisted the Pendant, and took charge of the Ship, agreeable to my Commission of the 25th instant, she lying in the Bason in Deptford Yard. From this day to the 21st of July we were constantly employed in fitting the Ship, taking on board Stores and Provisions, etc. The same day we sailed from Deptford and anchored in Gallions reach, where we remained until the 30th. The transactions of Each Day, both while we lay here and at Deptford, are inserted in the Log Book, and as they contain nothing but common Occurrences, it was thought not necessary to insert them here.

Saturday, July 30th to Sunday August 7th 1769 Weighed from Gallions, and made sail down the River, the same day Anchored at Gravesend, and the next Morning weighed from thence, and at Noon Anchored at the Buoy of the Fairway. On Wednesday, 3rd of August, Anchored in the Downs in 9 fm (fm) of water, Deal Castle N-W by W. On Sunday, 7th, I joined the Ship, discharged the Pilot, and the next day sailed for Plymouth.

Monday, August 8th 1768 Fresh Breezes and Cloudy weather the most part of these 24 hours. At 10am weighed and came to sail; at Noon the S Foreland bore N-E 1/2 N, distant 6 or 7 mi. Wind W by N, N-W.

Tuesday, August 9th 1768 Gentle breezes and Cloudy weather. At 7pm the Tide being against us, Anchored in 13 fm of Water; Dungeness S-W by W. At 11am Weighed and made Sail down Channel; at Noon, Beachy Head, N by E 1/2 E, distant 6 lg, Lat observed 50° 30' N. Wind N-W to N.

Wednesday, August 10th 1768 Variable: light Airs and Clear weather. At 8pm Beachy Head N-E by E, distant 4 lg, and at 8am it bore N-E by N, 9 lg. Found the Variation of the Compass to be 23° W; at Noon the Isle of Wight N-W by N. Wind W by N, N-E by E.

Thursday, August 11th 1768 Light Airs and Clear weather. At 8pm Dunnose N by W 5 lg, and at 4am it bore N-N-E 1/2 E, distant 5 lg. Wind Variable.

Wednesday, August 12th 1768 Light Airs and Calms all these 24 Hours. At Noon the Bill of Portland bore N-W 1/2 W, distant 3 lg. Lat Observed 50° 24' N. Wind E.

Thursday, August 13th 1769 Ditto weather. At Noon the Start Point W 7 or 8 mi. Lat Observed 50° 12' N, which must be the Lat of the Start, as it bore W. Wind Variable.

Sunday, August 14th 1768 Fine breezes and Clear weather. At 1/2 past 8pm Anchored in the Entrance of Plymouth Sound in 9 fm water. At 4am weighed and worked into proper Anchoring ground, and Anchored in 6 fm, the Mewstone S-E, Mount Batten N-N-E 1/2 E, and Drake's Island N by W. Dispatched an Express to London for Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to join the Ship, their Servants and Baggage being already on board. Wind N-E.

Monday, August 15th 1768 First and latter parts Moderate breezes and fair; middle squally, with heavy showers of rain. I this day received an order to Augment the Ship's Company to 85 Men, which before was but 70. Received on board fresh Beef for the Ship's Company. Wind S-W to S-E.

Tuesday, August 16th 1768 First part moderate and Hazy; middle hard Squalls with rain; the Latter moderate and fair. Received on board a supply of Bread, Beer, and Water. A Sergeant, Corporal, Drummer, and 9 Private Marines as part of the Complement. Wind S-S-E to N-E.

Wednesday, August 17th 1768 Little wind and Hazy weather. Sent some Cordage to the Yard in order to be Exchanged for Smaller. Several Shipwrights and Joiners from the Yard Employed on board refitting the Gentlemen's Cabins, and making a Platform over the Tiller, etc. Wind S-E to E by S.

Thursday, August 18th 1768 Little wind and Cloudy. Struck down 4 guns into the Hold. Received on board 4 More, with 12 Barrels of Powder and several other Stores. Shipwrights and Joiners Employed on board. Wind E.

Friday, August 19th 1768 Former part little wind with rain; remainder fair weather; am Read to the Ship's Company the Articles of War and the Act of Parliament, they likewise were paid two Months' Wages in advance. I also told them that they were to Expect no additional pay for the performance of our intended Voyage; they were well satisfied, and Expressed great Cheerfulness and readiness to prosecute the Voyage. Received on board another Supply of Provisions, Rum, etc. Wind N-W to S-W.

Saturday, August 20th 1768 First part little wind with rain; remainder fresh Gales and thick rainy weather. Employed making ready for Sea. Wind W-S-W.

Sunday, August 21st 1769 Fresh Gales and Ditto Weather. The Shipwrights having finished their Work, intended to have sailed, instead of which was obliged to let go another Anchor. Wind S-W, W-S-W.

Monday, August 22nd 1768 Fresh Gales, with heavy squalls of Wind and Rain all this 24 hours. Wind S-W.

Tuesday, August 23rd 1768 Ditto weather. Struck Yards and Topmasts; Anchored between the Island and the Main His Majesty's Ship Gibraltar. Wind W by S.

Wednesday, August 24th 1768 Fresh Gales and Hazey weather; am hove up the Small Bower Anchor and got Topmasts and Yards. Wind W by S.

Thursday, August 25th 1768 Moderate and Cloudy weather; am received on Board a supply of Beer and Water, and returned all our Empty Casks. Loosed the Topsails as a Signal for Sailing. Wind W, N by W, N-W by W.

Friday, August 26th 1768 First part fresh Breezes and Cloudy, remainder little wind and Clear. At 2pm got under Sail and put to Sea, having on board 94 Persons, including Officers, Seamen, Gentlemen, and their Servants; near 18 Months' Provisions, 10 Carriage Guns, 12 Swivels, with good Store of Ammunition and Stores of all kinds. At 8 the Dodman Point W-N-W, distant 4 or 5 lg; at 6am the Lizard bore W-N-W 1/2 W, 5 or 6 lg distant. At Noon Sounded and had 50 fm, Grey sand with small Stones and broken Shells. Wind N by W, N-W, W by S; course S 21° E; distance 23 mi; Lat 49° 30' N, Lon 5° 52' W; at noon, Lizard N 21° W distant 23 mi.

Saturday, August 27th 1768 First part Light Airs and Clear weather, remainder fresh breezes and Cloudy. Berthed the Ship's Company, Mustered the Chests and Stove all that were unnecessary. Wind N-W, N-E, S-E; course S-W; distance 77 mi; Lat 48° 42' N, Lon 6° 49' W; at noon, Lizard N 29° E, 80 mi.

Sunday, August 28th 1768 Former part fresh Gales and Hazey with rain; remainder a Moderate breeze and Cloudy. Wind E; course S 48° W; distance 130 mi; Lat 47° 16' N, Lon 9° 7' W; at noon Lizard N 40° 5' E; 69 lg.

Monday, August 29th 1768 Light Airs and Hazey the Most part of these 24 hours with some Rain. Wind N-W; course S 21° W; distance 41 mi; Lat 46° 38' N, Lon 9° 29' W; at noon, Lizard N 37° 45' E, 86 lg.

Tuesday, August 30th 1768 Fresh Gales all these 24 Hours. At 1/2 past 1pm Spoke with His Majesty's Ship Guardaloupe; at 6 Close Reefed the Topsails, and got down the Top Gallant Yards. Wind W; course S 27° W; distance 33 mi; Lat 46° 9' N, Lon 9° 52' W; at noon, Lizard N 36° E, 96 lg.

Wednesday, August 31st 1768 First and middle parts, Moderate breezes and Clear; Latter, fresh Gales and Cloudy. At 6pm loosed the 2nd Reef out of the Topsails, and at 8am took them in again; at Noon tacked and stood to the N-W, having stood before to the Southward. Wind W to S-W; course S 36° E; distance 82 mi; Lat 45° 3' N, Lon 8° 43' W; at noon, Lizard N-N-E, 105 lg.

Thursday, September 1st 1768 Very hard gales, with some heavy showers of Rain, the most part of these 24 Hours, which brought us under our two Courses, Broke one of our Main Topmast phuttock Plates, washed overboard a small Boat belonging to the Boatswain, and drowned between 3 and 4 Dozen of our Poultry, which was worst of all. Towards Noon it moderated, so that we could bear our Maintopsail close Reefed. At midnight wore and stood to

the Southward. Wind W; course S 70° W; distance 20 mi; Lat 44° 56' N, Lon 9° 9' W; at noon, Lizard N 28° 15' W, 109 lg.

Friday, September 2nd 1768 Fresh Gales and Cloudy the most part of these 24 hours. pm got up the spare Mainsail to dry, it being Wet by the Water getting into the Sail room, occasioned by the Ship being very Leakey in her upper works. At 5am loosed 2 Reefs out of each Topsail, and saw the Land, which we judged to be Cape Finister and Cape Ortugal. At 10 Tackt, being about 4 mi off Shore, and stood to the N-W; at Noon, Cape Ortugal bore E by S, distance about 8 lg. Wind N by W, W, S-W, W-S-W; course S by W; distance 64 mi; Lat 43° 53' N, Lon 9° 26' W; at noon, Lizard N-N-E, 130 lg.

Saturday, September 3rd 1768 First part little wind and Hazey, with rain; remainder strong Gales with hard squalls, which brought us under our close Reefed Topsails, and obliged us to strike Topgallant Yards. At 8am wore ship and stood to the Southward. Wind S-W and W; course S 68° 45' W; distance 44 mi; Lat 44° 9' N, Lon 10° 20' W; at noon, Lizard N 29 1/2° E, 138 lg.

Sunday, September 4th 1768 Fore part fresh Gales and Clear; remainder light Airs and Calm. At 6am Cape Finister bore S by W 1/2 W, distance 10 or 11 lg. Loosed all the Reefs out of the Topsails, and got Topgallant Yards across. Wind W, Calm; at noon, Island of Cyserga, E-S-E 3 lg.

Monday, September 5th 1768 Light breezes and Calm all these 24 hours. At 2pm had an Observation of the Sun and Moon, which gave the Lon 8° 42' W from Greenwich. At 6 Cape Finister bore S by W 1/2 W, 6 lg. Variation of the Compass per Azimuth 18° 42' W. At Noon, Cape Finister S by E, distant 4 lg; Lat observed 43° 4', therefore Cape Finister must lay in Lat 42° 53' N. Wind W, N-W, Calm.

Tuesday, September 6th 1768 Moderate breezes and Clear weather these 24 Hours. am found the Variation by the Mean of 5 Azimuth to be 21° 40' W, 3° more than what it was found Yesterday, which I cannot account for, as both observations appeared to me to be equally well made. At 10.28 had an observation of the sun and moon, which gave the Lon 9° 40' W from Greenwich. By this observation Cape Finister must lay in 8° 52', and by that made yesterday in 8° 40'. The Mean of the two is 8° 46' W of Greenwich the Lon of the Cape, its Lat being 42° 53' N. Wind N-W; course S 42° W; distance 70 mi; Lat 42° 1 minute N, Lon 9° 50' W; at noon, Cape Finister N 42° E, 70 mi.

Wednesday, September 7th 1768 Moderate breezes and Clear weather; found the Variation to be 21° 4' W. Wind W-N-W; course S by W; distance 92 mi; Lat 40° 29' N, Lon 10° 11' W; at noon, Cape Finister N 13° E, 49 lg.

Thursday, September 8th 1768 Fresh Gales and Cloudy weather. am Past by 2 Sail, which were standing to the N-E. Wind W-N-W to W by S; course S 4° E; distance 111 mi; Lat 38° 33' N, Lon 10° W; at noon, Cape Finister N 12° E, 88 lg.

Friday, September 9th 1768 First part fresh Gales; remainder moderate breezes and fine, Clear weather. Set up the Topmast rigging, and found the Variation to be 19° 50' W. Wind W by N to N-E; course S 40° W; distance 116 mi; Lat 37° 4' N, Lon 11° 33' W; at noon, Cape Finister N 20° E, 124 lg.

Saturday, September 10th 1768 A steady, fresh breeze and fine Clear weather. Found the Variation of the Compys by the Evening and Morning Amplitude and by 2 Azimuth to be  $20^{\circ} 59'$  W. Wind N-E by E; course S  $36'$  W; distance 130 mi; Lat  $35^{\circ} 20'$  N, Lon  $13^{\circ} 28'$  W; at noon, Cape Finister N  $24^{\circ}$  E, 166 lg.

Sunday, September 11th 1768 The same Winds and weather Continue. Found the Variation to be this Evening  $18^{\circ} 54'$ , and in the Morning  $17^{\circ} 58'$  W, they both being the mean result of several good Observations. Wind N-E by E, N by E; course S  $32^{\circ}$  W; distance 94 mi; Lat  $34^{\circ} 1$  minute N, Lon  $14^{\circ} 29'$  W; at noon, Cape Finister N  $26 \frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  E, 198 lg.

Monday, September 12th 1768 Moderate breezes and fine Clear weather. At 6am the Island of Porto Santo bore N-W by W, distance 9 or 10 lg. Hauld the Wind to the Westward at noon, the Deserters extending from W-S-W to S-W by S, the Body of Madeira W  $\frac{1}{2}$  S, and Porto Santo N-N-W  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. Wind N-N-W; course S  $40^{\circ}$  W; distance 102 mi; Lat  $32^{\circ} 43'$  N, Lon  $15^{\circ} 53'$  W.

Tuesday, September 13th 1768 Fresh breezes and clear weather. At 8pm anchored in Funchal Road in 22 fm. Found here His Majesty's Ship Rose and several Merchants' Vessels. In the Morning new berthed the Ship, and Moor'd with the Stream Anchor, half a Cable on the Best Bower and a Hawser and a half on the Stream Wind N-W.

Wednesday, September 14th 1768 First part fine, Clear weather, remainder Cloudy, with Squals from the land, attended with Showers of rain. In the Night the Bend of the Hawsers of the Stream Anchor Slip'd owing to the Carelessness of the Person who made it fast. In the Morning hove up the Anchor in the Boat and carried it out to the Southward. In heaving the Anchor out of the Boat Mr. Weir, Master's Mate, was carried overboard by the Buoy rope and to the Bottom with the Anchor. Hove up the Anchor by the Ship as soon as possible, and found his Body intangled in the Buoy rope. Moor'd the Ship with the two Bowers in 22 fm Water; the Loo Rock W and the Brazen Head E. Sailed His Majesty's Ship Rose. The Boats employed carrying the Casks a Shore for Wine, and the Caulkers caulking the Ship Sides. Wind E.

Thursday, September 15th 1768 Squals of Wind from the Land, with rain the most part of these 24 Hours. Received on board fresh Beef and Greens for the Ship's Company, and sent on shore all our Casks for Wine and Water, having a Shore Boat employed for that purpose. Wind N-E to S-E.

Friday, September 16th 1768 The most part fine, Clear weather. Punished Henry Stevens, Seaman, and Thomas Dunster, Marine, with 12 lashes each, for refusing to take their allowance of Fresh Beef. Employed taking on board Wine and Water. Wind E.

Saturday, September 17th 1768 Little wind, and fine Clear weather. Issued to the whole Ship's Company 20 pounds of Onions per Man. Employed as Yesterday. Wind W.

Sunday, September 18th 1768 Ditto Weather. pm received on board 270 pounds of fresh Beef, and a Live Bullock charged 613 pounds. Completed our Wine and Water, having received of the former 3032 Gallons, of the Latter 10 Tuns. am unmoor'd and prepar'd for Sailing. Funchall, in the Island of Madeira, by Observations made here by Dr. Eberton, F.R.S., lies in the Lat of  $32^{\circ} 33' 33$  seconds N and Lon W from Greenwich  $16^{\circ} 49'$ , the Variation of the Compass  $15^{\circ} 30'$  W, decreasing as he says, which I much doubt; neither does this Variation agree with our

own Observations. The Tides flow full, and Change N and S, and rise Perpendicular 7 feet at Spring Tides and 4 feet at Neap tides. We found the N point of the Dipping Needle, belonging to the Royal Society, to Dip  $77^{\circ} 18'$ . The Refreshments for Shipping to be got at this place are Wine, Water, Fruit of Several Sorts, and Onions in Plenty, and some Sweetmeats; but Fresh Meat and Poultry are very Dear, and not to be had at any rate without Leave from the Governour. Wind S, E-S-E, S-W.

Monday, September 19th 1768 Light breezes and fine Clear weather. At midnight Sailed from Funchall. At 8am the high land over it bore N  $1/2$  E. Unbent the Cables, stow'd the Anchors, and issued to the Ship's Company 10 pounds of Onions per Man. Ship's Draught of Water, Fore 14 feet 8 inches; Aft 15 feet 1 inch. Wind E-S-E; Lat  $31^{\circ} 43'$  N; at noon, High land over Funchall N  $7^{\circ}$  E, 49 mi.

Tuesday, September 20th 1768 Light Airs and Clear weather. pm took several Azimuth, which gave the Variation  $16^{\circ} 30'$  W. Put the Ship's Company to three Watches. Wind variable; course S  $21^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 28 mi; Lat  $31^{\circ} 17'$ , Lon  $17^{\circ} 19'$  W; at noon, Funchall, Island of Madeira, N  $13^{\circ}$  E, 76 mi.

Wednesday, September 21st 1768 First part light Airs, remainder fresh Breezes and Clear weather. Served Hooks and Lines to the Ship's Company, and employed them in the day in making Matts, etc., for the Rigging. Wind S-W to S-W by W; course S  $60^{\circ}$  E; distance 60 mi; Lat  $30^{\circ} 46'$  N, Lon  $16^{\circ} 8'$  S; at noon, Funchall N  $10^{\circ}$  W, 113 mi.

Thursday, September 22nd 1768 Genteel breezes and Clear weather. At 4pm saw the Salvages bearing S; at 6, the Body of the Island bore S  $1/2$  W, distant about 5 lg. Found the Variation of the Compass by an Azimuth to be  $17^{\circ} 50'$  W. At 10 the Isles of Salvages bore W by S  $1/2$  S, distance 2 lg. I make those Islands to be in Lat  $30^{\circ} 11'$  S, and S  $16^{\circ}$  E, 58 lg from Funchall, Madeira. Wind S-W; course S  $35^{\circ} 30'$  E; distance 73 mi; Lat  $29^{\circ} 40'$  N, Lon  $15^{\circ} 31'$  W; at noon, Funchall N  $21^{\circ}$  W, 62 lg.

Friday, September 23rd 1768 Light breezes and Clear weather. At 6am saw the Peak of Teneriff bearing W by S  $1/2$  S, and the Grand Canaries S  $1/2$  W. The Variation of the Compass from  $17^{\circ} 22'$  to  $16^{\circ} 30'$ , Wind S-W, N-E; course S  $26^{\circ}$  W; distance 54 mi; Lat  $28^{\circ} 51'$  N, Lon  $15^{\circ} 50'$  W; at noon, Funchal N  $12^{\circ} 45'$  W, 77 lg.

Saturday, September 24th 1768 A fresh Breeze and Clear weather the most part of these 24 Hours. I take this to be the N-E Trade we have now got into. At 6pm the N-E end of the Island of Teneriff W by N, distance 3 or 4 lg. Off this N-E point lies some Rocks high above the water. The highest is near the point, and very remarkable. By our run from Yesterday at Noon this end of the Island must lie in the Lat of  $28^{\circ} 27'$  and S  $7^{\circ} 45'$  E, distance 83 lg from Funchal, and S  $18^{\circ}$  W, 98 mi from the Salvages. At 1am the Peak of Teneriff bore W-N-W. Found the Variation to be this morning  $16^{\circ} 14'$  W. The Peak of Teneriff (from which I now take my departure) is a very high Mountain upon the Island of the same name-one of the Canary Islands. Its perpendicular high from Actual Measurement is said to be 15,396 feet. It lies in the Lat of  $28^{\circ} 13'$  N, and Lon  $16^{\circ} 32'$  from Greenwich. Its situation in this respect is allowed to be pretty well determined. Wind N-E by E; Lat  $27^{\circ} 10'$  N; at noon Peak of Teneriff N  $18^{\circ} 45'$ , 74 mi.

Sunday, September 25th 1768 A Steady Trade Wind and Clear Weather. The Variation by the Amplitude this Evening was  $14^{\circ} 58'$  W. Wind E by N, E-N-E; course S  $41^{\circ}$  W; distance 126 mi; Lat  $25^{\circ} 36'$  N; at noon Peak of Teneriff N  $33^{\circ} 15'$  E, 61 lg.

Monday, September 26th 1768 Fresh breezes and somewhat Hazy. Variation by this Evening Amplitude  $15^{\circ} 1$  minute W. Wind N-E by E; course S  $22^{\circ} 15'$  W; distance 122 mi; Lat  $23^{\circ} 43'$  N; at noon Peak of Teneriff N  $29^{\circ}$  E, 317 mi.

Tuesday, September 27th 1768 Ditto weather. Served Wine to the Ship's Company, the Beer being all Expended but 2 Casks, which I intend to keep some time Longer, as the whole has proved very good to the last Cask. At Noon found the Ship by Observation 10 mi a Head of the Log, which I suppose may be owing to a Current setting in the same direction of the Trade Wind. Wind N-E; course S  $19^{\circ}$  W; distance 145 mi; Lat  $21^{\circ} 26'$  N; at noon, Peak of Teneriff, N  $26^{\circ}$  E, 154 lg.

Wednesday, September 28th 1768 A Fresh Trade wind and Hazy weather. The Variation of the Compass by the mean of Several Azimuth taken this Evening  $12^{\circ} 46'$ , and in the Morning by the same Method  $12^{\circ} 43'$  W. This day's Log and Observed Lat agree, which is not reconcilable to Yesterday. Exercised the People at Small Arms. Wind N-E, E-N-E; course S  $12^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 150 mi; Lat  $18^{\circ} 59'$  N; at noon, Peak of Teneriff N  $23^{\circ} 15'$  E, 204 lg.

Thursday, September 29th 1768 Fresh breezes and Hazy weather. The Variation  $12^{\circ} 33'$  W; the Observed Lat ahead of that given by the Log 10 mi. Wind N-E by N; course S  $14^{\circ}$  W; distance 90 mi; Lat  $17^{\circ} 32'$  N; at noon Peak of Teneriff, N  $33^{\circ}$  E, 236 lg.

Friday, September 30th 1768 A Steady breeze and Pleasant weather. At 6am saw the Island of Bonavista (one of the Cape de Verd islands), Extending from S by E to S-W by S, distance 3 or 4 lg. Ranged the E side of this Island at the Distance of 3 or 4 mi from the Shore, until we were obliged to Haul Off to avoid a Ledge of Rocks which stretched out S-W by W from the Body or S-E Point of the Island  $1 \frac{1}{2}$  lg. Had no ground with 40 fm a mile without this Ledge. The Island of Bonavista is in Extent from N to S about 5 lg, is of a very uneven and hilly Surface, with low sandy beaches on the E side. The S-E part of the Island, from which I take my Departure, by an Observation this day at Noon lies in the Lat of  $16^{\circ}$  N, and according to our run from Madeira in the Lon of  $21^{\circ} 51'$  W from Greenwich, and S  $21^{\circ}$  W; 260 lg from Tenerriff. Drawings Numbers 1 and 2 represent the appearance of the E side of this Island, where (2) is the S-E point, with the hill over it, which is high, of a round Figure, and the Southernmost on the Island. Wind N-E; course S  $12^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 97 mi; Lat  $15^{\circ} 37'$  N per observation; Teneriffe, N  $20^{\circ} 43'$  E, 262  $\frac{1}{3}$  lg; at noon the hill on the S-E Point of the Island Bonavista N  $69^{\circ}$  W, distant from the shore 3 lg.

Saturday, October 1st 1768 A steady gale and somewhat Hazy. Variation by very good Azimuths this Evening  $10^{\circ} 37'$ , and by the same in the Morning  $10^{\circ} 0'$  W; at Noon found the ship a Head of the Log 5 mi. Wind N, N-N-E; course S  $12^{\circ} 12'$  W; distance 114 mi; Lat  $14^{\circ} 6'$  N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 10'$  W; at noon Island of Bonavista, S-E point, N  $9^{\circ}$  W, 116 mi.

Sunday, October 2nd 1768 First part a Steady breeze and pleasant weather, remainder light breezes and Cloudy. At noon found the Ship by Observation ahead of the Log 7 mi. Wind N by E, N-N-W; course S 1 degree W; distance 92 mi; Lat  $12^{\circ} 34'$  N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 10'$  W; at noon Bonavista, S-E point, N  $5^{\circ} 45'$  E, 69 lg.

Monday, October 3rd 1768 Cloudy weather, with light winds and Calms. Variation by this Evening Amplitude S 8° 49' W. am hoisted out a Boat to try if there was any Current; found one setting to the S-E at the rate of 3/4 of a mile per hour. Wind N, calm, S-S-W 1/2 W; course S 3° 30' E; distance 20 mi; Lat 12° 14' N, Lon 22° 10' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 5° E, 76 lg.

Tuesday, October 4th 1768 Calm for the Greatest part of the 24 Hours. By an Observation we had this Morning of the Sun and Moon found our Selves in the Lon of 22° 32' 30 seconds W from Greenwich; that by account is 21° 58', the Difference being 34 mi W, which does not agree with the Setting of the Current, for having try'd it twice to-day and found it set to the E-S-E 1 mile per Hour, and at the same time found the Ship to the Southward of the Log by the Noon Observation 10 mi. Served Portable soup and Sour kroutt to the Ship's Company. Wind variable; course S 53° W; distance 17 mi; Lat 11° 53' N, Lon 22° 33' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 2° E, 82 lg.

Wednesday, October 5th 1768 Light breezes of Wind, sometimes Clear and sometimes Cloudy weather. Variation 6° 10' W by an Amplitude and Azimuth this evening. At noon found the Ship by the Observed Lat 7 mi to the Southward of the Log, and by the Observed Lon 30° to the Eastward of Yesterday's Observations; and as these Observations for finding the Lon (if carefully observed with good Instrument) will generally come within 10 or 15 mi of each other, and very often much nearer, it therefore can be no longer in Doubt but that there is a Current setting to the Eastward; yet we cannot have had this Current long, because the Lon by account and that by Observation agree to-day, but Yesterday she was 28 mi to the Westward of the Observation. Wind calm, N-E, E; course S 29° E; distance 57 mi; Lat 10° 56' N, Lon 22° 3' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 2° E, 101 lg.

Thursday, October 6th 1768 First part light Breezes and Cloudy; middle frequent heavy Squalls, with rain, till towards Noon when we had again little wind. Found the Variation by the mean of 3 Azimuth, taken this Morning, to be 8° 52' W, which makes the Variation found Yesterday doubtful. Wind N-E, S-E, S; course S 10° 30' W; distance 77 mi; Lat 9° 40' N, Lon 22° 28' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 4° E, 128 lg.

Friday, October 7th 1768 Variable light Airs and Calm all these 24 Hours. At Noon found the Current to set S-E 1/4 S one mile per hour, and yet by Observation at Noon I find the Ship 12 mi to the Northward of Account, a Circumstance that hath not hapned for many days, and which I believe to be owing to the heavy Squalls we had Yesterday from the S-E, which obliged us to put frequently before the Wind. Wind S, calm, N; course S 5° W; distance 10 mi; Lat 9° 42' N, Lon 22° 19' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 4° E, 127 lg.

Saturday, October 8th 1768 First part, light Airs and Clear weather; middle, Squally, with Thunder and Lightning all round; latter part, Moderate breezes and Clear weather. Had several Azimuths both in the Evening and Morning, which gave the Variation S 8° 30' W. At Noon found by Observation that the Ship had outrun the Log 20 mi, a Proof that there is a Current setting to the Southward. Wind N-E by N to E-S-E; course S by E; distance 78 mi; Lat 8° 25' N, Lon 22° 4' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 1 degree 45' E, 152 lg.

Sunday, October 9th 1768 Light Airs and fine Clear weather. Found the Variation by a great Number of Azimuth made this Afternoon to be 8° 21' 30 seconds W, and by the Morning



Amplitude  $7^{\circ} 48'$ . At Noon try'd the Current, and found it set N-N-W  $3/4$  W, 1  $1/8$  mi per hour. The Shifting of the Current was conformed by the Observed Lat Wind E-S-E; course S  $16^{\circ}$  W; distance 29 mi; Lat  $7^{\circ} 58'$  N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 13'$  W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N  $2^{\circ} 40'$ , 161 lg.

Monday, October 10th 1768 First part, light breezes and Clear weather; middle, squally, with heavy Showers of Rain; latter, Variable, light Airs and Calm and dark gloomy weather. At 3pm found the Current to set N-N-E  $1/4$  E, 1  $1/4$  mile per Hour, and at Noon found it to set N-E  $3/4$  N at the same rate, and the Variation to be  $8^{\circ} 39'$  W by the Mean of Several Azimuth. Wind S-E by E, S; course S; distance 10 mi; Lat  $7^{\circ} 48'$  N; Lon  $22^{\circ} 13'$  W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N  $3^{\circ}$  E, 164 lg.

Tuesday, October 11th 1768 Very Variable weather, with frequent Squalls rain, and Lightning. By the Observed Lat at Noon I find the Ship hath only made 22 mi since the last Observation two days ago, whereas the Log gives 55 mi, a Proof that there is a Current setting to the Northward. Wind S-E; course S  $52^{\circ}$  W; distance 18 mi; Lat  $7^{\circ} 36'$  N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 8'$  W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N  $3^{\circ}$  E, 168 lg.

Wednesday, October 12th 1768 Much the same weather as Yesterday the first part, the remainder mostly Calm and cloudy weather. am try'd the Current and found it set S by W  $1/4$  W,  $1/2$  mile per Hour, which is not agreeable to yesterday's remark. Wind variable; course S  $33^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 20 mi; Lat  $7^{\circ} 21'$  N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 39'$  W; at noon Bonavista N  $5^{\circ}$  E, 174 lg.

Thursday, October 13th 1768 Light Airs of Wind, with some heavy showers of rain. Variation by Azimuth and Amplitude this Evening  $8^{\circ} 46'$  W. At Noon try'd the Current, and found it set S  $3/4$  E,  $1/3$  of a mile per Hour; but finding the Observation and Log agree, I am inclinable to think it hath had no effect upon the Ship. Wind S-W, W-S-W; course S  $16^{\circ} 45'$  E; distance 21 mi; Lat  $7^{\circ} 1$  minute N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 32'$  W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N  $5^{\circ}$  E, 181 lg.

Friday, October 14th 1768 Dark, gloomy weather, with much rain, the Wind Variable from W-S-W to S-S-E, sometimes on one Tack and sometimes on the other. Wind W-S-W to S-S-E; course S  $5^{\circ}$  E; distance 24 mi; Lat  $6^{\circ} 38'$  N, Lon  $22^{\circ} 30'$  W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N  $3^{\circ} 15'$ , 188 lg.

Saturday, October 15th 1768 First part, little wind and Cloudy; middle, Squally, with rain; latter part, light Airs and Clear weather. A little before Noon took several Observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of which gave the Lon to be  $23^{\circ} 46'$  W from Greenwich, which is 1 degree  $22'$  more W than that by account carried on from the last Observation; and the Observed Lat is 24 mi more N than the Log since the Last Observation 2 days ago, all of which shows that the N-W Current hath prevailed for this some Days past. Wind S-S-W to S-E; course S  $30^{\circ}$  E per log; distance 12 mi; Lat  $6^{\circ} 50'$  N; Lon  $22^{\circ} 23'$  W per account,  $23^{\circ} 46'$  per sun and moon; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N by E, 187 lg.

Sunday, October 16th 1768 First part Calm, the remainder Gentle breezes and fine, Pleasant weather. At 3 hours  $30' 39$  seconds Apparent timepm the observed distance of the sun and moon's nearest Limb was  $52^{\circ} 42' 30$  seconds; the Altitude of the sun's lower limb  $32^{\circ} 39'$ ; the Altitude of the moon's lower limb  $58^{\circ} 36'$ ; the Lon of the Ship from the foregoing Observations  $23^{\circ} 33' 33$  seconds W from Greenwich, differing  $13'$  from those made this Morning or Yesterday, the Ship laying all the time becalmed. Variation of the Compass  $8^{\circ} 45'$  W. Wind S-

E, variable, N-E; course S 2° E; distance 72 mi; Lat 5° 38' N, Lon 23° 45' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 5° 15' E, 208 lg.

Monday, October 17th 1768 Variable, light Airs and Calm clear weather. 1/2 past 1pm took two Distances of the sun and moon, the first of which gave the Lon 23° 45' 56 seconds, and the last 23° 44' W, the difference being not quite two mi, which shows how near to one another these observations can be made. Wind S, S-E, variable; course S by W 1/2 W; distance 11 mi; Lat 5° 17' N, Lon 23° 47' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 5° 15' E, 212 lg.

Tuesday, October 18th 1768 Sometimes little wind, sometimes Squally, with rain and Lightning. Wind S to E-S-E; course S 48° W; distance 45 mi; Lat 4° 47' N, Lon 24° 23' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 12° E, 229 lg.

Wednesday, October 19th 1768 Fresh breezes and Cloudy weather. The Observed Lat to the Northward of that given by the Log 9 mi, which I suppose must be owing to a Current. Wind S by E to S-E by S; course S 42° W; distance 88 mi; Lat 3° 44' N, Lon 25° 23' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 14° E, 253 lg.

Thursday, October 20th 1768 A Genteel gale and Clear weather. At a little before 5pm had an Observation of the sun and moon, which gave the Lon 25° 46' W from Greenwich, which is more W than that by account carried on from the last Observation; and the Observed Lat being again to the Northward shows that there must be a current setting between the N and W. Wind S by E to S-E by S; course S 52° W; distance 48 mi; Lat 3° 16' N, Lon 26° 20' W; at noon, Bonavista, N 18° 30' E, 270 lg.

Friday, October 21st 1768 A moderate breeze, and for the most part clear weather. Lon per the Mean of 2 Observations of the sun and moon made at 4 hours 45' and at 4 hours 54'pm, 26° 33' W. Variation of the Compass 4° 7' W, and the Observed Lat at Noon to the Northward of the Log 7 mi. Wind S-E to S-S-E; course S 58° W; distance 57 mi; Lat 2° 46' N, Lon 27° 11' W; at noon, Bonavista S-E point, N 21° E, 281 lg.

Saturday, October 22nd 1768 Moderate breezes and fine, pleasant weather. Variation 3° 17' W. Wind S-E by S; course S 43° 15' W; distance 87 mi; Lat 1 degree 40' N, Lon 28° 12' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 23° E, 312 lg.

Sunday, October 23rd 1768 A moderate, Steady breeze and fine Clear weather. The Ship by Observation at Noon is 8 mi to the Northward of the Log. Wind S-S-E; course S; distance 5 mi; Lat 1 degree 40' N, Lon 28° 12' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 23° E, 312 lg.

Monday, October 24th 1768 First part ditto weather; remainder fresh Breezes and Cloudy, with some flying Showers of rain. Variation per Azimuth this morning 3° W. At Noon by Observation found the Ship 11 mi ahead of the Log. Wind S by E to S-E by S; course S 49° W; distance 50 mi; Lat 1 degree 7' N; Lon 28° 50' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 25° E, 328 lg.

Tuesday, October 25th 1768 A Genteel breeze and Clear weather, with a Moist Air. Soon after sunrise found the Variation of the Compass to be 2° 24' W, being the Mean result of several very good Azimuths. This was just before we crossed the Line in the Lon of 29° 29' W from Greenwich. We also try'd the Diping Needle belonging to the Royal Society, and found the N point to Dip 26° below the Horizon; but this Instrument cannot be used at Sea to any great

degree of accuracy on account of the Motion of the Ship, which hinders the Needle from resting. However, as the Ship was pretty steady, and by means of a Swinging Table I had made for that purpose, we could be Certain of the Dip to two° at most. The Observed Lat and that by account nearly Agree. Wind S-E to S-E by E; course S 30° W; distance 95 mi; Lat 0° 15' S, Lon 29° 30' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 26° E, 358 lg.

Wednesday, October 26th 1768 First part light Airs and Cloudy weather, the remainder a Moderate Breeze and Cloudy. After we had got an observation, and it was no longer Doubted that we were to the Southward of the Line, the Ceremony on this occasion practis'd by all Nations was not Omitted. Every one that could not prove upon the Sea Chart that he had before Crossed the Line was either to pay a Bottle of Rum or be Duck'd in the Sea, which former case was the fate of by far the Greatest part on board; and as several of the Men chose to be Duck'd, and the weather was favourable for that purpose, this Ceremony was performed on about 20 or 30, to the no small Diversion of the Rest. Wind S-E to S-S-E; course S 31° W; distance 77 mi; Lat 1 degree 21' S, Lon 30° 18' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 25° 30' E, 385 lg.

Thursday, October 27th 1768 Fresh Gales and Close Cloudy weather. Variation 2° 48' W. Wind S-S-E to S-E; course S 38° 15' W; distance 79 mi; Lat 2° 23' S, Lon 31° 7' W; at noon, Bonavista, S-E point, N 26° E, 410 lg.

Friday, October 28th 1768 Fresh Breeze and fine Clear weather. At a little past 1am Lon in by the 3 following Observations – viz., by the Moon and the star Arietis, 32° 27'; by the Moon and Pollux, 32° 0' 15 seconds; by ditto, 31° 48' 32 seconds; the mean of the whole is 32° 5' 16 seconds W from Greenwich, which is 31' more W than the Lon by account carried on since the last Observation. The two first observations were made and computed by Mr. Green, and the last by myself. The star Arietis was on one side of the Moon and Pollux on the other. This day at Noon, being nearly in the Lat of the Island Ferdinand Noronha, to the Westward of it by some Charts and to the Eastward by others, was in Expectation of seeing it or some of those Shoals that are laid down in most Charts between it and the Main; but we saw neither one nor a Nother. We certainly passed to the Eastward of the Island, and as to the Shoals, I don't think they Exist, grounding this my Opinion on the Journal of some E India Ships I have seen who were detain'd by Contrary winds between this Island and the Main, and being 5 or 6 Ships in Company, doubtless must have seen some of them did they lay as Marked in the Charts. Wind S-E to S-E by E; course S 33° W; distance 93 mi, Lat 3° 41' S, Lon 32° 29' W.

Saturday, October 29th 1768 Fresh Breezes and pleasant weather. Variation of the Compass 2° 25' W. Wind E-S-E; course S by W; distance 101 mi; Lat 5° 25' S, Lon 32° 48' W.

Sunday, October 30th 1768 A Steady breeze, and for the most part close cloudy weather. Variation by several Azimuths 1 degree 31' W. At noon the observed Lat 7 mi Southward of account. Wind E-S-E; course S 3/4 W; distance 107 mi; Lat 7° 8' S, Lon 33° 4' W.

Monday, 31st 1768 A Fresh breeze and Clear weather. Variation 0° 15' W. Observed Lat again to the Southward of the Log. Wind E to E-S-E; course, S 1/2 W; distance 114 mi; Lat 9° 1 minute S, Lon 33° 16' W.

Tuesday, November 1st 1768 Moderate breezes, for the most part Cloudy. Variation by the mean of Several Azimuths  $0^{\circ} 58'$  W in the Evening, and in the Morning found it to be  $0^{\circ} 18'$  W. Wind E-S-E; course S  $3/4$  W; distance 98 mi; Lat  $10^{\circ} 38'$  S.

Wednesday, November 2nd 1768 A Steady breeze and fine pleasant weather. This Afternoon, by the mean of Several Azimuths and the Amplitude, found the Variation to be  $0^{\circ} 34'$  E, from which it appears that about the foregoing Noon we have Crossed the Line of no Variation in the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 38'$  S, and, according to the following Observations, in  $32^{\circ} 0'$  W Lon from Greenwich. At 5 hours 5' 0 seconds Apparent timeam the Lon of the Ship and the Observation of the moon and the star Aldebaran was found to be  $32^{\circ} 0' 45$  seconds; at 8 hours 17' 0 seconds, per sun and moon,  $32^{\circ} 25' 0$  seconds; and at 9 hours 0' 16 seconds,  $32^{\circ} 19' 0$  seconds. The mean of the three is  $32^{\circ} 14' 55$  seconds. And again at 7 hours 12' 52 seconds, per sun and moon,  $32^{\circ} 10' 4$  seconds; and at 7 hours 19' 42 seconds, per sun and moon,  $32^{\circ} 15' 20$  seconds. The mean of these two is  $32^{\circ} 12' 42$  seconds, and the mean of the whole is  $32^{\circ} 13' 43$  seconds W from Greenwich, which is less by a whole Degree than that by account, which is a Considerable Error to be made in 5 Days in these low Lats. One would think from this that we must have had a Current setting to the Eastward, which is not likely that it should set against the settled trade wind. The 3 first of these Observations were made by Mr. Green, and the 2 last by myself. Wind E-S-E, S; course S by W; distance 132 mi; Lat  $12^{\circ} 48'$  S, Lon  $32^{\circ} 20'$  W per Observation.

Thursday, November 3rd 1768 A Fresh Trade wind and fair weather. Variation per Azimuth this Evening  $0^{\circ} 47'$  E, and at a little past 9am Lon in per sun and moon  $33^{\circ} 0'$  W of Greenwich. Wind E by S-E; course S  $15^{\circ}$  W; distance 128 mi; Lat  $14^{\circ} 51'$  S, Lon  $33^{\circ} 7'$  W.

Friday, November 4th 1768 A Steady Gale and fair weather. Variation per Azimuth 1 degree 29' W, ditto 1 degree 28' W, and by the Amplitude 1 degree 12' W; mean 1 degree 23' W, by which it appears that we have again Crossed the Line of no Variation. At 1/2 past 9am the Lon of the Ship, per Observation of the sun and moon,  $33^{\circ} 26' 30$  seconds. Wind E by S; course S  $19^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 125 mi; Lat  $16^{\circ} 49'$  S, Lon  $33^{\circ} 37'$  W.

Saturday, November 5th 1768 Fine pleasant weather. Variation per Azimuth this morning  $3^{\circ} 21'$  E, which makes me Doubtful of the Variation found yesterday, tho' at the time I had not the IE room to doubt of the Accuracy of the Observations. Lon per Observation  $34^{\circ} 43' 30$  seconds W. Wind E to N-E; course S  $30^{\circ} 35'$  W; distance 109 mi; Lat  $18^{\circ} 22'$  S, Lon  $34^{\circ} 50'$  W.

Sunday, November 6th 1768 First and Latter part squally, with heavy Showers of rain; middle moderate and fair. I now determined to put into Rio de Janeiro in preference to any other port in Brazil or Falkland Islands, for at this place I knew we could recruit our Stock of Provisions, several Articles of which I found we should in time be in want of, and at the same time procure Live Stock and refreshment for the People; and from the reception former Ships had met with here I doubted not but we should be well received. Wind N-N-E, variable, S; course S  $55^{\circ}$  W; distance 74 mi; Lat  $19^{\circ} 3'$  S, Lon  $35^{\circ} 50'$  W.

Monday, November 7th 1768 Moderate breezes and Clear weather. pm found the Variation to be  $4^{\circ} 49'$  E. At 6 Sounded and had 32 fm Water; the Bottom Coral Rocks, fine Sand and Shells, which Soundings we carried upon a S-W  $1/2$  W Course 9 or 10 lg, and then had no ground with 100 fathom. We were by our account and per run afterwards 54 lg E from the

Coast of Brazil and to the Southward of the Shoals called Abrollos, as they are laid down in Most Charts. Wind S-E to N-E; course S 58° W; distance 68 mi; Lat 19° 46' S, Lon 36° 50' W.

Tuesday, November 8th 1768 Fresh breezes and Cloudy weather. pm variation by the Mean of 12 Azimuths 5° 26' E, and by an Amplitude in the Morning 7° 52'. At 6am saw the Land of Brazil bearing N-W 1/2 N, distance 8 or 10 lg. At 8 Sounded, had 37 fm, Coarse Sand, broken Shells, and Coral Rocks. At 9 brought too and Spoke with a Fishing Boat, who informed us that the land in sight lay to the Southward of Santo Espiritu. It appears high and Mountainous; the drawing Number (3) exhibits a View of this Land as it appeared from the Ship (A), being near to Santo Espiritu, and a remarkable hill (B) bore N-W 1/2 N, distance 7 or 8 lg. Made Sail in Shore, the wind being S. Had from the above Depth to 14 fm the same sort of Bottom. Found the Ship at Noon by Observation 10 mi to the Southward of account, which I suppose to be occasioned by a Current setting between the S and W. Wind N-N-E, N by W, S-S-W to S by W; course S 50° W; distance 140 mi; Lat 21° 16' S, Lon 37° 35' W.

Wednesday, November 9th 1768 First and Latter part Hazey, with a Moderate Breeze; middle, fresh Gales, with Thunder, Lightning, and rain. At 3pm tack't in 16 fm, distance from the Shore 5 lg, the land Extending from the N-W by W to N-E. At 5 took the 2nd Reef in the Topsails and got down Topgallant Yards, stood to the S-E until midnight, then tack'd, Sounding from 16 to 55 fm. At 8am Loosed the Reefs out of the Topsails and got Topgallant Yards a Cross; unstowed the Anchors and bent the Cables. At Noon Lat Observed 21° 29' S, the Land Extending from S-W by S to N-N-W, distance 4 lg, Soundings from 55 to 10 fm. Wind S-S-E, S-S-W, S; course S 62° 15' W; distance 28 mi; Lat 21° 29' S.

Thursday, November 10th 1768 Moderate breezes and Hazey upon the Land. Stood in for the Shore S-W 1/2 W. Depth of water from 10 to 9 fm and from 9 to 16 fm, being then 4 lg from the Land. From 16 fm it shoaled gradually to 5 fm; then we tacked, being about 1 1/2 lg from the Shore. The extreams of the Land to the Southward, which we took for Cape St. Thomas, bore S 3/4 W, distance 4 lg. The Land from Cape St. Thomas to the Northward lies N by E 1/2 E. Along the Shore is low land covered with Wood and Sandy Beaches, but inland are very high Mountains, the greatest part of them being hid in the Clouds. Stood off until 5 in the Morning E and E by S. Depth of Water 10, 20, 16, 23, and 30 fm. At Noon Lat Observed 21° 30'; Depth of Water 14 fm; Grey sand with black Specks. Extreams of the Land from S-W by W to N-N-W; distance 12 or 14 lg. Wind S-S-E, S-E by S, S by E; course E 1/4 S; distance 17 mi; Lat 21° 30' S, Lon 37° 43' W per account.

Friday, November 11th 1768 First and Latter parts, moderate breezes and fair, but Cloudy and Hazey over the Land; middle, a fresh breeze and Cloudy. At 8 tack'd and Stood to the N-E. Extream of the Land to the Southward, which we took for Cape St. Thomas, S-W 1/2 S; distance 5 or 6 lg; Depth of Water 13 fm, Grey sand. At 11am tack'd in 14 fm and Stood to the S-S-E, and at 3am Stood over a Shoal or Bank of 6 fm, afterwards the Depth increased to 30 fm, at Noon in 36 fm. Lat Observed 22° 37' S, which is 10 mi to the Southward of the Log. No Land in sight. Wind S-E to E; course S 5° W; distance 67 mi; Lat 23° 37' S, Lon 37° 49' W.

Saturday, November 12th 1768 Genteel breezes and fine Clear weather. At 2pm Sounded, but had no ground with 38 fm, and soon after sounded and had none at 50 fm, from which it appears that we are to the Southward of the Bank we have been upon this 2 days past. It Extends off from the Land between the Lat 21° and 22° nor less than 18 or 20 lg, How much farther I know not. Standing in from Sea, the Depth of Water very soon diminisheth from 30 to

20 and 17 fm, afterwards gradually from 9, 8 and even to 6 fm; but between this Shoal Water and the Main, which is 6 or 7 lg, you will have 10, 12 and even 16 fm, till you come within 2 or 3 lg of the Shore. The Bottom is of Various kinds, sometimes Coral Rocks, Coral Rocks and broken Shells, Coarse sand and broken Shells, Small Stones and at other times fine Sand varying at almost every Cast of the Lead. At 5pm saw the Land bearing N-W by W  $1/2$  W, distance 10 or 12 lg, which proved to be the Island of Cape Frio; it appeared in two Hillocks, and from the Deck looked like two Islands. Took several Azimuth of the Sun, which gave the Variation  $6^{\circ} 40'$  E. At 8am the Isle of Cape Frio bore W by N 4 lg. This Island is situated in the Lat of  $23^{\circ} 2'$  S, and according to our Reckoning in the Lon of  $38^{\circ} 45'$  W from Greenwich, but from many Circumstances I have good reason to think that our reckoning is wrong and that it lies in the Lon  $41^{\circ} 10'$  W. It is not of a Large Circuit, but Tolerable high, with a hollow in the middle, which makes it look like 2 Islands when it first makes its appearance out of the Water. It lays not far from the Main, which with the Island forms a right Angle, one side trending N and the other W. To the Northward of the Island and between it and the Main there appears to lay several smaller Islands near each other. The Main land on the Sea Coast appears to be low, but inland are high Mountains. Drawing Number 4 exhibits a View of this Island when it bore W-N-W, distance 4 lg. Wind N-E, E-N-E; course S  $60^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 59 mi; Lat  $23^{\circ} 6'$  S; Isle of Cape Frio N  $60^{\circ}$  E, 4 lg.

Sunday, November 13th 1768 First and Latter parts a Genteel Sea breeze and Clear weather, the middle Calm. pm standing along Shore for Rio De Janeiro observed that the land on the Sea Coast is high and Mountainous, and the shore forms some small Bays or Coves wherein are Sandy Beaches. At 8 Shortned Sail; the Sugar Loaf Hill at the W Entrance to Rio De Janeiro W-N-W, distant 4 or 5 lg, at the same time was abt of 2 Small rocky Islands, that lie about 4 mi from the Shore. At 9am Sprung up a light breeze at S-E, at which time we made Sail for the Harbour, and sent the Pinnace with a Lieutenant before us up to the city of Rio De Janeiro, to acquaint the Vice Roy with the reason that induced us to put in here, which was to procure Water and other refreshments, and to desire the Assistance of a Pilot to bring us into proper Anchoring ground; at Noon Standing in for the Harbour.

Monday, November 14th 1768 Moderate Sea and Low breezes and fine pleasant weather. At 5pm Anchored in 5 fm just above the Isle of Cobras, which lies before the City of Rio De Janeiro. A little before we Anchor'd the Pinnace return'd and informed me that the Vice Roy had thought proper to detain the Officer until I went ashore. Soon after we Anchored a Boat came on board bringing several of the Vice Roy's Officers, who asked many Questions in respect to the Ship: Cargo, from whence she came, Number of Guns, Men, etc., all of which was Answered to their satisfaction. They told me it was the Custom of the Port to Detain the first Officer that came from any Ship on her first Arrival until a Boat from the Vice Roy had Visited her; that my Officer would be sent on board as soon as they got on shore, which was accordingly done. About this time a Boat filled with Soldiers kept rowing about the Ship, which had orders, as I afterwards understood, not to Suffer any one of the Officers or Gentlemen, except myself, to go out of the Ship. In the Morning I waited upon the Vice Roy and obtained leave to purchase Provisions, Refreshments, etc., for the Ship, but obliged me to employ a person to buy them for me under a pretence that it was the Custom of the Place, and he likewise insisted (notwithstanding all I could say to the contrary), on putting a Soldier into the Boats that brought anything to or from the Ship, alledging that it was the Orders of his Court, and they were such as he could not Dispencc with, and this indignity I was obliged to submit to, otherwise I could not have got the supplys I wanted; being willing, as much as in me lay, to avoid all manner of Disputes that might cause the IE delay, and at the same time to Convince

him that we did not come here to Trade, as I believe he imagined – for he Certainly did not believe a word about our being bound to the Southward to observe the Transit of Venus, but looked upon it only as an invented story to cover some other design we must be upon, for he could form no other Idea of that Phenomenon (after I had explained it to him), than the N Star Passing through the S Pole; these were his own words. He would not permit the Gentlemen to reside ashore during our Stay here, nor permit Mr. Banks to go into the country to gather plants, etc.; but not the IE hint was given me at this time that no one of the Gentlemen was to come out of the Ship but myself, or that I was to be put under a Guard when I did come; but this I was soon Convinced of after I took my leave of His Excellency and found that an Officer was to attend upon me wherever I went, which at first the Vice Roy pretended was only meant as a Complement, and to order me all the Assistance I wanted. This day the People were Employed in unbending the Sails, in fitting and rigging the Spare Topmasts in the room of the others, and getting on shore Empty Water Casks.

Tuesday, November 15th 1768 Fine pleasant weather. Received on board fresh Beef and Greens for the Ship's Company, with which they was served every Day During our Stay here. Got all the Empty Casks on shore, and set the Coopers to Work to repair them; Heeld and Boot Topt the Starboard side.

Wednesday, November 16th 1768 Set up the Forge to repair the Iron Work; the People employed in Heeling and Boot Topping the Larboard side, Blacking the Yards, etc.

Thursday, November 17th 1768 Set some People to repair the Sails and the Caulkers to Caulk the Ship; the rest of the People employed in the Hold and about the Rigging. For 3 days past I have remonstrated to the Vice Roy and his Officers against his putting a Guard into my Boat, thinking I could not Answer it to the Admiralty the tamely submitting to such a Custom, which, when practiced in its full force, must bring Disgrace to the British Flag. On the other hand, I was loath to enter into Disputes, seeing how much I was like to be delay'd and imbarassed in getting the supplys I wanted, for it was with much difficulty that I obtained leave for one of my People to attend the Market to buy necessaries for my Table and to assist the Agent to buy the things for the Ship. Having gained this Point and settled everything with the Agent in regard to what was wanting for the Ship, I resolved, rather than be made a Prisoner in my own Boat, not to go any more ashore unless I could do it without having a Soldier put into the Boat, as had hitherto been done; and thinking that the Vice Roy might lay under some mistake, which on proper Application might be clear'd up, I therefore drew up a Memorial stating the whole case and sent to the Vice Roy this afternoon; and thus a Paper War commenced between me and His Excellency, wherein I had no other Advantage than the racking his invention to find reasons for treating us in the manner he did, for he never would relax the IE from any one point.

Friday, November 18th 1768 This day I received an Answer to my Memorial, wherein he tells me, amongst other things, that if I think it hard submitting to the Customs of this Port I may leave it when I please; but this did not suit my purpose at present, but I resolved to make my stay as short as possible. I must own that the Memorial of the Vice Roy's was well drawn up and very much to the Purpose, which is more than I can say of any of the subsequent ones.

Saturday, November 19th 1768 Close cloudy weather. Employed getting aboard Rum, Water, and other necessaries. Caulking and refitting the Ship. Punished John Thurman, Seaman, with 12 Lashes for refusing to assist the Sailmaker in repairing the Sails.

Sunday, November 20th 1768 First part cloudy weather; the middle very hard Storms of Wind and Rain; the Latter moderate, with rain. This Afternoon sent Lieutenant Hicks in the Pinnace with an Answer to the Vice Roy's Memorial, with orders not to Suffer a Soldier to be put into the Boat; upon which the Guard Boat attended him to the Landing Place and reported it to the Vice Roy, who refused to receive the Memorial, and ordered Mr. Hicks on board Again; but in the Meantime they had put a Guard into the Boat, which Mr. Hicks insisted should be order'd out, that he might return on board in the same manner as he came, without a Guard; and upon his refusing to return other way, all the Crew were by Arm'd force taken out of the Boat (though they gave no provocation nor made the IE resistance) and hurried to Prison, where they remained until the next day. Mr. Hicks was then put into one of their Boats, and brought on board under the Custody of a Guard. Immediately upon my hearing of this I wrote to the Vice Roy demanding my Boat and Crew and his Excellency's reason for detaining her, and inclosed the Memorial he had before refused to receive. This I sent by a petty Officer, as I had never objected against a Guard being put into any of my Boats wherein was no Commissioned Officer. He was admitted ashore and delivered the Letter, and was told an Answer would be sent the next day. This evening, between 8 and 9 o'Clock, came on an Excessive hard storm of Wind and Rain, the Longboat coming on board the same time with 4 Pipes of Rum in her. The rope they got hold of broke, and she went a Drift. The Yawl was immediately sent after her; but the Longboat filling with Water, they brought her to a Grapnel and left her, and the Yawl with the People got on board about 3 in the morning. Early this Morning I sent to the Vice Roy to acquaint him with the loss of our Boat, to desire leave and the Assistance of a Shore Boat to look after her, and at the same time to demand the Pinnace and her Crew. After some time the whole was granted, and we was so fortunate as to find the Longboat the same Day, and likewise the 4 Pipes of Rum; but every other thing that was in her was lost.

Monday, November 21st 1768 This Morning I received his Excellency's Answer to my last Memorial and Letter. In his Letter he owns there was some indecency in Detaining the Boat, but lays the Blame to my Officer, who only Executed the orders I gave him with Spirit. In one part of his Memorial he says that from the Built of the Ship and other Circumstances he Doubts that she is the King's. This I thought proper to Answer in Writing by telling his Excellency that I was ready to produce my Commission. Rain the most part of this Day.

Tuesday, November 22nd 1768 Moderate breezes, with frequent Showers of Rain. Employed getting on board Water, Provisions, etc. Caulking the Ship and repairing the Sails.

Wednesday, November 23rd 1768 Fine pleasant weather. Employed as before and setting up the Rigging. This day I received from the Vice-Roy an Answer to my last Memorial, wherein he still keeps up his Doubts that she is not a King's Ship, and accuseth my people of Smuggling, a thing I am very Certain they were not guilty of, and for which his Excellency could produce no proof, notwithstanding many Artful means were made use of to tempt such of our People as were admitted ashore to Trade by the Very Officers that were under His Excellency's own Roof. I thought it incumbent on me to Answer this Memorial, in which I desir'd His Excellency to take into Custody any one of my People that should be found trading even if it amounted to no more than one of the Sailors selling his Cloaths from off his Back for a Bottle of Rum – for what His Excellency called smuggling I was very certain amounted to no more, and even this was only Suspicions of my own.



Thursday, November 24th 1768 This day a Spanish Packet (a Small Brig) from Buenos Ayres put in here in her way to Spain. This Vessel belonged to his Catholic Majesty, and notwithstanding the Vice-Roy had all along pretended that the orders he had respecting Foreign Vessels were General, yet this Vessel meet with very Different Treatment from us. No Guard was put over her, and her Officers and Crew went wherever they pleased.

Friday, November 25th 1768 Employed getting on board Water as fast as the Coopers could set up and repair the Casks, setting up the rigging and Caulking the Ship's sides.

Saturday, November 26 th 1768 Ditto Friday.

Sunday, November 27th 1768 Bent the Sails and Cleaned the Ship Fore and Aft.

Monday, November 28th 1768 Fine pleasant weather. The Caulkers having finished the sides, paid them with Tar. This day I unexpectedly received an Answer from my last Memorial, wherein were only a few weak Arguments to support His Excellency's Suspicions that the Ship did not belong to the King, and that my People Smugled. This Memorial I answered.

Tuesday, November 29th 1768 Employed Lashing the Casks that were on the upper Deck and between Decks and making ready for Sea.

Wednesday, November 30th 1768 Punished Robert Anderson, Seaman, and William Judge, Marine, with 12 Lashes Each, the former for leaving his Duty ashore and attempting to desert from the Ship, and the latter for using abusive language to the Officer of the Watch, and John Reading, Boatswain's Mate, with 12 lashes for not doing his Duty in punishing the above two Men. Sent a Shore to the Vice-Roy for a Pilot to Carry us to Sea, who sent one on board together with a Large Boat, which I did not want, but it is the Custom in this Port for the Pilots to have such a Boat to attend upon the Ship they Pilot out, and for which you must pay 10 shillings per day, besides the Pilot's fees, which is Seven pounds four Shillings Sterling.

Thursday, December 1st 1768 Wind at S-E, which hinder'd us from Sailing as we intended. Received on board a large Quantity of fresh Beef, Greens and Yams for the Ship's Company.

Friday, December 2nd 1768 This morning sent a Packet for the Secretary of the Admiralty on board the Spanish Pacquet, containing copies of all the Memorials and Letters that have passed between the Vice-Roy and me, and likewise another Packet containing Duplicates thereof I left with the Vice-Roy to be by him forwarded to Lisbon. At 9 Weighed and came to Sail and turned down the Bay. Peter Flower, Seaman, fell overboard, and before any Assistance could be given him was drowned; in his room we got a Portugue.

Saturday, December 3rd 1768 First part, moderate breezes at S-E; remainder, fresh Gales at S with Rain. At 1pm Anchored in 18 fm Water in the Great Road (see Plan).

Sunday, December 4th 1768 Fore and middle parts fresh Gales at S-S-E with heavy rain; Latter, Variable Light Airs and fair weather. Hoisted in the Long-boat and secured her.

Monday, December 5th 1768 First part, little wind and Cloudy; middle, Thunder, Lightning and Rain; latter, little wind at S-W and fair. At 4am Weighed and tow'd down the Bay (being Calm) with an intent to go to Sea, but having 2 Shott fired at us from Santa Cruze Fort was obliged to

come to an Anchor and to send a Boat to the Fort to know the Reason of their firing, who it seems had no orders to let us pass, without which no Ship can go to Sea. This surprized me not a little, as I had but this very morning received a very Polite Letter from the Vice-Roy (in answer to one I had wrote some days ago), wherein he wishes me a good voyage. immediately dispatched a petty Officer to the Vice-Roy to know the reason why we was not permitted to pass the Fort; the Boat very soon return'd with an order to the Captain of the Fort to let us pass, which Order had been wrote some Days Ago, but either by Design or neglect had not been sent. At 11 weigh'd in order to put to Sea, but before we could heave up the Anchor, it got hold of a Rock, where it held fast in spite of all our endeavours to Clear it until the Sea Breeze set in.

Tuesday, December 6th 1768 The Sea breeze continued all this day. At 2pm the Ship tended to the Wind, which cleared the Anchor. Hove it up and run higher up the Bay and Anchored in 15 fm, a little below the Isle or Church of Bon Voyage; found the cable very much rubbed several fm from the Anchor.

Wednesday, December 7th 1768 First and latter part a Genteel breeze at S-E and E; the middle, Calm. At 5am weigh'd and tow'd out of the Bay; at 8 Discharged the Pilot and his Boat. A breeze of Wind Springing up E made Sail out to Sea, and sent a boat to one of the Islands laying before the Bay to cut Brooms, a thing we was not permitted to do while we lay in the Harbour; the Guard Boat which had constantly attended all the time we lay in the Bay and Harbour did not leave us until the Pilot was discharged. At noon the Sugar Loaf at the W Entrance of the Bay bore N by W 1/2 W, distance, 8 or 9 mi.

The few days' delay we met with in getting out of Rio de Janeiro gave me an opportunity of Drawing a Plan or Sketch of great part of the Bay, but the Strict watch that was kept over us during our whole stay hinder'd me from taking so accurate a Survey as I wisht to have done, and all the Observations I could make was taken from on board the Ship. This Plan hath no pretensions to accuracy, yet it will give a very good idea of the place, differing not much from the truth in what is Essential.

The Bay of Rio de Janeiro, by some called a River-which its Name Signifies-but this I think is improper, it being nothing more than a Deep inlet of the Sea, into which no considerable fresh water River Emptys itself that I could hear of. Be this as it will, it is Capacious and Capable of Containing a vast Number of Shipping where they may ride in perfect Security. The Entrance is Situated W by N 18 lg from Cape Frio, and may be known by a remarkable Hill in the Form of a Sugar Loaf, at the W Entrance of the Bay; but as all the Coast is exceeding high, terminating at the top in Peaked Hills, it is much better known by the Islands laying before it, one of which (called Rodonda) is high and round in form of a Hay Stack, and lies S by W 2 1/2 lg from the Sugar Loaf or Entrance of the Bay. A little without the E Entrance of the Bay, and near the shore, lay 2 Islands near each other: 3 lg from the Eastward and 4 mi from the Shore are 2 low Rocky Islands, which are the first you meet with in coming from the Eastward or from Cape Frio.

To sail into Rio de Janeiro there is not the IE Danger until you are the length of the Fort of Santa Cruze, which stands on the point that forms the E Entrance of the Bay or River; on the W Entrance is Fort Lorio, built upon a Rock which lies close to the Main Land, the distance from one Fort to the other is 3/4 of a mile E and W, but the Channel for Shipping is not quite so broad by reason of Sunken Rocks laying off each of the Forts; these rocks may not be properly

placed in the plan, being only laid down from the information of the Pilot. The Narrowness of the Channell here causeth the Tides both Flood and Ebb to run pretty strong, insomuch that you cannot Stem it without a fresh breeze of Wind, nor is it safe Anchoring because the bottom is foul and Rocky. By keeping in the middle of the Channell you will not only avoid being forced to come to an Anchor, but all other Dangers. Being got within the entrance your Course up the Bay is N by W 1/2 W and N-N-W something more than one League; this brings you the length of the great Road, and N-W and W-N-W one league more carries you the length of the Ilha dos Cobras, which lies before the City. Keep the N side of this Island close on board and Anchor above it in 5 fm of water, where you see most Convenient before the Monastery of Benedictines, which stands upon a hill at the N-W End of the City. Small Ships and Vessels generally lay between the Town and the Ilha dos Cobras, but in order to get there they must come round the N side of the Island.

I shall now give the best description I can of the Different Forts that are Erected for the Defence of the Bay. The first you meet with coming in from Sea is a Battery of 22 Guns, seated in the Bottom of a sandy Bay, which is on the S side of the Sugar Loaf, and can be designed for no other use than to hinder an Enemy from landing in that valley, from whence I suppose they may March up to the Town or round by the W side of the Sugar Loaf to attack the Forts that are on that side of the Entrance into the Bay, the first of which is Seated under the foot of the Sugar Loaf on a low Isthmus which joyns the Peninsula or point of the Bay with the Land of the Sugar Loaf. It appears to be a square of Stone Work without a Ditch, with Bastions and furnished with Cannon. A little within this fort are 2 battrys of 5 or 6 Guns each. They are designed to play upon Shipping, but neither these battrys or the Fort are out of reach of a Ship's Cannon. Hard by these batterys stands Fort Logie. It is an irregular hexagon, built of Stone upon a Small Rock standing at the W Entrance of the Bay, and is surrounded on all Sides by the Sea. It is mounted with 14 or 15 guns, which are placed so as to play upon Shipping going in and out of the Harbour. There is only one way to go into it, which is by Steps Leading up to a Sally Port on the N-W side. Opposite this is the Fort of Santa Cruze, built upon a low rocky point that forms the E Entrance of the Bay. It hath the Appearance of a Regular Fortification of Stone Work built upon the Slope of the Rock, on which account there are in some places 2 Tier of Guns. It hath no Ditch but on the Land side, where it is cut out of the Rock; in every other part the Sea washes up to its Walls. It seems everywhere to be well Mounted with Cannon Except on the land side, where none are wanting, because they could be of no use, the land being so very high above it. Yet, after all, neither this Fort nor those on the opposite shore do not appear to be of any great Strength, even against Shipping, for which they are wholly design'd, being the key of the Bay. They lay low, and Ships may come so near as to have them entirely within the reach of their Guns; but it would require 5 or 6 Sail of the line to insure Success. Between 2 and 3 mi within the Entrance of the Bay, on the W Side, is the Isle Borghleone, upon the E point of which is Erected a Battry of Stone, and Mounted with 17 pieces of Cannon. Besides this, on the highest part of the Island, is a Battry of 6 Guns mounted on an Open Platform. These battrys are designed to play upon Shipping in the Bay, and seems not ill designed for that purpose; yet they would be Obliged to Submit to the Attack of Shipping or that of a Land force, there being nothing to hinder the latter from Landing on the Island behind the Battrys. Opposite to this Island, on the low point on the E side of the Bay, is the Battry of St. Dominica of 7 Guns. A little without this Battry, on the E side of the Bay, is a small but high Island, close to the Shore, on the Top of which is the Church of Bonn Voyage, about half-way down the Cliff. Below the Church is a Battry of 3 Guns. Neither the one nor the other of these battry's are of much Consequence. They serve, indeed, to force Shipping

coming into the Bay between 2 Fires, and hinder them from Anchoring on that side until they are silenced.

The next fortification is that on the Ilha dos Cobras, the E point and N side of which consists of a Rampart Bastion and a Parrapet faced with Stones and mounted with Cannon, but no Ditch, which is not much wanting, as the works are built on the Edge of the rising Ground. The other side next the Town hath no other inclosure but a plain wall without any Guns. It is said that the works on this Island are in bad repair, on account of being so Extensive that they would take more men to Defend them than they could spare, and, placing no Dependancy on their Strength, let them go to decay. The ground on which the Monastery of Benedictines Stands Commands the Works on the Island. Over the S end of the City stands the Castle of St. Sebastian; it is Seated upon a Hill, and Commands the whole Town; and this is all I know of it, only that it is not counted a place of any great Strength. For the Defence of these Forts and the Town the King of Portugal Maintains 7 Regiments of Regular Troops. Those I saw were well clothed and in good Condition; but this, as I was told, was not the Case with the whole. Besides these Troops are 3 Regiments of militia, 2 of Horse and one of foot. These consist of the principal inhabitants of the place, who serve without pay, Muster and Exercise in turns nine Months in the year, on which account they rank with the Regular Troops.

The City of Rio de Janeiro is in the Lat of 22° 50' S and Lon 42° 15' W from Greenwich. According to Observations made at Sea it is Seated on a plain close to the Shore on the W side of the Bay, at the foot of Several high Mountains. It is neither ill designed nor ill built. The Houses are mostly stone, generally one and two Storys high, with Balconys to most of them. The Streets are of a Convenient breadth, and Cross each other at right Angles, and the whole City may be about 3 mi in Compass. It is Govern'd by a Governor appointed by the King. The present Governor is Don Anto Mendoyaz Fastada, who is no Friend to the English. It likewise is the Residence of the Vice-Roy and Captain General of the States of Brazil, who is as absolute as any Monarch on Earth, and the people to all appearance as much Slaves. This City and Adjacent parts about the Bay are said to contain 100,000 Souls; but not above a twentieth part are Whites. The rest are blacks, many of whom are free, and seem to live in tolerable Circumstances.

The city of Rio de Janeiro is supplied with Water from 2 Different parts of the Adjacent Mountains. That which comes from the Southward is Convey'd a Cross a Deep Valley by an Acquiduct, which Consists of a great Number of Arches placed in 2 Rows, one upon the other; from thence in pipes to a fountain which stands in the middle of the Square before the Vice-Roy's Palace. At another part of the City is a Reservoir, to which the water is conveyed much in the same manner. From these 2 places, but mostly from the former, the inhabitants fetch all they want, where there is always a Centinel to keep order: and it is likewise here that the Ships Water. They land their Casks upon a Smooth sandy beach about 100 yards from the Fountain, and upon application to the Vice-Roy you have a Centinel to look after them and to clear the way for to come to the fountain to fill water. Upon the whole, Rio de Janeiro is not a bad place for Ships to put in at that want refreshments, not only because the Harbour is safe and Commodious, but that Provision and all manner of Refreshments may be had in tolerable plenty. Bread and Flour are, however, Scarce and Dear, being brought hither from Europe, and are never the better for that Passage. In lieu of these are to be had Yams and Casada. All sorts of Grain-though it may be the produce of this Country-is Dear. Fresh Beef (tho' bad) is to be had in plenty at about 2 1/4 pence per pound, and Jurked Beef about the same price. This is cured with Salt, and dryd in the shade, the bones being taken out, and the Meat cut into

large but very thin slices. It eats very well, and if kept in a dry place will remain good a long time at Sea. Rum, Sugar, and Molasses are all good and Cheap. Tobacco is Cheap, but not good. Mutton they have very little. Hogs and all sorts of Poultry are to be got, tho' in no great plenty, and of Course rather dear. Garden Stuff and Fruit in plenty, but none that will keep long at Sea except Pumpkins.

They have a Yard for building Shipping and a small Hulk for heaving down by, there being no other method to come at a Ship's bottom, as the Tides doth not rise above 6 or 7 feet. At the New and full Moon it is high Water at that time about 8 o'clock, when the Land and Sea breezes are regular, but when they are not the Course of Tides are alter'd. The Sea breeze begins to blow about 10 or 12 o'clock, and continues until sunset, when it dies away and is succeeded by the land breeze, which continues most part of the night. From a little after sunrise until the Sea breeze sets in it is generally Calm, and is then the Hottest and most Disagreeable part of the whole day.

## **Chapter 2: Rio Janeiro to Tahiti**

Thursday, December 8th 1768 Fore and middle parts Moderate breezes and Cloudy; remainder, little wind and Clear weather. At 3pm the Boat returned from the Island; hoisted her in and made Sail at 6. The Sugar Loaf at the W Entrance of Rio de Janeiro bore N 1/2 E, distance 7 lg; it lies from the City of Rio de Janeiro, from which I take my Departure, S-W 4 mi. Wind E-N-E, N-E, N by E; course S 7° 30' W; distance 85 mi; Lat 24° 17' S, Lon 42° 29' W.

Friday, December 9th 1768 Genteel light breezes and Clear weather. At 3am the Fore top-gallant Mast broke short by the Cap; the Carpenter employed making another. Wind N, N-E, S-S-W; course S 22° E; distance 32 mi; Lat 24° 46' S, Lon 42° 16' W.

Saturday, December 10th 1768 Moderate breezes with some flying showers of Rain the first part. Wind S; course, S-E 1/2 E; distance 75 mi; Lat 25° 34' S, Lon 41° 12' W.

Sunday, December 11th 1768 Little wind and Clear weather the Most part of this day. Serv'd Slops to the People. Wind S; course S 20° E; distance 9 mi; Lat 25° 43' S, Lon 41° 8' W.

Monday, December 12th 1768 First part, light Airs; remainder, Genteel breezes and Clear weather. Found the variation of the Compass by the Evening Amplitude and an Azimuth in the Morning to be 8° 30' E, and the Observed Lat at Noon to be short of that given by the Log 10 mi. Exercised the People at Great Guns and Small Arms. Wind variable; course S-S-W; distance 34 mi; Lat 26° 14' S, Lon 41° 23' W.

Tuesday, December 13th 1768 First part Gentle breezes and Clear, remainder a Steady Gale. The weather a little hazey. Variation 8° 23' E. Wind N-E and N-N-E; course S 19° 40' W; distance 113 mi; Lat 28° 0' S, Lon 42° 6' W.

Wednesday, December 14th 1768 First and latter parts, fresh breezes and Cloudy; middle, little wind, with Thunder, Lightning and Rain. The Caulkers employed Caulking the Ship's Decks. Wind, N-W, W, S by W; course S 16° E; distance 87 mi; Lat 29° 24' S, Lon 41° 55' W.

Thursday, December 15th 1768 The first part a fresh Gale and dark Cloudy weather; Remainder, little wind and clear; a large swell from S-W. Wind S-W by S, S, E-S-E; course S 14° 15' E; distance 45 mi; Lat 30° 8' S, Lon 41° 39' W.

Friday, December 16th 1768 Genteel breezes and Clear weather. Variation 9° 36' E. Wind E-N-E, N-W, N-E; course S 32° W: distance 86 mi; Lat 31° 21' S, Lon 42° 32' W.

Saturday, December 17th 1768 Hazy with frequent Showers of Rain all the Fore and middle part; latter, Clear weather with a Gentle breeze of wind. Wind, variable from N-W, S-W, to S-S-E; course S 14° W; distance 56 mi; Lat 32° 15' S, Lon 42° 48' W.

Sunday, December 18th 1768 First part, light winds; remainder, fresh breezes and Clear weather. Variation 11° 3' E. Wind, S-E to N-E; course S 51 W; distance 43 mi; Lat 32° 42' S, Lon 43° 27' W.

Monday, December 19th 1768 A steady fresh breeze and fair weather. At half-past 5pm Lon in per Observation of the sun and moon 43° 38' W from Greenwich. Variation 11° 3' E. The Observed Lat exceeds that given by the Log 7 mi. Wind N; course S-W; distance 116 mi; Lat 34° 4' S, Lon 45° 6' W.

Tuesday, December 20th 1768 A fresh breeze of Wind and hazy. Variation 13° 44' E. Observed Lat exceeds that given by the Log 11 mi. Wind N; course S-W 1/4 S; distance 160 mi; Lat 36° 2' S, Lon 47° 14' W.

Wednesday, December 21st 1768 Wind and weather Variable. Saw several black sheer Waters. Sounded twice this 24 Hours but found no ground with 90 fm. The Observed Lat again ahead of the Log 16 mi. Wind variable; course S 42° 45' W; distance 90 mi; Lat 37° 8' S, Lon 48° 30' W.

Thursday, December 22nd 1768 Little wind the most part of this day. Variation 15° 30' E. Bent a New Suit of Sails. Wind S; course W; distance 40 mi; Lat 37° 8' S, Lon 49° 1 minute W.

Friday, December 23rd 1768 Light Airs and Clear weather. Saw some Turtle upon the Water but could not catch any. Sounded no ground with 200 fm. Variation 15° 40' E. Wind S; course N 48° W; distance 33 mi; Lat 36° 46' S, Lon 49° 32' W.

Saturday, December 24th 1768 First part Calm; remainder a Genteel breeze and fine Clear weather. This night had 2 Sets of Observations of the Moon and the Star Aldebaran, which gave the Lon 49° 54' 15 seconds W; the first sett gave 49° 55' 15 seconds, and the Second 49° 53' 15 seconds. Wind calm, N-E; course S 50° W; distance 39 mi; Lat 37° 11' S, Lon 50° 32' W.

Sunday, December 25th 1768 Fresh breezes and fine Clear weather. Wind N-E by N to N; course S 50° W; distance 116 mi; Lat 38° 37' S, Lon 52° 5' W.

Monday, December 26th 1768 A Fresh breeze of Wind and Cloudy weather; passed by some Rock Weed. At noon the Observed Lat 26 mi to the Southward of the Log, which I believe is chiefly owing to her being Generally steer'd to the Southward of her Course. Yesterday being

Christmas Day the people were none of the Soberest. Wind N; course S-W; distance 158 mi; Lat 40° 19' S, Lon 54° 30' W.

Tuesday, December 27th 1768 Fresh breezes and Hazy with Squalls which Obliged us during the Night to take in the small Sails and 2 reefs in the Topsails which were let out in the Morning. Wind N; course S 50° W; distance 123 mi; Lat 41° 38' S, Lon 56° 15' W.

Wednesday, December 28th 1768 First part Strong Gales and Cloudy, which Obliged us to get down Top-Gallant Yards. At 8pm it blew a Storm of Wind with Rain which brought us under our Mainsail with her Head to the Westward. Soundings 50 fm, fine brown Sand; at midnight had 40 fm, the same bottom. At 4am had 46 fm Coral Rock. The weather being more Moderate, made Sail under the Courses and Set the Topsails with 2 Reefs in. Wind S-E to S; Lat 40° 49' S, Lon 58° 29' W.

Thursday, December 29th 1768 First part moderate breezes and Cloudy; remainder fresh breezes and Clear. pm loosed all the Reefs out, and got Topgallant Yards a Cross. Variation per Azimuth 16° 12', per Amplitude 16° 32'; Mean of the Two 16° 22' E. Between 9 and 10am took 7 sets of Observations between the sun and moon to find the Lon of the Ship. Each set Consists of three Observations; the Mean of the whole gave 59° 18' 34 seconds W of Greenwich. The result of each set was as follows: viz., 1st set, 59° 8'; Second, 59° 21'; Third, 59° 34'; Fourth, 59° 17'; Fifth, 59° 11' 45 seconds; Sixth, 59° 19' 30 seconds; and the Seventh, 59° 20' 45 seconds. The greatest difference between any two-viz., the first and third-is but 26', and the mean of these two differ from the mean of the whole only 2' 26 seconds. This shews to what degree of accuracy these observations can be made even by Different Persons, for four of these were made and computed by Mr. Green and the rest by myself. The Lon given by the Ship, reckoning from the last Observation 5 Days ago, differs only 8 mi from the Observation, which shews that we have not been in any Currents. Soundings from 40 to 47. Wind N-E; course S 46° 30' W; distance 81 mi; Lat 41° 45' S, Lon 59° 37' W.

Friday, December 30th 1768 Little wind, and sometimes Calm; the first part Clear weather, remainder Foggy and Hazy. Soundings from 44 to 49 fm; Grey sandy Bottom. Caught both this Morning and last Night a great Number of insects. Some were upon the Wing, but the greater part were upon the water, and many of these alive and of such sort as cannot fly far; and yet at this Time we could not be less than 30 lg from Land. Wind variable; course S 30° W; distance 54 mi; Lat 42° 32' S, Lon 60° 15' W.

Saturday, December 31st 1768 Cloudy weather, with some Lightning and a few showers of rain. Variation 18° 36' E. Soundings from 46 to 50 fm; fine dark sand. Wind S-E; course S 18° W; distance 43 mi; Lat 43° 14' S, Lon 60° 26' W.

Sunday, January 1st, 1769 First and Latter part, fresh breezes and Clear weather; in the middle, light Airs and Calm. At Noon, Lon in per 4 Sets of Observations between the sun and moon 61° 8' 28 seconds W. The Difference between the IE and Greatest of these sets was 8', and the mean of 2 differs from the Mean of the whole but 32 seconds. The Lon by account carried on from the last Observations exactly agree with these Observations. Saw a great number of small Whales about the Ship. Wind S to W-S-W; course S 36° W; distance 39 mi; Lat 43° 35' S; Lon 61° 8' 28 seconds W.

Monday, January 2nd 1769 The first part of this day a Genteel gale and Clear weather; middle, Squally, with Lightning and rain, and some showers of Large Hail Stones; towards Noon a Steady fresh breeze and Clear weather. At noon Lon in by 3 sets of Observations between the sun and moon  $61^{\circ} 7' 45$  seconds, which is 43 seconds to the Eastward of yesterday's Observations. The Ship by the Log has made 4' E. Wind W; course S  $2^{\circ}$  E; distance 92 mi; Lat  $45^{\circ} 17' S$ , Lon  $61^{\circ} 7' 45$  seconds W.

Tuesday, January 3rd 1769 Fresh gales and clear weather; under Single Reef Topsails. pm Saw some Whales and Porpoises and small red Crawfish, some of which we Caught. At Noon saw several Birds of a light Grey Colour, like Pidgeons, but smaller; these are of the Mother Carey's kind. Lon per Observation  $61^{\circ} 29' 45$  seconds, which is 22' to the Westward of Yesterday, but the ship hath made 41', Consequently there is an Error of 19', which is not to be supposed to be in the Log in one Day's run; but, be it which way it will, it is not great. Wind W, S; course S  $11^{\circ}$ ; distance 122 mi; Lat  $47^{\circ} 17' S$ , Lon  $61^{\circ} 29' 45$  seconds W.

Wednesday, January 4th 1769 First part, genteel breeze and Clear; latter, fresh gales, with heavy squalls of wind and rain, which brought us under our courses and main topsails close reefed. Soon after noon saw the appearance of Land to the Eastward, and being in the Lat of Peypes Island, as it is lay'd down in some Charts, imagined it might be it. Bore down to be Certain, and at 1/2 past 2pm discovered our mistake, and hauld the Wind again. At 6 sounded, and had 72 fm black sand and mud. Variation  $19^{\circ} 45'$  E. Wind W-N-W to S-W by S; course S  $30^{\circ}$  E; distance 76 mi; Lat  $48^{\circ} 28' S$ , Lon  $60^{\circ} 51' W$ .

Thursday, January 5th 1769 Fore part, fresh Gales and Clear; middle, light Airs; remainder, fresh Gales and a little hazey. pm found the Variation to be  $20^{\circ} 4'$  E; Soundings 75 and 73 fm. A great Number of Water Fowl about the Ship. Wind S-W, N-E, N-N-E; course S  $28^{\circ}$  W; distance 92 mi; Lat  $49^{\circ} 49' S$ , Lon  $61^{\circ} 67' W$ .

Friday, January 6th 1769 Fresh gales, the Air very Sharp and Cold; frequent showers of rain and Squalls. Soundings 75 fm. Saw some Penguins. Gave to each of the People a Fearnought Jacket and a pair of Trowsers, after which I never heard one Man Complain of Cold, not but that the weather was cold enough. Wind W, S; course S  $8^{\circ} 45'$  W; distance 92 mi; Lat  $51^{\circ} 20' S$ , Lon  $62^{\circ} 19' W$ .

Saturday, January 7th 1769 First part, Strong Gales, with excessive hard Squalls, with rain. At 9pm wore and brought too, her head to the Westward under the Mainsail, and Reef'd the Foresail for the first time. The Storm continued with a little intermission until a little towards Noon, when it abated, so we could set the Topsails close Reefed. Saw many Penguins and some Seals. Wind S: course S  $62^{\circ}$  E; distance 14 mi; Lat  $51^{\circ} 26' S$ , Lon  $61^{\circ} 59' W$ .

Sunday, January 8th 1769 Wind and weather both Variable, but for the most part little wind. pm loosed the Reef out of the Foresail and 2 Reefs out of Each Topsail. am got Top gallant Yards aCross and loosed all the Reefs out. Soundings from 80 to 75 fm. Wind S, S-W, W, N-W; course N  $72^{\circ}$  W; distance 33 mi; Lat  $51^{\circ} 16' S$ ; Lon  $62^{\circ} 50' W$ .

Monday, January 9th 1769 First and Latter parts, a moderate breeze and Clear weather; middle, squally with rain. pm found the Variation by several azimuths to be  $22^{\circ} 24'$  E. Saw a great Number of Penguins and Seals.



Tuesday, January 10th 1769 Moderate breezes and fine clear weather. At 2pm Sounded 86 fm; black sand and Small stones. Variation  $21^{\circ} 57'$  E. At 1/2 past 10 Tack't having Stood S 12 lg. After standing to the Westward 14 mi, sounded, and had 80 fm black grey sand; 3 lg farther 76, coarse black sand; Tack'd, and at noon had 70 fm black gravel and Small Stones of different Colours. Saw several flights of black Sheerwaters. Wind W-S-W, S-W; course S  $18^{\circ}$  W; distance 38 mi; Lat  $52^{\circ} 54'$  S, Lon  $63^{\circ} 10'$  W.

Wednesday, January 11th 1769 A Steady Genteel breeze and clear weather. pm after standing 13 lg S-S-W Sounded 64 fm Gravel and small Stones; Standing S-W by S 11 lg farther, had 46 fm, the same sort of bottom. At 8am saw the land of Terra del Fuego, extending from the W to the S-E by S, distance off shore between 3 and 4 lg; sounded and had 35 fm small, soft, Slate Stones. Variation  $23^{\circ} 30'$  E. In ranging along shore to the S-E at the distance of 2 or 3 lg, had 27 and 26 fm muddy bottom. Saw some of the natives, who made a Smook in several places, which must have been done as a Signal to us as they did not continue it after we passed. By our Lon we ought not to have been so far to the Westward as Statenland, as it is laid down in the Charts; but it appeared from Subsequent Observations that the Ship had got near a Degree of Lon to the Westward of the Log, which is 35 mi in these Lats. Probably this in part may be owing to a Small Current setting to the Westward, occasioned by the W Current which comes round Cape Horn and through Strait La Maire, and the inDraught of the Streights of Magellan. Wind W; course S  $30^{\circ}$  W; distance, 100 mi; Lat  $54^{\circ} 20'$  S, Lon  $64^{\circ} 35'$  W per log.

Thursday, January 12th 1769 First part, moderate breezes and Cloudy; remainder sometimes a fresh breeze, sometimes Calm, Hazy weather with rain. At 5 the wind coming to the Northward obliged us to Tack and Stood N-Westward, being then about 5 mi from the Shore, and had 23 fm, sandy Bottom. At midnight Tack't and Stood to the Eastward. At Noon the Land over the Entrance of Straits La Maire, E-N-E, distance, 7 lg; Soundings from 28 to 38 fm. Wind N, N-N-E, variable, W-S-W; Lat  $54^{\circ} 34'$  S per observation.

Friday, January 13th 1769 The greatest part of this day little wind and Cloudy. At 8pm, Cape St. Diego, at the W entrance of Straits La Maire, E, distance about 5 lg. Kept under an easy Sail until daylight, at which time we were abtE of Cape St. Diego, and then put into the Straits, but the Tide soon turned against us and obliged us to haul under the Cape again and wait until 9am when it shifted in our favour. Put into the Straits again with a Moderate breeze at S-W, which soon grew Boisterous with very heavy Squalls, with rain and hail, and obliged us to Close reef our Topsails. Wind N-E by E, W-S-W, S-W; Lat  $54^{\circ} 39'$  S; at noon, Cape St. Diego N 2 lg.

Saturday, January 14th 1769 First part Strong Gales, and very heavy squalls with Hail and Rain; remainder more moderate but unsettled, sometimes a fresh breeze and Squally, and sometimes little wind. Kept plying in the Straits until 1/2 past 4pm, at which time the Tide had made strong against us, and the wind not abating, bore away, intending to have hauled under Cape St. Diego, but was prevented by the force of the Tide, which carried us past that Cape with surprising rapidity, at the same time caused a very great sea. At 6, the weather being Clear, took 9, or 3 sets of, Observations of the sun and moon in order to find the Lon of the place, and as they perhaps are the first Observations of this kind that were ever made so near to the Extremity of South America, I have inserted them below just as they were taken, that everybody may judge for themselves.

N.B. The mean of the three sets is  $66^{\circ} 9' 25$  seconds, and the mean of Mr. Green's Computations from the same Observations was  $66^{\circ} 14' 0$  seconds, and the mean of his computations and mine will be  $66^{\circ} 11' 32$  seconds, and therefore the Lon of Cape St. Diego or the N-W entrance of Strait Le Maire will be  $66^{\circ} 0' 0$  seconds W from Greenwich, and its Lat  $54^{\circ} 39' S$ .

Note: The distance of the sun and moon was taken by Mr. Green alone, my Quadrant being out of Order.

Cape St. Diego bore at this time S by E about 4 lg Distant. At 1/2 past 7 Tackt and Stood to the S-E, Cape St. Diego bearing S by E, distance 5 lg. At 1am, Squally, wore Ship, Staten Land extending from N to E. At 4, Moderate Weather, loosed a Reef out of each Topsail, the Cape of Good Success W by S, and Cape St. Diego N-N-W, being now in the Strait, but the Tide turning against us soon carried us out. The Violence of the Tide of Ebb rose such a Sea off Cape St. Diego, that it looked as if it was breaking Violently on the ledge of Rocks, and would be taken for such by any who know'd not the true cause. When the Ship was in this Torrent she frequently Pitched her Bowsprit in the Water. By Noon we got under the Land between Cape St. Diego and Cape St. Vincent, where I thought to have Anchored, but found the Bottom every where hard and Rocky; the Depth of Water from 30 to 12 fm. Sent the Master to Examine a small Cove which appeared to our View a little to the Eastward of Cape St. Vincent. Wind S-S-W and S-W by S.

Sunday, January 15th 1769 Moderate breezes at S and S-E, and cloudy weather, the greater part of this day. At 2pm the Master return'd with an account that there was Anchorage in 4 fm Water and a good bottom close to the Eastward of the first black bluff point which is on the E side of Cape St. Vincent, at the very Entrance of the Cove we saw from the Ship (which I named Vincent Bay). Before this Anchoring ground lay several Rocky Ledges covered with Sea Weed: on these Ledges I was informed was not less than 8 or 9 fm, but in standing in with the Ship the first we came upon had only 4 fm upon it. I therefore thought that Anchoring here would be attended with some Risk, and that it would be better to Endeavour to find some Port in the Strait, and there Compleat our Wood and Water. However, I sent an Officer with a Boat on shore to attend to Mr. Banks and people who was very desirous of being on shore at any rate, while I kept plying as near the shore as possible with the Ship. At 9 they return'd on board bringing with them several Plants, Flowers, etc., most of them unknown in Europe, and in that Alone consisted their whole Value; they saw none of the Natives, but meet with several of their old Hutts. Hoisted the Boat in and made Sail into the Straits and at 3am Anchord in 12 1/2 fm Water (the bottom Coral rocks) before a small Cove which we took for Port Maurice, and near 1/2 a mile from the shore Cape St. Diego S-S-W, and Cape St. Bartholomew (which is the S point of Staten Land) E-S-E.

Port Maurice appeared to afford so little Shelter for Shipping that I did not think it worth while to hoist a Boat out to Examine it; we saw here 2 of the Natives come down to the Shore, who stay'd sometime, then retir'd into the Woods againe. At 10 o'Clock got under Sail, Wind at S-E, and plyed to Windward.

Monday, January 16th 1769 A Fresh breeze of Wind at S and S-W, with frequent showers of Rain and Snow. At 2pm Anchored in the Bay of Success in 9 fm, the bottom Owse and sand. The S point of the Bay bore S-E and the N point E-N-E. This Bay I shall describe when I come

to speake of the rest of the Coast. Hoisted out the Boats and moor'd with the Stream Anchor. While this was doing I went ashore accompanied by Mr. Banks and

Dr. Solander to look for a Watering place and to speak with the Natives, who were assembled on the Beach at the Head of the Bay to the Number of 30 or 40. They were so far from being afraid or surprised at our coming amongst them that three of them came on board without the IE hesitation. They are something above the middle size, of a Dark Copper Colour with long black hair; they paint their Bodies in Streakes, mostly Red and Black. Their Cloathing consists wholly in a Guanacoe Skin or that of a Seal, in the same form as it came from the Animal's back.

The Women Wear a Piece of Skin over their Privy Parts, but the Men observe no such decency. Their Hutts are made like a behive, and open on one side where they have their fires; they are made of small Sticks and covered with branches of trees, long Grass, etc., in such a manner that they are neither Proof against Wind, Hail, rain or Snow, a sufficient proof that these People must be a very hardy race. They live chiefly on shell fish, such as Muscels, which they gather from off the Rocks along the Sea Shore, and this seems to be the Work of the Women. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows neatly made; their Arrows are bearded, some with glass and others with fine flint; several Pieces of the former we saw amongst them with other European things, such as rings, Buttons, Cloth, Canvas, etc., which I think proves that they must sometimes travel to the Northward, as we know of no Ship that hath been in these parts for many Years; besides, they were not at all surprised at our Fire Arms; on the Contrary, they seemed to know the use of them, by making signs to us to fire at Seals or Birds that might come in the way. They have no Boats that we saw or anything to go upon the Water with; their number doth not Exceed 50 or 60 young and old, and there are fewer Women than Men. They are Extreemly fond of any Red thing, and seemed to set more Value on Beads than anything we could give them; in this Consists their whole Pride, few, either Men or Women, are without a Necklace or String of Beads made of Small Shells or bones about their Necks. They would not taste any strong Liquor, neither did they seem fond of our Provisions. We could not discover that they had any Head or Chief or Form of Government, neither have they any useful or necessary Utensil except it be a Bag or Basket to gather their Muscels into. In a word they are perhaps as miserable a sett of People as are this day upon Earth. Having found a convenient place on the S side of the Bay to Wood and Water at, we set about that Work in the Morning, and Mr. Banks with a Party went into the Country to gather Plants, etc.

Tuesday, January 17th 1769 Fresh Gales at S-S-W and W-S-W with rain and Snow, and, of Course, very cold weather; notwithstanding we kept geting on board Wood and Water, and finished the Survey of the Bay. Mr. Banks and his Party not returning this Evening as I expected, gave me great uneasiness, as they were not prepared for Staying out the Night. However, about Noon they returned in no very Comfortable Condition, and what was still worse 2 blacks, servants to Mr. Banks, had perished in the Night with Cold. Great part of the day they landed was spent before they got through the Woods, after which they advanced so far into the Country that they were so far from being able to return that night, and with much difficulty they got to a place of Tolerable Shelter where they could make a fire: these 2 men being Intrusted with great part of the Liquor (that was for the whole party) had made too free with it, and Stupified themselves to that degree that they either could or would not Travel, but laid themselves down in a place where there was not the IE thing to Shelter them from the inclemency of the night. This was about 1/4 of a mile from where the rest took up their Quarters, and notwithstanding their repeated Endeavours, they could not get them to move

one Step farther, and the bad travelling made it impossible for any one to Carry them, so that they were Obligated to leave them, and the next morning they were both found dead.

Wednesday, January 18th 1769 All the middle and Latter parts of this day it blow'd very strong from the S-S-W and S-W, attended with Snow, Hail and Rain, and brought such a Sea into the Bay, which rose the Surf to such a Height that no Boat could land. The same Stormy weather and Surf continued all day.

Thursday, January 19th 1769 All this time the Ship road very easy with her Broad side to the swell. The great Surf that always will be upon the Shore when the wind blows hard from the Southward makes Wooding and Watering tedious, notwithstanding there are great plenty of both close to high water Mark.

Friday, January 20th 1769 Moderate gales and Cloudy with frequent Showers of rain all this day. This Evening the Surf abated, and at 2am sent the People on shore to Wood and Water and cut Brooms, all of which we Completed this day. In this Service we lost our small Kedge Anchor, it having been laid off the Watering Place to ride the Long-boat by, and the Gale had broke away the Hawser and Buoy rope, and perhaps buried the Anchor in the Sand, for notwithstanding our utmost Endeavours we were not able to Hook it. Took up the Stream Anchor and made ready for Sailing.

Saturday, January 21st 1769 Wind from S-S-W to S-W; moderate breezes the first part; latter, fresh Gales with Showers of Rain. pm hoisted in the Boats, and made ready for Sailing; at 2am weighed and made Sail out of the Bay. At 1/2 past 4 the Cape of good Success bore W, and Cape Bartholomew E. Variation per Azimuth,  $24^{\circ} 9'$  E; at Noon the Cape of good Success bore N  $36^{\circ}$  W; distance, 11 lg.

Sunday, January 22nd 1769 Wind between the S and the W first and Latter part, fresh Gales and Squally, with rain; the middle, little wind and rain. am found the Variation by several Azimuths to be  $20^{\circ} 4'$  E. Unbent the Cables and Stowed the Anchors. At Noon, Lat observed  $56^{\circ} 7'$  S, Lon, made from the Cape of Good Success,  $42'$  E.

Monday, January 23rd 1769 Winds variable from S-E round by the S-W to N-W. First part, a fresh breeze and Squally, the remainder moderate breezes and sometimes Calm and clear weather, which is more than we have had for several days past. At 4am saw the Land in the S-W Quarter, and a small Island bearing W; from this Time until 9 it was Calm, at which time the Ship drove very fast to the N-E by N. At 9 Sprung up a light breeze at N, loos'd all the Reefs out, and set the Steering sails. The Cape of good Success bore N-E by N; Staten land seen from the Deck bearing N-E; the Sugar Loaf on Terra Del Fuego N-N-E, and is the same Hill as is seen from the N-E side of the Land; it appears to stand but a little way in Land from the Shore; and the Mainland and Islands on the Coast extending from the Cape of good Success to the S by W. The Country Mountainous, of an indifferent height; the Tops were covered with Snow, which had lately fell, as it did not lay long. There appeared to be several Bays and inlets and Islands laying along the Coast; the 3rd view in the Chart exhibits the appearance of this Coast where g is new Island, c the Sugar Loaf, and h the Cape of good Success. At noon the W End of New Island bore N-W by W, 5 lg. Lat observed  $55^{\circ} 25'$  S, this Island I named New Island because it is not laid down in any Chart.

Tuesday, January 24th 1769 The fore and middle parts of these 24 Hours Moderate Gales and Cloudy with some Showers of Rain; the Latter, fresh gales with flying Showers. At 7pm New Island bore N-W by N, and a small Island laying to the Westward of it bore W by N. Variation per Several Azimuths  $21^{\circ} 0' E$ , which is much less than we have yet found it upon this Coast; yet I am satisfied with the Goodness of the Observations. At 1/2 past 1am the Wind Shifted from S-S-W to E-S-E. Tackt and stood S-W; at 6 Saw the Land to the Westward making like several Islands. At 8 two Small Islands laying off a low Point of Land bore W by S, distant 3 lg, and the small Island we saw last night bore N-N-W. This I take to be the Island of Evouts, it is about one League in Circuit, and of a Moderate height and lies 4 lg from the Main. Near the S Point of it are some Peaked rocks pretty high above Water; the wind coming to the Southward we did but just weather this Island; in passing it, sounded and had 40 fm Water, sand, and broken Shells. At Noon it bore N-E distance one League, and the low point of land before mentioned S  $17^{\circ} W$  distant 4 or 5 lg. Tackt and Stood to the S-E, wind at S-S-W. From this low Point the land trends to the N-W, about 4 lg, where it ends in a low point round which to the Westward appears to be a Deep Bay, unless this land should prove to be an Island or Islands, which is most likely. It rises into high Craggy hills, and the Shore seems to form several Bays; if so, they must afford good Shelter for Shipping against S and W winds.

Wednesday, January 25th 1769 Winds from the S to the W-N-W, the first part fresh Gales and Squally with some Rain; middle, little wind with Hail and Rain; latter, fresh Gales and Hazy, with Showers of Rain. At 8pm the Island of Evouts N-W, distant 3 or 4 mi. Variation, per morning Amplitude  $21^{\circ} 16' E$ . At 8am the Sermost low point of land seen Yesterday Bore S  $74^{\circ} W$ , and a remarkable Peaked Hill to the Southward of it S-W; and soon after we discovered that the land which we took Yesterday to be a part of the Main or an Island, was three Islands, which I take to be Hermites. At Noon the S Point of the Sermost Island bore N-W by W distant 3 lg, having then 58 fm Peble Stones. This Point is pretty high and consists of Peaked Craggy rocks, and not far from it lay several others high above Water. It lies in the Lat of  $55^{\circ} 53' S$  and S-W 26 lg from Straits La Mair, and by some on board thought to be Cape Horn; but I was of another Opinion, and with good reason, because we saw land to the Southward of it about 3 or 4 lg. It appeared not unlike an Island with a very high round Hummock upon it; this I believe to be Cape Horn, for after we had stood about 3 lg the weather cleared up for about a quarter of an hour, which gave us a sight of the land bearing W-S-W, but we could see no land to the Southward or Westward of it, and therefore conclude that it must be the Cape, but whether it be an Island of itself, a part of the Sermost of Hermits Islands, or a part of Terra del Fuego, I am not able to determine. However, this is of very little Consequence to Navigation: I only wished to be Certain whether or no it was the Sermost Land on or near to Terra del Fuego; but the thick foggy weather and the W winds which Carried us from the land prevented me from satisfying my Curiosity in this point, but from its Lat and the reasons before given I think it must, and if so it must be Cape Horn, and lies in the Lat of  $55^{\circ} 53' S$  and Lon  $68^{\circ} 13' W$  from the Meridian of Greenwich, being the Mean result of Several Observations of the sun and moon made the day after we left the land, and which agreed with those made at Straits Le Mair, allowing for the distance between one place and the other, which I found means very accurately to determine. As we are now about taking our departure from the Land, which we are not likely to fall in with again, I shall give a more full Description of such parts of the Coasts of Terra del Fuego as hath fallen under my inspection.

We fell in with this Coast 21 lg to the Westward of Straits Le Mair, and ranged the coast from thence to the Strait within 2 or 3 lg of the Land, and had soundings all the way from 40 to 20 fm, a Gravelly and Sandy Bottom. The land near the Shore is in general low but hilly, the face

of the Country appears Green and Woody, but in land are Craggy Mountains; they appeared to be of no great height, nor were they Covered with Snow. The most remarkable land on Terra Del Fuego is a high Mountain in form of a Sugar Loaf, situated not far from the sea on the S-W side of the Land, and 3 hills called the 3 Brothers. They lay near the Shore and nine mi to the Westward of Cape St. Diego, which is a low point that forms the N-W Entrance of Strait Le Mair, and are Contiguous to Each other. The Sugar Loaf lies from these Hills S-S-W, and when it was in this situation the Appearances of the Land is represented in the first View in the Chart, but it must be observed that from this point of View the Three Brothers appear far more Conspicuous than from any other; these land Marks are by some Voyagers thought very necessary to know Strait Le Mair by, but whoever coasts Terra Del Fuego within sight of land cannot possibly miss the Strait, it being of itself so very Conspicuous; and Staten Land, which forms the E side, is still more so from its very rugged appearance. One League and a half to the Westward of Cape St. Diego lies Cape St. Vincent, between these two Capes lies Vincent's Bay, a Small Cove wherein is Wood and Water, and before which a Ship might Anchor with a S or S-W wind, but the ground is none of the best, unless you go into the very Mouth of the Cove, which is on the E side of the first Bluff point from Cape St. Vincent, where there is Anchorage in 4 fm, a Sandy Bottom. In going in keep clear of the Sea Weed, and send a Boat Ahead to sound, and at best this is but a bad place for Shipping, and only recommended to such as are in want of Wood and Water, and have no Opportunity to put into the Strait, which in Prudence ought not to be attempted but with a fair wind or Moderate weather, and upon the very first of the Tide of Flood, which hapens here at the full and Change of the Moon about 1 or 2 o'clock, and then to keep as near to Terra Del Fuego Shore as the winds will permit. By using these Precautions you will be sure of either getting quite through the Straits in one Tide or to the Southward of Success Bay; and it may be more Prudent to put in there should the wind be S, than to attempt to weather Staten Land with a Lee Wind and Current, for I believe this to be the Chief reason why Ships have run a Risk of being drove on that Island.

Strait Le Maire is formed on the W by part of Terra Del Fuego, and on the E by the W end of Staten Land or Island; its Length and Breadth is about 5 lg each; about the middle of the Strait is Success Bay, on Terra Del Fuego side, and about a 1/4 of a League more to the Northwards is Port Maurice, a little Cove, before which we Anchored in 12 fm.

The Bay of Success is discovered immediately upon entring the Strait from the Northward; there is likewise a good Land Mark near the S head to know it by, which is a Mark on the land like a lane or broad road leading up from the Sea into the Country; this Bay is 1/2 a League Wide at the Entrance, and lies in W 2 1/2 mi, and hath good Anchorage in every part of it, in 10, 8, and 7 fm clear ground, and affords plenty of exceeding good Wood and Water. The Wood is of the Birch kind, but of a diffrent Quality to that in England or N America; here are likewise of the Winter Bark tree and some few others, Wild Selary, some Berrys like Cranberrys, but growing on Bushes, very few Wild Fowls of any Sort, and no Fish Except Shell Fish, such as Muscels, Limpets, etc.; and what we saw of the interior parts of the Country is still more barren of the necessaries of Life than the Sea. The few days we stay'd here we had constant bad weather, the Winds from the S-W and W-S-W with rain, Hail and Snow. Snow generally fell on the Hills everywhere with these winds when we had rain in the Bay or upon the Sea Coast. I observed the same in respect to Staten Land, but as it never froze it did not lay long; yet it must render the Country Cold and barren, and unfit for Cultivation. The Tides in Success Bay flows at the full and Change of the Moon, about 4 or 5 o'Clock, and riseth between 5 and 6 feet Perpendicular, but in the Strait the flood runs 2 or 3 Hours longer, and there the Ebb or S Current runs near Double the strength of the Flood or N Current.

Staten Island lies nearest E and W, and from what I could see and judge of it may be about 12 lg in length and 5 in breadth. On the N side are the appearances of Bays or Harbours, and the land is not destitute of Wood and Verdure, nor covered with Snow any more than Terra del Fuego.

On the S-W side of the Cape of good Success (which forms the S-W entrance of Strait Le Mair, and is known by some rocks off it) lies Valentine's Bay, the entrance of which we only saw. From this Bay the land Trends to the W-S-W; for 20 or 30 lg it appears High and Mountainous, and forms several Bays and inlets S-W 1/2 S 14 lg from the Cape of good Success, and 2 or 3 lg from the Shore lies New Island; it is 2 lg in length, N-E and S-W, the N-E end is terminated by a remarkable Hillock. S-W 7 lg from New Island lies the Isle Evouts, and S, a little W from this island, lies Barnevelts, two small flat Islands close to each other; they are partly Environ'd with rocks of Different height above water, and lay S-W 24 lg from Strait le Mair. From Barnevelts Island to the S-E point of Hermites island is S-W by S, distance 3 lg. These Islands lay S-E and N-W, and are pretty high, and will, from most points of view, be taken for one Island or a part of the Main; from the S-E point of Hermites Isles to Cape Horn, the Course is S-W by S, distance 3 lg. The Appearance of this Cape and Hermites Islands is represented in the last View in the chart which I have drawn of this Coast from our first making the land unto Cape Horn, in which is included Strait Le Mair and part of Staten Land. In this chart I have laid down no land nor figured out any Shore, but what I saw myself and thus far the Chart may be depended upon. The Bays and inlets are left void, the openings of which we only see from the Ship. It cannot be doubted but what there is Anchorage, Wood and Water in those Bays, and it must have been in some of them that the Dutch Squadron commanded by Hermites put into in the year 1624. It was the Vice Admiral Chapenham, of this Squadron, who first discovered that the land of Cape Horn was consisted of a Number of Islands, but the account they have given of those parts is very short and imperfect, and that of Schouton and Le Maire still worse, that it is no wonder that the Charts hitherto published should be found incorrect, not only in laying down the Land, but in the Lat and Lon of the places they contain, but I can now venture to Assert that the Lon of few parts of the World are better Ascertained than that of Strait Le Maire and Cape Horn, being determined by several Observations of the Sun and moon made both by myself and Mr. Green, the Astronomer.

We found the Variation of the Compass on this Coast to be from 23 to 25° E, except near Barnevelts Islands and Cape Horn, where we found it less and unsettled; it is likely that it is here disturbed by the land, as the Dutch Squadron before mentioned found in this very place all their Compasses to differ from each other. The declination of the S point of the Dipping Needle when set up ashore in Success Bay was 68° 15' below the horizon. Between Strait Le Maire and Cape Horn we found a Current setting generally pretty strong to the N-E when we were in with the Shore, but when 15 or 20 lg off we were not sensible of any.

Thursday, January 26th 1769 Fresh Gales and thick Hazy weather, with small rain. At 2pm, the weather clearing up a little, saw Cape Horn bearing W-S-W, distance about 6 lg, and from which I take my departure. Its Lat and Lon have before been taken notice of. Wind S-W by W to W-N-W; course S 15° W; distance, 63 mi; Lat 56° 57' S; Lon 68° 13' W; at noon, Cape Horn N, 58 mi.

Friday, January 27th 1769 First part, moderate breezes and thick Hazy weather; the middle, fair and Cloudy; and the Latter, fresh Gales with some rain. At 8am took two Setts of

Observations of the sun and moon; the first gave  $68^{\circ} 15'$ ; the second,  $68^{\circ} 9'$ ; the Mean of the 2 is  $68^{\circ} 12'$  W. The Lon of the Ship at Noon by these Observations is  $68^{\circ} 42'$  less  $14'$ , the Lon made from Cape Horn, equal to  $68^{\circ} 28'$ , the Lon of Cape Horn according to the Observation. A Great many large Albetrosses about the Ship. Wind, S-W, W and N; course, S and W; distance, 32 mi; Lat  $57^{\circ} 2'$  S, Lon  $68^{\circ} 27'$  W.

Saturday, January 28th 1769 Fresh Gales the most part of this day; first and middle parts cloudy; latter, clear with a Sharp cold air. At 2pm saw the land, bearing N, distant about 8 lg; it made in 2 Hummocks, and appeared to be an Island, which I take to be the Isle of Diego Ramirez. It lays in the Lat of  $56^{\circ} 38'$  S and Lon  $68^{\circ} 47'$  W from Greenwich. Found the Variation this Evening to be  $22^{\circ}$  E. am had 3 sets of Observations of the sun and moon, which gave the Lon  $69^{\circ} 7'$  15 seconds W. The Lon of the Ship at Noon by the Observation is  $69^{\circ} 24'$ , from which take 1 degree  $48'$ , the Lon made from Cape Horn, the remainder is  $67^{\circ} 36'$ , the Lon of the Cape, which is  $52'$  less than the result of Yesterday's Observations. This difference may arise partly from the Observations and partly from the Ship's runs; the mean of the 2 gives  $68^{\circ} 2'$  and  $68^{\circ} 24'$ , the Lon of the Cape from the Observations taken at Strait Maire  $136^{\circ} 26'/2 = 68^{\circ} 13'$  W from Greenwich. The Lon of Cape Horn being deduced from no less than 24 Observations taken at no very great distance from the Cape, and on both sides of it, and when the Sun was both to the E and W of the Moon; for in this case the Errors arising from the Observations are most likely to Correct one another. Wind, N and W by N to N-W by W; course, S  $39^{\circ}$  W; distance, 80 mi; Lat  $58^{\circ} 4'$  S, Lon  $70^{\circ} 1$  minute W.

Sunday, January 29th 1769 First and Latter parts, fresh Gales and Squally, with flying Showers of rain and Hail; the middle, strong Gales with heavy Squalls and showers of rain. At 8pm took 2nd Reef Topsails, at 6am Close reefd the Foretopsails and took in the mizen Topsl, and at 10 set it again and let the reef out of the Fore top-sails. Wind, W N; course S-W; distance, 79 mi; Lat  $59^{\circ} 0'$  S, Lon  $72^{\circ} 48'$  W.

Monday, January 30th 1769 Fore part, fresh Gales and Squally with Hail and rain, remainder moderate and Cloudy. At 6am loosed the 2nd reef out of the Topsails and set Top-gallant Sails. At 11 Lon per 3 sets of Observations of the sun and moon, 1st set  $73^{\circ} 38'$  15 seconds; second set  $73^{\circ} 25'$  45 seconds; and 3rd,  $73^{\circ} 19'$  30 seconds; the mean of the whole is  $73^{\circ} 27'$  50 seconds W, and  $35'$  less than the Lon by Dead reckoning, which is only 6 lg in this Lat, and therefore not worth taking notice of. Lat per Observation  $60^{\circ} 4'$  S. Wind W by N and W-N-W; course, S  $33^{\circ}$  W; distance, 76 mi; Lat  $60^{\circ} 4'$  S, Lon  $74^{\circ} 10'$  W.

Tuesday, January 31st 1769 First part moderate and Cloudy, with some rain; in the night, little wind and Calm; towards Noon, fresh Gales and Cloudy. Between 7 and 8pm, being then in the Lat of  $60^{\circ} 10'$ , which was the farthest S we were, and in the Lon of  $74^{\circ} 30'$  found the Variation of the Compass by the mean of Azimuth to be  $27^{\circ} 9'$  E. At 3am wind at E-S-E, and Moderate breeze. Set the Steeringsails, and soon after 2 Birds like Penguins were seen by the Mate of the Watch. Wind W-N-W, calm, E-S-E, S-S-E; course N  $71^{\circ}$  W; distance, 55 mi; Lat  $59^{\circ} 46'$  S, Lon  $75^{\circ} 54'$  W.

Wednesday, February 1st 1769 First part, fresh Gales; latter, light Airs and Cloudy; pm found the Variation by several Azimuth to be  $24^{\circ} 53'$  E. At Noon sounded, but had no ground with 240 fm of line; hoisted a Boat out to try if there was any Current, but found none. The weather was such as to admit Mr. Banks to row round the Ship in a Lighterman's Skiff shooting birds. Wind, S-E by E, S-S-E, E; course, N-W by W; distance, 106 mi; Lat  $58^{\circ} 46'$  S, Lon  $78^{\circ} 42'$  W.



Thursday, February 2nd 1769 First part, light breezes and Cloudy; remainder, sometimes a fresh breeze and at other times little wind and hazy, rainy, Cold weather. Took in the Steeringsls and a reef in each Topsail. Wind variable, N-N-W, S-W and S; course, W by N; distance, 82 mi; Lat 58° 30' S, Lon 80° 58' W.

Friday, February 3rd 1769 Calm and Light Airs, and for the most part Cloudy and sometimes drizzling rain. Variation 24° 4' E. Wind, W by N, N-W by W; course S 82 W; distance 30 mi; Lat 58° 33' S, Lon 81° 55' W.

Saturday, February 4th 1769 Fore and middle parts, little wind and dark cloudy weather; latter, fresh Gales and Cloudy with some rain. pm had a Boat out and Shott several sorts of Birds, one of which was an Albetross as large as a Goose, whose wings when Extended measured 10 feet 2 inches; this was grey, but there are of them all White except the very tip end of their Wings. Another sort, in size between an Albetross and a large Gull, of a grey Colour, with a white Spot above their Tail about the Breadth of one's hand, and several other sorts. Wind W; course N 13° W; distance 48 mi; Lat 57° 45' S, Lon 82° 16' W.

Sunday, February 5th 1769 Fresh gales with heavy squalls the first part; remainder, little wind and Cloudy. Very cold weather. Wind, W-S-W, W by N and S-W by W; course N; distance 49 mi; Lat 56° 46' S, Lon 82° 16' W.

Monday, February 6th 1769 A moderate breeze of Wind with some flying showers of hail and rain; close upon a Wind all this day. Wind S-W by W to W by N; course N 1/4 E; distance 86 mi; Lat 55° 20' S, Lon 82° 23' W.

Tuesday, February 7th 1769 A fresh breeze and dark cloudy weather, with some showers of rain; the wind, varying from W to N by W, obliged us to Tack several times. Wind N-W by W, W by S; course N 20° W; distance 46 mi; Lat 54° 40' S, Lon 82° 54' W.

Wednesday, February 8th 1769 First part, cloudy with Squalls of wind and Showers of rain and hail; Latter part thick hazy weather, with frequent Showers. Wind, W, S by W; course N 14° 43' W; distance 58 mi; Lat 53° 36' S, Lon 83° 19' W.

Thursday, February 9th 1769 Fresh gales all this day, sometimes squally with rain; under Double-reef Topsails in the night, and Single-reeft Topsail in the day. Wind S; course N 55° W; distance 130 mi; Lat 52° 22' S, Lon 86° 17' W.

Friday, February 10th 1769 The former part of this day had fresh breezes and Dark cloudy weather; in the night hard Squalls with rain, and afterwards hazy, rainy weather. Wind W; course N 22° W; distance 67 mi; Lat 51° 16' S, Lon 86° 37' W.

Saturday, February 11th 1769 Former part Light Airs with drizzling rain; remainder, a Moderate breeze and Cloudy. Wind, variable, S; course, N 54° W; distance 36 mi; Lat 50° 55' S, Lon 87° 24' W.

Sunday, February 12th 1769 First and middle parts, fresh gales and cloudy; latter, little wind and clear. Having for some time past generally found the Ship by Observation to the Northward of the Log, which is not owing to a Current as I at first imagined, but to a wrong

Division of the Log line, being 2 1/2 feet in each Knot-but this is now rectified. Wind S-W by S; course N 48° W; distance 113 mi; Lat 49° 41' S, Lon 89° 36' W.

Monday, February 13th 1769 The first part of these 24 Hours, moderate breezes and Cloudy; remainder, fresh Gales and cloudy. P.M saw a great many Albetrosses and other Birds about the Ship; some were all white and about the size of Teal. Took several Observations of the sun and moon, the result of which gave 90° 13' W Lon from Greenwich. The Variation of the Compass by the Mean of several Azimuths 17° E. The Lon by account is less than that by Observation, 37', which is about 20 mi in these high Lats, and nearly equal to the Error of the Log line before mentioned. This near Agreement of the 2 Lons proves to a Demonstration that we have had no Western Current since we left the Land. Wind W, N; course N 75° W; distance 35 mi; Lat 49° 35', Lon 90° 37'.

From the Foregoing observations it will appear that we are now advanced about 12° to the Westward of the Strait of Magellan, and 3 1/2° to the Northward of it, having been 33 days in Doubling Cape Horn or the Land of Terra del Fuego, and Arriving into the Degree of Lat and Lon we are now in, and without being brought once under our close Reef'd Topsails since we left Strait Le Maire, a Circumstance that perhaps never hapned before to any ship in those Seas so much dreaded for Hard gales of Wind; in so much that the doubling of Cape Horn is thought by some to be a mighty thing, and others to this day prefer the Straits of Magellan. As I have never been in those Straits I can only form my Judgement on a Carefull Comparison of the Different Ships' Journals that have passed them, and those that have sail'd round Cape Horn, particularly the Dolphin's two last Voyages and this of ours, being made at the same season of the Year, when one may reasonable expect the same Winds to prevail. The Dolphin in her last Voyage was three Months in getting through the Straits, not reckoning the time she lay in Port Famine; and I am firmly perswaded from the Winds we have had, that had we come by that Passage we should not have been in these Seas, besides the fatiguing of our People, the damage we must have done to our Anchors, Cables, Sails, and Rigging, none of which have suffer'd in our passage round Cape Horn.

From what I have said it will appear that I am no advocate for the Straits of Magellan, but it should be expected that I should say something of Strait le Mair, through which we passed, and this is the more incumbant on me as it was by choice and contrary to the Advice given by Mr. Walter, the ingenious Author of Lord Anson's Voyage, who advised all Ships not to go through this Strait but to go to the Eastward of Staten Land, and likewise to stand to the Southward as far as 61 or 62° S before any Endeavour is made to get to the Westward. With respect to the Passing of Strait le Mair or going round Staten Land, I look upon of little Consequence, and either one or the other to be pursued according to Circumstances; for if you happen to fall in with the land to the Westward of the Strait, and the winds favourable for going through, it certainly must be a piece of folly to lose time in going round Staten Land, for by paying a little Attention to the Directions I have already given no ill Consequences can attend; but on the Contrary if you should fall in with the land to the Eastward of the Straits or the wind should prove Boisterous, or unfavourable, in any of these Cases the going to the Eastward of Staten Land is the most Advisable. And next, as to running into the Lat of 61 or 62° S before any Endeavour is made to get to the Westward, is what I think no man will ever do that can avoid it, for it cannot be supposed that anyone will steer S mearly to get into a high Lat, when at the same time he can steer W, for it is not Sing but Wing that is wanting. But this way you cannot Steer because the Wind blows almost Constantly from that Quarter, so that you have no other Choice but to stand to the Southward, close upon a Wind, and by keeping upon that

Tack you not only make Sing but Wing also, and sometimes not a little when the wind Varies to the Northward of W; and the farther you advance to the Southward the better Chance you have of having the Winds from that Quarter or E, and likewise of meeting with finer weather, both of which we ourselves Experienced. Prudence will direct every man when in those high Lats to make sure of sufficient Wing to double all the lands before he thinks of standing to the Northward. When the winds was W the Mountains on Terra Del Fuego were generally covered with dense Clouds, formed, as one may reasonably suppose, by W Exhalations and by Vapours brought thither by the W winds. From that Quarter come frequent Showers of rain, hail, and Snow; and after we had left the land and were standing to the Southward, with the winds W, dark dence clouds were Continually forming in the Horizon, and rose to about 45°, where they began to dissipate. These were generally attended with Showers of Rain, or hail, and Squalls of Wind, but as we advanced to the Southward, these Clouds became less dence, and in the Lat of 60° 10', when we got the winds E, the weather was more serene and milder; again as we advanced to the Northward we had a constant Clouded sky and dark gloomy weather, the whole time exceeding Cold.

Tuesday, February 14th 1769 The first part, fresh Gales and Hazey with rain; the remainder moderate and Cloudy, with frequent rain. Wind, W, S; course S-W; distance 32 mi; Lat 49° 6' S, Lon 91° 12' W.

Wednesday, February 15th 1769 Little wind and Cloudy the most part of this day. Variation per Azimuth in the Evening 12° E, and in the morning both by an Amplitude and an Azimuth 11° E. am Shifted the Mainsail, mizen, Fore, and Main topsail. Wind, S-S-W, S-W, W by N; course N 46° W; distance 86 mi; Lat 48° 27' S, Lon 92° 5' W.

Thursday, February 16th 1769 The first part of this day had fresh Gales and Cloudy; in the night thick hazey weather with heavy squalls of wind and rain, which obliged us to close-reef our Topsails. In the morning and all the forenoon had strong gales and cloudy weather, and very heavy Seas from the S-S-W, one of which broke upon the Quarter and carried away the Driver Boom. Wind N-W, W, and S; course N 74° W; distance 97 mi; Lat 48° 0' S, Lon 94° 25' W.

Friday, February 17th 1769 Strong Gales and Cloudy the most part of this day. Split the Maintopsail and unbent it, and bent another. Wind S-S-W; course N-W by W 1/2 W; distance 132 mi; Lat 46° 48' S, Lon 97° 17' W.

Saturday, February 18th 1769 Fresh gales all this day. The weather Variable, sometimes fair and Cloudy, other times hazey, with drizzling rain. Saw some Birds nearly as big as Albetrosses; they were all black, with Yellow Beaks. Wind S-W by W; course N 32° 30' W; distance 140 mi; Lat 44° 50' S, Lon 99° 7' W.

Sunday, February 19th 1769 First part, fresh Gales and Hazey; the middle part, hazey, with drizling rain; the latter, gentle breezes and fine Clear weather, yet the Air is still Cold. Wind S-W by W to W by S; course N-N-W 3/4 W; distance 103 mi; Lat 43° 21' S, Lon 100° 21' W.

Monday, February 20th 1769 Moderate breezes and fine weather the greater part of this day, and the Sea very smooth. Found by repeated trials that the S point of the Dipping Needle Dip'd 65° 52' below the Horizon. Wind W; course S 65° W; distance 58 mi; Lat 43° 46' S, Lon 101° 34' W.

Tuesday, February 21st 1769 Fresh breezes and pretty Clear weather. Variation  $6^{\circ} 30'$  E. Wind N-W; course S  $62^{\circ}$  W; distance 115 mi; Lat  $44^{\circ} 39'$  S, Lon  $103^{\circ} 54'$  W.

Wednesday, February 22nd 1769 Hazy, rainy weather the most part of this Day. Wind N-W; course S  $86^{\circ}$  W; distance 91 mi; Lat  $44^{\circ} 46'$  S, Lon  $106^{\circ} 1$  minute W.

Thursday, February 23rd 1769 Little wind and Calm, and some Lightning, a thing we have not seen for some time past, and therefore suppose not common in these Seas in high Lats. Variation  $5^{\circ} 34'$  E. Wind N-W, calm; course N  $30^{\circ}$  E; distance 13 mi; Lat  $44^{\circ} 35'$  S, Lon  $105^{\circ} 52'$  W.

Friday, February 24th 1769 First part, Calm; middle, light breezes; latter, fresh breezes and hazy. pm had several Azimuths, all of which gave the Variation less than  $4^{\circ}$  E, but they were a little doubtful on account of the Rowing of the Ship. What winds we have had this day hath been from the Eastward, and are the first we have had from that Quarter since we left the Lat  $58^{\circ} 46'$ . Wind calm, E-N-E and E-S-E; course N  $42^{\circ} 45'$  W; distance 79 mi; Lat  $43^{\circ} 37'$  S, Lon  $107^{\circ} 6'$  W.

Saturday, February 25th 1769 First and middle parts, fresh Gales and Cloudy, with some rain; the Latter, little Wind and Cloudy. Wind S-E by E, S-S-E; course N  $48^{\circ} 30'$  W; distance 112 mi; Lat  $42^{\circ} 23'$  S, Lon  $109^{\circ} 0'$  W.

Sunday, February 26th 1769 First part, Calm and light Airs; remainder, very strong gales and Squally, with Showers of rain, which at length brought us under our two Courses, and close-reefed Maintopsail. Wind calm, N-W and W-S-W; course N  $26^{\circ} 15'$  W; distance 88 mi; Lat  $41^{\circ} 4'$  S, Lon  $109^{\circ} 52'$  W.

Monday, February 27th 1769 First part, Strong Gales and Cloudy; the remainder, Gentle Breezes and clear weather. pm set the topsail one Reef out. A large swell from the S-W. Wind W; course N  $18^{\circ}$  W; distance 85 mi; Lat  $39^{\circ} 43'$  S,  $110^{\circ} 26'$  W.

Tuesday, February 28th 1769 The former part little wind and fine clear weather; the Air full as warm as in the same Degree of N Lat at the Correspondent Season of the Year. The S-W swells still keep up, notwithstanding the Gale hath been over about 30 Hours, a proof that there is no land near in that Quarter. The remainder part of this day fresh breezes and clear. At 9am took 3 Sets of Observations of the sun and moon in order to find the Lon of the Ship. Wind W to N-W; course N  $13^{\circ}$  W; distance 42 mi; Lat  $39^{\circ} 33'$  30 seconds S, Lon  $110^{\circ} 38'$  W.

Wednesday, March 1st 1769 First part fresh breezes, the remainder moderate breezes and clear weather. The result of the Forementioned Observations gives  $110^{\circ} 33'$  W Lon from Greenwich, and exactly agrees with the Lon given by the Log from Cape Horn. This Agreement of the two Lons after a Run of 660 lg is surprizing, and much more than could be expected; but, as it is so, it serves to prove, as well as the repeated trials we have made when the weather would permit, that we have had no Current that hath Affected the Ship since we came into these Seas. This must be a great Sign that we have been near no land of any extent, because near land are generally found Currents. It is well known that on the E side of the Continent in the N Sea we meet with Currents above 100 lg from the Land, and even in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean, between Africa and America, are always found Currents; and I

can see no reason why Currents should not be found in this Sea, supposing a Continent or lands lay not far W from us, as some have immagin'd, and if such land was ever seen we cannot be far from it, as we are now 560 lg W of the Coast of Chili. Wind W by S; course N 76° W; distance 52 mi; Lat 38° 44' S, Lon 111° 43' W; at noon, Cape Horn S 60° E 660 lg.

Thursday, March 2nd 1769 Former part, fresh gales and hazey, with much rain; the remainder, a Strong fresh gale and pretty clear weather. Wind W; course N by W; distance 87 mi; Lat 37° 16' S, Lon 112° 5' W.

Friday, March 3rd 1769 First part, moderate breezes; remainder, calm and clear weather. am employed filling salt Water in the Fore Hold and airing all the Spare Sails. Wind W, calm; course N 17° E; distance 31 mi; Lat 36° 49' S, Lon 111° 34' W.

Saturday, March 4th 1769 First part, Calm; remainder, a fine genteel breeze and clear weather. Variation per Azimuth and Amplitude this Evening 2° 26' E. The S-W swell still keeps up, notwithstanding it hath been Calm 24 hours. Wind calm, N-E, N; course N 50° W; distance 58 mi; Lat 36° 12' S, Lon 112° 50' W.

Sunday, March 5th 1769 First and latter parts, fine Clear weather; the middle, fresh gales and Hazey, with rain. Wind N-W by N and N-W; course S 81° 40' W; distance 64 mi; Lat 36° 21' S, Lon 114° 9' W.

Monday, March 6th 1769 Moderate breezes and Tolerable clear weather all this day. The wind a little Variable, which caused us to Tack several Times. Wind N-W by N to W-N-W; course S 57° W; distance 20 mi; Lat 36° 32' S, Lon 114° 30' W.

Tuesday, March 7th 1769 A Moderate steady breeze and clear weather. Wind N-W; course S 64° 15' W; distance, 83 mi; Lat 37° 8' S, Lon 116° 8' W.

Wednesday, March 8th 1769 The first and middle parts moderate breezes and Cloudy; the Latter Part Variable winds and much Rain. Wind N-W, variable; course S 78° W; distance, 76 mi; Lat 37° 24' S, Lon 117° 41' W.

Thursday, March 9th 1769 First part, moderate and Hazey, with Drizzling rain; the remainder fresh breezes and clear weather. Variation 4° 41' E. Wind S-W by W to S by E; course N 38° W; distance 123 mi; Lat 35° 47' S, Lon 119° 18' W.

Friday, March 10th 1769 Moderate breezes and fine Pleasant weather. Wind S-E; course N 40° W; distance 121 mi; Lat 34° 14' S, Lon 120° 54' W.

Saturday, March 11th 1769 A Steady gale and fine weather. Variation 4° 12' E. Wind S-E; course N 46° 15' W; distance 116 mi; Lat 32° 54' S, Lon 122° 35' W.

Sunday, March 12th 1769 Ditto weather. Variation 4° 12' E. Put the Ship's Company to three Watches, they having been at Watch and Watch since our first arrival on the coast of Terra del Fuego. Wind S-E; course N 49° W; distance 122 mi; Lat 31° 34' S, Lon 124° 25' W.

Monday, March 13th 1769 First part a Steady, fresh Gale; the remainder, little wind and fine Clear weather. Wind S-E; course N 48° 15' W; distance 72 mi; Lat 30° 46' S, Lon 125° 28' W.

Tuesday, March 14th 1769 Little wind and fine Pleasant weather. At 3pm took several Observations of the sun and moon; the mean result of which gave  $126^{\circ} 20' 45$  seconds, the Lon of the Ship W of Greenwich, and is  $47^{\circ}$  Lon W of account carried on from Cape Horn. Wind S, E-S-E, E-N-E; course N  $50^{\circ}$  W; distance 47 mi; Lat  $30^{\circ} 17'$  S, Lon  $126^{\circ} 10'$  W.

Wednesday, March 15th 1769 Light breezes and clear weather. Variation, pm  $3^{\circ} 45'$  E, am  $3^{\circ} 22'$  E. Saw a Tropic Bird. Wind, E-N-E and E-S-E; course, N  $47^{\circ} 15'$  W; distance, 50 mi; Lat  $29^{\circ} 43'$  S, Lon  $126^{\circ} 53'$  W.

Thursday, March 16th 1769 Light Airs next to a Calm and clear Weather. Variation by the mean result of 21 Azimuths, 1 degree  $30'$  E. This evening observed an Occultation of h by the [crescent], Immersion at \_\_\_\_\_ hours \_\_\_\_\_' and Emersion at \_\_\_\_\_ hours \_\_\_\_\_', \_\_\_\_\_ seconds am Variation per several Azimuths  $2^{\circ}$  E. Wind E-S-E, S-S-E, S-W; course N-N-W; distance 34 mi; Lat  $29^{\circ} 22'$  S, Lon  $127^{\circ} 8'$  W.

Friday, March 17th 1769 Little wind and fine Pleasant weather. Variation, pm  $3^{\circ} 27'$  E. Wind, S-E by S; course, N  $20^{\circ}$  W; distance, 55 mi; Lat  $28^{\circ} 30'$  S, Lon  $127^{\circ} 29'$  W.

Saturday, March 18th 1769 First part, little wind and Cloudy; latter, fresh gales and hard Squalls, with much rain. Took 2 Reefs in the Topsails. Wind N-E N; course N  $60^{\circ} 45'$  W; distance 78 mi; Lat  $27^{\circ} 52'$  S, Lon  $128^{\circ} 44'$  W.

Sunday, March 19th 1769 First part fresh Gales and Squally, with rain; remainder more moderate and cloudy. Variation, am per Means of several Azimuths,  $3^{\circ} 14'$  E. Loosed the 2d reefs out of the Topsails. Wind between the N and W; course N  $52^{\circ}$  W; distance 50 mi; Lat  $27^{\circ} 21'$  S, Lon  $129^{\circ} 28'$  W.

Monday, March 20th 1769 A Fine breeze and pleasant weather. Saw several Tropic Birds. Wind W; course N; distance 95 mi; Lat  $25^{\circ} 44'$  S, Lon  $129^{\circ} 28'$  W.

Tuesday, March 21st 1769 First part little wind, the remainder Calm. Variation,  $3^{\circ} 43'$  E. Saw some rock weed and a great many Tropic Birds. Wind W by N, calm; course N; distance 23 mi; Lat  $25^{\circ} 21'$  S, Lon  $129^{\circ} 28'$  W.

Wednesday, March 22nd 1769 First part Calm, in the night Squally, with rain. am a fresh breeze and Cloudy. Variation per Amplitude  $3^{\circ} 10'$  E. Saw some Egg Birds. Wind N by E to N-N-W; course W; distance 57 mi; Lat  $25^{\circ} 21'$  S, Lon  $129^{\circ} 52'$  W.

Thursday, March 23rd 1769 Fresh gales and Squally, with rain, the first part; remainder fresh Gales and Cloudy. pm saw some Men-of-War Birds, and Egg Birds, and in the Morning saw more Egg Birds and Tropic Birds. The Man-of-War and Tropic Birds are pretty well known, but the Egg Bird (as it is called in the Dolphin's Journal) requires some discription to know it by that Name. It is a small slender Bird of the Gull kind, and all white, and not much unlike the small white Gulls we have in England, only not so big. There are also Birds in Newfoundland called Stearings that are of the same shape and Bigness, only they are of a Greyish Colour. These Birds were called by the Dolphin Egg Birds on account of their being like those known by that name by Sailors in the Gulph of Florida; neither they nor the Man-of-War Birds are ever

reckoned to go very far from Land. Wind N by W to W by N: course N 13° W; distance 49 mi; Lat 24° 43' S, Lon 130° 8' W.

Friday, March 24th 1769 Fresh Gales and Cloudy, with some rain in the forepart of this day. All the forepart of these 24 hours the Sea was smooth, but at 12 at night it was more so, and about 3 in the Morning one of the people saw, or thought he saw, a Log of Wood pass the Ship. This made us think that we were near some land, but at daylight we saw not the appearance of any, and I did not think myself at liberty to spend time in searching for what I was not sure to find, although I thought myself not far from those Islands discovered by Quiros in 1606; and very probably we were not, from the birds, etc., we have seen for these 2 or 3 days past. Wind W-N-W to N-W; course N-E by N 1/4 E; distance 99 mi; Lat 22° 23' S, Lon 129° 2' W.

Saturday, March 25th 1769 First part dark cloudy weather, with rain and a fresh breeze of wind; remainder fair and Cloudy. Wind N-W by N, to W by N; course N-E 1/2 N; distance 95 mi; Lat 22° 11' S, Lon 127° 55' W.

Sunday, March 26th 1769 Squally weather, with rain. At 5pm saw some sea Weed pass the Ship, and at 7 William Greenslade, Marine, either by Accident or design, went overboard and was Drowned. The following circumstances makes it appear as tho' it was done design'dly. He had been Centinel at the Steerage door between 12 and 4 o'clock, where he had taken part of a Seal Skin put under his charge, and which was found upon him. The other Marines thought themselves hurt by one of their party committing a crime of this nature, and he being a raw young fellow, and, as very probable, made him resolve upon committing this rash Action, for the Serjeant not being willing that it should pass over unknown to me, was about 7 o'clock going to bring him aft and have it inquired into, when he gave him the Slip between Decks, and was seen to go upon the Forecastle, and from that time was seen no more. I was neither made acquainted with the Theft or the Circumstances attending it, until the Man was gone. Wind, N-W to W; Lon 127° 43' W.

Monday, March 27th 1769 Variable winds and weather, with frequent showers of rain. At Noon saw a Bird like a Gannet. Wind variable; course N 1/4 E; distance 30 mi; Lat 21° 2' S, Lon 127° 38' W.

Tuesday, March 28th 1769 Little wind and Cloudy. Variation per Amplitude 3° 56' E. Wind E; course N-N-W; distance 37 mi; Lat 20° 38' S, Lon 127° 50' W.

Wednesday, March 29th 1769 Little winds and Cloudy weather. Variation per Azimuth 2° 27' E. Saw a Bird like a Dove and several fish about the Ship. Employed worming the Best Br. Cable, repairing and Painting the Boats. Wind E; course N 75° W; distance 50 mi; Lat 20° 14' S, Lon 129° 27' W.

Thursday, March 30th 1769 First part, Calm and close Cloudy weather; in the night had Variable winds and weather, with rain. am Genteel Breezes and Cloudy weather. Between 10 and 11am took several Observations of the sun and moon; the mean result of them gave the Lon of the Ship at Noon to be 127° 38', and is 1 degree 49' E of the Lon given by the Log; but on the 4th Instant the ship by Observation was 47' W of the Log, therefore she must have lost 2° 36' of the Log since the last Observation—an Error too great to be accounted for. Wind calm, variable, S-S-E; course N 40° W; distance 53 mi; Lat 19° 34' S, Lon 129° 27' W.

Friday, March 31st 1769 A Steady breeze and fine pleasant weather.am took several Observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of them came within 8 mi of Yesterday's Observations computed both by Mr. Green and myself, and yet cannot think so great an error can have been committed in the ship's run in so short a time as these observations seem to point out, and therefore I shall abide by the Lon given by the Log unless from subsequent Observations this error should be found to be just. Wind S; course N 75° 45' W; distance 111 mi; Lat 19° 7' S, Lon 131° 21' W.

Saturday, April 1st 1769 A steady fresh Trade and fine Weather. Variation per several Azimuths 2° 32' E. Wind S-E to E 1/2 N; course W; distance 122 mi; Lat 19° 7' S, Lon 133° 28' W.

Sunday, April 2nd 1769 A fresh Trade wind and fine pleasant weather. At Noon saw a Large flock of Birds; they had brown backs and white Bellies. They fly and make a noise like Stearings, and are shaped like them, only something larger. Saw likewise some black Sheerwaters and Several Man-of-War birds. Wind E; course N 86° 30' W; distance 118 mi; Lat 19° 0' S, Lon 135° 33' W.

Monday, April 3rd 1769 First and Latter parts a steady fresh Breeze and cloudy; the middle, sometimes squally with rain, at other times little wind.pm saw 2 Birds like Albetrosses; they were all white except the Tip of their wings and Tails. Wind E; course N 82° 45' W; distance 110 mi; Lat 18° 46' S, Lon 137° 29' W.

Tuesday, April 4th 1769 A Steady fresh Trade and clear weather. At 1/2 past 10am saw land bearing S, distance 3 or 4 lg. Haul'd up for it, and soon found it to be an Island of about 2 lg in Circuit and of an Oval form, with a Lagoon in the middle, for which I named it Lagoon Island. The Border of land Circumscribing this Lagoon is in many places very low and narrow, particularly on the S side, where it is mostly a Beach or Reef of rocks; it is the same on the N side in 3 places, and these disjoins the firm land and make it appear like so many Islands covered with wood. On the W end of the Island is a large Tree which looks like a large Tower, and about the middle of the Island are two Cocoa Nutt Trees that appears above all the other wood, which as we approached the Island looked very much like a flag. We approached the N side of this Island within a mile, and found no Bottom with 130 fm of line, nor did there appear to be Anchorage about it. We saw several of the Inhabitants, the most of them men, and these Marched along the shore abrE of the Ships with long Clubs in their hands as tho' they meant to oppose our landing. They were all naked except their Privy parts, and were of a Dark Copper Colour with long black Hair, but upon our leaving the Island some of them were seen to put on a Covering, and one or two we saw in the Skirts of the Wood was Cloathed in White; these we supposed to be Women. This Island lies in the Lat of 18° 47' and Lon 139° 28' W from the Meridian of Greenwich; variation 2° 54' E. Wind E, E by S; course N 88° W; distance 114 mi; Lat 18° 42' S, Lon 139° 29' W.

Wednesday, April 5th 1769 A fresh steady gale and fine weather. At 1pm made Sail to the Westward, and at 1/2 past 3 saw land to the N-W, which we got up with at Sun sett and proved to be a low woody Island of a Circular form, and not much above a mile in Compass. This Island I called Thrum Cap; it lies in the Lat of 18° 35' S and in the Lon of 139° 48' W from Greenwich, and N 62° W, 7 lg from Lagoon Island. We saw no inhabitants, nor the appearance of any, and yet we were within 1/2 a mile of the Shore. I observed by the Shore that it was near



low Water, and at Lagoon Island I observed that it was either high Water or else there was no Ebbing and flowing of the Sea. From these Circumstances I infer that a S by E or S Moon makes high Water. Here we caught a King Fish, being the first fish we have got in these Seas. Wind E; course N 77° 30' W; distance 79 mi; Lat 18° 25' S, Lon 140° 51' W.

Thursday, April 6th 1769 A fresh Trade and fine Pleasant weather. At 3pm Saw land to the Westward, which proved to be an Island of about 12 or 15 lg in Compass; is very low and entirely drown'd in the middle, forming there a large lake, into which there appeared to be no inlet. The border of land and Reef surrounding this lake like a wall appeared to be of a Bow-like figure, for which reason I named it Bow Island. The S side, along which we sail'd, was one continued low narrow Beach or Reef like a Causeway for 4 lg and upwards, and lies E by N and W by S. The E and W Ends and N side of this Island are wooded-in Groves, and the firm Land appeared disjointed and like a Number of Islands, and very probably is so. The N-W parts of the Island we only saw across the Lake, and not very distinct on account of its great extent, and night coming on before we had run the whole length of the Island. This description must be imperfect, and the whole Island may form a Different figure to what I have here described. The E end lies in the Lat of 18° 23' S, and Lon 141° 12' W from Greenwich. Variation 5° 38' E. This Island is Inhabited; we not only saw smook in Different Parts, but people also. At Noon saw Land to the Westward. Wind E; course N 85° W; distance 94 mi; Lat 18° 19' S, Lon 142° 29' W.

Friday, April 7th 1769 Fresh Gales and Cloudy. At 1/2 past 2pm got up with the E end of the Land seen yesterday at Noon, and which proved to be an assemblage of Islands join'd together by Reef, and extending themselves N-W by N and S-E by S in 8 or 9 lg and of various breadths; but there appeared to be a total Separation in the middle by a Channell of half a mile broad, and on this account they are called the two Groups. The S Eermost of them lies in the Lat of 18° 12' and Lon of 142° 42' W from Greenwich, and W 1/2 N distant 25 lg from the W end of Bow Island. We ranged along the S-W side of this Island, and hauled into a Bay which lies to the N-W of the Sermost point of them, and where there appeared to be Anchorage and the Sea was smooth and not much Surf on the Shore; but we found no ground with 100 fm 3/4 of a mile from the Shore, and nearer we did not go. Here several of the Inhabitants assembled together with their Canoes, with a design, as we thought, to come off to us, as they hauld one of them over the reef seemingly for that purpose; but after waiting near 1/2 an hour, and they not attempting to come, we bore away and made Sail, and presentley the Canoe put off after us; but, as we did not stop, they soon went back again. They were in all respects like those we had seen on Lagoon Island, and Armed with Clubs and long Pikes like them. At 1/2 past 6am Saw a small Island to the Northward, hauld our wind for it, and soon got close in with it. It is about 3 or 4 mi in Circuit, and very low, with a Pond in the middle. There is some wood upon it, but no inhabitants but Birds, and for this reason is called Bird Island. It lies in the Lat 17° 48' and Lon 143° 35' W, and W 1/2 N 10 lg from the W end of the two Groups. The birds we saw were Men-of-War Birds and several other sorts. Wind E; course N 66° W; distance 66 mi; Lat 17° 48' S, Lon 143° 31' W.

Saturday, April 8th 1769 Fresh Trade and pleasant weather, but about noon had a few flying showers of rain. Variation 6° 32' E. Wind E by S and E; course N 87° W; distance 100 mi; Lat 17° 43' S, Lon 145° 16' W.

Sunday, April 9th 1769 A steady fresh gale and pleasant weather. At 2pm saw Land to the Northward, hauld up for it, and found it to be a double range of low woody islands joined

together by reefs, by which means they make one Island in form of an Ellipsis or Oval, in the middle of which is a Salt water lake. The small Islands and reefs circumscribes or bounds this lake like a Chain; it is therefore called Chain Island. It is in length, N-W and S-E, about 5 lg, and in breadth about 5 mi. The middle of it lies in the Lat of 17° 23' S, and Lon 145° 54' W, and W by N 45 lg from Bird Island. Variation per Several Azimuths 4° 54' E. Wind E by N to N by E; course W, N; distance 81 mi; Lat 17° 42' S, Lon 146° 40' W.

Monday, April 10th 1769pm moderate breezes and cloudy; in the Night, dark, cloudy, unsettled weather, with very much Thunder, Lightning, and rain.am little wind and fair.pm variation per Several Azimuths 5° 41' E. At 8am saw Osnaburg Island (so called by Captain Wallis, the first discoverer) bearing N-W by W, distance 4 or 5 lg. It is a high round Island, and appears to be not above a League in Circuit, and when it bears as above it looks like a high Crown'd Hatt, but when it bears N the Top is more like the roof of a House. It lies in the Lat of 17° 48' S and Lon 148° 10' W, and W by S, 44 lg, from Chain Island. Wind N-N-W, variable, N-W by N; course S 13° W; distance 67 mi; Lat 18° 00' S, Lon 147° 47' W; at noon, Osnaburg Island N by W 1/2 W, 5 lg.

Tuesday, April 11th 1769 First part, little wind and cloudy; the remainder, little wind and very Variable; unsettled weather, with some rain.pm took several Observations of the sun and moon, which gave the Lon of the ship to be 148° 18' W, and differs but little from that given by the Log. At 6am saw King George's Island Extending from W by S 1/2 S to W by N 1/2 N. It appeared very high and Mountainous. Wind variable; course N 66° W; distance 54 mi; Lat 17° 38' S, Lon 148° 39' W; Osnaburg Island E 1/2 S, 13 lg.

Wednesday, April 12th 1769 Variable, light Airs all these 24 Hours, and Hot sultry weather. At 5pm King George's Island extending from N-W by W to S-W, distance 6 or 7 lg; and at 6am it bore from S-S-W to W by N, being little wind with Calms. Several of the Natives came off to us in their Canoes, but more to look at us than anything else. We could not prevail with any of them to come on board, and some would not come near the ship. Wind variable; course W; distance 18 mi; Lat 17° 38' S, Lon 148° 58' W; at noon, King George's Island, from S to W by N, 5 lg.

Thursday, April 13th 1769 The first part Cloudy and Squally, with Showers of rain; remainder, genteel breezes and clear weather. At 4pm the N-E point of Royal Bay W 1/2 N; run under an easy sail all night, and had soundings from 22 to 12 fm 2 or 3 mi from the Shore. At 5am made sail for the bay, and at 7 anchored in 13 fm. At this time we had but very few men upon the sick list, and these had but slite complaints. The Ship's company had in general been very healthy, owing in a great measure to the Sour kroutt, Portable Soup and Malt; the two first were served to the People, the one on Beef Days and the other on Banyan Days. Wort was made of the Malt, and at the discretion of the Surgeon given to every man that had the IE symptoms of Scurvy upon him. By this means, and the Care and Vigilance of Mr. Monkhouse, the Surgeon, this disease was prevented from getting a footing in the Ship. The Sour Kroutt, the Men at first would not eat it, until I put it in practice-a method I never once Knew to fail with seamen-and this was to have some of it dressed every day for the Cabin Table, and permitted all the Officers, without exception, to make use of it, and left it to the Option of the men either to take as much as they pleased or none at all; but this practice was not continued above a Week before I found it necessary to put every one on board to an allowance; for such are the Tempers and disposition of Seamen in general that whatever you give them out of the common way-altho' it be ever so much for their good-it will not go down, and you will hear

nothing but murmurings against the Man that first invented it; but the moment they see their superiors set a value upon it, it becomes the finest stuff in the world and the inventor an honest fellow. Wind E.

### Chapter 3: Tahiti

NOTE. The way of reckoning the day in Sea Journals is from Noon to Noon, but as the most material transaction at this Island must hapen in the Day time, this method will be attended with ill conveniences in inserting the transactions of each day; for this reason I shall during our stay at this Island, but no longer, reckon the day according to the Civil account that is to begin and end at midnight.

We had no sooner come to an Anchor in Royal Bay, as before-mentioned, than a great number of the Natives in their Canoes came off to the Ship and brought with them Cocoa Nuts, etc.; these they seem'd to set a great value upon. Amongst those that came off to the Ship was an elderly man whose Name was Owhaa, him the Gentlemen that had been here before in the Dolphin knew and had often spoke of as one that had been of Service to them. This man (together with some others) I took on board and made much of, thinking that he might on some occasions be of use to us. As our stay at this place was not likely to be very short, I thought it very necessary that some order should be observed in Traficking with the Natives, that such Merchandize as we had on board for that purpose might continue to bear a proper value, and not leave it to everyone's own particular fancy, which could not fail to bring on Confusion and Quarrels between us and the Natives, and would infallibly lessen the value of such Articles as we had to traffick with. In Order to prevent this, the following rules were ordered to be Observed; viz.:

Rules to be observed by every person in or belonging to His Majesty's Bark the Endeavour for the better Establishing a regular and uniform Trade for Provisions, etc., with the Inhabitants of George's Island:

1. To endeavour by every fair means to Cultivate a Friendship with the Natives, and to treat them with all imaginable humanity.
2. A Proper Person or Persons will be appointed to Trade with the Natives for all manner of Provisions, Fruits, and other Productions of the Earth; and no Officer or Seaman or other person belonging to the Ship, excepting such as are so appointed, shall Trade or offer to Trade for any sort of Provisions, Fruit or other Productions of the Earth, unless they have my leave so to do.
3. Every Person employ'd on shore on any duty whatsoever is strictly to attend to the same, and if by neglect he looseth any of His Arms or working Tools, or suffers them to be stole, the full value thereof will be charged against his pay, according to the Custom of the Navy in such Cases, and he shall receive such further punishment as the nature of the Offence may deserve.
4. The same Penalty will be inflicted upon every person who is found to Embezzle, Trade, or Offer to Trade with any of the Ship's Stores of what Nature so ever.

5. No sort of Iron or anything that is made of Iron, or any sort of Cloth or other useful or necessary Articles, are to be given in Exchange for anything but Provisions.

J.C.

As soon as the Ship was properly secured I went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and the other Gentlemen, with a Party of Men under Arms; we took along with us Owhaa-who took us to the place where the Dolphin watered, and made signs to us as well as we could understand that we might Occupy that ground, but it hapned not to be fit for our purpose. No one of the Natives made the IE opposition at our landing, but came to us with all imaginable Marks of Friendship and Submission. We Afterwards made a Circuit through the Woods, and then came on board. We did not find the inhabitants to be numerous, and we imagin'd that several of them had fled from their habitations upon our Arrival in the Bay.

Friday, April 14th 1769 This morning we had a great many Canoes about the Ship; the most of them came from the Westward, and brought nothing with them but a few Cocoa Nuts, etc. Two that appeared to be Chiefs we had on board, together with several others, for it was a hard matter to keep them out of the Ship, as they Climb like Munkeys; but it was still harder to keep them from Stealing but everything that came within their reach; in this they are Prodigious Expert. I made each of these two Chiefs a present of a Hatchet, things that they seemed mostly to value. As soon as we had partly got clear of these People I took 2 Boats and went to the Westward, all the Gentlemen being along with me. My design was to see if there was not a more commodious Harbour, and to try the disposition of the Natives, having along with us the 2 Chiefs above mentioned; the first place we landed at was in great Canoe Harbour (so called by Captain Wallis); here the Natives Flocked about us in great numbers, and in as friendly a manner as we could wish, only that they show'd a great inclination to Pick our Pockets. We were conducted to a Chief, who for distinction sake we called Hurcules. After staying a short time with him, and distributing a few Presents about us, we proceeded farther, and came to a Chief who I shall call Lycurgus; this man entertained us with broil'd fish, Cocoa Nutts, etc., with great Hospitality, and all the time took great care to tell us to take care of our Pockets, as a great number of People had crowded about us. Notwithstanding the care we took, Dr. Solander and Dr. Monkhouse had each of them their Pockets picked: the one of his spy glass and the other of his snuff Box. As soon as Lycurgus was made acquainted with the Theft he dispers'd the people in a moment, and the method he made use of was to lay hold on the first thing that came in his way and throw it at them, and happy was he or she that could get first out of his way. He seem'd very much concern'd for what had hapned, and by way of recompence offered us but everything that was in his House; but we refused to accept of anything, and made signs to him that we only wanted the things again. He had already sent people out after them, and it was not long before they were return'd. We found the Natives very numerous wherever we came, and from what we could judge seemed very peaceably inclin'd. About six o'Clock in the evening we return'd on board, very well satisfied with our little Excursion.

Saturday, April 15th 1769 Winds at E during the day, in the Night a light breeze off the land; and as I apprehend it be usual here for the Trade wind to blow during a great part of the day from the Eastern Board, and to have it Calm or light breezes from the land that is S during the night with fair weather, I shall only mention the wind and weather when they deviate from this rule. This morning several of the Chiefs we had seen Yesterday came on board, and brought with them Hogs, Bread fruit, etc., and for these we gave them Hatchets, Linnen, and such

things as they valued. Having not met with yesterday a more Convenient situation for every purpose we wanted than the place we now are, I therefore, without delay, resolved to pitch upon some spot upon the N-E point of the Bay, properly situated for observing the Transit of Venus, and at the same time under the command of the Ship's Guns, and there to throw up a small fort for our defence. Accordingly I went ashore with a party of men, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Green. We took along with us one of Mr. Banks's Tents, and after we had fix'd upon a place fit for our purpose we set up the Tent and marked out the ground we intended to Occupy. By this time a number of the Natives had got collected together about us, seemingly only to look on, as not one of them had any weapon, either Offensive or defensive. I would suffer none to come within the lines I had marked out, excepting one who appeared to be a chief and old Owhaa-to these 2 men we endeavour'd to explain, as well as we could, that we wanted that ground to Sleep upon such a number of nights and then we should go away. Whether they understood us or no is uncertain, but no one appeared the IE displeas'd at what we was about; indeed the Ground we had fixed upon was of no use to them, being part of the sandy Beach upon the shore of the Bay, and not near to any of their Habitations. It being too late in the day to do anything more, a party with a petty officer was left to guard the Tent, while we with another party took a Walk into the woods, and with us most of the natives. We had but just crossed the River when Mr. Banks shott three Ducks at one shott, which surprised them so much that most of them fell down as though they had been shott likewise. I was in hopes this would have had some good effect, but the event did not prove it, for we had not been long from the Tent before the natives again began to gather about, and one of them more daring than the rest pushed one of the Centinels down, snatched the Musket out of his hand and made a push at him, and then made off, and with him all the rest. Immediately upon this the Officer ordered the party to fire, and the Man who took the musket was shot Dead before he had got far from the Tent, but the musquet was carried quite off when this hapned. I and Mr. Banks with the other party was about half a mile off, returning out of the woods, upon hearing the firing of Muskets, and the Natives leaving us at the same time, we Suspected that something was the matter and hastened our march, but before we arrived the whole was over, and every one of the Natives fled except old Owhaa, who stuck by us the whole time, and I believe from the first he either knew or had some suspicion that the People would attempt something at the Tent, as he was very much against our going into the Woods out of sight of the Tent. However, he might have other reasons, for Mr. Hicks, being ashore the day before, the natives would not permit him to go into the Woods. This made me resolved to go and see whether they meant to prescribe bounds to us or no. Old Owhaa, as I have said before, was the only one of the Natives that stayed by us, and by his means we prevail'd on about 20 of them to come to the Tent and there sit down with us, and Endeavour'd by every means in our power to Convince them that the Man was kill'd for taking away the Musket, and that we still would be friends with them. At sunset they left us seemingly satisfied, and we struck our Tent and went on board.

Sunday, April 16th 1769 This day worked the Ship nearer the Shore and moored her in such a manner as to command all the shore of the N-E part of the Bay, but more particularly the place where we intended to Erect a Fort. Punished Richard Hutchins, seaman, with 12 lashes for disobeying commands. Several of the Natives came down to the shore of the Bay, but not one of them came off to the Ship during the whole day. In the evening I went on shore with only a Boat's crew and some of the Gentlemen. The Natives gathered about us to the Number of about 30 or 40, and brought us Cocoa Nuts, etc., and seemed as friendly as ever.

Monday, April 17th 1769 At two o'Clock this morning, departed this life, Mr. Alex Buchan, Landskip Draftsman to Mr. Banks, a Gentleman well skill'd in his profession and one that will be greatly missed in the Course of this Voyage. He had long been subject to a disorder in his Bowels, which had more than once brought him to the very point of Death, and was at one time subject to fits, of one of which he was taken on Saturday morning; this brought on his former disorder, which put a Period to his life. Mr. Banks thought it not so advisable to Inter the Body ashore in a place where we were utter strangers to the Custom of the Natives on such occasions; it was therefore sent out to sea and committed to that Element with all the decency the Circumstance of the place would admit of. This morning several of the Chiefs from the Westward made us a Visit: they brought with them Emblems of Peace, which are Young Plantain Trees. These they put on board the Ship before they would venture themselves. They brought us a present of 2 Hogs (an Article we find here very Scarce) and some Bread Fruit; for these they had Hatchets and other things. In the afternoon we set up one of the Ship's Tents ashore, and Mr. Green and myself stay'd there the night to observe an eclipse of Jupiter's first Satilite, which we was hinder'd from seeing by Clouds.

Tuesday, April 18th 1769 Cloudy weather with some showers of rain. This morning took as many people out of the Ship as could possibly be spared, and set about Erecting a Fort. Some were employ'd in throughing up intrenchment, while others was cutting facines, Picquets, etc. The Natives were so far from hindering us that several of them assisted in bringing the Picquets and facines out of the woods, and seemed quite unconcern'd at what we was about. The wood we made use of for this occasion we purchased of them, and we cut no Tree down before we had first obtained their Consent. By this time all the Ship's sails were unbent and the Armourer's Forge set up to repair the Ironwork, etc. Served fresh Pork to the Ship's Company to-day for the first time. This is like to be a very scarce Article with us, but as to Bread fruit, Cocoa Nutts and Plaintains, the Natives supply us with as much as we can destroy.

Wednesday, April 19th 1769 This morning Lycurgus, whose real name is Toobouratomita, came with his family from the Westward in order, from what we could understand, to live near us. He brought with him the cover of a House, with several other Materials for building one. We intend to requite the confidence this man seems to put in us by treating him with all imaginable kindness. Got on shore some Empty Casks, which we placed in a double row along the Bank of the River, by way of a brE work on that side.

Thursday, April 20th 1769 Wind at S-E and Squally, with rain. All hands employ'd on shore, and nothing remarkable, excepting a Hog weighing about 90 pound was brought alongside the Ship for Sale, but those who brought it would not part with it for anything we could offer them but a Carpenter's broad axe, and this was what we could not part with; they carried it away. Thus we see those very People who but 2 years ago prefer'd a spike Nail to an Axe of any Sort, have so far learnt the use of them that they will not part with a Pig of 10 or 12 pounds weight for anything under a Hatchet, and even those of an inferior or small sort are of no great esteem with them, and small Nails such as 10 penny, 20 penny, or any under 40 penny, are of no value at all; but beads, particularly white cut glass beads, are much valued by them. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander lays ashore to-night for the first time, their Markee's being set up within the Walls of the Fort and fit for their reception.

Friday, April 21st 1769 Got the Copper Oven ashore and fixed it in the bank of the brEwork. Yesterday, as Mr. Green and Dr. Monkhouse were taking a walk, they happened to meet with the Body of the Man we had shott, as the Natives made them fully understand; the manner in

which the body was interred being a little extraordinary. I went to-day, with some others, to see it. Close by the House wherein he resided when living was built a small shed, but whether for the purpose or no I cannot say, for it was in all respects like some of the Sheds or Houses they live in. This shed was about 14 or 16 feet long, 10 or 12 broad, and of a proportionable height. One end was wholly open, the other end and two sides was partly inclosed with a kind of wicker'd work. In this Shed lay the Corps, upon a Bier or frame of wood, with a matted bottom, like a Cott frame used at Sea, and Supported by 4 Posts about 5 feet from the Ground. The body was cover'd with a Matt, and over that a white Cloth; alongside of the Body lay a wooden Club, one of their Weapons of War. The Head of the Corps lay next the close end of the Shed, and at this end lay 2 Cocoa Nutt Shells, such as they sometimes use to carry water in; at the other end of the Shed was a Bunch of Green leaves, with some dry'd twigs tied all together and stuck in the Ground, and a stone lying by them as big as a Cocoa Nutt. Near to these lay a young Plaintain Tree, such as they use as Emblems of Peace, and by it lay a stone Axe. At the open end of the Shed was stuck upright in the ground the Stem of a Plaintain Tree about 5 feet high, on the Top of which stood a Cocoa Nutt shell full of fresh water, and on the side of the post hung a small Bag, wherein was a few pieces of Bread Fruit roasted ready for eating. Some of the pieces were fresh and others Stale. The Natives did not seem to like that we should go near the body, and stood at a little distance themselves while we examin'd these matters, and appeared to be pleased when we came away. It certainly was no very agreeable place, for it stunk intollerably, and yet it was not above 10 yards from the Huts wherein several of the living resided. The first day we landed we saw the Skeleton of a human being laying in this manner under a shade that was just big enough to cover it, and some days after that, when some of the Gentlemen went with a design to examine it more narrowly, it was gone. It was at this time thought that this manner of interring their Dead was not common to all ranks of People, as this was the first we had seen Except the Skeleton just mentioned; but various were the opinions concerning the Provisions, etc., laid about the Dead. Upon the whole, it should seem that these people not only believe in a Supreem being, but in a future state also, and this must be meant either as an Offering to some Deitie or for the use of the Dead in the other world; but this latter is not very probable, as there appeared to be no Priest Craft in the thing, for whatever Provisions were put there it appeared very plain to us that there it remain'd until it consumed away of itself. It is most likely that we shall see more of this before we leave the Island, but if it is a Religious ceremony we may not be able to understand it, for the misteries of most Religions are very Dark and not easily understood, even by those who profess them.

Saturday, April 22nd to Thursday, April 27th 1769 Nothing worthy of Note Hapned. The people were Continually at work upon the Fort, and the Natives were so far reconciled to us that they rather assisted us than not. This day we mounted 6 Swivels at the Fort, which was now nearly finished. This struck the Natives with some fear, and some fishermen who lived upon the point moved farther off, and old Owhaa told us by signs that after 4 days we should fire Great Guns from the Ship. There were some other Circumstances co-operated with this man's prophecy, whether an opinion hath prevailed amongst them that after that time we intend to fire upon them, or that they intend to Attack us, we know not: the first we do not intend unless the latter takes place, which is highly improbable.

Friday, April 28th 1769 This morning a great number of the natives came to us in their Canoes from differant parts of the Island, several of whom we had not seen before. One of these was the Woman called by the Dolphins the Queen of this Island; she first went to Mr. Banks's tent at the fort, where she was not known, till the Master, happening to go ashore, who knew her, and brought her on board with 2 Men and several Women, who seem'd to be all of her family. I

made them all some presents or other, but to Oberiea (for that is this Woman's name) I gave several things, in return for which, as soon as I went on shore with her, she gave me a Hog and several Bunches of plaintains. These she caused to be carried from her Canoes up to the Fort in a kind of Procession, she and I bringing up the rear. This Woman is about 40 years of Age, and, like most of the other Women, very Masculine. She is head or chief of her own family or Tribe, but to all appearance hath no Authority over the rest of the Inhabitants, whatever she might have when the Dolphin was here. Hercules, whose real Name is Tootaha, is, to all appearance, the Chief Man of the Island, and hath generally visited us twice a week since we have been here, and came always attended by a number of Canoes and people; and at those times we were sure to have a supply, more or less, of everything the Island afforded, both from himself and from those that came with him, and it is a Chance thing that we get a Hog at any other time. He was with us at this Time, and did not appear very well pleased at the Notice we took of Oberiea.

Saturday, April 29th 1769 This day got the 4 guns out of the Hold, and Mounted 2 of them on the Quarter Deck and the other 2 in the Fort on the Bank of the River.

Sunday, April 30th 1769 This being the day that Owhaa told us that we should fire our Guns, no one of us went from the Fort; however, the day passed over without any Visible alteration in the behaviour of any one of the Natives.

Monday, May 1st 1769 This morning Tootaha came on board the Ship, and was very Desireous of seeing into every Chest and Drawer that was in the Cabin. I satisfied his curiosity so far as to open most of those that belong'd to me. He saw several things that he took a fancy to, and collected them together; but at last he Cast his eyes upon the Adze I had from Mr. Stephens that was made in imitation of one of their Stone Adzes or Axes. The Moment he lays his hands upon it he of his own accord put away everything he had got before, and ask'd me if I would give him that, which I very readily did, and he went away without asking for any one thing more, which I by experience knew was a sure sign that he was well pleased with what he had got.

This day one of the Natives, who appeared to be a Chief, dined with us, as he had done some days before; but then there were always some Women present, and one or another of them put the Victuals into his Mouth, but this day there hapned to be none to Perform that Office. When he was help'd to victuals and desir'd to eat, he sat in the Chair like a Statute, without once attempting to put a Morsel to his mouth, and would certainly have gone without his dinner if one of the Servants had not fed him. We have often found the women very officious in feeding us, from which it would seem that it is the Custom on some occasions for them to feed the Chiefs. However, this is the only instance of that kind we have seen, or that they could not help themselves as well as any of us.

This afternoon we set up the Observatory and took the Astronomical Quadrant ashore for the first time, together with some other Instruments, the fort being now finished and made as Tenantable as the time, Nature, and situation of the Ground and Materials we had to work upon would admit of. The N and S parts consisted of a Bank of Earth 4 1/2 feet high on the inside, and a Ditch without, 10 feet broad and 6 feet deep; on the W side facing the Bay a Bank of Earth 4 feet high, and Palisades upon that, but no Ditch, the works being at high-water mark. On the E side upon the Bank of the river was placed a double row of Casks, and, as this was the weakest side, the 2 four Pounders were planted there, and the whole was defended,



beside these 2 Guns, with 6 Swivels, and generally about 45 Men with small Arms, including the Officers and Gentlemen who resided ashore. I now thought myself perfectly secure from anything these people would attempt.

Tuesday, May 2nd 1769 This morning, about 9 o'Clock, when Mr. Green and I went to set up the Quadrant, it was not to be found. It had never been taken out of the Packing Case (which was about 18 Inches square) since it came from Mr. Bird, the Maker; and the whole was pretty heavy, so that it was a matter of Astonishment to us all how it could be taken away, as a Centinal stood the whole night within 5 Yards of the door of the Tent, where it was put, together with several other Instruments; but none of them was missing but this. However, it was not long before we got information that one of the Natives had taken it away and carried it to the Eastward. Immediately a resolution was taken to detain all the large Canoes that were in the Bay, and to seize upon Tootaha and some others of the principal people, and keep them in Custody until the Quadrant was produced; but this last we did not think proper immediately to put in Execution, as we had only Oberiea in our power, and the detaining of her by force would have alarm'd all the rest. In the meantime, Mr. Banks (who is always very alert upon all occasions wherein the Natives are concern'd) and Mr. Green went into the Woods to enquire of Toobouratomita which way and where the Quadrant was gone. I very soon was inform'd that these 3 was gone to the Eastward in quest of it, and some time after I followed myself with a small party of Men; but before I went away I gave orders that if Tootaha came either to the Ship or the Fort he was not to be detain'd, for I found he had no hand in taking away the Quadrant, and that there was almost a Certainty of getting it again. I met Mr. Banks and Mr. Green about 4 mi from the Fort, returning with the Quadrant. This was about Sun set, and we all got back to the Fort about 8 o'Clock, where I found Tootaha in Custody, and a number of the Natives crowding about the Gate of the Fort. My going into the Woods with a party of Arm'd men so alarmed the Natives that in the evening they began to move off with their Effects, and a Double Canoe putting off from the Bottom of the Bay was ohserv'd by the Ship, and a Boat sent after her. In this Canoe hapned to be Tootaha, and as soon as our Boat came up with her, he and all the people that were in the Canoe jump'd overboard, and he only was taken up and brought on board the Ship, together with the Canoe; the rest were permitted to swim to the Shore. From the Ship Tootaha was sent to the Fort, where Mr. Hicks thought proper to detain him until I return'd. The Scene between Toobouratomita and Tootaha, when the former came into the Fort and found the latter in Custody, was really moving. They wept over each other for some time. As for Tootaha, he was so far prepossessed with the thought that he was to be kill'd that he could not be made sencible to the Contrary till he was carried out of the Fort to the people, many of whom Expressed their joy by embracing him; and, after all, he would not go away until he had given us two Hogs, notwithstanding we did all in our power to hinder him, for it is very certain that the Treatment he had meet with from us did not merit such a rEastward. However, we had it in our power to make him a present of equal value whenever we pleased.

Wednesday, May 3rd 1769 Very early this morning Tootaha sent for the Canoe we had detained yesterday, and in the Afternoon sent a man for an Axe and a Shirt in return for the Hogs he gave us last night; but as this man told us that Tootaha would not come near us himself in less than 10 days, we thought proper not to send them, to try if he would not come himself for them sooner.

Thursday, May 4th 1769 Some people came to the Fort to-day from York Island; one of them gave us an account of 22 Islands lying in this Neighbourhood. Set up the 2 Clocks; one in the Tent wherein Mr. Green and I lay, and the other in the Observatory. This evening Tootaha sent

a man again for the Axe and Shirt, and we sent him word by the same man that Mr. Banks and I would come and see him to-morrow and bring them along with us, for it now became necessary that we should take some steps to reconcile this man to us in order to procure a sufficient supply of Bread fruit, and Cocoa Nuts, which we have not had for these 2 days past, owing, as we apprehend, to Tootaha not being reconciled to us, or otherwise the people take this method to shew their resentment of the Treatment their Chief meet with.

Friday, May 5th 1769 Early this morning Tootaha sent some of his people to put us in mind of our promise, and these seem'd very uneasy until we set out, which Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and myself did about 10 o'clock in the Pinnace, having one of these men with us. As soon as we came to Appara, the place where Tootaha resided, we saw a great number of People at the landing place near his House; one among them, who had a large Turban about his Head, and a long white stick in his Hand, drove the others from the landing place by beating them with his Stick, and throwing stones at them, and at the same time directed us whereabouts to land. After we had landed he conducted us to the Chief, but in this there was no order, everyone crowded upon us crying out "Tyo Tootaha," this Tootaha was our Friend. We found the chief setting in the shade under a large Tree, with a Circle of old men round him; he made us set down by him, and immediately asked for the Axe. I then gave him one, together with an upper Garment made of Broad Cloth after their Fashion, and a Shirt. The Garment he put on, but the Shirt he gave to the man who first received us at landing, who was now seated by us, and the Chief seemed desirous that we should take particular notice of him. By that Time Obaria, and several other women whom we knew, came and sat down by us. Tootaha did not stay long before he went away, as we thought to show himself to the people in his new Dress. He was not gone long before he return'd and took his seat again for a few', then went away again, as we was told, to order something to be got for us to Eat, and at this time we gladly would have gone too, being almost Suffocated with the Crowd that was about us. However, here we remained for about 10' longer, when word was brought us that the Chief wanted us. We were then conducted to our own Boat, where we found him setting alone under the Awning. He made signs to us to come to him, which we did, and as many with us as the Boat would hold. Here he ordered some Bread fruit and Cocoa Nut to be brought, of both of which we tasted.

After we had set here sometime, a Message was brought to the Chief, who immediately went out of the Boat, and we was desired to follow, and was conducted to a large Aria or Court Yard on one side of his House, where we were entertained with Public wrestling. Tootaha seated himself at one end of the place, and several of his Principal men sat round him in a Semicircle. We were desir'd to sit down here likewise, but we rather chose to walk about. Everything being now ready, several men entered the Theater, 8, 10, or 12, sometimes more. These walked about in a Stooping Poster, with their left hand upon their right brE, and with their Right hand Open struck with a smack their left Arm and fore-arm. In this manner they walked about until one Challenged another, which was done by motion and jesture, without speaking one word. The 2 Antagonists would then meet and endeavour to seize each other by the thighs, but if that fail'd they would seize each other by the Hair of the Head or wherever they could, and then Wrestle together until by main Strength the one or the other was thrown on his back. This was always (Except once) followed by three Huzzas from some old men who sat in the House, and at the same time another Company of men would dance for about a minute, the Wrestlers all the time continuing their game without taking the IE notice of anything else. The only dexterity the Wrestlers seemed to make use of was in first seizing each other, for after they had closed it was all decided by Main strength. It would sometimes happen that neither the one nor the other could throw his Antagonist; in this Case they would either part by mutual consent or were

parted by others. The Conqueror never exulted over the Conquer'd, neither did the Conquer'd ever repine at his ill luck, but the whole was carried on with great good Humour. There were present, Young and old, near 500 People. The women do not seem to partake of this diversion, only some few of the Principal ones were present, and that appeared to be owing to us being there.

After this was over we were given to understand that we were to go to Dinner, and were desired to follow Tootaha, who led us into our own Boat, and soon after came a small Pig ready roasted, with some Bread Fruit and Cocoa Nuts. Here we thought we were to have dined, but Tootaha, after waiting about 10', made signs to us to put off the Boat and go a Board, which we did, and bring him and Toobouratomida along with us. As soon as we got on board we all dined on the Cheer the Chief had provided. We soon found the good effects of having made friends with this man, for it was no sooner known to the Natives that he was on board the Ship than they brought Bread Fruit, Cocoa Nuts, etc., to the Fort.

Saturday, May 6<sup>th</sup> to Sunday, May 7<sup>th</sup> 1769 Nothing remarkable, only that the Natives supply us with as much bread fruits and Cocoa Nuts as we can destroy.

Monday, May 8<sup>th</sup> 1769 Early this morning the Master went to the Eastward in the Pinnacle to try if he could procure some Hogs and Fowls from that Quarter; but he return'd in the evening without success. He saw but very few, and those the inhabitants pretended belonged to Tootaha; so great is this man's influence or authority over them that they dare part with nothing without his Consent, or otherwise they use his Name to Excuse themselves from parting with the few they have, for it is very certain these things are in no great plenty with them.

Tuesday, May 9<sup>th</sup> to Thursday, May 11<sup>th</sup> 1769 Nothing remarkable hapned for these three days. Oberiea, the Dolphin's queen, made us a Visit for the first time since the Quadrant was Stolen. She introduced herself with a Small Pig, for which she had a Hatchet, and as soon as she got it she Lugg'd out a Broken Axe, and several pieces of Old Iron. These, I believe, she must have had from the Dolphin; the Axe she wanted to be mended, and Axes made of the old iron. I obliged her in the first, but excused myself in the latter: since the Natives had seen the Forge at work they have frequently brought pieces of Iron to be made into one sort of Tool or other, which hath generally been done whenever it did not hinder our own work-being willing to Oblige them in everything in my power. These Pieces of old Iron the Natives must have got from the Dolphin, as we know of no other Ship being here; and very probable some from us, for there is no species of Theft they will not commit to get this Article, and I may say the same of the common Seamen when in these parts.

Friday, May 12<sup>th</sup> 1769 Cloudy weather with Showers of rain. This morning a Man and 2 Young Women, with some others, came to the Fort, whom we had not seen before, and as their manner of introducing themselves was a little uncommon, I shall insert it. Mr. Banks was as usual at the gate of the Fort trading with the people, when he was told that some Strangers were coming, and therefore stood to receive them. The Company had with them about a Dozen young Plantain Trees, and some other small Plants, these they laid down about 20 feet from Mr. Banks; the people then made a Lane between him and them. When this was done the Man (who appeared to be only a Servant to the two Women) brought the young Plantains singly, together with some of the other plants, and gave them to Mr. Banks, and at the delivery of each pronounced a Short sentence which we understood not. After he had thus disposed of all his plantain trees, he took several pieces of Cloth and spread them on the ground. One of

the Young women then stepp'd upon the Cloth, and with as much innocency as one could possibly conceive, exposed herself, entirely naked, from the waist down Northwards; in this manner she turn'd herself once or twice round, I am not certain which, then stepped off the cloth, and dropp'd down her Cloaths. More Cloth was then spread upon the former, and she again performed the same Ceremony. The Cloth was then rowled up and given to Mr. Banks, and the two Young women went and Embraced him, which ended the Ceremony.

Saturday, May 13th 1769 Nothing worthy of Note hapned during the day; in the Night one of the Natives attempted to get into the Fort by Climbing over the Wall, but, being discovered by the Centinel, he made off. The Iron and Iron Tools daily in use at the Armourer's Forge are Temptations that these people cannot possibly withstand.

Sunday, May 14th 1769 This day we performed divine Service in one of the Tents in the fort, where several of the Natives attended and behaved with great decency the whole time. This day closed with an odd scen at the Gate of the Fort, where a young Fellow above 6 feet high made love to a little Girl about 10 or 12 years of Age publicly before several of our people and a number of the Natives. What makes me mention this is because it appear'd to be done according to Custom, for there were several women present, particularly Obariea and several others of the better sort, and these were so far from showing the IE disapprobation that they instructed the Girl how she should Act her part, who, young as she was, did not seem to want it.

Monday, May 15th 1769 Winds variable and cloudy weather. Last Night one of our Water Casks was taken away from the outside of the Fort, where they stood full of water. In the morning there was not one of the Natives but what new it was gone; yet, Contrary to what we had always met with on these Occasions, not one of them would give us any information about it, and I thought it of too little Consequence to take any methods to Oblige them. In the evening Toobouratomida and his Wife, and a Man belonging to Tootaha, would needs lay all Night by the Casks to prevent any more from being taken away; but, as we had placed a Centinel there, this care of theirs became unnecessary, and they were prevailed upon to go home; but before they went away they made signs to the Centinel to keep his Eyes open. From this it should seem that they knew that an attempt would be made in the night to take away more, which would have been done had not the Centinel prevented it.

Tuesday, May 16th 1769 Winds W. The morning cloudy, with heavy showers of rain; the Remainder of the day fair weather. From this day nothing remarkable hapned until the 22nd.

Monday, May 22nd 1769 which was usher'd in with thick Cloudy weather, and Excessive hard Showers of rain and very much Thunder and Lightning, which Continued the Greater part of the day.

Tuesday, May 23rd 1769 Wind S and fair weather in the Forenoon, but in the Afternoon Showers. We have had a Scarcity of all sorts of Fruit for these 2 days past, which we imagine to be owing to the Wet weather.

Wednesday, May 24th 1769 Fine clear weather all this day. Having found the Long boat Leakey for these few days past, we hauld her ashore to-day to stop the leakes, when, to our great surprise, we found her bottom so much Eaten by the Worms that it was necessary to give her a new one, and all the Carpenters were immediately set to work upon her.

Thursday, May 25th 1769 Most part of these 24 hours Cloudy, with frequent Showers of Rain.

Friday, May 26th 1769 Some flying showers again. This morning we hauled the pinnace a Shore to examine her bottom, and had the Satisfaction to find that not one worm had touched it, notwithstanding she hath been in the water nearly as long as the Long Boat. This must be owing to the White Lead with which her bottom is painted, the Long boats being paid with Varnish of Pine, for no other reason can be assign'd why the one should be preserved and the other destroy'd, when they are both built on the Same sort of Wood and have been in equal use. From this Circumstance alone the Bottom of all Boats sent into Countrys where these worms are ought to be painted with White Lead, and the Ships supply'd with a good stock in order to give them a New Coat whenever it's necessary. By this means they would be preserved free from these destructive Vermin. The Long boat's Bottom being so much destroy'd appear'd a little extraordinary, as the Dolphin's Launch was in the Water at this very place full as long, and no such thing happened to her, as the Officers that were in the Dolphin say.

Saturday, May 27th 1769 Winds variable and fair weather.

Sunday, May 28th 1769 Winds S and clear weather. This morning myself, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander set out in the Pinnace to pay Tootaha a Visit, who had moved from Apparra to the S-W part of the island. What induced us to make him this visit was a Message we had received from him some days ago importing that if we would go to him he would give us several Hogs. We had no great faith in this, yet we were resolved to try, and set out accordingly. It was Night before we reached the place where he was, and, as we had left the Boat about half-way behind us, we were obliged to take up our Quarters with him for the Night. The Chief received us in a Friendly manner, and a Pig was ordered to be killed and dressed for Supper; but we saved his Life for the present, thinking it would do us more service in another place, and we supped on Fruit and what else we could get. Here was, along with the Chief, Obariea and many more that we knowd. They all seem'd to be travellers like ourselves, for neither the Canoes they had along with them, nor the Houses where they were, were sufficient to contain the one half of them. We were in all Six of us, and after supper began to look out for Lodgings. Mr. Banks went to one place, Dr. Solander to another, while I and the other 3 went to a third. We all of us took as much care of the little we had about us as possible, knowing very well what sort of People we were among; yet, notwithstanding all the care we took, before 12 o'clock the most of us had lost something or other. For my own part I had my Stockings taken from under my head, and yet I am certain that I was not a Sleep the whole time. Obariea took charge of Mr. Banks's things, and yet they were stol'n from her, as she pretended. Tootaha was acquainted with what had hapned, I believe by Obariea herself, and both him and her made some stir about it; but this was all meer shew, and ended in nothing. A little time after this Tootaha came to the Hutt where I and those that were with me lay, and entertain'd us with a Consort of Musick consisting of 3 Drums, 4 Flutes, and Singing. This lasted about an Hour, and then they retir'd. The Music and Singing was so much of a piece that I was very glad when it was over. We stay'd with them till near noon the next day in hopes of getting some of our things again, and likewise some Hogs; but we were at last obliged to come away with the one we had saved out of the Fire last Night, and a promise from Tootaha that he would come to the Ship in a Day or two with more, and bring with him the things that are lost, a promise we had no reason to expect he would fulfill. Thus ended our Visit, and we got to the Fort late in the evening.

Tuesday, May 30th 1769 We are now very buisey in preparing our Instruments, etc., for the Observations, and Instructing such Gentlemen in the use of them, as I intend to send to other parts to observe, for fear we should fail here.

Wednesday, 31st 1769 Late this Evening the Carpenters finished the Long boat.

Thursday, June 1st 1769 This day I sent Lieutenant Gore in the Long boat to York Island with Dr. Monkhouse and Mr. Sporing (a Gentleman belonging to Mr. Banks) to Observe the Transit of Venus, Mr. Green having furnished them with Instruments for that purpose. Mr. Banks and some of the Natives of this Island went along with them.

Friday, June 2nd 1769 Very early this morning Lieutenant Hicks, Mr. Clark, Mr. Pickersgill and Mr. Saunders went away in the Pinnacle to the Eastward, with orders to fix upon some Convenient situation upon this Island, and there to Observe the Transit of Venus, they being likewise provided with Instruments for that purpose.

Saturday, June 3rd 1769 This day proved as favourable to our purpose as we could wish. Not a Cloud was to be seen the whole day, and the Air was perfectly Clear, so that we had every advantage we could desire in observing the whole of the Passage of the planet Venus over the Sun's Disk. We very distinctly saw an Atmosphere or Dusky shade round the body of the planet, which very much disturbed the times of the Contact, particularly the two internal ones. Dr. Solander observed as well as Mr. Green and myself, and we differ'd from one another in Observing the times of the Contact much more than could be expected. Mr. Green's Telescope and mine where of the same Magnifying power, but that of the Doctor was greater than ours. It was nearly calm the whole day, and the Thermometer Exposed to the Sun about the middle of the day rose to a degree of heat we have not before met with.

Sunday, June 4th 1769 Punished Archd. Wolf with 2 Dozen lashes for Theft, having broken into one of the Storerooms and stol'n from thence a large quantity of Spike Nails; some few of them where found upon him. This evening the Gentlemen that were sent to observe the Transit of Venus, return'd with success; those that were sent to York Island were well received by the Natives. That Island appear'd to them not to be very fruitful.

Monday, June 5th 1769 Got some of the Bread ashore out of the Bread Room to dry and Clean. Yesterday being His Majesty's birthday, we kept it to-day and had several of the Chiefs to dine with us.

Tuesday, June 6th 1769 This day and for some days past we have been informd by several of the Natives that about 10 or 15 months ago Two Ships touched at this Island and stayed 10 days in a Harbour to the Eastward, called Ohidea, the Commander's name was Tootteraso, - so at IE the Natives call him-and that one of the Natives, Brother to the Chief of Ohidea, went away with him. They likewise say these ships brought the venereal distemper to this Island, where it is now as Common as in any part of the world, and which the people bear with as little concern as if they have been accustom'd to it for Ages past. We had not been here many days before some of our People got this disease, and as no such thing hapned to any of the Dolphin's people while she was here, that I ever heard of, I had reason (notwithstanding the improbability of the thing) to think that we had brought it along with us, which gave me no small uneasiness, and did all in my power to prevent its progress, but all I could do was to little

purpose, as I was obliged to have the most part of the Ship's Company ashore every day to work upon the Fort, and a Strong Guard every Night; and the Women were so very liberal with their favours-or else Nails, Shirts, etc., were temptations that they could not withstand, that this distemper very soon spread itself over the greatest part of the Ship's company, but now I have the satisfaction to find that the Natives all agree that we did not bring it here. We have several times seen Iron tools and other Articles with these people that we suspected came not from the Dolphin, and these they now say they had from these two Ships.

Wednesday, June 7th to Friday, June 9th 1769 These three days we have been employ'd in Careening both sides of the Ship, and paying them with Pitch and Brimstone. We found her Bottom in good order, and that the worm had not got into it.

Saturday, June 10th 1769 Wind Variable, with very much rain all day and last night.

Sunday, June 11th 1769 Cloudy, with rain last night and this morning; the remainder of the day fair weather. This day Mr. Banks and I took Toobouratomita on board the Ship and shew'd him the print containing the Colours worn by the ships of Different Nations, and very soon made him understand that we wanted to know which of them was worn by the ships that were at Ohidea. He at once pitched upon the Spanish Flag and would by no means admit of any other; this, together with several Articles we have lately seen amongst these people, such as Jackets, Shirts, etc., usually worn by Spanish Seamen, proves beyond doubt that they must have been Ships of that Nation, and come from some Port on the Coast of South America.

Monday, June 12th 1769 Yesterday Complaint was made to me by some of the Natives that John Thurman and James Nicholson, Seamen, had taken by force from them several Bows and Arrows and plaited Hair, and the fact being proved upon them they were this day punished with 2 dozen lashes each.

Tuesday, June 13th 1769 Some Showers of rain last night, but fair weather the most part of the day. Tootaha, whom we have not seen for some time past, paid us a Visit to-Day. He brought with him a Hog and some Bread Fruit, for which he was well paid.

Wednesday, June 14th 1769 Between 2 and 4 o'clock this morning, one of the Natives stole out of the Fort an Iron rake, made use of for the Oven. It hapned to be set up against the Wall, and by that means was Visible from the outside, and had been seen by them in the evening, as a man had been seen lurking about the Fort some Hours before the thing was missed. I was informed by some others of the Natives that he watch'd an opportunity when the Centinel's back was turned, he hooked it with a long crooked stick, and haled it over the Wall. When I came to be informed of this theft in the Morning I resolved to recover it by some Means or other, and accordingly went and took possession of all the Canoes of any value I could meet with, and brought them into the River behind the Fort to the number of 22, and told the Natives then present (most of them being the owners of the Canoes) that unless the principal things they had stol'n from us were restored I would burn them every one: not that I ever intended to put this in execution, and yet I was very much displeas'd with them, as they were daily committing, or attempting to commit, one theft or other, when at the same time-contrary to the opinion of everybody, I would not suffer them to be fir'd upon, for this would have been putting it in the power of the Centinels to have fir'd upon them upon the most slitest occasions, as I had before experienced. And I have a great Objection to firing with powder only amongst People who know not the difference, for by this they would learn to despise fire Arms and think

their own Arms superior, and if ever such an Opinion prevailed they would certainly attack you, the Event of which might prove as unfavourable to you as them. About Noon the rake was restored us, when they wanted to have their Canoes again; but now, as I had them in my possession, I was resolved to try if they would not redeem them by restoring what they had stol'n from us before. The Principal things which we had lost was the Marine Musquet, a pair of Pistols belonging to Mr. Banks, a Sword belonging to one of the Petty Officers, and a Water Cask, with some other Articles not worth mentioning. Some said that these things were not in the Island, others that Tootaha had them, and those of Tootaha's friends laid the whole to Obariea, and I believe the whole was between these two persons.

Thursday, June 15th 1769 We have been employed for some Days past in overhauling all the Sea Provisions, and stowing such as we found in a State of decay to hand, in order to be first expended; but having the people divided between the Ship and the Shore, this work, as well as refitting the Ship, goes on but slowly.

Friday, June 16th to Saturday, June 17th 1769 Variable winds, with Showers of rain and Cloudy weather.

Sunday, June 18th 1769 Variable winds and Clear weather. This Night was observed the Moon totally Eclipsed.

Monday, June 19th 1769 Punished James Tunley with 12 lashes for taking Rum out of the Cask on the Quarter Deck.

Tuesday, June 20th 1769 Got all the Powder aShore to Air, all of which we found in a bad Condition, and the Gunner informs me that it was very little better when it came first on board. Last Night Obariea made us a visit, whom we have not seen for some time. We were told of her coming, and that she would bring with her some of the Stol'n things, which we gave Credit to because we know'd several of them were in her possession; but we were surprised to find this Woman put herself wholly in our power, and not bring with her one Article of what we had lost. The Excuse she made was that her Gallant, a man that used to be along with her, did Steal them, and she had beat him and turned him away, but she was so Sencible of her own Guilt that she was ready to drop down through fear, and yet she had resolution Enough to insist upon Sleeping in Mr. Banks's Tent all Night, and was with difficulty prevailed upon to go to her canoe, altho no one took the IE notice of her. In the morning she brought her Canoe, with everything she had, to the Gate of the Fort, after which we could not help admiring her for her Courage and the Confidence she seem'd to place in us, and thought that we could do no less than to receive her into favour, and except the Present she had brought us, which consisted of a Hog, a Dog, some Bread Fruit and Plantains. We refused to Except of the Dog, as being an Animal we had no use for; at which she seemed a little surprised, and told us it was very good eating, and we very soon had an opportunity to find that it was so, for Mr. Banks, having bought a Basket of Fruit in which was the Thigh of a Dog ready dressed, of this several of us tasted, and found that it was Meat not to be despised, and therefore took Obariea's Dog and had him immediately dressed by some of the Natives in the following manner: They first made a hole in the Ground about a foot Deep, in which they made a fire and heated some small Stones. While this was doing the Dog was strangled and the hair got off by laying him frequently on the fire, and as clean as if it had been scalded off with hot water. His Intrails was taken out, and the whole washed Clean, and as soon as the Stones and Hole was sufficiently heated the fire was put out and part of the Stones were left in the bottom of the



hole. Upon these stones were laid green leafs, and upon them the Dog, together with the Intrails, these were likewise covered with leaves, and over them hot stones; and then the hole was close cover'd with mould. After he had laid here about 4 Hours, the Oven (for so I must call it) was op'ned, and the dog taken out, whole and well done, and it was the Opinion of every one who tasted it that they never eat sweeter Meat, therefore we resolved for the future never to dispise Dog's flesh. It is in this manner that the Natives dress and Bake all their Victuals that require it-Flesh, fish, and Fruit. I now gave over all thoughts of recovering any of the things the Natives had stol'n from us, and therefore intend to give them up their Canoes whenever they apply for them.

Wednesday, June 21st 1769 Employed drying the Powder, or getting on board Wood, Water, etc. Confined Robert Anderson, Seaman, for refusing to obey the orders of the Mate when at work in the Hold. This morning a Chief, whose Name is Oamo, and one we had not seen before, came to the Fort. There came with him a Boy about 7 Years of Age and a Young Woman of about 18 or 20. At the Time of their coming Obariea and several others were in the fort. They went out to meet them, having first uncovered their Heads and Bodies as low as their Waists; and the same thing was done by all those that were on the outside of the Fort. As we looked upon this as a Ceremonial respect, and had not seen it paid to any one before, we thought that this Oamo must be some extraordinary person, and wondered to see so little notice taken of him after the Ceremony was over. The Young woman that came along with him could not be prevailed upon to come into the Fort, and the Boy was Carried upon a Man's back, altho' he was as able to walk as the Man who carried him. This Lead us to inquire who they were; and we was informed that the Boy was Heir Apparent to the Sovereignty of the Island, and the Young Woman was his Sister, and as such the respect was paid them which was due to no one else except the Arreedehi, which was not Tootaha, from what we could learn, but some other person who we had not seen, or like to do, for they say that he is no Friend of ours, and therefore will not come near us. The Young Boy above mentioned is son to Oamo by Obariea, but Oamo and Obariea do not at this time live together as Man and Wife, he not being able to endure with her troublesome disposition. I mention this because it shows that seperation in the Marriage state is not unknown to these people.

Thursday, June 22nd 1769 This morning I released Robert Anderson from Confinement at the intercession of the Master and a promise of behaving better for the future.

Friday, June 23rd 1769 This morning Emanuel Parreyra, a Portugue, was missing, and I had some reason to think that he was gone with an intent to stay here. It was not long before I was informed that he was at Apparra with Tootaha. The Man who gave us this information was one of Tootaha's Servants. He was Offer'd a Hatchet if he would go to Apparra and bring him to us. This was perhaps the very thing he came for, for he immediately set out and return'd with the Man in the Evening. The man said in his defence that as he was going to the Boat to go on board last night, he was taken away by force by 3 Men, and upon enquiring farther into this matter I found it to be so, and that Tootaha wanted to have kept him, only that he was perswaded to the contrary, or perhaps he thought that the Hatchet he would get by returning him would do him more service than the Man.

Saturday, June 24th to Sunday, June 25th 1769 Nothing remarkable.

Monday, June 26th 1769 Very early this morning I set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, with an intent to make the Circuit of the Island in order to Examine and draw a Sketch

of the Coast and Harbours thereof. We took our rout to the Eastward, and this night reached the Isthmus, which is a low neck of Land running across the Island, which divides it into two districts or Governments wholly independent of each other as we was informed. The first thing we saw which struck our attention in this day's rout was a small Pig that had not been roasted above a Day or 2 laid upon one of their Altars near to a place where lay the Body or Bones of a Dead Person. This Pig must have been put there as an offering to their God, but on what account we know not. The Coast from Royal Bay trends E by S and E-S-E 10 mi S by E and S 11 mi to the Isthmus. In the first direction the Shore is mostly open to the Sea, but in the last it is cover'd by reefs of rocks; these forms several good Harbours, wherein are safe Anchorage for Shipping in 16, 18, 20, and 24 fm, with other Conveniences. It was in one of these Harbours the Spanish Ships before mentioned lay; the Natives shew'd us the place where they Pitched their Tent and the Brook they water'd at, otherways there was not the IE signs of Shipping having been there.

Tuesday, June 27th 1769 Winds E and fine weather. It was late last night before we reached the Isthmus, and all the Observations I could make this morning was that it appeared to be a Marshy flatt of about 2 mi in Extent across which the Natives Haul their Canoes partly by land and partly by water. From the Isthmus the land trends E S near 3 lg, to the S-E point of the Great Bay which lies before the Isthmus. On the W side of this point is a Bay called Ohitepepa, which is in many respects similar to Royal Bay, and is situated in every bit as fertile and populous part of the Island. There are other places formed by the Reefs that lay along the Shore between this and the Isthmus, where Shipping can lay in perfect security. The Land then trends S-E and S to the S-E part of the Island, which is near 3 lg, and covered all the way by a Reef of Rocks, but no Harbour. We took up our Quarters at the E part of the Island, being conducted thither by a Young Chief we had Often seen on board the Ship, and the next morning proceeded round the S-E point of the Island, part of which is not cover'd by any reef, but lies wholly open to the Sea and here the Hills rise directly from the Shore. At the Southernmost part of the Island the Shore is again cover'd by a Reef, and there forms a very good Harbour, and the land about it very fertile. At this place we saw a Goose and a Turkey left at Royal Bay by the Dolphin; they were in possession of a Chief who came along with us in the Boat, and remain'd with us the remainder of the day, and conducted us over the Shoals we here meet with; and for this piece of service we lent him a Cloak to Sleep in in the night, but we had not been laid down above 10' before he thought proper to move off with it, but both Mr. Banks and I pursued him so close that he was obliged to relinquish his prize, and we saw no more of him. When we returned to our Lodging we found the House, in which were not less than 2 or 300 people when we went away, intirely deserted, so that we had one of the Largest and best houses on the Island wholly to ourselves; but when they found that we meant them no harm the Chief and his Wife with some others came and Slept by us the remainder of the night. This place is situated on the S-W side of Tiarreboo, the S-E district of the Island, and about 5 mi S-E from the Isthmus. Here is a large, safe, and Commodious Harbour, inferior to none on the whole Island, and the land about it Rich in Produce. We found that the people of this district had had little or no communication with us, yet we was everywhere well received by them. We found all this part of the Island very fertile and the Natives numerous, and had a great many large Double Canoes built and Ornamented uniformly. They were all halled ashore, and appeared to be going to decay for want of use. Their Mories or Burial places stood generally upon these points of land that projected into the Sea, and were both better built and Ornamented than those about Royal Bay-Tootaha's excepted. In general this district appear'd to be in a more flourishing state than the other, although it is not above one fourth part as big and cannot contain nothing near the Number of inhabitants.

Thursday, June 29th 1769 Squally weather with Showers of rain. This morning we left Tiaraboo and entered upon that of Opooreonoo, the N-W district of the Island. The first thing we met with worthy of note was at one of their Mories, where lay the scull bones of 26 Hogs and 6 Dogs. These all lay near to and under one of their Altars. These Animals must have been offer'd as a Sacrifice to their Gods either all at once or at different times, but on what account we could not learn. The next day we met with an Effigy or Figure of a Man made of Basket work and covered with white and Black feathers placed in such order as to represent the Colour of their Hair and Skins when Tattow'd or painted. It was 7 1/2 feet high and the whole made in due proportion; on its head were 4 Nobs not unlike the stumps of Large Horns-3 stood in front and one behind. We were not able to learn what use they made of this Monster; it did not at all appear to us that they paid it the IE Homage as a God: they were not the IE Scrupulous of letting us examine every part of it. I am inclinable to think that it is only used by way of diversion at their Hevas or public entertainments, as Punch is in a Puppet show. We next passed through a Harbour, which is the only one on the S side of Opooreonoo fit for Shipping. It is situated about 5 mi to the Westward of the Isthmus between 2 Small Islands that lay near the shore and a mile from each other. In this Harbour is 11 and 12 fm of water and good Anchorage. About a League and a half to the Westward of this Harbour is the Morie of Oamo or Oberia, for some told us it belong'd to the one and some to the other; it far Exceeds every thing of this Kind upon the whole Island. It is a long square of Stonework built Pyramidically; its base is 267 feet by 87 feet; at the Top it is 250 feet by 8 feet. It is built in the same manner as we do steps leading up to a Sun Dial or fountain erected in the middle of a Square where there is a flite of steps on each side. In this building there are 11 of such steps; each step is about 4 feet in height and the breadth 4 feet 7 inches, but they decreased both in height and breadth from the bottom to the Top. On the middle of the Top stood the Image of a Bird carved in Wood, near it lay the broken one of a Fish carved in stone. There was no hollow or Cavity in the inside, the whole being fill'd up with stones. The outside was faced partly with hewn stones and partly with others, and these were placed in such a manner as to look very agreeable to the Eye. Some of the hewn stones were 4 feet 7 inches by 2 feet 4 inches and 15 inches thick, and had been squared and Polished with some sort of an Edge Tool. On the E side was enclosed with a stone wall a piece of ground in form of a square, 360 feet by 354, in this was growing several Cypress trees and Plantains. Round about this Morie was several smaller ones all going to decay, and on the Beach between them and the Sea lay scatter'd up and down a great quantity of human bones. Not far from the Great Morie was 2 or 3 pretty large Altars, where lay the Scull bones of some Hogs and dogs. This Monument stands on the S side of Opooreonoo, upon a low point of land about 100 Yards from the Sea. It appeared to have been built many Years, and was in a State of decay, as most of their Mories are. From this it would seem that this Island hath been in a more Flourishing state than it is at present, or that Religious Customs are (like most other Nations) by these people less observed. We took up our Quarters near this Morie for the night, and early in the Morning proceeded on our rout, and without meeting with anything remarkable, got on board the Ship on Saturday, the 1st of July.

Saturday, July 1st 1769 Having made the Circuit of the whole Island, which I Estimated at something more than 30 lg. The Plan or Sketch which I have drawn, altho' it cannot be very accurate, yet it will be found sufficient to point out the Situation of the different Bays and Harbours and the true figure of the Island, and I believe is without any Material error. For the first 2 or 3 days we was out upon this excursion we labour'd under some difficulty for want of Provisions-particularly bread-an Article we took but little of with us-not doubting that we should

get bread fruit, more than sufficient for a Boat's Crew at every place we went to, but, on the Contrary, we found the season for that fruit wholly over, and not one to be seen on the Trees, and all other fruit and roots were scarce. The Natives live now on Sour paist - which is made from bread fruit-and some bread fruit and plantains that they get from the Mountains where the season is Later, and on a Nut not unlike a chessnut which are now in Perfection; but all these Articles are at present very scarce, and therefore it is no wonder that the Natives have not supply'd us with these things of Late. Upon my return to the Ship I found that the Provisions had been all examined and the Water got on board, amounting to 65 Tons. I now determin'd to get everything off from the Shore and leave the Place as soon as possible. The getting the several Articles on board, and Scraping and paying the Ship's side, took us up the following Week without anything remarkable happening until Sunday, July 9th.

Sunday, July 9th 1769 When, sometime in the middle Watch, Clement Webb and Saml. Gibson, both Marines and young Men, found means to get away from the Fort (which was now no hard matter to do) and in the morning were not to be found. As it was known to everybody that all hands were to go on board on the Monday morning, and that the ship would sail in a day or two, there was reason to think that these 2 Men intended to stay behind. However I was willing to stay one day to see if they would return before I took any step to find them.

Monday, July 10th 1769 The 2 Marines not returning this morning, I began to enquire after them, and was inform'd by some of the Natives that they were gone to the Mountains, and that they had got each of them a Wife and would not return; but at the same time no one would give us any certain intelligence where they were, upon which a resolution was taken to seize upon as many of the Chiefs as we could. This was thought to be the readiest method to induce the other natives to produce the 2 Men. We had in our custody Obariea, Toobouratomita, and 2 other Chiefs, but that I know'd Tootaha would have more weight with the Natives than all these put together, I dispatched Lieutenant Hicks away in the Pinnacle to the place where Tootaha was, to endeavour to decoy him into the Boat and bring him on board, which Mr. Hicks performed without the IE disturbance. We had no sooner taken the other Chiefs into Custody in Mr. Banks's Tent than they became as desirous of having the Men brought back as they were before of keeping them, and only desir'd that one of our people might be sent with some of theirs for them. Accordingly I sent a petty officer and the Corporal of Marines with 3 or 4 of their People, not doubting but they would return with the 2 Men in the evening; but they not coming as soon as I expected, I took all the Chiefs on board the ship for greater safety. About 9 o'Clock in the evening Webb, the Marine, was brought in by some of the natives and sent on board. He informed me that the Petty Officer and Corporal that had been sent in quest of them were disarm'd and seiz'd upon by the natives, and that Gibson was with them. Immediately upon getting this information I dispatch'd Mr. Hicks away in the Long boat with a strong party of men to rescue them but before he went Tootaha and the other Chiefs was made to understand that they must send some of their People with Mr. Hicks to shew him the place where our men were, and at the same time to send orders for their immediate releasement, for if any harm came to the men they (the Chiefs) would suffer for it; and I believe at this time they wished as much to see the Men return in safety as I did, for the guides conducted Mr. Hicks to the place before daylight, and he recovered the men without the IE opposition, and return'd with them about 7 o'Clock in the morning of the 11th.

Tuesday, July 11th 1769 I then told the Chiefs that there remain'd nothing more to be done to regain their liberty but to deliver up the Arms the People had taken from the Petty Officer and Corporal, and these were brought on board in less than half an Hour, and then I sent them all

on shore. They made but a short stay with our people there before they went away, and most of the natives with them: but they first wanted to give us 4 Hogs. These we refused to except of them, as they would take nothing in return. Thus we are likely to leave these people in disgust with our behaviour towards them, owing wholly to the folly of 2 of our men, for it does not appear that the natives had any hand in inticing them away, and therefore were not the first Agressors. However, it is very certain that had we not taken this step we never should have recovered them. The Petty Officer whom I sent in quest of the deserters told me that the Natives would give him no intelligence where they were, nor those that went along with him, but, on the contrary, grew very troublesome, and, as they were returning in the evening, they were suddenly seized upon by a number of Armed men that had hid themselves in the wood for that purpose. This was after Tootaha had been seized upon by us, so that they did this by way of retaliation in order to recover their Chief; but this method did not meet with the approbation of them all. A great many condemn'd these proceedings, and were for having them set at liberty, while others were for keeping them until Tootaha was releas'd. The dispute went so far that they came from words to blows, and our people were several times very near being set at liberty; but at last the party for keeping them Prevailed, but, as they had still some friends, no insult was offer'd them. A little while after they brought Webb and Gibson, the two deserters, to them as Prisoners likewise; but at last they agreed that Webb should be sent to inform us where the others were. When I came to Examine these 2 Men touching the reasons that induced them to go away, it appeared that an acquaintance they had contracted with 2 Girls, and to whom they had strongly attached themselves, was the Sole reason of their attempting to stay behind. Yesterday we weighed the small Bower Anchor, the Stock of which was so much eaten by the worms as to break in heaving up, and to-day we hove up the best Bower, and found the Stock in the very same Condition. This day we got everything off from the Shore, and to-night everybody lays on board.

Wednesday, July 12th 1769 The Carpenter employ'd in stocking the Anchors and the Seamen in getting the Ship ready for Sea. This morning we found the Staves of the Cask the Natives stole from us some time ago laying at the Watering place; but they had been Sencible enough to keep the Iron Hoops, and only return what to them was of no use.

Thursday, July 13th 1769 Winds E, a light breeze. This morning we was visited by Obariea and several others of our acquaintance, a thing we did not expect after what had hapned but 2 days ago; but this was in some measures owing to Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and myself going to Apparra last night, where we so far convinc'd them of our Friendly disposition that several of them were in tears at our coming away. Between 11 and 12 o'Clock we got under Sail, and took our final leave of these People, after a stay of just three Months, the most part of which time we have been upon good terms with them. Some few differences have now and then hapned owing partly to the want of rightly understanding each other, and partly to their natural thievish disposition, which we could not at all times bear with or guard against; but these have been attended with no ill consequence to either side except the first, in which one of them was kill'd, and this I was very sorry for, because from what had hapned to them by the Dolphin I thought it would have been no hard matter to have got and keep a footing with them without bloodshed. For some time before we left this Island several of the Natives were daily offering themselves to go away with us; and as it was thought they must be of use to us in our future discoveries we resolved to bring away one whose name is Tupia, a Chief and a Priest. This man had been with us most part of the time we had been upon the Island, which gave us an opportunity to know something of him. We found him to be a very intelligent person, and to know more of the Geography of the Islands situated in these Seas, their produce, and the

religion, laws, and Customs of the inhabitants, than any one we had met with, and was the likeliest person to answer our Purpose. For these reasons, and at the request of Mr. Banks, I received him on board, together with a young Boy, his Servant. For the first two Months we were at this Island the Natives supplied us with as much Bread fruit, Cocoa Nuts, etc., as we could well dispence with, and now and then a few Hogs, but of these hardly sufficient to give the Ship's company one and sometimes two fresh Meals a week. As to Fowls, I did not see above 3 dozen upon the whole Island, and fish they seldom would part with; but during the last Month we got little refreshment of any sort. The detaining of their Canoes broke off Trade at that time, and it never after was begun again with any Spirit. However, it was not wholly owing to this, but to a Scarcity. The Season for Bread fruit was wholly over, and what other Fruits they had were hardly sufficient for themselves; at IE, they did not care to part with them. All sorts of Fruits we purchased with Beads and Nails, not less than 40-penny, for a nail under that size was of no value; but we could not get a Hog above 10 or 12 pounds weight for anything less than a Hatchet, not but that they set great value upon Spike Nails; but, as this was an Article many in the Ship are provided with, the Women soon found a much easier way at coming at them than by bringing Provisions. Our Traffick with this people was carried on with as much Order as in the best regulated Market in Europe. It was managed ashore chiefly by Mr. Banks, who took uncommon Pains to procure from the Natives every kind of refreshment that was to be got. Axes, Hatchets, Spikes, large Nails, looking Glasses, Knives, and Beads are all highly valued by this People, and nothing more is wanting to Traffick with them for everything they have to dispose of. They are likewise very fond of fine Linnen Cloth, both White and Printed, but an Axe worth half a Crown will fetch more than a Piece of Cloth worth Twenty Shillings.

Upon our arrival at Batavia we had certain information that the two ships that were at George's Island some time before our arrival there were both French ships.

This Island is called by the Natives Otaheite, and was first discovered by Captain Wallis, in His Majesty's ship Dolphin, on June 19th, 1767, and to the Credit of him and his Officers, the Lon of Royal Bay was by them settled to within half a degree of the Truth, and the whole figure of the Island not ill described. It is situated between the Lat of  $17^{\circ} 29'$  and  $17^{\circ} 53'$  S, and between the Lon of  $149^{\circ} 10'$  and  $149^{\circ} 39'$  W from the Meridian of Greenwich. Point Venus, so called from the Observation being made there, is the Northern extremity of the Island, and lies in the Lon of  $149^{\circ} 30'$ , being the mean result of a Great number of Observations made upon the Spot. The Shores of this Island are mostly guarded from the Sea by reefs of coral rocks, and these form several excellent Bays and Harbours, wherein are room and depth of Water sufficient for the largest Ships.

Royal Bay, called by the Natives Matavie, in which we lay, and the Dolphin before us, is not inferior to any on the Island, both in Point of conveniency and Situation. It may easily be known by a Prodigious high Mountain in the middle of the Island, which bears due S from Point Venus, which is the Eastern point of the Bay. To sail into it either keep the W point of the Reefs which lies before Point Venus close on board, or give it a berth of near half a mile in order to avoid a small Shoal of Coral Rocks, whereon is but  $2 \frac{1}{2}$  fm of water. The best Anchoring is on the Eastern side of the Bay in 16 or 14 fm of water, owsey bottom. The Shore of the bay is all a fine sandy beach, behind which runs a river of Fresh Water, so that any Number of Ships might Water here without discommoding one another. The only wood for fuel upon the whole Island is fruit Trees, and these must be purchased of the Natives, if you mean to keep on good Terms with them. There are some Harbours to the Westward of this bay that have not been

mentioned, but as they lay Contiguous to it, and are to be found in the plan, the description of them is unnecessary.

The land of this Island, except what is immediately bordering upon the Sea coast, is of a very uneven Surface, and rises in ridges which run up into the middle of the Island, and there form mountains, that are of a height Sufficient to be seen at the distance of 20 lg. Between the foot of the ridges and the Sea is a border of low Land surrounding the whole Island, except in a few places where the ridge rises directly from the Sea. This low land is of Various Breadths, but nowhere exceeds a mile and a half. The Soil is rich and fertile, being for the most part well stock'd with fruit Trees and small Plantations. and well water'd by a number of small Rivulets of Excellent Water which come from the adjacent hills. It is upon this low Land that the greatest part of the inhabitants live, not in Towns or Vilages, but dispersed everywhere round the whole Island; the Tops of most of the ridges and mountains are Barren and, as it were, burnt up with the sun, yet many parts of some of them are not without their produce, and many of the Valleys are fertile and inhabited.

The produce of this Island is Bread Fruit, Cocoa Nuts, Bonanoes, Plantains, a fruit like an Apple, sweet Potatoes, Yams, a Fruit known by the name of Eag Melloa, and reck'ned most delicious; Sugar Cane which the inhabitants eat raw; a root of the Salop kind, called by the inhabitants Pea; the root also of a plant called Ether; and a fruit in a pod like a Kidney bean, which when roasted eats like a Chestnut, and is called Ahee; the fruit of a Tree which they call Wharra, something like a Pine Apple; the fruit of a Tree called by them Nano; the roots of a Fern and the roots of a plant called Thive. All these Articles the Earth almost Spontaneously produces, or, at IE, they are raised with very little Labour. In the Article of food these people may almost be said to be exempt from the Curse of our Forefathers, scarcely can it be said that they Earn their bread with the sweat of their brow; benevolent Nature hath not only Supply'd them with necessarys, but with abundance of Superfluities. The Sea coast supplies them with vast Variety of most Excellent fish, but these they get not without some Trouble and Perseverance. Fish seems to be one of their greatest Luxuries, and they Eat it either raw or Dressed and seem to relish it one way as well as the other. Not only fish but almost everything that comes out of the Sea is Eat and Esteem'd by these People; Shell Fish, Lobsters, Crabs, and even sea insects, and what is commonly called blubbers of many kinds, conduce to their support.

For tame Animals they have Hogs, Fowls, and Dogs, the latter of which we learned to Eat from them, and few were there of us but what allow'd that a S Sea dog was next to an English Lamb. One thing in their favour is that they live intirely upon Vegetables; probably our Dogs would not Eat half so well. Little can be said in favour of their Fowles, but their pork is most Excellent, they have no bEs of Prey of any Sort, and Wild Fowls are scarce and confin'd to a few Species. When any of the Chiefs kill a Hog it seems to be almost equally divided among all his Dependents, and as these are generally very numerous, it is but a little that come to each person's share, so that their chief food is Vegetables, and of these they eat a large quantity.

Cookery seems to have been but little studied here; they have only 2 Methods of applying Fire-broiling and Baking, as we called it; the method this is done I have before described, and I am of Opinion that Victuals dressed this way are more juicy and more equally done than by any of our Methods, large Fish in particular, Bread Fruit, Bananoes. Plantains Cooked this way eat like boil'd Potatoes, and was much used by us by way of bread whenever we could get them. Of bread Fruit they make 2 or 3 dishes by beating it with a Stone Pestle till it makes a Paste,

mixing Water or Cocoa Nut Liquor, or both, with it, and adding ripe Plantains, Bananoes, Sour Paste, etc.

This last is made from bread Fruit in the following manner. This fruit, from what I can find, remains in Season only 8 or 9 months in the year, and as it is the Chief support of the inhabitants a reserve of food must be made for those months when they are without it. To do this the Fruit is gathered when upon the point of ripening; after the rinde is scraped off it is laid in heaps and covered close with leaves, where it undergoes a fermentation, and becomes soft and disagreeably sweet. The Core is then taken out, and the rest of the fruit thrown into a Hole dug for that purpose, the sides and bottom of which are neatly laid with grass. The whole is covered with leaves and heavy stones laid upon them; here it undergoes a second Fermentation and becomes sourish, in which condition they say it will keep good 10 or 12 months. As they want to use it they make it into balls, which they wrap up in leaves and bake in the same manner as they do the Fruit from the Tree; it is then ready for eating either hot or cold, and hath a sour and disagreeable taste. In this last State it will keep good a Month or 6 Weeks; it is called by them Mahai, and they seldom make a Meal without some of it, one way or another. To this plain diet Salt Water is the universal sauce, hardly any one sets down to a meal without a Cocoa Nut shell full of it standing by them, into which they dip most of what they Eat, especially Fish, drinking at Intervals large sops of it out of their Hands, so that a man may use half a Pint at a Meal.

It is not common for any 2 to eat together, the better sort hardly ever; and the women never upon any account eat with the Men, but always by themselves. What can be the reason of so unusual a custom it is hard to say; especially as they are a people, in every other instance, fond of Society and much so of their Women. They were often Asked the reason, but they never gave no other Answer, but that they did it because it was right, and Express'd much dislike at the Custom of Men and Women Eating together of the same Victuals. We have often used all the intreatys we were Masters of to invite the Women to partake of our Victuals at our Tables, but there never was an instance of one of them doing it publick, but they would Often goe 5 or 6 together into the Servants apartments, and there eat very heartily of whatever they could find, nor were they the IE disturbed if any of us came in while they were dining; and it hath sometimes hapned that when a woman was alone in our company she would eat with us, but always took care that her own people should not know what she had don, so that whatever may be the reasons for this custom, it certainly affects their outward manners more than their Principle.

With respect to their persons the Men in general are tall, strong-limb'd, and well shaped. One of the tallest we saw measured 6 feet 3 inches and a half. The superior women are in every respect as large as Europeans, but the inferior sort are in General small, owing possibly to their early Amours, which they are more addicted to than their superiors. They are of various Colours: those of the inferior sort, who are obliged to be much exposed to the Sun and air, are of a very Dark brown; the superiors again, who spend most of their Time in their Houses under Shelter, are not browner than people who are born or reside longer in the W Indies; nay, some of the Women are almost as fair as Europeans. Their hair is almost universally black, thick, and Strong; this the Women wear short Cropt Round their Ears. The Men, on the other hand, wear it different ways: the better sort let it grow long, and sometimes tying it up on the Top of their Heads, or letting it hang loose over their Shoulders; but many of the inferiors, and such who, in the exercise of their professions, fishing, etc., are obliged to be much upon or in the Water, wear it cropt short like the women. They always pluck out a part of their beards, and



keep what remains neat and Clean. Both Sexes eradicate every hair from under their Armpits, and look upon it as a mark of uncleanness in us that we do not do the same.

They have all fine white Teeth, and for the most part short flat Noses and thick lips; yet their features are agreeable, and their gait graceful, and their behavior to strangers and to each other is open, affable, and Courteous, and, from all I could see, free from treachery, only that they are thieves to a man, and would steal but everything that came in their way, and that with such dexterity as would shame the most noted Pickpocket in Europe. They are very cleanly people, both in their persons and diet, always washing their hands and Mouth immediately before and after their Meals, and wash or bathe themselves in fresh Water 3 times a day, morning, Noon, and Night.

The only disagreeable thing about them is the Oil with which they anoint their heads, Monoe, as they call it; this is made of Cocanutt Oil, in which some sweet Herbs or Flowers are infused. The Oil is generally very rancid, which makes the wearer of it smell not very agreeable. Another custom they have that is disagreeable to Europeans, which is eating lice, a pretty good stock of which they generally carry about them. However, this custom is not universal; for I seldom saw it done but among Children and Common People, and I am persuaded that had they the means they would keep themselves as free from lice as we do; but the want of Combs in a Hot climate makes this hardly possible. There are some very fine men upon this Island whose skins are whiter than any European's, but of a Dead Colour, like that of the Nose of a White Horse; their Eyes, eyebrows, hair and beards are also White. Their bodys were cover'd, more or less, with a kind of White down. Their skins are spotted, some parts being much whiter than others. They are short-sighted, with their eyes oftimes full of rheum, and always look'd unwholesome, and have neither the Spirit nor the activity of the other Natives. I did not see above 3 or 4 upon the whole Island, and these were old men; so that I concluded that this difference of colour, etc., was accidental, and did not run in families, for if it did they must have been more Numerous. The inhabitants of this Island are Troubled with a sort of Leprosy, or Scab all over their bodys. I have seen Men, Women, and Children, but not many, who have had this distemper to that degree as not to be able to walk. This distemper, I believe, runs in familys, because I have seen both mother and Child have it.

Both sexes paint their Bodys, Tattow, as it is called in their Language. This is done by inlaying the Colour of Black under their skins, in such a manner as to be indelible. Some have ill-design'd figures of men, birds, or dogs; the women generally have this figure Z simply on every joint of their fingers and Toes; the men have it likewise, and both have other differant figures, such as Circles, Crescents, etc., which they have on their Arms and Legs; in short, they are so various in the application of these figures that both the quantity and Situation of them seem to depend intirely upon the humour of each individual, yet all agree in having their buttocks covered with a Deep black. Over this Most have Arches drawn one over another as high as their short ribs, which are near a Quarter of an inch broad. These Arches seem to be their great pride, as both men and Women show them with great pleasure.

Their method of Tattowing I shall now describe. The colour they use is lamp black, prepar'd from the Smoak of a Kind of Oily nut, used by them instead of Candles. The instrument for pricking it under the Skin is made of very thin flatt pieces of bone or Shell, from a quarter of an inch to an inch and a half broad, according to the purpose it is to be used for, and about an inch and a half long. One end is cut into sharp teeth, and the other fastened to a handle. The teeth are dipped into black Liquor, and then drove, by quick, sharp blows struck upon the

handle with a Stick for that purpose, into the skin so deep that every stroke is followed with a small quantity of Blood. The part so marked remains sore for some days before it heals. As this is a painful operation, especially the Tattowing their Buttocks, it is perform'd but once in their Life times; it is never done until they are 12 or 14 years of Age.

Their Cloathing is either of Cloth or Matting of several different sorts; the dress of both Men and Women are much the same, which is a Piece of Cloth or Matting wrapp'd 2 or 3 times round their waist, and hangs down below their Knees, both behind and before, like a Pettycoat; another piece, or sometimes 2 or 3, about 2 yards or 2 1/2 yards long, with a hole in the middle, through which they put their heads. This hangs over their Shoulders down behind and before, and is tied round their waist with a long piece of thin Cloth, and being open at the sides gives free liberty to their arms. This is the common dress of all ranks of people, and there are few without such a one except the Children, who go quite naked, the Boys until they are 6 or 7 years of Age, and the girls until 3 or 4. At these Ages they begin to cover what nature teaches them to hide. Besides the dress I have mentioned some of the better sort, such as can afford it, but more especially the Women, will one way or other wrap round them several pieces of Cloth, each 8 or 10 Yards long and 2 or 3 broad, so much that I have often wondered how they could bear it in so hot a climate. Again, on the other hand, many of the inferior sort during the heat of the Day, go almost naked, the women wearing nothing but the Petticoat aforementioned, and sometimes hardly that. The men wear a piece of Cloth like a Sack, which goes between their thighs, and brought up before and behind, and then wrapped round their waist. This every man wears always without exception, and it is no uncommon thing to see many of the better sort have nothing else on, as it is reckoned no shame for any part of the body to be exposed to View, except those which all mankind hide.

Both sexes sometimes shade their faces from the Sun with little Bonnets made of Cocoa-Nut leaves. Some have them of fine Matting, but this is less common. They sometimes wear Turbands, but their Chief Headdress is what they call Tomou, which is human Hair plaited scarce thicker than common thread. Of this I can safely affirm that I have seen pieces near a mile in length worked upon one end without a Knott. These are made and worn only by the women, 5 or 6 such pieces of which they will sometimes wind round their Heads, the effect of which, if done with taste, is very becoming. They have Earrings by way of Ornament, but wear them only at one Ear. These are made of Shells, Stones, Berries, red pease, and some small pearls which they wear 3 tied together; but our Beads, Buttons, etc., very soon supply'd their places.

After their meals in the Heat of the day they often Sleep, middle Aged people especially, the better sort of whom seem to spend most of their time in eating and Sleeping. Diversions they have but few, shooting with the Bow and Wrestling are the Chief; the first of which is confin'd almost wholly to the Chiefs; they shoot for distance only, kneeling upon one knee and dropping the Bow the instant of the Arrows parting from it. I have seen one of them shoot an Arrow 274 yards, yet he looked upon it as no Great Shotte.

Musick is little known to them, yet they are very fond of it; they have only 2 Instruments-the flute and the Drum. The former is made of hollow Bamboo about 15 inches long, in which are 3 Holes; into one of them they blow with one Nostril, stopping the other with the thumb of the left hand, the other 2 Holes they stop and unstop with their fingers, and by this means produce 4 Notes, of which they have made one Tune, which serves them upon all Occasions, to which they sing a number of songs generally consisting of 2 lines and generally in rhyme. At any time

of the day when they are Lazy they amuse themselves by singing these Couplets, but especially after dark when their candles are lighted, which are made of the Kernels of a Nutt abounding much in oil; these are stuck upon a Skewer of Wood one upon another, and give a very Tolerable light, which they often keep burning an hour after dark, and if they have strangers in the House much longer. Their drums are made of a hollow block of wood covered with Shark's Skin, and instead of Drumsticks they use their hands. Of these they make out 5 or 6 tunes and accompany the flutes.

The drums are Chiefly used at their Heivas, which are a set of Musicians, 2 or 3 Drums for instance, as many flutes and singers, which go about from House to House and play, and are always received and rEastwarded by the Master of the family, who gives them a Piece of Cloth or whatever he can spare, for which they will stay 3 or 4 hours, during which time his house will be crowded full, for the people are extravagantly fond of this diversion. The Young Girls whenever they can collect 8 or 10 Together dance a very indecent Dance, which they call Timorodee, singing most indecent songs and using most indecent actions, in the practice of which they are brought up from their earliest childhood; in doing this they keep time to a great nicety. This exercise is generally left off as soon as they arrive at Years of Maturity, for as soon as they have form'd a connection with man they are expected to leave off dancing Timorodee.

One amusement or custom more I must mention, though I confess I do not expect to be believed, it is founded upon a Custom so inhuman and contrary to the Principles of human nature. It is this: that more than one half of the better sort of the inhabitants have enter'd into a resolution of injoying free liberty in Love, without being Troubled or disturbed by its consequences. These mix and Cohabit together with the utmost freedom, and the Children who are so unfortunate as to be thus begot are smother'd at the Moment of their Birth; many of these People contract intimacies and live together as man and wife for years, in the course of which the Children that are born are destroy'd. They are so far from concealing it that they look upon it as a branch of freedom upon which they value themselves. They are called Arreoyoys, and have meetings among themselves, where the men amuse themselves with wrestling, etc., and the women in dancing the indecent dance before-mentioned, in the course of which they give full liberty to their desires, but I believe keep up to the appearance of decency. I never see one of these meetings; Dr. Monkhouse saw part of one, enough to make him give credit to what we had been told.

Both sexes express the most indecent ideas in conversation without the IE emotion, and they delight in such conversation beyond any other. Chastity, indeed, is but little valued, especially among the middle people - if a Wife is found guilty of a breach of it her only punishment is a beating from her husband. The Men will very readily offer the young women to strangers, even their own daughters, and think it very strange if you refuse them; but this is done merely for the sake of gain.

The Houses or dwellings of these People are admirably calculated for the continual warmth of the climate; they do not build them in towns or villages, but seperate each from the other, and always in the woods, and are without walls, so that the air, cooled by the shade of the trees, has free access in whatever direction it hapens to blow. No country can boast of more delightful walks than this; the whole plains where the natives reside are covered with groves of Bread Fruit and Cocoa Nut Trees, without underwood, and intersected in all directions by the Paths which go from House to House, so that nothing can be more grateful in a Climate where the sun hath so powerful an influence. They are generally built in form of an Oblong square,

the Roofs are supported by 3 Rows of Pillars or posts, and neatly covered with Thatch made of Palm leaves. A middle-siz'd house is about 24 feet by 12, extreame height about 8 or 9, and height of the Eaves 3 1/2 or 4. The floors are cover'd some inches deep with Hay, upon which, here and there, lay matts for the conveniency of sitting down; few houses has more than one Stool, which is only used by the Master of the family.

In their houses are no rooms or Partitions, but they all huddle and Sleep together; yet in this they generally observe some order, the Married people laying by themselves, and the unmarried each sex by themselves, at some small distance from each other. Many of the Eares or Chiefs are more private, having small movable houses in which they Sleep, man and Wife, which, when they go by Water from place to place, are tied upon their Canoes; these have walls made of Cocoa-Nut leaves, etc. I have said that the houses are without walls, but this is only to be understood in general, for many of them are walled with wickering, but not so close but to admit a free circulation of Air. The matts which serve them to sit upon in the daytime are also their beds in the night, and the Cloathes they wear in the day serve for covering, a little wood Stool, block of wood, or bundle of Cloth for a Pillow. Besides these common houses there are others much larger, 200 feet long and upwards, 30 broad, and 20 in height. There are generally 2 or 3 of these in every district, and seem'd not only built for the accommodation of the principal people, but common to all the inhabitants of that district, and raised and kept up by their joint Labour; these are always without walls, and have generally a large Area on one side neatly inclosed with low pallisades, etc.

Their Canoes or Proes are built all of them very narrow, and some of the largest are 60 or 70 feet long. These consist of several pieces; the bottom is round and made of large logs hollow'd out to the thickness of about 3 Inches, and may consist of 3 or 4 pieces; the sides are of Plank of nearly the same thickness, and are built nearly perpendicular, rounding in a little towards the Gunwale. The pieces on which they are built are well fitted, and fastned or sewed together with strong plating something in the same manner as old China, Wooden Bowls, etc., are mended. The greatest breadth is at the after part, which is generally about 18 or 20 Inches, and the fore part about 1/3 Narrower; the height from the bottom to the Gunwale seldom exceeds 2 1/2 or 3 feet. They build them with high curv'd Sterns which are generally ornamented with carved work; the head or fore part curves little or nothing. The smaller Canoes are built after the same plan, some out of one, 2, or more trees according to their size or the use they are for. In order to prevent them from oversetting when in the Water, all those that go single, both great and Small, have what is called Outriggers, which are Pieces of Wood fastened to the Gunwale and project out on one side about 6, 8, or 10 feet, according to the size of the Boat. At the end is fastened in a Parrallel direction to the Canoe a long log of wood simply; or some have it Shaped in the form of a small Boat, but this is not common; this lays in the Water and Balances the Boat. Those that are for sailing have Outriggers only on the other side abtE of the Mast; these serves to fasten the Shrouds to, and are of use in Trimming the Boat when it blows fresh; the sailing proes have some one and some 2 masts; the sails are of Matting and are made narrow at the head and Square at the foot, something like a Shoulder of Mutton Sail, such as are generally used in Man-of-War Barges, etc.

I have mentioned above that the single Canoes have Outriggers, for those that go double-that is 2 together, which is very common-have no need of any; and it is done in this manner: 2 Canoes are placed in a parrallel direction to each other, about 3 or 4 feet asunder, securing them together by small Logs of Wood laid across and lashed to each of their gunwales; thus the one boat supports the other, and are not in the IE danger of upsetting, and I believe it is in

this manner that all their large Proes are used, some of which will carry a great number of Men, by means of a Platform made of Bamboo or other light wood and the whole length of the Proes and considerably broader, but I never saw but one fitted in this manner upon the whole Island. Upon the Forepart of all these large double Proes was placed an Oblong Platform about ten or twelve feet in length, and six or eight in Breadth, and supported about 4 feet above the Gunwale by stout Carved Pillars. The use of these Platforms, as we were told, are for the Club Men to stand and fight upon in time of Battle, for the large Canoes, from what I could learn, are built most, if not wholly, for war, and their method of fighting is to Grapple one another and fight it out with Clubs, spears, and stones. I never saw but one of these sort of Canoes in the water, the rest was all hauled ashore and seemed to be going to decay, neither were there very many of them upon the Island.

The Chiefs and better sort of People generally go from one part of the island to another in small double Canoes which carry a little movable House, this not only Skreens them from the Sun by day, but serves them to Sleep in in the Night, and this way of Travelling is Extremely commodious about such Islands as are inclosed by a reef as this is; for as these Canoes draw but Little water they can always keep in the Reefs, and by that means are never in danger.

They have some few other Canoes, Pahees as they call them, which differ from those above discribed, but of these I saw but 6 upon the whole Island, and was told they were not built here. The 2 largest was each 76 feet long, and when they had been in use had been fastned together. These are built Sharp and Narrow at both Ends and broad in the middle; the bottom is likewise Sharp, inclining to a Wedge, yet Buldges out very much and rounds in again very quick just below the Gunwale. They are built of several pieces of thick plank and put together as the others are, only these have timbers in the inside, which the others have not. They have high Curved Sterns, the head also Curves a little, and both are ornamented with the image of a man carved in wood, very little inferior work of the like kind done by common Ship Carvers in England.

When one Considers the Tools these people have one cannot help but admiring their workmanship; these are Adzes and small Hatchets made of a hard Stone, Chizels and Gouges made of human bones, generally the bones of the Forearm, but Spike Nails have pretty well supplyd the place of these. With these ordinary Tools, that a European would expect to break the first stroke, I have seen them work surprisingly fast. To plain or polish their work they rub upon it, with a small stone, Coral Beat small and mixed with Water; this is done sometimes by scraping it with Shells, with which alone they perform most of their Small wood work.

Their Proes or Canoes, large and Small, are row'd and Steer'd with Paddles, and, notwithstanding the large ones appear to be very unweildy, they manage them very dexterously, and I believe perform long and distant Voyages in them, otherwise they could not have the knowledge of the Islands in these Seas they seem to have. They wear for Shew or Ornament at the Mast Head of most of their Sailing Canoes Pendants made of Feathers.

Having described their fighting Canoes I shall next describe their Arms with which they attack their Enemys, both by Sea and Land. These are Clubs, Spears or Lances, Slings and Stones which they throw by hand. The Clubs are made of a hard wood, and are about 8 or 9 feet long; the one half is made flatish with 2 Edges, and the other half is round and not thicker than to be easily grasped by the hand. The Lances are of various lengths, some from 12, 20 or 30 feet, and are generally Arm'd at the Small end with the Stings of Sting-rays, which makes them very

dangerous weapons. Altho' these people have Bows and Arrows-and those none of the worst-we are told that they never use them in their wars, which doubtless is very extraordinary and not easily accounted for. They have very Curious brEplates, made of small wickers, pieces of Matting, etc., and neatly Cover'd with Sharks' teeth, Pearl Oyster shells, birds' feathers, and dogs' hair. Thus much for their Arms, etc.

I shall now describe their way of making Cloth, which, in my opinion, is the only Curious manufacture they have. All their Cloth is, I believe, made from the Bark of Trees; the finest is made from a plant which they Cultivate for no other purpose. Dr. Solander thinks it is the same plant the bark of which the Chinese make paper of. They let this plant grow till it is about 6 or 8 feet high, the Stem is then about as thick as one's Thum or thicker; after this they cut it down and lay it a Certain time in water. This makes the Bark strip off easy, the outside of which is scraped off with a rough Shell. After this is done it looks like long strips of ragged linnen; these they lay together, by means of a fine paist made of some sort of a root, to the Breadth of a yard more or less, and in length 6, 8 or 10 Yards or more according to the use it is for. After it is thus put together it is beat out to its proper breadth and fineness, upon a long square piece of wood, with wooden beaters, the Cloth being kept wet all the time. The beaters are made of hard wood with four square sides, are about 3 or 4 inches broad and cut into grooves of different fineness; this makes the Cloth look at first sight as if it was wove with thread, but I believe the principal use of the Groves is to facilitate the beating it out, in the doing of which they often beat holes in it, or one place thinner than another; but this is easily repair'd by pasting on small bits, and this they do in such a manner that the Cloth is not the IE injured. The finest sort when bleached is very white and comes nearest to fine Cotton. Thick cloth, especially fine, is made by pasting two or more thickness's of thin cloth, made for that Purpose, together. Coarse thick cloth and ordinary thin cloth is made of the Bark of Bread fruit Trees, and I think I have been told that it is sometimes made from the Bark of other trees. The making of Cloth is wholly the work of the women, in which all ranks are employ'd. Their common colours are red, brown and yellow, with which they dye some pieces just as their fancy leads them. Besides Cloth they make several different sorts of matting, both better and finer than any we have in Europe; the stuff they make it on is the Produce of the Palm tree.

This Island produceth 2 or 3 sorts of plants, of which they make the rope they use in rigging their Canoes, etc.; the finest sort, such as fishing lines, saine twine, etc., is made of the Bark of a Tree, and some from the Kind of Silk grass. Their fishing lines and saines are in Point of goodness preferable to any of ours. Their fishing Hooks are very curiously made of Tortoise, Pearl Oyster Shells, etc. They have a sort of Saine that is made of Coarse broad grass like flags; these are twisted and tied together in a loose manner until the whole is as thick as a large sack, and 60 or 80 fm long. This they haul in Shoal smooth water; its own weight keeps it so close to the ground that hardly the smallest fish can escape out.

I have before mentioned that the Island is divided into two districts or kingdoms, which are frequently at war with each other, as hapned about 12 Months ago, and each of these are again divided into smaller districts, Whennuas as they call them. Over each of the kingdoms is an Eare dehi, or head, whom we call a King, and in the Whennuas are Eares, or Chiefs. The King's power seems to be but very little; he may be revered as a father, but he is neither fear'd nor respected as a monarch, and the same may be said of the other Chiefs. However, they have a pre-eminence over the rest of the People, who pay them a kind of a Voluntary Obedience. Upon the whole, these people seem to enjoy liberty in its fullest extent-every man seems to be the sole judge of his own actions and to know no punishment but death, and this

perhaps is never inflicted but upon a public enemy. There are 3 ranks of Men and Women: first, the Eares, or chiefs; second, the Manahoonas, or middling sort; and lastly, the Toutous, which comprehend all the lower-class, and are by far the most numerous. These seem to live in some sort dependent on the Eares, who, together with the Manahoonas, own most, if not all the land. This is Hereditary in their families, and the moment the Heir is born he succeeds the Father, both in title and Estate; at IE to the name, for its most likely that the latter must have the power during his Son or Daughter's minority.

Note by Cook. Upon our arrival at Batavia, we were informed the two French Ships, commanded by the Monsieurs Beaugainville, touched at that place in their way home from the S Seas two years ago. We were here told many circumstances of these two Ships, all tending to prove that they were the same ships that were at George's Island, which we judged were Spaniards; being led into this mistake by the Spanish Iron, etc., we saw among the natives, which is easy accounted for, for we are told that while Beaugainville in the Frigate was delivering up that part of Falkland Islands possess'd by the French, to the Spaniards, the Store ship was trading with the Spaniards in the River Plate, where it is very probable she disposed of all her European goods, and purchased others to trade with the Islands in the S Seas. To confirm these last circumstances we were told that when they arrived at Batavia, the Frigate had on board a great quantity of Spanish Dollars.

Having given the best account I can of the manners and Customs of these people, it will be expected that I should give some account of their religion, which is a thing I have learned so little of that I hardly dare to touch upon it, and should have passed it over in silence, was it not my duty as well as inclination to insert in this Journal every and the IE knowledge I may obtain of a People, who for many Centuries have been shut up from almost every other part of the world.

They believe that there is one Supreme God whom they call Tane; from him sprung a number of inferior Deities, Eatuas as they call them-these they think preside over them and intermeddle in their affairs. To these they offer Oblations such as Hogs, Dogs, Fish, Fruit, etc., and invoke them on some particular occasions, as in time of real or Apparent Danger, the setting out of a long Voyage, sickness's, etc.; but the Ceremony made use of on these occasions I know not. The Mories, which we at first thought were burying places, are wholly built for Places of worship, and for the Performing of religious ceremonies in. The Viands are laid upon altars erected 8, 12, or 12 Feet high, by stout Posts, and the Table of the Altar on which the Viands lay, is generally made of Palm leaves; they are not always in the Mories, but very often at some Distance from them. Their Mories, as well as the Tombs of the Dead, they seem to hold sacred, and the women never enter the former, whatever they may do the latter. The Viands laid near the Tombs of the Dead are, from what I can learn, not for the deceased, but as an Offering to the Eatua made upon that Occasion who, if not, would destroy the body and not except of the soul-for they believe of a future state of rEastwards and punishments; but what their Ideas are of it I know not. We have seen in some few places small Houses set apart on purpose for the Oblations offer'd to the Eatua, which consists of small strips of Cloth, Viands, etc. I am of Opinion they offer to the Eatua a Strip or small piece of every piece of Cloth they make before they use it themselves, and it is not unlikely but what they observe the same thing with respect to their Victuals, but as there are but few of these houses this cannot be a common Custom; it may only be observ'd by the Priests and such families as are more religious than others.

Now I have mentioned Priests, there are men that Exercise that function, of which Numbers Tupia is one. They seem to be in no great repute, neither can they live wholly by their Profession, and this leads me to think that these People are no bigots to their religion. The Priests on some occasions do the Office of Physicians, and their prescriptions consists in performing some religious ceremony before the sick person. They likewise Crown the Eare dehi, or King, in the performing of which we are told much form and Ceremony is used, after which every one is at liberty to treat and play as many Tricks with the new King as he pleaseth during the remainder of the day.

There is a ceremony which they perform at or after the Funerals of the Dead which I had forgot to mention at the time; we hapned to see it sometime before we left the Island. An old Woman, a relation of Toobouratomita's, hapned to die and was interr'd in the Usual manner. For several successive evenings after, one of her relations dressed himself in a very odd dress, which I cannot tell how to describe or to convey a better Idea of it than to suppose a man dress'd with plumes of feathers, something in the same manner as those worn by Coaches, Hearses, Horses, etc., at the Funerals in London. It was very neatly made up of black or brown and white cloth, black and white feathers, and pearl Oyster Shells. It cover'd the head, face, and body, as low as the Calf of the Legs or lower, and not only looked grand but awful likewise. The man thus equip'd, and attended by 2 or 3 more men and Women with their faces and bodys besmear'd with soot, and a Club in their hands, would about sunset take a Compass of near a mile running here and there, and wherever they came the People would fly from them as tho' they had been so many hobgoblins, not one daring to come in their way. I know not the reason for their Performing this ceremony, which they call Heiva, a name they give to most of their divertisements.

They compute time by the Moon, which they call Malama, reckoning 30 days to each moon, 2 of which they say the moon is Mattee, that is, dead, and this is at the time of the new moon, when she cannot be seen. The day they divide into smaller Portions not less than 2 Hours. Their computations is by units, tens, and scores, up to ten score, or 200, etc. In counting they generally take hold on their fingers one by one, Shifting from one hand to the other, until they come to the number they want to express; but if it be a high number, instead of their fingers they use pieces of Leaves, etc.

In conversation one with another they frequently join signs to their words, in which they are so expressive that a stranger will very soon comprehend their meaning by their actions.

Having now done with the People, I must once more return to the Island before I quit it altogether, which, notwithstanding nature hath been so very bountiful to it, yet it does not produce any one thing of intrinsick value or that can be converted into an Article of Trade; so that the value of the discovery consists wholly in the refreshments it will always afford to shipping in their passage through those seas; and in this it may be greatly improved by transporting hither horned cattle, etc. Pumpkins have got quite a footing here, the seeds of which most probably were brought here by the Spaniards. We sowed of the seeds of Water and Musk Mellons, which grew up and throve very fast. We also gave of these seeds and the seeds of Pine Apples to several of the Natives, and it cannot be doubted but what they will thrive here, and will be a great addition to the fruits they already have. Upon our first arrival we sowed of all sorts of English garden seeds and grain, but not a single thing came up except mustard sallad; but this I know was not owing either to the Soil or Climate, but to the badness of the seeds, which were spoil'd by the length of the Passage.



Altho' this Island lies within the Tropick of Capricorn, yet the Heat is not Troublesome, nor do the winds blow constantly from the E, but are subject to variations, frequently blowing a fresh gale from the S-W Quarter for two or three days together, but very seldom from the N-W. Whenever these variable winds happen they are always accompanied with a swell from the S-W or W-S-W, and the same thing happens whenever it is calm and the Atmosphere at the same time loaded with Clouds-sure indication that the winds are Variable or W out at Sea, for clear weather generally attends the settled Trade.

The meeting of W winds within the general Limits of the E Trade is a little extraordinary, and has induced former Navigators, when they met with them, to think that they were caused by the nearness of some large Tracks of Land: but I rather think they were owing to another Cause. It hath been found both by the Dolphin and us that the trade winds in those parts of this Sea doth not extend further to the Southward than  $20^{\circ}$ , and without which we generally meet with a wind from the Westward. Now, is it not reasonable to suppose that when these winds blow strong they must encroach upon and drive back the E winds as to cause the variable winds and S-W swells I have been speaking of? It is well known that the Trade winds blow but faint for some distance within their limits, and are therefore easily stopt by a wind from the Contrary direction. It is likewise known that these limits are subject to vary several $^{\circ}$ , not only at different seasons of the Year, but at one and the same season. Another reason why I think that these S-W winds are not caused by the nearness of any large Track of land, is in their being always accompanied with a large swell from the same Quarter, and we find a much greater surf beating upon the Shores of the S-W sides of the Islands situated just within the Limits of the Trade winds than upon any other part of them.

The tides are perhaps as inconsiderable in these Seas as in any part of the world. A S or S by W moon makes high water in Royal Bay, but the water does not rise upon a perpendicular above 10 or 12 inches, except on some very Extraordinary occasions.

The variation of the Compass I found to be  $4^{\circ} 46'$  E, this being the mean result of a great number of Trials made by 4 of Dr. Knight's needles belonging to the Azimuth Compasses, all of which I judged to be good ones, and yet when applied to the Meridian line I found them not only differ one from another sometimes a degree and a half; but the same needle would differ from itself more or less, the difference sometimes amounting to half a degree, both at the same time and on differant days. This will in a great measure account for the seeming errors that may, upon a nice examination, appear to have been made in observing the Variation inserted in the Course of this Journal. This variableness in Magnetick Needles I have many times and in many places experienced both ashore and on board of Ships, and I do not remember of ever finding two Needles that would agree exactly together at one and the same time and place, but I have often found the same Needle agree with itself for several Trials made immediately one after another. However, all this is of no sort of consequence to Navigation, as the Variation of the Compass can always be found to a degree of accuracy more than sufficient for all nautical Purposes.

I have before hinted that these People have an Extensive knowledge of the Islands situated in these Seas. Tupia, as well as several others, hath given us an account of upwards of 70; but, as the account they have given of their situation is so Vague and uncertain, I shall refer giving a list of them until I have learnt from Tupia the Situation of each island with a little more certainty. Four of these islands-viz., Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola-we were

informed, lay only one or two days' sail to the Westward of George's Island, and that we might there procure Hogs, Fowls, and other refreshments, Articles that we have been very sparingly supply'd with at this last Island, as the Ship's Company (what from the Constant hard duty they have had at this place, and the two free use of Woman) were in a worse state of health than they were on our first arrival, for by this Time full half of them had got the Venereal disease, in which Situation I thought they would be ill able to stand the Cold weather we might expect to meet with to the Southward at this Season of the Year, and therefore resolved to give them a little time to recover while we ran down to and explored the Islands before-mentioned.

Tupia informs us that in the Months of November, December, and January they have constant W winds, with rain; also that the whole island can muster 6780 Fighting Men, by which some judgment can be formed of the number of inhabitants. Each district furnishes a certain number, which the chief is obliged to bring into the field when summoned by the Eare dehi, or King of the Island, either to make war or repel an invasion.

#### **Chapter 4: Tahiti to New Zealand**

Friday, July 14th 1769 Gentle breezes at N-E and Clear weather. I have before made mention of our departure from Royal Bay on the preceeding forenoon, and likewise that I had determined to run down to Huaheine and Ulietea before we stood to the Southward; but having discovered, from the Hills of George's Island, an Island laying to the Northward, we first stood that way to take a nearer View of it. This Island is called Tethuroa. It lies N 1/2 W, distant 8 lg from Point Venus, and is a small, low, uninhabited Island, frequented by the people of George's Island for fish, with which it is said to abound. At 6am the Wermost part of York Island bore S-E 1/2 S and the body of George's Island E 1/2 S. Punished the 2 Marines who attempted to desert from us at George's Island with 2 Dozen lashes each, and then released them from Confinement. At Noon the body of York Island bore E by S 1/2 S, Royal Bay S 70° 45' E, distant 61 mi; and an Island which we took to be Saunder's Island, discovered by Captain Wallace (called by the Natives Topoamanan), bore S-S-W Lat observed, 17° 9' S. Saw land bearing N-W 1/2 W, which Tupia calls the Island of Huaheine.

Saturday, July 15th 1769 Light airs and Variable between the N and W-S-W. Clear weather. At 6pm York Island bore S-E, and Huaheine W-N-W, and at 7am it bore W. Lat observed at Noon 16° 50' S. Royal Bay S 37° 30' E, distant 22 lg.

Sunday, July 16th 1769 Winds at S and S-S-E. A Gentle Breeze, with some few showers of rain. At 6pm the Island of Huaheine W 1/2 S, distant 7 or 8 lg. At 8am, being close in with the N-W part of the Island, sounded, but had no ground with 80 fm. Some of the Natives came off to the Ship, but they were very shy of coming near until they discover'd Tupia; but after that they came on board without hesitation. Among those who came on board was the King of the Island, whose name is Oree. He had not been long on board before he and I exchanged Names, and we afterwards address'd each other accordingly. At noon the N end of the Island bore S by E 1/2 E, distant 72 lg. Lat observed, 16° 40' S. Three other Islands in sight, namely, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola, so called by the Natives.

Monday, July 17th 1769 Winds S, fine pleasant weather. At 3pm anchored in a small Harbour on the W side of the Island called by the Natives Owarhe, in 18 fm water, clear ground, and secure from all winds. Soon after, I went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Dr. Monkhouse, Tupia, the King of the Island, and some others of the Natives, who had

been on board since the morning. The Moment we landed Tupia stripped himself as low as his waist, and desir'd Mr. Monkhouse to do the same. He then sat down before a great number of the Natives that were collected together in a large Shed or House, the rest of us, by his own desire, standing behind; he then begun a long speach or prayer, which lasted near a Quarter of an Hour, and in the Course of this Speech presented to the People two Handkerchiefs, a black silk Neckcloth, some beads, and two very small bunches of Feathers. These things he had before provided for that purpose. At the same time two Chiefs spoke on the other side in answer to Tupia, as I suppose, in behalf of the People, and presented us with some young Plantains plants, and 2 small bunches of Feathers. These were by Tupia order'd to be carried on board the Ship. After the Peace was thus concluded and ratified, every one was at liberty to go where he pleased, and the first thing Tupia did was to go and pay his Oblations at one of the Mories. This seem'd to be a common ceremony with this people, and I suppose always perform'd upon landing on each other's Territories in a peaceable manner. It further appear'd that the things which Tupia gave away was for the God of this People, as they gave us a Hog and some Cocoanuts for our God, and thus they have certainly drawn us in to commit sacrilege, for the Hog hath already received sentence of Death, and is to be dissected tomorrow. I set about Surveying the Island, and Dr. Monkhouse, with some hands, went ashore to Trade with the Natives, while the Long boat was employ'd compleating our Water.

Tuesday, July 18th 1769 Gentle breezes at S and S-S-W. Clear weather. The Trading party had no Success to-day. The Natives pretend that they have not had time to collect their provisions from the Differant parts of the Island, but that on the Morrow we should have some; and as I had not seen so much of the Island as I desir'd, I resolv'd to stay one day longer to see if anything was to be got.

Wednesday, July 19th 1769pm Variable light Airs and clear weather. The Trading party had better success to-day than Yesterday. a Gentle breeze at S-E. As it was known to the Natives that we intended to sail to-day, Oree, the Chief, and several more, came on board to take their leave of us. To the Chief was given a small plate on which was Stamp'd the following inscription-viz., "His Britannick Majesty's Ship, Endeavour, Lieutenant Cook, Commander, 16th July, 1769, Huaheine." This was accompanied with some Medals, or Counters, of the English Coins, struck 1761, together with some other Presents. All these, but more particularly the Plate, the Chief promised never to part with. This we thought would prove as lasting a Testimony of our having first discover'd this Island as any we could leave behind. After this was done they were dismissed, and we began to prepare to leave the place. But as that falls out on the following day, I shall conclude this with a Discription of the Island, which is situated in the Lat of 16° 43' S, and Lon 150° 52' W from Greenwich and N 58° W, distance, 31 lg, from King George's Island, or Otaheite. It is about 7 lg in compass, and of a Hilly and uneven surface. It hath a safe and commodious Harbour, which lies on the W side, under the Nermost high land and within the N end of the Reef which lays along that side of the Island. Into this Harbour are 2 inlets, or openings in the Reef, about 1 1/2 mi from each other. The Sermost is the Broadest, on the S side of which is a very small sandy Island. This Harbour is called by the Natives Ohwarhe. The produce of this Island is in all respects the same as King George's Island, and the Manner and Customs of the inhabitants much the same, only that they are not addicted to Stealing; and with respect to colour they are rather fairer than the natives of George's Island, and the whole more Uniformly of one Colour.

Thursday, July 20th 1769 Moderate breezes at E and E-N-E. Fair weather. At 1/2 past 2pm weigh'd and made Sail for the Island of Ulietea, which lies S-W by W, Distance 7 or 8 lg from

Huaheine. At 1/2 past 6 we were within 3 lg of it, then shortened sail and stood off and on all night, and at daylight made Sail in shore, and soon after discover'd an opening in the Reef that lies along this side of the Island, within which, Tupia said, was a good Harbour. Upon this I hoisted out the Pinnacle, and sent the Master in to Examine it, who soon made the Signal for the Ship to follow. Accordingly we stood in and Anchor'd in 22 fm, soft ground. Soon after we Anchor'd some of the Natives came on board the Ship with very little invitation.

Friday, July 21st 1769 Winds variable, and dark, cloudy weather, with frequent Showers of rain. At 1pm I landed in Company with Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen. The first thing done was the performing of Tupia's ceremony in all respects as at Huaheine. I then hoisted an English jack, and took possession of the Island and those adjacent in the name of His Britannick Majesty, calling them by the same names as the natives do. I sent the Master in the Long boat to examine the coast of the S part of the Island, and one of the Mates in the Yawl to sound the Harbour where the Ship lay, while I was employ'd in the Pinnacle surveying the Northern part of the Island, and Mr. Monkhouse went ashore to trade with the Natives for such refreshments as were to be got.

Saturday, July 22nd 1769pm the wind Variable with Showers of rain. am strong Gales at S and hazy with rain, and which continued the most part of the 23rd.

Sunday, July 23rd 1769 in so much that I did not think it safe to break the Ship loose and put to sea as I intended.

Monday, July 24th 1769 Winds variable from S-S-E to N-E. At 8am got under sail and plyed to the Northward within the Reef, in order to go out at the Northern Channell, it being the broadest; but being little wind and meeting with Shoals we had not before discovered, we turned down but slowly.

Tuesday, July 25th 1769 First part, little wind at N-E; in the night calm, am a fresh breeze at W-N-W, fair weather. At 3pm Anchor'd in 22 fm Muddy bottom, the N Channell open bearing N-E 1/2 E, at 5am a breeze sprung up at N-W, weighed and put to Sea, and hauled to the Northward in order to take a View of the Island and Ataha and Bolabola; but before I proceed farther, I shall describe the Harbour we have been in. This Harbour, taken in its greatest Extent, is capable of holding any number of Shipping in perfect security, as it extends almost the whole length of this side of the Island, and is defended from the Sea by a reef of Coral rocks; the Sermost opening in this reef or Channell into the Harbour, which is not more than a Cable's length wide, is off the Eermost point of the Island, and may be known by a small woody Island, which lies a little to the S-E of it. Between 3 and 4 mi N-W from this Island lies 2 other small Islands, and in the same direction as the reef, of which they are a part. Between these 2 Islands is another Channell into the Harbour that is a full Quarter of a mile broad; still further to the N-W are some other small Islands, where, I am informed, is another small inlet, but this I did not see; but, as to the other 2, we enter'd the Harbour by the one and came out by the other.

The principal refreshments we have got here consists in Plantains, Cocoa nuts, some Yams and a few Hogs and fowls. This side of the Island is neither Populous nor Rich in Produce, if compared to George's Island, or even Huaheine; however, here is no want of refreshments for a ship who may put in here and stay but a short time; and wood and water may be got everywhere, tho' the latter is not very convenient to come at.

Wednesday, July 26th 1769 Winds at W by N and W by S, but very Variable towards the Latter part. At 4pm the N End of Ulitea S 75° W, distance 2 lg, and the S end of Otaha N 77° W. About a League to the Northward of the S end of Otaha, on the E side of the Island, a mile or more from the Shore, lies 2 Small Islands. Between these Islands Tupia says there is a Channell into a very good harbour which lies within the Reef and it had all the appearance of such. Kept plying to Windward all night without getting any ground. At Noon the Peak on Bolabola W by S. Lat observed 16° 26' S.

Thursday, July 27th 1769 Variable light Airs of wind in the S-W Quarter, and fair weather. Seeing that there is a broad Channell between Otaha and Bolabola, I intend to go through that way and not run to the Northward of all; but as the wind is right an end, and very Variable withall, we get little or no ground. Between 5 and 6 o'Clockpm, as we were standing to the Northward, we discover'd a small low Island lying N by W or N-N-W distant 4 or 5 lg from Bolabola. This Island is called Tubai. Tupia says it produces nothing but a few Cocoa Nuts, that there are only 3 families live upon it, but that the people from these Islands resort thither to Catch fish. At Noon the peak of Bolabola bore N 25° W, and the N end of Otaha N 80° W, distant 3 lg. Lat observed 16° 38' S.

Friday, July 28th 1769 Little wind and Variable between the S-W and N-W. At 6am, being near the Entrance of the Harbour which lies on the E side of Otaha before mentioned, and finding that it might be examin'd without loosing time, I sent away the Master in the Long boat, with orders to sound the Harbour, and if the wind did not shift in our favour to land upon the Island and to Traffick with the Natives for such refreshments as were to be got. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went along with him.

Saturday, July 29th 1769 Little wind and Variable. Kept plying on and off this day, waiting for the return of the Long boat. At 1/2 past 5 not seeing anything of her, fir'd a Gun for her to return, and as soon as it was dark hoisted a light. At 1/2 past 8 heard the report of a musquet, which we answered with a Gun; and soon after the Boat came on board with 3 small Hogs, a few Fowls, and a large Quantity of Plantains, and some Yams. They found the Natives very Sociable and ready to part with anything they had, and the Harbour safe and Commodious, with a good Anchorage in 25, 20, and 16 fm clear ground. As soon as the Boat was hoisted in we made Sail to the Northward, and at 8 o'Clockam were close under the Peak of Bolabola, but as we could not weather the Island, we Tack'd and stood off until near Noon, then Tack'd again and stood to the S-W. At Noon the Peak of Bolabola bore S 75° W; we were then distant from the Shore under it 2 or 3 mi, and from the Peak about 5 mi. Lat observed 16° 29' S.

Sunday, July 30th 1769 Wind in the S-E Quarter. At first a Gentle breeze, but afterwards freshned upon us. pm made several Trips before we could weather the S end of Bolabola, which at last we accomplished between 7 and 8 o'Clock, and stood off S-S-W until 12 at night, then Tack'd and stood in until 4am, then stood off again; but meeting with a large swell from the Southward, against which the Ship made little or no way, at 8 we tack'd and stood in Shore again. At this time we discovered an Island which bore from us N 63° W, distant about 8 lg: at the same time the Peak of Bolabola bore N 1/2 E, distance 3 or 4 lg. This Island Tupia calls Maurua, and according to his account it is but small, and surrounded by a Reef of Rocks, and hath no Harbour fit for Shipping. It is inhabited, and its produce is the same as the other Islands we have touched at. It riseth in a high round hill in the middle of the Island, which may be seen 10 lg. At noon the S end of Otaha bore N 80° E, distance 4 lg. Lat observed 16° 39' S.

Monday, 31st. Fresh Gales in the S-E Quarter, and close, cloudy weather. Plying to windward all this day, on the S-W side of Otaha, without gaining little or anything. In the middle watch was obliged to double reef our Topsails, but in the morning it fell moderate, and we crowded all the sail we could. At Noon the S end of Otaha bore E, distance 2 lg. Lat observed 16° 40' S. Tupia told us there was a very good Harbour within the Reef which lies on this side of Otaha; but this Harbour I shall discribe in another place.

Tuesday, August 1st 1769 A fresh Gale at S-E the most part of this day. Kept plying to windward all the afternoon and night, and in the morning found ourselves nearly the length of the S end of Ulitea, and to windward of some Harbours that lay on the W side of this Island. Into one of them I intended to go with the Ship, in order to stop a Leak in the Powder room, which could not be easily done at Sea, and to take in more Ballast, as I found her too light to carry sail upon a wind. At Noon plying off one of the Harbour's mouth, the wind being right out.

Wednesday, August 2nd 1769 Moderate breezes at S-E and E, with some Showers of Rain. At 3pm anchor'd in the Entrance of the Channell leading into the Harbour in 14 fm water; found a tide setting pretty strong out, which was the reason that we could not work in; carried out the Kedge Anchor in order to warp into the Harbour, but after this was done we could not Trip the Bower Anchor with all the purchass we could make, and was therefore obliged to lay still all night, but in the morning we did it with Ease, and warped the Ship into a proper birth, and moor'd in 28 fm, a sandy bottom. A great many of the Natives came off to us both last night and this morning, and brought with them Hogs, Fowls, Plaintains, etc., which they parted with at a very easy rate.

Thursday, August 3rd 1769 Winds from E-S-E to N-E; very Hot weather this afternoon. I went ashore to look for a place to get stones for Ballast, and a watering place, both of which I found very convenient; and in the morning sent an Officer a Shore to Superintend the getting off the Ballast and Water, and I went in the Pinnacle to the Northward to survey that part of the Island, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, while the Carpenters were employ'd on board stopping the Leaks of the Powder room and Foresail room.

Friday, August 4th 1769 First and Latter parts, moderate breezes, at E-N-E; in the night, Calm, Hot, and sultry. In our rout to the Northward this afternoon we were entertained at one place with Musick and Dancing. The Musick consisted of 3 Drums, and the Dancing was mostly perform'd by 2 Young Women and one Man, and this seem'd to be their profession. The dress of the women was such as we had not seen before; it was neat, decent, and well chose, and in many respects not much unlike a European dress; only their Arms, Necks, and Shoulders were bare, and their headdress was the Tomow stuck with Flowers. They made very little use of their feet and Legs in Dancing, but one part or another of their bodies were in continual motion and in various postures, as standing, setting, and upon their Hands and knees, making strange Contorsions. Their Arms, hands, and Fingers they moved with great Agility and in a very Extraordinary manner, and altho' they were very exact in observing the same motion in all their movements, yet neither their Musick or Dancing were at all Calculated to please a European. There were likewise some men, who acted a kind of a Farce; but this was so short that we could gather nothing from it, only that it shew'd that these People have a Notion of Dramatick performances, and some of our Gentlemen saw them act a Farce the next day, wherein was 4 Acts, and it seem'd to them to represent a War between the Bolabola men and those of Ulitea, wherein the former triumph'd over the latter; but what might help them to draw this Conclusion was the knowing that such a thing has not long ago hapned between these 2 People, and that the Bolabola men at present possess most of the Lands on this Island. This is

their grand Dramatick Heiva, and I believe is occasionally performed in all the Islands. Upon my return to the Ship in the evening I found that they had got on board 20 Tuns of Ballast, and this I thought would be sufficient. In the morning we sent all our water Casks on shore, and got them all off full by Noon. This morning I received a present from Opoony, the Eare dehi of Bolabola, who at this time was upon this Island. It consisted of 3 Hogs, some pieces of Cloth, Plantains, Cocoa Nuts, etc. These were sent by his Servants, and I was told that he would come the next day himself.

Saturday, August 5th 1769 This evening we bought as much Fish as the whole Ship's Company could destroy while good. In the morning I sent the Master to the N End of the Island with the Long boat to Traffick with the Natives for Provisions, as they did not bring it to the Ship, as they had hitherto done; and myself, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, went in the Pinnace to the Southern part of the Island, partly on the same account and partly to Examine that part of the Island. In our rout we passed thro' 2 Harbours equally as good as the one in which the Ship lays, but the Country about them is poorer and but thinly inhabited, and we got no one thing worth bringing home with us, but the Master succeeded something better.

Sunday, August 6th 1769 Variable light Airs and fair weather.am I sent the Master again to the Northward to procure refreshments, who return'd not unsuccessfull. Opoony, the Chief, sent some of his people this morning to me to get something in return for the present he sent the other day; he not choosing, as I suppose, to trust himself on board, or perhaps he thought the persons he sent (who were 3 very pretty young Girls) would succeed better than he should do. Be this as it may, they went away very well satisfied with what they got, altho' I believe that they were disappointed in some things.

Monday, August 7th 1769 Variable light Airs.pm some Showers of rain. Being desirous to see King Opoony, we made a party this afternoon and I went ashore for that purpose, carrying along with us a small present. Upon our landing he did not receive us setting, as all the other Chiefs had hitherto done, or in any manner of Form; this we attributed to his Stupidity, for such he appeared to be. However, he gave me a Hog in return for the present I made him, and this was paying us full as great a Complement. Before we took our leave we let him know that we should go to Otaha in the morning in our Boats, and would be glad to have him along with us, and he accordingly promised to accompany us thither. Accordingly, very early in the morning, I set out with both Pinnace and Long boat for Otaha, and some of the Gentlemen along with me; and in our way called upon Opoony, who was in his Canoe ready to set out. As soon as we landed on Otaha I made him a present of a Axe; this I thought would induce him to encourage his Subjects to bring us such Provisions as we wanted, but I believe we had already got all they intended us, for after staying with him until Noon we were obliged to go away without getting any one thing.

Tuesday, August 8th 1769 After leaving Opoony we proceeded towards the N point of the Island, and in our way pick'd up half a Dozen Hogs, as many Fowls, and some Plantains and Yams; and I had an opportunity to view and draw a Sketch of the Harbour which lies on this Side of the Island, and which was the only thing that induced me to make this Excursion. After it was dark we met with the Longboat, which I had in the morning dispatch'd to another part of the Island; and we now made the best of our way to the Ship and got on board about 10 at night. The Carpenter having finished stopping the Leaks about the Powder Room and Sailroom I now intend to sail as soon as ever the wind will permit us to get out of the Harbour.

Wednesday, August 9th 1769pm had a light breeze of wind at N; in the night had much rain. am little wind and Variable, with some Showers of rain. At 11am a breeze of wind sprung up at E, which carried us out of the Harbour, and as soon as the Boats were hoisted in made Sail to the Southward. Since we have been about these Islands we have expended but little of our Sea Provisions, and have at this last place been very plentifully supply'd with Hogs, Fowls, Plantains, and Yams, which will be of very great use to us in case we should not discover any lands in our rout to the Southward, the way I now intend to Steer.

Describing the islands, Ulietea, Otaha and Bolabola, so called by the Natives, and it was not thought adviseable to give them any other Names; but these three, with Huaheine, Tuibai, and Maurua, as they lay contiguous to one another, I have named Society Isles. They are situated between the Lat of  $16^{\circ} 10'$  and  $16^{\circ} 55'$  S and between the Lon  $151^{\circ} 00'$  and  $151^{\circ} 42'$  W from the Meridian of Greenwich. Ulietea and Otaha lay close to each other, and are both inclosed within a Reef of Coral Rocks; and altho' the distance between the one and the other is near 2 mi, yet there is no Passage for Shipping. By means of this reef are form'd several excellent Harbours. The entrance into them are but narrow, but when a Ship is once in nothing can hurt her. Those on the E side have been already described. On the W side of Ulietea, which is the largest Island of the 2, are 3, the Nermost of which, called Oraotanue, we lay in, the Channell leading in is a  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a mile wide and lies between 2 low sandy Islands, which are the Nermost small Islands on this side. You have good Anchorage between or just within the 2 Islands in 28 fm soft ground. This harbour, tho' but small, yet it is preferable to any on the Island, on account of the easy getting of fresh Water, and being seated in the most fertile part of the Island. The other 2 harbours lay to the Southward of this, and not far from the S end of the Island. In both of them are good Anchorage in 10, 12, and 14 fm water: they are readily known by 3 small woody Islands that lay at their entrance, the Sermost Harbour lies within and to the Southward of the Sermost Island, and the other lies between the Nermost. There are more Harbours at the S End of this Island, as I am inform'd, but these were not examin'd by us.

Otaha affords 2 very good Harbours, one on the E and the other on the W side; that on the E side called Ohamane hath been already mentioned, the other is called Oharurua and lies about the middle of the S-W side of the Island. It is pretty large, and affords good Anchorage in 20 and 25 fm, and there is no want of fresh Water. The breach in the Reef which forms a Channell into this harbour is  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a mile broad, steep too, on both sides, and the same may be said of all the others, and in general there is no danger but what is Visible.

The Island of Bolabola lies N-W by W from Otaha, distant 4 lg, it is encompassed by a reef of Rocks and several small Islands, and the Circuit of the whole appear'd to be about 8 lg. On the S-W side of the Islands (as I am inform'd) is an opening in the Reef which admits of a Channell into a very good Harbour. This Island is very remarkable on account of a high Craggy hill upon it, which Terminates at Top in 2 Peaks, one higher than the other; this hill is so perpendicular that it appears to be quite inaccessible. The land on Ulietea and Otaha is of a very hilly, broken, and uneven surface, except what borders upon the Sea Coast, and high withall, yet the Hills look green and pleasant and are in many places cloathed with woods.

The Produce of these Islands, and manners and Customs of the Natives are much the same as at King George's Island, only as the Bread fruit Tree is here in not such plenty, the natives to supply that deficiency plant and Cultivate a greater Quantity of Plantains and Yams of several sorts, and these they have in the greatest Perfection.



The inhabitants are rather of a fairer Colour than the Generality of the Natives of George's Island, but more especially the Women, who are much fairer and handsomer, and the Men are not so much Addicted to thieving, and are more Open and free in their behaviour.

The only difference we could see in their Religion was in the Houses of their Gods, which were very different to those we saw on George's Island. Those here were made about the Size and shape of a Coffin open at one End; they are laid upon a Number of small Wooden Arches, which are fram'd and fastned together like the Roof of a House, and these are generally supported about 3 or 4 feet above the ground by Posts. Over the box is a small roof or shade made of Palm thatch; in this Box are deposited the Oblations of the Gods, such as Pieces of Cloth, Human bone, etc., and these places they hold sacred, and some are placed in their Mories, and some not. They have a Custom of preserving the Sculls and under Jaw bones of the Dead, but wether of their Friends or Enemies I cannot pretend to say. Several of the Sculls, we observed, were broke, and its very probable that the owners of them had been kill'd in battle, as some of their Weapons are well Calculated for breaking of Heads; and from what we could learn it is a Custom with them to cut out the Lower jaw of their Enemies, but I believe not before they are kill'd, and these they keep as Trophies, and are sometimes hung up in their Houses.

The Chief or King of Bolabola hath of late Years Usurped the Sovereignty of the other two, and the Bolabola men at this time possess great part of the Lands on Ulietea and Otaha that they have taken from the Natives. The Lands adjoining to the Harbours of Oraotanue belong'd to Tupia, the Person we have on board, who is a Native of Ulietea. These people are very ingenious in building their Proes or Canoes, and seem to take as much Care of them, having large Shades or Houses to put them in, built for the purpose, and in these houses they likewise build and repair them, and in this they shew a great deal of ingenuity far more than one could expect. They are built full Bellied, and after the very same Model as those Six we saw on George's Island, which I have already described, and some of them are full as large; it is more than probable that these 6 Proes were built at some of these Islands. In these Proes, or Pahies as they call them, from all the accounts we can learn, these people sail in those Seas from Island to Island for several hundred lg, the Sun serving them for a Compass by day, and the Moon and Stars by night. When this comes to be proved, we shall be no longer at a loss to know how the Islands lying in those Seas came to be peopled; for if the inhabitants of Ulietea have been at Islands laying 2 or 300 lg to the Westward of them, it cannot be doubted but that the inhabitants of those Western Islands may have been at others as far to Westward of them, and so we may trace them from Island to Island quite to the E Indies.

Tupia tells us that during the months of November, December, and January W winds, with rain, prevail; and as the inhabitants of the Islands know very well how to make the proper use of the winds, there will no difficulty arise in Trading or Sailing from Island to Island, even tho' they lie in an E and W direction.

Thursday, August 10th 1769pm, Light Airs and Calm, remainder fresh breezes and Cloudy. At 6pm the S end of Ulietea S-E 1/2 E, distant 4 lg; but I take my departure from the Harbour, saild from in Lat 16° 46' S, and Lon 151° 27' W. At 7am found the Variation to be 5° 50' E. Wind E; course S 16° W; distance 50 mi; Lat observed 17° 34' S, Lon 151° 41' W.

Friday, August 11th 1769 Fresh breezes and Clear weather. Wind E; course S 4° W; distance 85 mi; Lat 18° 59' S, Lon 151° 45' W.

Saturday, August 12th 1769 Gentle breezes and fair weather. Wind E, E by N; course S 3/4 E; distance 77 mi; Lat 20° 15' S, Lon 151° 36' W.

Sunday, August 13th 1769 Moderate breezes and Clear weather. Variation 5° 40' E. Wind E by N; course S 16° E; distance 96 mi; Lat 21° 47' S, Lon 151° 9' W.

Monday, August 14th 1769 Fresh breezes and fair weather. At 2pm saw land bearing S-E, which Tupia calls the Island of Ohetiroa. At 6 was within 2 or 3 lg of it, the Extreamps bearing from S by E to S-E; shortned sail and stood off and on all night; at 6am made Sail and stood in for the Land and run to LeEastward of the Island, keeping close in shore all the time, saw several of the Natives as we run along shore, but in no great numbers. At 9 hoisted out the Pinnace and sent Lieutenant Gore, Mr. Banks, and Tupia to Endeavour to land upon the Island, and to speak with the Natives, and to try if they could learn from them what lands lay to the Southward of us, and likewise to see if there was Anchorage in a Bay which appear'd to our View, not that I intended to Anchor or make any stay here. Wind N-N-E; Lat 22° 26' S, Lon 150° 55' W; at noon, Ohetiroa E 2 lg.

Tuesday, August 15th 1769 Fresh breezes and fair weather. At 2pm the Pinnace return'd on board without landing, not but what it was practicable, but they did not think it Altogether safe with only one Boat, as it would have been attended with some danger on account of the Surf and Rocks upon the Shore. The Natives were Arm'd, and Shewd no Signs either of fear or Friendship. Some of them came off to the Boat in a Canoe, and had some Nails and Beads given them; but with these they were not Satisfied, thinking they had a right to everything in the Boat, and at last grew so Troublesome that in order to get clear of them our People were obliged to fire some Musquets, but with no intent to hurt any of them; however, it so hapned that one Man was Slightly wounded in the head. The firing had the desired effect, and they thought fit to retire. After this, as the Boat lay near the Shore, some of them waded off to her, and brought with them some Trifles which they parted with for small Nails, etc. They seem'd desirous that our people should land, but this was looked upon as a Piece of Policy in them to get the whole Boat's Crew in their power; however, this was not attempted, as I had given orders to run no Risk. The Bay they went into, which lies on the W side of the Island, had in it 25 fm Water, but the bottom was very foul and Rocky. We had now made the Circuit of the Island (which did not appear to the best advantage), and found that there was neither a Harbour or safe Anchorage about it, and therefore I thought the Landing upon it would be attended with no advantage either to ourselves or any future navigators; and from the Hostile and thievish disposition of the Natives it appear'd that we could have no friendly intercourse with them until they had felt the Smart of our fire Arms, a thing that would have been very unjustifiable in me at this Time; we therefore hoisted in the Boat, and made Sail to the Southward.

This Island is situated in the Lat of 22° 27' S, and in the Lon of 150° 47' W from the Meridian of Greenwich. It is 13 mi in Circuit, and tolerably high; it appears to be neither Populous nor fertile; its produce seem'd to be nearly the same as the other Islands we have touched at, and likewise the Stature, Colour, Habit, and Arms of the Natives, only that some of them wore Pieces of Cloth like broad belts, different both in Shape and Colour to anything of the kind we had seen before, and their Arms, and in general everything they had about them, much neater made, and shew'd great proofs of an ingenious fancy. Tupia says that their are several Islands laying at different directions from this-that is, from the S to the W and N-W-and that 3 days' sail

to the N-E is an Island called Manua, that is Bird Island, and that it lies 4 days' sail from Ulietea, which is one day less than from Ulietea to Ohetiroa. From this account I shall be able to find the Situation of Manua pretty well. Since we have left Ulietea Tupia hath been very desirous for us to steer to the Westward, and tells us if we will go that way we shall be with plenty of Islands: the most of them he himself hath been at, and from the discription he gives of two of them they must be those discover'd by Capt. Wallace, and by him called Boscawen and Keppel's Islands, and those do not lay less than 400 lg to the Westward of Ulietea. He says that they are 10 or 12 days in going thither, and 30 or more in coming Back, and that their Pahies-that is their large Proes-sails much faster than this Ship. All this I believe to be true, and therefore they may with Ease sail 40 lg a day or more.

The farthest Island to the Southward that Tupia hath been at, or knows anything of, lies but 2 days' Sail from Ohetiroa, and is called Moutou, but he says that his father once told him that there was Islands to the Southward of it; but we Cannot find that he either knows or ever heard of a Continent or large Track of Land. I have no reason to doubt Tupia's information of these Islands, for when we left Ulietea and steer'd to the Southward he told us that if we would keep a little more to the E (which the wind would not permit us to do) we should see Manua, but as we then steer'd we should see Ohetiroa, which hapned accordingly. If we meet with the Islands to the Southward he speaks off, it's well, but if not, I shall spend no more time searching for them, being now fully resolv'd to stand directly to the Southward in search of a Continent. Wind N; course S 1/2 E; distance 94 mi; Lat 24° 1 minute S, Lon 150° 37' W; at noon, Ohetiroa N 1/2 W, 31 lg; variation 6° 7' E.

NOTE. As we advanced to the Southward into Cold weather, and a troubled Sea, the Hogs we got at Ulietea began to die apace. They cannot endure the IE cold, nor will they hardly eat anything but vegetables, so that they are not at all to be depended upon at Sea. The fowls also have a complaint general among them which affects their heads, so that they continue holding it down betwixt their Legs until they die; this at IE was the fate of most of ours. This is necessary to be known to those who come such Voyages as these, IE they place too much dependance on the live stock they get at the Islands.

Wednesday, August 16th 1769 Fresh breezes and Cloudy the first part; in the night, Squally, with rain; remainder, moderate and fair weather. At 8 am, saw the Appearances of high land to the Eastward; bore up towards it, but at 10 we discover'd it to be only Clouds, at which we hauld our wind to the Southward. At Noon found the Ship by Observation 21 mi to the Northward of the Log, which may in some measure be owing to a S-W swell we have had all the last 24 hours. Wind N by W, W, W by S; course S 15° E; distance 62 mi; Lat 25° 00' S, Lon 150° 19' W.

Thursday, August 17th 1769 A Gentle breeze with some flying showers of rain. Had a large Swell from the S-W all this day, much larger than yesterday, and this must be the reason why the observ'd Lat differ'd from the Log again to day 16 mi. Wind W by S to S-W by S; course S-S-E; distance 76 mi; Lat 26° 10' S, Lon 149° 46' W.

Friday, August 18th 1769 The first part Calm; remainder light breezes and Clear. Variation per Amplitude in the evening 8° 8' E; in the Morning 7° 56' E. Carpenters employed repairing the Boats. The S-W swell still Continues, but not so much as Yesterday, and the observed Lat and Log agrees. Wind Calm, N; course S 18° E; distance 38 mi; Lat 26° 48' S, Lon 149° 42' W.

Saturday, August 19th 1769 Little wind with much rain in the night, the S-W swell still Continues, from which I conclude that there is no land near us in that Quarter. Wind N-W; course S-E by S; distance 62 mi; Lat 27° 40' S; Lon 149° 6' W.

Sunday, August 20th 1769 Little wind all this day. Saw a large Albetross. Wind N-W; course S-E by S; distance 57 mi; Lat 28° 24' S, Lon 148° 25' W.

Monday, August 21st 1769 Fresh Gales and Hazy weather. Saw 2 Pintado Birds, the first I have seen this Voyage; they are larger than a Pidgeon and checquer'd black and white over their backs and wings, with white Bellies, Black heads, and the end of their Tails black. Wind N-N-W; course S by E; distance 80 mi; Lat 29° 44' S, Lon 148° 22' W.

Tuesday, August 22nd 1769 First part Strong Gales with much rain, Thunder, and Lightning; remainder moderate and fair weather. About Noon saw some rock weed, an Albetross, and some Smaller Sea Birds. Wind N by W, S-W by W; course S 14° E; distance 81 mi; Lat 31° 3' S, Lon 148° 00' W.

Wednesday, August 23rd 1769 Little wind for the most part, and pretty clear weather. In the night had some Showers of rain. Saw a Grampus, and several Pintado Birds. Wind S-W to W-S-W; course S-S-E; distance 68 mi; Lat 31° 6' S; Lon 147° 29' W.

Thursday, August 24th 1769 The first part light Airs and Calm; middle, moderate breezes and Cloudy; latter part very squally with rain. am Variation per Azimuth 7° 18' E. At Noon took in the Topsails and got down Topgallant yards. Saw a Water Spout in the N-W; it was about the breadth of a Rainbow, of a dark Colour, the Upper end of the Cloud from whence it came was about 8° above the Horizon. Wind Variable; course S-S-E; distance 41 mi; Lat 32° 44' S, Lon 147° 10' W.

Friday, August 25th 1769 The first and middle part Strong Gales and Squally with rain, remainder moderate and Cloudy. pm Unbent the Maintopsail being Split and bent another; in the night lay too under the Foresail, and in the morning made sail under the Courses and Topsails with one reef only. Had a large Sea from the Southward, saw several Albetrosses, Pintado Birds, and Sheer Waters; some of the Albetrosses were small, such as we usually saw off Cape Horn; all these kinds of birds are generally seen at a great distance from land. Wind, S; course N-W; distance 26 mi; Lat 32° 26' S; Lon 147° 32' W.

Saturday, August 26th 1769 Moderate and cloudy weather, a Swell from the S-W. By observation of the Sun and Moon made this morning, the Lon of the Ship at Noon is 147° 18' 40 seconds, which differs but 11' from that given by the Log. Wind S-W; course S 6° E; S distance 13 mi; Lat 32° 39' S, Lon 147° 30' W.

Sunday, August 27th 1769 First part little wind and Cloudy; latter part, fresh Gales and Clear weather. Variation per Azimuth 6° 40' E. Saw several Albetrosses, Pintado Birds and Sheer Waters. Wind W, N-N-W; course S 5° E; distance 55 mi; Lat 33° 34', Lon 147° 25'.

Monday, August 28th 1769 Fresh Gales and Cloudy, with rain on the Latter part. At 10 departed this Life Jno. Rearden Boatswain's Mate; his Death was occasioned by the Boatswain out of mere good Nature giving him part of a Bottle of Rum last night, which it is supposed he drank all at once. He was found to be very much in Liquor last night, but as this

was no more than what was common with him when he could get any, no farther notice was taken of him than to put him to Bed, where this morning about 8 o'clock he was found Speechless and past recovery. Wind N; course S; distance 110 mi; Lat  $35^{\circ} 34'$  S, Lon  $147^{\circ} 25'$  W.

Tuesday, August 29th 1769 Fore and middle parts fresh Gales and Dark, Hazy weather with some rain. At 5am saw a Comet in the N. Wind N-W to S-W; course S  $1/4$  E; distance 96 mi; Lat  $37^{\circ} 0'$  S, Lon  $147^{\circ} 21'$  W.

Wednesday, August 30th 1769 Fresh breeze and fair weather. At 1am saw the Comet a little above the Horizon in the E. It pass'd the Meridian about  $1/2$  past 4; the Tail of the Comet Subtended an Angle of  $42^{\circ}$ . At 8am Variation per Azimuth  $7^{\circ} 9'$  E. Bent another suit of Sails. Saw a piece of Rock weed, Some Pintado birds and Sheer Waters and a Green bird something smaller than a Dove, but it was not near enough to distinguish whether it was a Sea or Land bird; it was only seen by one Person, and he probably was mistaken in the Colour. A Swell from the S-W, Wind W; course S  $3/4$  E; distance 81 mi; Lat  $38^{\circ} 20'$  S, Lon  $147^{\circ} 6'$  W.

Thursday, August 31st 1769 The first part a fresh breeze and cloudy. At 6pm hauld the wind to the S-W and close reefd the Topsails. At 1am being very squally with rain, took in the Topsails and brought too under the Mainsail. At 6 made Sail under the Courses. Saw some seaweed, sounded, but had no ground at 65 fm of Line. Some Albetrosses, Sheer Waters, and a great many Pintado Birds about the Ship with some hundreds of Birds that were smaller than Pidgeons, their backs were grey, their Bellies white, and the ends of their Tails black, and have a blackish line along the upper parts of the wings from the Tip of one to the other. We saw birds very like those near Faulklands Islands on the Coast of Patagonia, only they had not the black streak along the wings; they fly low like sheer waters or mother Carys birds, and are perhaps of the same Tribe, for Distinction sake I shall call them Doves. Wind W; course S  $4^{\circ} 15'$  E; distance 68 mi; Lat  $39^{\circ} 28'$  S, Lon  $147^{\circ} 0'$  W.

Friday, September 1st 1769 Very strong Gales and heavy Squalls with rain; at 6pm brought too under the Main Sail. At 6am set the Foresail, a Great Sea from the Westward. The same sort of Birds about the Ship as Yesterday, but not in such great Numbers. Wind, W; Course, S  $29^{\circ}$  E; distance 50 mi; Lat  $40^{\circ} 12'$  S, Lon  $146^{\circ} 29'$  W.

Saturday, September 2nd 1769 Very strong Gales, with heavy squalls of Wind, hail, and rain. At 4pm, being in the Lat of  $40^{\circ} 22'$  S, and having not the IE Visible signs of land, we wore, and brought too under the Foresail, and reef'd the Mainsail, and handed it. I did intend to have stood to the Southward if the winds had been Moderate, so long as they continued W, notwithstanding we had no prospect of meeting with land, Rather than stand back to the Northward, on the same Track as we came, but as the weather was so very Tempestious I laid aside this design, and thought it more adviseable to stand to the Northward into better weather, IE we should receive such Damage in our Sails and Rigging as might hinder the further Prosecutions of the Voyage. Some Albetrosses, Pintado birds, and Doves about the Ship, and a Bird larger than a Duck, his plumage of a Dark Brown, with a Yellow beak. We saw of these Birds in our Passage to the Northward, after doubling Cape Horn. At Noon the weather was more moderate; set the Reefd Mainsail. A great Sea from the W-S-W. Wind W; Course N  $54^{\circ} 30'$  E; distance 46 mi; Lat  $39^{\circ} 45'$  S, Lon  $145^{\circ} 39'$  W.

Sunday, September 3rd 1769 The fore and middle parts fresh gales, with hard Squalls; Latter more moderate. At 5am loos'd the Reef out of the Mainsail, and set the Topsail double reef'd, and before noon had all the Reefs out. Wind W; course N; distance 50 mi; Lat 38° 54' S, Lon 145° 39' W.

Monday, September 4th 1769 First and latter parts, little wind and Cloudy; in the night Calm. Very few Birds about the Ship. Wind W; course N by E; distance 26 mi; Lat 38° 29' S, Lon 145° 32' W.

Tuesday, September 5th 1769 Fresh breezes and Cloudy weather. At 2pm saw a piece of rock Weed. Variation, per Azimuth 7° 0' E. Wind W to N-W; course N 32 W; distance 44 mi; Lat 37° 52' S, Lon 146° 2' W.

Wednesday, September 6th 1769 Fresh Gales and Squally, with rain. At Noon saw a Bird which was all white, except the Tip of each Wing; it was nearly as big as an Albetross. We saw 2 of these Birds in Lat 19° before we Arrived at George's Island. Wind W; course S 87° 30' W; distance 70 mi; Lat 37° 49' S, Lon 147° 30 W.

Thursday, September 7th 1769 Fresh Gales and hard squalls, with rain. At 3pm saw something upon the Water, which must either have been a Billet of Wood or a Seal. At Noon a hard gale and Squally, which obliged us to take in the Topsails. Wind W; course S 80° W; distance 15 mi; Lat 37° 52' S, Lon 147° 49' W.

Friday, September 8th 1769pm very strong gales and Squally.am more moderate; set the Topsails. At Noon the Observed Lat was 13 mi to the N of the Log. This I take to be owing to the great Sea we have had constantly of Late from the S-W. Wind W; course N 1/4 E; distance 76 mi; Lat 36° 36' S, Lon 147° 40' W.

Saturday, September 9th 1769 Moderate breezes and dark, cloudy weather, sometimes Hazy, with Drizzling Rain. Wind S-E; course N 77° W; distance 76 mi; Lat 36° 19' S, Lon 149° 12' W.

Sunday, September 10th 1769 Fresh breezes and cloudy. At 9am we thought the Colour of the Sea was paler than Usual, which occasioned us to sound, but had no ground with 100 fm. Wind S-W, W-S-W; course N 52° W; distance 97 mi; Lat 35° 19' S, Lon 150° 46' W.

Monday, September 11th 1769 Fresh breezes, and for the most part thick, hazy weather, with rain. Wind S-W; course N 43° W; distance 87 mi; Lat 34° 15' S, Lon 152° 00' W.

Tuesday, September 12th 1769 Fresh breezes and cloudy; a swell from the S-S-W. Some Albetrosses and Pintado Birds about the Ship. Wind W; course N 30° W; distance 73 mi; Lat 33° 12' S, Lon 152° 44' W.

Wednesday, September 13th 1769 Gentle breezes, with some flying Showers. At 6pm Variation per Azimuth, 8° 8' E. Note, while we was between the Lat of 37 and 40° we had constantly blowing Tempestious weather, but since we have been to the Northward of 37°, the weather hath been very moderate. Wind S-W and W-S-W; course N-N-W; distance 74 mi; Lat 32° 3' S, Lon 153° 16' W.

Thursday, September 14th 1769 Gentle breezes, and sometimes Calm. A Swell from the S-S-W. Wind Variable; course S 86° W; distance 33 mi; Lat 32° 5' S, Lon 153° 54' W.

Friday, September 15th 1769 First part, moderate and Cloudy, remainder Strong Gales and Squally. Several Albetrosses, Pintado Birds, and Sheer Waters about the Ship; some of the Albetrosses were all White. Wind N-E to S-E; course S 77 W; distance 139 mi; Lat 32° 36' S, Lon 156° 34' W.

Saturday, September 16th 1769 First part very strong Gales and Squally; remainder more moderate, with a large Swell from the Southward. Wind S-S-E, S, W-S-W; course N 60° W; distance 100 mi; Lat 31° 45' S, Lon 158° 16' W.

Sunday, September 17th 1769 Fresh Gales and Cloudy. Wind S-W; course N 25 W; distance 100 mi; Lat 31° 14' S, Lon 159° 6' W.

Monday, September 18th 1769 Moderate Gales and Cloudy, with a Swell from the Southward. Wind W; course N by W 1/2 W; distance 78 mi; Lat 29° 00' S, Lon 159° 32' W.

Tuesday, September 19th 1769 Variable; light Airs and Calm. Variation per Amplitude at sunset, 8° 36' E; per Azimuth in the morning, 8° 29' E; mean, 8° 32 1/2' E. A large hollow swell from the Southward. Wind Variable; course E; distance 6 mi; Lat 29° 00' S, Lon 159° 25' W.

Wednesday, September 20th 1769 Light Airs and Calm. Wind Variable; course S-W by S; distance 20 mi; Lat 29° 20' S, Lon 159° 47' W.

Thursday, September 21st 1769 Most part Gentle breezes and clear weather. Wind S E; course S 50° W; distance 62 mi; Lat 30° 00' S, Lon 160° 42' W.

Friday, September 22nd 1769 Fresh breezes and Cloudy. The S swell still Continues, from which I conjecture that there is no land near in that Direction. Wind S-E; course S 34 W; distance 81 mi; Lat 31° 7' S, Lon 161° 35' W.

Saturday, September 23rd 1769 Gentle breezes and Cloudy weather. Wind S-E; course S-W by S; distance 62 mi; Lat 31° 59' S, Lon 162° 44' W.

Sunday, September 24th 1769 Moderate breezes and Cloudy. At Noon saw some sea-Weed. The S swell is now quite gone down. Wind S-E to N-E; course S 35 W; distance 97 mi; Lat 33° 18' S, Lon 162° 51' W.

Monday, September 25th 1769 Ditto weather. At 1pm passed by a Piece of Wood, about 3 feet long and 7 or 8 Inches thick. Variation at 6pm per Azimuth, 10° 48' E.am, got up all the Boatswain's Stores, to take an account of them. Wind N-E; course S 43 1/2 W; distance 103 mi; Lat 34° 30' S, Lon 165° 10' W.

Tuesday, September 26th 1769 Fresh breezes and fair weather. Wind N-N-E; course S-W; distance 136 mi; Lat 36° 9' S, Lon 167° 14' W.

Wednesday, September 27th 1769 Very strong Gales and hazey, with rain the First and middle part; Latter, moderate and clear weather. In the evening took in the Topsails and Mainsail, and

lay too with her head to the Westward under the Foresail. During the night, at 4am, made Sail. Saw several Pieces of Sea Weed at different times this 24 Hours. Wind N by E, W; course S 28 W; distance 95 mi; Lat 37° 33' S, Lon 168° 10' W.

Thursday, September 28th 1769 First and middle parts, fresh gales and Cloudy; Latter part, very strong Gales and Squally. At 4pm saw a Seal aSleep upon the Water, and some Weed.am saw several bunches of Sea Weed and a few Albetrosses and Sheer Waters. Wind W; course S 21° W; distance 92 mi; Lat 38° 59' S, Lon 169° 5' W.

Friday, September 29th 1769 The first part strong Gales and Squally; remainder a fresh breeze and settled weather. At 1pm was obliged to take in the Topsails, but set them again at 4. At 11am saw a Bird something like a Snipe, only it had a short bill; it had the appearance of a land bird. Several Albetrosses, Pintado birds, and Sheer Waters about the Ship, and a Number of Doves; of these we have seen more or less ever since the 31st of last Month, the day we first saw them. Wind S-W; course N 59° W; distance 60 mi; Lat 38° 30' S, Lon 170° 14' W.

Saturday, September 30th 1769 Moderate breezes and Settled weather. Saw a dark brown bird as big as a Raven; it is a Sea Fowl, and are seen in great Numbers about the Faulkland Islands, as I am told. We likewise saw several pieces of Sea Weed. Wind S E; course N 87 1/2 W; distance 90 mi; Lat 38° 26' S, Lon 172° 20' W.

Sunday, October 1st 1769 Little Wind in the day time and Calm in the Night. At 8am sounded: no ground with 120 fm of line. Saw an immense number of Birds, the most of them were Doves; saw likewise a Seal aSleep upon the Water, which we at first took for a Crooked billet. These creatures, as they lay upon the Water, hold their fins up in a very odd manner, and very different to any I have seen before; we generally reckon that seals never go out of Soundings or far from Land, but the few we have seen in this Sea is certainly an exception to that rule. However, one would think that we were not far from some land, from the Pieces of Rock weed we see daily floating upon the Water. To-day we took up a small Piece of Stick, but to all appearance it had been a long time at Sea. The observ'd Lat is considerable to the Northward of that given by the Log, in so much that I think there must be some Current seting from the Southward. Wind S to W by N; course N 16° W; distance 43 mi; Lat 37° 45' S, Lon 172° 36' W.

Monday, October 2nd 1769 Little wind. At 3pm hoisted out a Boat to try the Current, but found none. Saw several Grampusses.am had a Boat in the Water, and Mr. Banks shott an Albetross which measured 10 feet 8 Inches from the tip of Wing to the other. He likewise shott 2 birds that were very much like Ducks, excepting their head and Bill; their plumage were dark brown. We first saw some of these birds in the Lat of 40° S, after our first coming into those Seas. Wind W-S-W, S-W; course N-N-W; distance 35 mi; Lat 37° 10' S, Lon 172° 54' W.

Tuesday, October 3rd 1769 Little wind and sometimes Calm.am Variation per Azimuth 13° 22' E. Saw some fish like a Skip Jack, and a small sort that appeared very Transparent. Took up a very small piece of wood with Barnacles upon it, a proof that it hath been some time at Sea. Some very large Albetrosses about the Ship and other birds. The observed Lat is 10 mi to the Northward of that given by the Log, and it was the same Yesterday, which I think is a Proof that there must be a Current setting to the Northward, notwithstanding we did not find any when we try'd it. Wind S; course N 60° W; distance 28 mi; Lat 36° 56' S, Lon 173° 27' W.



Wednesday, October 4th 1769 Gentle breezes and Cloudy weather. pm Variation per Azimuth  $12^{\circ} 48'$  E; sounded twice, but found no ground, with 120 fm of line. Saw some rock weed, but not in such plenty as of late. Wind S-E; course S  $52 \frac{1}{2}$  W; distance 86 mi; Lat  $37^{\circ} 43'$  S, Lon  $175^{\circ} 00'$  W.

Thursday, October 5th 1769 Light, gentle breezes and Clear weather. pm saw one of the same sort of Birds as we saw last Saturday. These birds are of a dark brown or Chocolate Colour, with some white feathers under their wings, and are as big as Ravens. Mr. Gore says that they are in great plenty at Port Egmont in Faulklands Islands, and for that reason calls them Port Egmont Hens. Saw a great many Porpoisses, large and Small; the small ones had white bellies and Noses. am saw 2 Port Egmont Hens, a Seal, some sea Weed, and a Piece of wood with Barnacles upon it. Wind S-E to E-N-E; course S  $49 \frac{1}{2}$  W; distance 63 mi; Lat  $38^{\circ} 23'$  S, Lon  $176^{\circ} 3'$  W.

Friday, October 6th 1769 Little wind, and fine pleasant weather. Saw some Seals, sea weed, and Port Egmont Hens. pm Variation per Azimuth  $12^{\circ} 50'$  E. Per Amplitude  $12^{\circ} 40'$ . am per Azimuth  $14^{\circ} 2'$  E; the difference is 1 degree  $3'$ , and the Ship has only gone 9 lg in the Time. The Colour of the water appears to be paler than common, and hath been so for some days past; this makes us sound frequently, but can find no ground with 180 fm of Line. Wind E-N-E; course S-W; distance 62 mi; Lat  $39^{\circ} 11'$  S, Lon  $177^{\circ} 2'$  W.

Saturday, October 7th 1769 Gentle breezes and settled weather. At 2pm saw land from the Masthead bearing W by N, which we stood directly for, and could but just see it of the Deck at sunset. Variation per Azimuth and Amplitude  $15^{\circ} 4 \frac{1}{2}'$  E; by observation of the Sun and Moon made this afternoon the Lon of the Ship is  $180^{\circ} 55'$  W, by the mean of these and Subsequent observations the Error of the Ship's account in Lon from George's Island is  $3^{\circ} 16'$ ; that is, so much to the Westward of the Lon resulting from the Log, which is what is inserted in the Columns. At midnight brought too and sounded, but had no ground with 170 fm. At daylight made sail in for the Land, at Noon it bore from S-W to N-W by N, distant 8 lg. Lat observed  $38^{\circ} 57'$  S; Wind N-E, S-E, Variable; course S  $70^{\circ}$  W; distance 41 mi; Lat  $38^{\circ} 57'$  observed S; Lon  $177^{\circ} 54'$  W.

Sunday, October 8th 1769 Gentle breezes and clear weather. At 5pm, seeing the opening of a Bay that appear'd to run pretty far inland, hauld our wind and stood in for it; but as soon as night came on we kept plying on and off until day light, when we found ourselves to leEastward of the Bay, the wind being at N. By Noon we fetch'd in with the S-W point, but not being able to weather it we tacked and stood off. We saw in the Bay several Canoes, People upon the Shore, and some houses in the Country. The land on the Sea Coast is high, with Steep Cliffs; and back inland are very high Mountains. The face of the Country is of a hilly surface, and appears to be cloathed with wood and Verdure. Wind between the E-N-E and N.

## **Chapter 5: Exploration of New Zealand**

Monday, October 9th 1769 Gentle breezes and Clear Weather. pm stood into the Bay and Anchored on the N-E side before the Entrance of a small River, in 10 fm, a fine sandy bottom. The N-E point of the Bay bore E by S  $\frac{1}{2}$  S, and the S-W point S, distance from the Shore half a League. After this I went ashore with a Party of men in the Pinnacle and yawl accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We landed abE of the Ship and on the E side of the River just mentioned; but seeing some of the Natives on the other side of the River of whom I was

desirous of speaking with, and finding that we could not ford the River, I order'd the yawl in to carry us over, and the pinnace to lay at the Entrance. In the mean time the Indians made off. However we went as far as their Hutts which lay about 2 or 300 Yards from the water side, leaving 4 boys to take care of the Yawl, which we had no sooner left than 4 Men came out of the woods on the other side the River, and would certainly have cut her off had not the People in the Pinnace discover'd them and called to her to drop down the Stream, which they did, being closely persued by the Indians. The coxswain of the Pinnace, who had the charge of the Boats, seeing this, fir'd 2 Musquets over their Heads; the first made them stop and Look round them, but the 2nd they took no notice of; upon which a third was fir'd and kill'd one of them upon the Spot just as he was going to dart his spear at the Boat. At this the other 3 stood motionless for a minute or two, seemingly quite surprised; wondering, no doubt, what it was that had thus kill'd their Comrade; but as soon as they recovered themselves they made off, dragging the Dead body a little way and then left it. Upon our hearing the report of the Musquets we immediately repair'd to the Boats, and after viewing the Dead body we return'd on board. In the morning, seeing a number of the Natives at the same place where we saw them last night, I went on shore with the Boats, mann'd and arm'd, and landed on the opposite side of the river. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and myself only landed at first, and went to the side of the river, the natives being got together on the opposite side. We called to them in the George's Island Language, but they answer'd us by flourishing their weapons over their heads and dancing, as we suppos'd, the War Dance; upon this we retir'd until the Marines were landed, which I order'd to be drawn up about 200 yards behind us. We went again to the river side, having Tupia, Mr. Green, and Dr. Monkhouse along with us. Tupia spoke to them in his own Language, and it was an agreeable surprize to us to find that they perfectly understood him. After some little conversation had passed one of them swam over to us, and after him 20 or 30 more; these last brought their Arms, which the first man did not. We made them every one presents, but this did not satisfy them; they wanted everything we had about us, particularly our Arms, and made several attempts to snatch them out of our hands. Tupia told us several times, as soon as they came over, to take care of ourselves for they were not our friends; and this we very soon found, for one of them snatched Mr. Green's hanger from him and would not give it up; this encouraged the rest to be more insolent, and seeing others coming over to join them, I order'd the man who had taken the Hanger to be fir'd at, which was accordingly done, and wounded in such a manner that he died soon after. Upon the first fire, which was only 2 Musquets, the others retir'd to a Rock which lay nearly in the middle of the River; but on seeing the man fall they return'd, probably to carry him off or his Arms, the last of which they accomplished, and this we could not prevent unless we had run our Bayonets into them, for upon their returning from off the Rock, we had discharged off our Peices, which were loaded with small shott, and wounded 3 more; but these got over the River and were carried off by the others, who now thought proper to retire. Finding nothing was to be done with the People on this side, and the water in the river being salt, I embarked with an intent to row round the head of the Bay in search of fresh water, and if possible to surprise some of the Natives and to take them on board, and by good Treatment and Presents endeavour to gain their friendship with this view.

Tuesday, October 10th 1769pm, I rowed round the head of the bay, but could find no place to land on account of the Great Surf which beat everywhere upon the Shore. Seeing 2 Boats or Canoes coming in from Sea I rowed to one of them, in order to Seize upon the People; and came so near before they took notice of us that Tupia called to them to come alongside and we would not hurt them; but instead of doing this they endeavour'd to get away, upon which I order'd a Musquet to be fir'd over their Heads, thinking this would either make them surrender,

or jump overboard; but here I was mistaken, for they immediately took to their Arms or whatever they had in the Boat, and began to attack us. This obliged us to fire upon them, and unfortunately either 2 or 3 were kill'd and one wounded, and 3 jumped overboard. These last we took up and brought on board, where they was Cloathed and Treated with all imaginable kindness; and to the Surprise of everybody became at once as cheerful and as merry as if they had been with their own Friends. They were all 3 Young, the eldest not above 20 years of Age, and the youngest about 10 or 12. I am aware that most Humane men who have not experienced things of this nature will Censure my Conduct in firing upon the People in their Boat, nor do I myself think that the reason I had for seizing upon her will at all justify me; and had I thought that they would have made the LE Resistance I would not have come near them; but as they did, I was not to stand still and suffer either myself or those that were with me to be knocked on the head.

In the morning, as I intended to put our 3 Prisoners ashore, and stay here the day to see what effect it might have upon the other Natives, I sent an Officer ashore with the Marines and a party of men to cut wood, and soon after followed myself, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, taking the 3 Natives with us, whom we landed on the W side of the River before mentioned. They were very unwilling to leave us, pretending that they should fall into the hands of their Enemies, who would kill and Eat them. However, they at last of their own accord left us and hid themselves in some bushes. Soon after this we discover'd several bodys of the Natives marching towards us, upon which we retir'd aCross the River, and joind the wooders; and with us came the 3 Natives we had just parted with, for we could not prevail upon them to go to their own people. We had no sooner got over the River than the others assembled on the other side to the Number of 150 or 200, all Arm'd. Tupia now began to Parly with them, and the 3 we had with us shew'd everything we had given them, part of which they laid and left upon the Body of the Man that was Kill'd the day before. These things seem'd so far to Convince them of our friendly intentions that one man came over to us, while all the others sat down upon the Sand. We everyone made this man a present, and the 3 Natives that were with us likewise presented him with such things as they had got from us, with which, after a short Stay, he retir'd aCross the River. I now thought proper to take everybody on board, to prevent any more Quarrels, and with us came the 3 Natives, whom we could not prevail upon to stay behind; and this appear'd the more strange as the man that came over to us was Uncle to one of them. After we had return'd on board we saw them Carry off the Dead Man; but the one that was Kill'd the first evening we Landed remain'd in the very spot they had left him.

Wednesday, October 11th 1769 In thepm, as I intended to sail in the Morning, we put the 3 Youths ashore, seemingly very much against their inclination; but whether this was owing to a desire they had to remain with us, or the fear of falling into the hands of their Enemies, as they pretended, I know not. The latter, however, seemed to be ill-founded, for we saw them carried aCross the River in a Catamaran, and walk Leasurely off with the other Natives. At 6am we weighed and stood out of the Bay, which I have named Poverty Bay, because it afforded us no one thing we wanted (Lat 38° 42' S, Lon 181° 36' W). It is in the form of a Horse Shoe, and is known by an Island lying close under the N-E point. The 2 points which forms the Entrance are high, with Steap white Cliffs, and lay a League and a half or 2 lg from Each other, N-E by E and S-W by W. The Depth of Water in this Bay is from 12 to 6 and 5 fm, a sandy bottom and good Anchorage, but you lay open to the winds between the S and E. Boats can go in and out of the river above mentioned at any time of Tide in fine weather; but as there is a Bar at the Entrance, on which the Sea Sometimes runs so high that no Boat can either get in or out, which hapned while we laid here; however, I believe that Boats can generally land on the N-E

side of the river. The shore of this Bay, from a little within each Entrance, is a low, flat sand; but this is only a Narrow Slip, for the face of the Country appears with a variety of hills and Vallies, all cloathed with woods and Verdure, and to all appearance well inhabited, especially in the Vallies leading up from the Bay, where we daily saw Smoke at a great distance inland, and far back in the Country are very high Mountains. At Noon the S-W point of Poverty Bay, which I have named Young Nicks head (after the Boy who first saw this land), bore N by W, distance 3 or 4 lg, being at this time about 3 mi from the Shore, and had 25 fm Water, the Main Land extending from N-E by N to S. My intention is to follow the direction of the Coast to the Southward, as far as the Lat of 40 or 41°, and then to return to the Northward, in case we meet with nothing to encourage us to proceed farther.

Thursday, October 12th 1769 Gentle breezes at N-W and N, with frequent Calms. In the Afternoon, while we lay becalm'd, several Canoes came off to the Ship, but kept at a distance until one, who appeared to come from a different part, came off and put alongside at once, and after her all the rest. The people in this boat had heard of the Treatment those had met with we had had on board before, and therefore came on board without hesitation; they were all kindly treated, and very soon entered into a Traffick with our People for George's Island Cloth, etc.; giving in Exchange their Paddles, having little else to dispose of, and hardly left themselves a sufficient number to paddle ashore; nay, the people in one Canoe, after disposing of their Paddles, offer'd to sell the Canoe. After a stay of about 2 hours they went away, but by some means or other 3 were left on board, and not one boat would put back to take them in, and, what was more surprizing, those aboard did not seem at all uneasy with their situation. In the evening a light breeze springing up at N-W, we steer'd along Shore, under an easy sail, until midnight, then brought too. Soon after it fell Calm, and continued so until 8 o'Clockam, when a breeze sprung up at N, with which we stood along shore S-S-W. At and after sunrise found the variation to be 14° 46' E. About this time 2 Canoes came off to the Ship, one of which was prevailed upon to come along side to take in the 3 people we had had on board all night, who now seem'd glad of the opportunity to get ashore. As the People in the Canoe were a little shy at first, it was observed that one Argument those on board made use on to intice the others alongside, was in telling them that we did not Eat men; from which it should seem that these people have such a Custom among them. At the time we made sail we were abtE of the Point of Land set yesterday at Noon, from which the Land trends S-S-W. This point I have named Cape Table, on account of its shape and figure. It lies 7 lg to the Southward of Poverty Bay, in the Lat of 39° 7' S, Lon 181° 36' W, it is of a moderate height, makes in a sharpe Angle, and appears to be quite flat at Top. In steering along shore to the Southward of the Cape, at the distance of 2 or 3 mi off, our soundings were from 20 to 30 fm, having a Chain of Rocks that appears at different heights above water, laying between us and the Shore. At Noon, Cape Table bore N 20° E, distant 4 lg, and a small Island (being the Sermost land in sight) bore S 70° W, distant 3 mi. This Island I have named Isle of Portland, on account of its very great resemblance to Portland in the English Channel. It lies about a mile from a Point on the Main, but there appears to be a ledge of Rocks extending nearly, if not quite, aCross from the one to the other. N 57° E, 2 mi from the S point of Portland, lies a sunken rock whereon the sea breaks; we passed between this Rock and the land having 17, 18, and 20 fathom Water. We saw a great Number of the Natives assembled together on the Isle of Portland; we likewise saw some on the Main land, and several places that were Cultivated and laid out in square Plantations.

Friday, October 13th 1769 At 1pm we discover'd land behind or to the Westward of Portland, extending to the Southward as far as we could see. In hauling round the S end of Portland we

fell into Shoal Water and broken ground, which we, however, soon got clear of. At this time 4 Canoes came off to us full of People, and kept for sometime under our stern threatening of us all the while. As I did not know but what I might be obliged to send our Boats ahead to sound, I thought these Gentry would be as well out of the way. I order'd a Musquet shott to be fir'd close to one of them, but this they took no notice of. A 4 Pounder was then fir'd a little wide of them; at this they began to shake their Spears and Paddles at us, but notwithstanding this they thought fit to retire. Having got round Portland, we hauled in for the Land N-W, having a Gentle breeze at N-E, which died away at 5 o'Clock and obliged us to Anchor in 21 fm, a fine sandy bottom: the S Point of Portland bore S-E 1/2 S distant about 2 lg, and a low Point on the Main bore N 1/2 E. In this last direction there runs in a deep bay behind the Land on which is Table Cape, which makes this Land a Peninsula, joined to the Main by a low, narrow neck of land; the Cape is the N Point of the Peninsula, and Portland the S. While we lay at Anchor 2 Boats came off to us, and so near as to take up some things we throw'd them out of the Ship, but would not come alongside. At 5am a breeze springing N we weigh'd and steer'd in for the Land. The shore here forms a very large Bay, of which Portland is the N-E Point, and the Bay above mentioned is an Arm of it. I would gladly have examin'd this Arm, because there appear'd to be safe Anchorage in it, but as I was not certain of this, and the wind being right an End, I did not care to spend time in Turning up to it. At Noon Portland bore S 50° E, and the Sermost land in sight bore S-S-W, distant 10 or 12 lg, being about 3 mi from the Shore, and in this situation had 12 fm water-24 fm have been the most Water we have had since we have been within Portland, every where clear ground. The land near the Shore is of a moderate height, with white Cliffs and Sandy beaches. Inland are several Pretty high Mountains, and the whole face of the Country appears with a very hilly surface, and for the most part Covered with wood, and hath all the appearances of a very pleasant and fertile Country.

Saturday, October 14th 1769pm had Gentle breezes between the N-E and N-W. Kept running down along shore at the distance of 2 or 3 mi off. Our sounding was from 20 to 13 fm, an even sandy bottom. We saw some Canoes or Boats in shore, and several houses upon the Land, but no harbour or Convenient watering place-the Main thing we were looking for. In the night had little wind, and Sometimes Calm with Dirty, rainy weather.am had Variable light Airs next to a Calm and fair weather. In the morning, being not above 2 lg from the S-W corner of the great Bay we have been in for the 2 days past, the Pinnace and Long boat were hoisted out in order to search for Fresh Water; but just as they were ready to put off we observed several Boats full of People coming off from the Shore, and for that reason I did not think it prudent to send our own from the Ship. The first that came were 5 in Number, in them were between 80 and 90 men. Every Method was tried to gain their Friendship, and several things were thrown overboard to them; but all we could do was to no purpose, neither would they accept of any one thing from us, but seem'd fully bent on attacking us. In order to prevent this, and our being obliged to fire upon them, I order'd a 4 Pounder Loaded with grape to be fir'd a little wide of them, letting them know at the same time by Means of Tupia what we were going to do; this had the desir'd effect, and not one of these would afterwards trust themselves abrE of the Ship. Soon after 4 more came off; one of these put what Arms they had into another Boat, and then came alongside so near as to take what things we gave them, and I believe might have been Prevailed upon to come on board had not some of the first 5 came up under our Stern and began again to threaten us, at which the people in this one Boat seem'd displeas'd; immediately after this they all went ashore. At Noon Lat in per Observation 39° 37' S. Portland bore by our run from it E by N, distant 14 lg; the Sermost land in sight, and which is the S point of the Bay, S-E by S, distant 4 or 5 lg; and a Bluff head lying in the S-W corner of the Bay S by W 2 or 3 mi. On each side of this bluff head is a low narrow sand or stone beach; between

these beaches and the Main land is a pretty large lake of Salt Water, as I suppose. On the S-E side of this head is a very large flatt, which seems to extend a good way inland to the Westward; on this flatt are Several groves of Streight, tall Trees, but there seems to be a great Probability that the lake above mentiond extends itself a good way into this flatt Country. Inland are a Chain of Pretty high Mountains extending N and S; on the Summits and Sides of these Mountains were many Patches of Snow, but between them and the Sea the Land is Cloathed with wood.

Sunday, October 15th 1769 pm stood over for the Sermost Land or S point of the Bay, having a light breeze at N-E, our soundings from 12 to 8 fm. Not reaching this point before dark, we stood Off and on all night, having Variable light Airs next to a Calm; depth of water from 8 to 7 fm; Variation  $14^{\circ} 10'$  E. At 8am, being abrE of the S-W point of the Bay, some fishing Boats came off to us and sold us some stinking fish; however it was such as they had, and we were glad to enter into Traffick with them upon any Terms. These People behaved at first very well, until a large Arm'd boat, wherein were 22 Men, came alongside. We soon saw that this Boat had nothing for Traffick, yet as they came boldly alongside we gave them 2 or 3 pieces of Cloth, Articles they seem'd the most fond off. One Man in this Boat had on him a black skin, something like a Bear Skin, which I was desirous of having that I might be a better judge what sort of an Animal the first Owner was. I offer'd him for it a piece of Red Cloth, which he seem'd to jump at by immediately putting off the Skin and holding it up to us, but would not part with it until he had the Cloth in his possession and after that not at all, but put off the Boat and went away, and with them all the rest. But in a very short time they return'd again, and one of the fishing Boats came alongside and offer'd us some more fish. The Indian Boy Tiata, Tupia's Servant, being over the side, they seiz'd hold of him, pull'd him into the Boat and endeavoured to carry him off; this obliged us to fire upon them, which gave the Boy an opportunity to jump overboard. We brought the Ship too, lower'd a Boat into the Water, and took him up unhurt. Two or 3 paid for this daring attempt with the loss of their lives, and many more would have suffer'd had it not been for fear of killing the Boy. This affair occasioned my giving this point of land the name of Cape Kidnapper. It is remarkable on account of 2 White rocks in form of Haystacks standing very near it. On each side of the Cape are Tolerable high white steep Cliffs, Lat  $39^{\circ} 43'$  S; Lon  $182^{\circ} 24'$  W; it lies S-W by W, distant 13 lg from the Island of Portland. Between them is a large Bay wherein we have been for these 3 days past; this Bay I have named Hawkes Bay in Honour of Sir Edward, first Lord of the Admiralty; we found in it from 24 to 8 and 7 fm, everywhere good Anchoring. From Cape Kidnapper the Island Trends S-S-W, and in this direction we run along shore, keeping about a League off, having a steady breeze and Clear weather. At Noon the above Cape bore from us N  $9^{\circ}$  E, distant 2 lg, and the Sermost land in sight S  $25^{\circ}$  W Lat in Per Observation  $39^{\circ} 50'$  S.

Monday, October 16th 1769 First and latter part, fresh breezes, N; in the night, Variable and sometimes calm. At 2pm passed by a Small but a Pretty high white Island lying close to the Shore. On this Island we saw a good many Houses, Boats, and Some People. We concluded that they must be fishers, because the Island was quite barren; we likewise saw several people upon the Shore in a small Bay on the Main within the Island. At 7 the Sermost land in sight bore S-W by S, and Cape Kidnapper N  $3/4$  E, distant 8 lg, being then about 2 lg from the Shore, and had 55 fm. At 11 brought too until daylight, then made Sail along shore to the Southward. At 7 passed a pretty high point of Land, which lies S-S-W, 12 lg from Cape Kidnapper. From this point the Land Trends  $3/4$  of a point more to the Westward. At 10 saw more land appear to the Southward, at S-W by S. At Noon the Sermost land in sight bore S

39° W, distant 8 or 10 lg, and a high Bluff head with Yellowish Cliffs bore W, distant 2 mi, Lat observed 40° 34' S; depth of water 32 fm.

Tuesday, October 17th 1769 pm winds at W, a fresh breeze; in the night, Variable light Airs and Calm; am a Gentle breeze between the N-W and N-E. Seeing no likelihood of meeting with a Harbour, and the face of the Country Visibly altering for the worse, I thought that the standing farther to the S would not be attended with any Valuable discovery, but would be loosing of Time, which might be better employ'd and with a greater Probability of success in examining the Coast to the Northward. With this View, at 1pm Tack'd and stood to the Northward, having the Wind at W, a fresh breeze. At this time we could see the land extending S-W by S, at IE 10 or 12 lg. The Bluff head or high point of land we were abrE off at Noon I have called Cape Turnagain because here we returned. It lies in the Lat of 40° 34' S, Lon 182° 55 W, and 18 lg S-S-W and S-S-W 1/2 W from Cape Kidnapper. The land between them is of a very unequal height; in some places it is high, with White Cliffs next the Sea-in others low, with sandy beaches. The face of the Country is not nearly so well Cloathed with wood as it is about Hawkes Bay, but for the most part looks like our high Downs in England, and to all appearance well inhabited, for we saw several Villages as we run along shore, not only in the Vallies, but on the Tops and sides of the Hills, and Smokes in other places. The ridge of Mountains before mentioned extends to the Southward farther than we could see, and are every where Checquer'd with Snow. This night saw 2 Large fires up in the inland Country, a sure sign that it must be inhabited. At Noon Cape Kidnapper bore N 56° W, distant 7 lg; Lat observed 39° 52' S.

Wednesday, October 18th 1769 Variable light winds and fine weather. At 4am Cape Kidnapper bore N 32° W, distant 2 lg. In this situation had 62 fm; and when the said Cape bore W by N, distant 3 or 4 lg, had 45 fm; midway between the Isle of Portland and Cape Kidnapper had 65 fm. At Noon the Isle of Portland bore N-E 1/2 E, distant 4 lg; Lat observ'd 39° 34' S.

Thursday, October 19th 1769 The first part had Gentle breezes at E and E-N-E; in the night, fresh Gales between the S and S-W; dark, Cloudy weather, with Lightning and rain. At 1/2 past 5 pm Tack'd and stood to the S-E: the Isle of Portland bore S-E, distant 3 lg. Soon after we Tacked a boat or Canoe came off from the Shore, wherein were 5 People. They came on board without shewing the IE signs of fear, and insisted upon staying with us the whole night; indeed, there was no getting them away without turning them out of the Ship by force, and that I did not care to do; but to prevent them playing us any Trick I hoisted their Canoe up alongside. Two appear'd to be Chiefs, and the other 3 their Servants. One of the Chiefs seem'd to be of a free, open, and Gentle disposition; they both took great notice of everything they saw, and was very thankful for what was given them. The 2 Chiefs would neither Eat nor Drink with us, but the other 3 Eat whatever was offer'd them. Notwithstanding that these people had heard of the Treatment the others had meet with who had been on board before, yet it appear'd a little strange that they should place so much Confidence in us as to put themselves wholly in our power wether we would or no, especially as the others we had meet with in this bay had upon every occasion behaved in quite a different manner. At 11 brought too until daylight (the night being dark and rainy), then made sail. At 7am brought too under Cape Table, and sent away the Indian Canoe. At this Time some others were putting off from the Shore, but we did not wait their coming, but made sail to the Northward. At Noon the Nermost land in sight N 20° E, and Young Nicks head, or the S point of Poverty Bay, W-N, near 4 lg. Lat observed 38° 44' 30 seconds S.

Friday, October 20th 1769 pm a fresh breeze at S-S-W; in the night, variable light breezes, with rain; am a fresh breeze at S-W. At 3pm passed by a remarkable head, which I called Gable end Foreland on account of the very great resemblance the white cliff at the very point hath to the Gable end of a House. It is made still more remarkable by a Spir'd Rock standing a little distance from it. This head land lies from Cape Table N 24° E, distant 12 lg. Between them the Shore forms a Bay, wherein lies Poverty Bay, 4 lg from the former and 8 lg from the Latter. From Gable end Foreland the land trends N by E as far as we could see. The land from Poverty Bay to this place is of a moderate but very unequal height, distinguished by Hills and Vallies that are Cover'd with woods. We saw, as we run along shore, several Villages, cultivated lands, and some of the Natives. In the evening some Canoes came off to the Ship, and one Man came on board to whom we gave a few Trifles and then sent him away. Stood off and on until daylight, and then made sail in shore in order to look into 2 Bays that appear'd to our view about 2 lg to the Northward of the Foreland. The Sermost we could not fetch, but in the other we Anchor'd about 11 o'Clock in 7 fm, a black sandy bottom. The N point bore N-E 1/2 N, distant 2 mi, and the S Point S-E by E, distant one mile, and about 3/4 of a mile from the Shore. This Bay is not so much Shelter'd from the Sea as I at first thought it was; but as the Natives, many of whom came about us in their Canoes, appear'd to be of a friendly disposition, I was willing to try if we could not get a little water on board, and to see a little into the Nature of the Country before we proceeded further to the Northward.

Saturday, October 21st 1769 We had no sooner come to an Anchor, as mentioned above, than perceiving 2 old Men in the Canoes, who from their Garbe appear'd to be Chiefs, these I invited on board, and they came without Hesitation. To each I gave about 4 Yards of linnen and a Spike Nail; the linnen they were very fond of, but the Nails they seem'd to set no Value upon. Tupia explain'd to them the reasons of our Coming here, and that we should neither hurt nor Molest them if they did but behave in the same peaceable manner to us; indeed, we were under very little apprehension but what they would, as they had heard of what hapned in Poverty Bay. Between 1 and 2pm I put off with the Boats mann'd and Arm'd in order to land to look for fresh Water, these 2 Men along with us; but the surf running very high, and it begun to blow and rain at the same time, I returned back to the Ship, having first put the 2 Chiefs into one of their Canoes. In the evening it fell moderate, and we landed and found 2 Small Streams of Fresh Water, and the Natives to all appearance very friendly and peaceable; on which account I resolv'd to Stay one day at IE, to fill a little water and to give Mr. Banks an opportunity to Collect a little of the Produce of the Country. In the morning Lieutenant Gore went on shore to superintend the Watering with a Strong party of Men, but the getting the Casks off was so very difficult, on account of the Surf, that it was noon before one Turn came on board.

Sunday, October 22nd 1769 pm light breezes and Cloudy. About or a little after Noon several of the Natives came off to the Ship in their Canoes and began to Traffick with us, our people giving them George's Island Cloth for theirs, for they had little else to dispose of. This kind of exchange they seem'd at first very fond of, and prefer'd the Cloth we had got at the Islands to English Cloth; but it fell in its value above 500 p. ct. before night. I had some of them on board, and Shew'd them the Ship, with which they were well pleased. The same friendly disposition was observed by those on shore, and upon the whole they behaved as well or better than one could expect; but as the getting the Water from the Shore proved so very Tedious on account of the Surf, I resolv'd upon leaving this place in the morning, and accordingly, at 5am, we weigh'd and put to Sea. This Bay is called by the Natives Tegadoo; it lies in the Lat of 38° 16' S, but as it hath nothing to recommend it I shall give no discription of it. There is plenty of Wild



Sellery, and we purchased of the Natives 10 or 15 pounds of sweet Potatoes. They have pretty large plantations of these, but at present they are scarce, it being too Early in the Season. At Noon the Bay of Tegadoo bore W 1/2 S, distant 8 lg, and a very high double peak'd Mountain some distance in land bore N-W by W. Lat observed 38° 13' S; Wind at N, a fresh Gale.

Monday, October 23rd 1769pm fresh Gales at N, and Cloudy weather. At 1 Tack'd and stood in shore; at 6 Sounded, and had 56 fm fine sandy bottom; the Bay of Tegadoo bore S-W 1/2 W, distance 4 lg. At 8 Tack'd in 36 fm, being then about 2 lg from land; stood off and on all night, having Gentle breezes. At 8am, being right before the Bay of Tegadoo and about a League from it, some of the Natives came off to us and inform'd us that in a Bay a little to the Southward (being the same that we could not fetch the day we put into Tegadoo) was fresh Water and easy getting at it; and as the wind was now against us, and we gain'd nothing by beating to windward, I thought the time would be better spent in this Bay in getting on board a little water, and forming some Connections with the Natives, than by keeping the Sea. With this view we bore up for it, and sent 2 Boats in, Mann'd and Arm'd, to Examine the Watering Place, who returned about noon and confirm'd the account the Natives had given. We then Anchor'd in 11 fm, fine sandy bottom; the N point of the Bay N by E and the S point S-E, and the watering place, which was in a Small Cove a little within the S point of the Bay, distance one mile.

Tuesday, October 24th 1769 Winds W and fine weather. This afternoon, as soon as the Ship was moor'd, I went ashore to Examine the watering place, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. I found the Water good and the Place pretty Convenient, and plenty of Wood close to high Water Mark, and the Natives to all appearance not only very friendly but ready to Traffick with us for what little they had. Early in the morning I sent Lieutenant Gore ashore to Superintend the Cutting wood and filling of Water, with a Sufficient number of men for both purposes, and all the Marines as a Guard. After breakfast I went myself, and remain'd there the whole day; but before this Mr. Green and I took several observations of the Sun and Moon. The mean result of them gave 180° 47' W Lon from the Meridian of Greenwich; but as all the observations made before exceeded these, I have laid down this Coast agreeable to the means of the whole. At noon I took the Sun's Meridian Altitude with the Astronomical Quadrant, and found the Lat 38° 22' 24 seconds S.

Wednesday, October 25th 1769 Winds and weather as Yesterday. pm set up the Armourer's Forge to repair the Tiller braces, they being broke. By night we had got on board 12 Tons of Water and two or 3 Boats' loads of Wood, and this I looked upon to be a good day's work. The Natives gave us not the IE disturbance, but brought us now and then different sorts of Fish out to the Ship and Watering place, which we purchased of them with Cloth, beads, etc.

Thursday, October 26th 1769pm had the winds from between the S and S-W, fair weather; the remainder, rainy, dirty weather. Notwithstanding we continued getting on board Wood and Water.

Friday, October 27th 1769 Winds at S-W; first part rainy weather, the remainder fair. am sent the Pinnacle to drudge, but she met with no success; after this, I went and sounded the Bay. I made a Shift to land in 2 Places, the first time in the bottom of the bay, where I went a little way into the Country, but met with nothing extraordinary. The other place I landed at was at the N point of the Bay, where I got as much Sellery and Scurvy grass as loaded the Boat. This day we completed our Water to 70 Tons, but not wood Enough.

Saturday, October 28th 1769 Gentle breezes S and fine weather. Employ'd wooding, cutting, and making of Brooms, there being a Shrub here very fit for that purpose; and as I intended to sail in the morning some hands were employ'd picking of Sellery to take to Sea with us. This is found here in great plenty, and I have caused it to be boiled with Portable Soup and Oatmeal every morning for the people's breakfast; and this I design to continue as long as it will last, or any is to be got, and I look upon it to be very wholesome and a great Antiscorbutick.

Monday, October 29th 1769pm Gentle breezes with Thunder and Lightning up the Country; in the night had light Airs off the land and very foggy; in the forenoon had a gentle breeze at N-N-E and Clear weather. At 4am unmoor'd, and at 6 weigh'd and put to Sea. At Noon the bay sail'd from bore N 63° W, distant 4 lg. This bay is called by the Natives Tolaga; it is moderately large, and hath in it from 13 to 8 and 7 fm, clean sandy bottom and good Anchorage, and is shelterd from all winds except those that blow from the N-E Quarter. It lies in the Lat of 38° 22' S, and 4 1/2 lg to the Northward of Gable end Foreland. Off the S point lies a small but high Island, so near to the Main as not to be distinguished from it. Close to the N end of this Island, at the Entrance into the Bay, are 2 high Rocks; one is high and round like a Corn Stack, but the other is long with holes thro' it like the Arches of a Bridge. Within these rocks is the Cove, where we cut wood and fill'd our Water. Off the N point of the Bay is a pretty high rocky Island, and about a mile without it are some rocks and breakers. The variation of the Compass is here 14° 31' E, and the Tide flows at full and change of the Moon about 6 o'Clock, and rises and falls upon a Perpendicular 5 or 6 feet, but wether the flood comes from the Southward or Northward I have not been able to determine.

During our stay in this bay we had every day more or less Traffick with the Natives, they bringing us fish, and now and then a few sweet Potatoes and several trifles which we deemd Curiosities; for these we gave them Cloth, Beads, Nails, etc. The Cloth we got at King George's Island and Ulietea, they valued more than anything we could give them, and as every one in the Ship were provided with some of this sort of Cloth, I suffer'd every body to purchase what ever they pleased without limitation; for by this means I knew that the Natives would not only sell but get a good Price for every thing they brought. This I thought would induce them to bring to Market whatever the Country afforded, and I have great reason to think that they did, yet it amounted to no more than what is above mentioned. We saw no 4 footed Animals, either Tame or Wild, or signs of any, except Dogs and Rats, and these were very Scarce, especially the latter. The flesh of the former they eat, and ornament their clothing with their skins as we do ours with furs, etc. While we lay here I went upon some of the Hills in order to View the Country, but when I came there I could see but very little of it, the sight being interrupted by still higher hills. The Tops and ridges of the Hills are for the most part barren, at IE little grows on them but fern; but the Valleys and sides of many of the Hills were luxuriously clothed with woods and Verdure and little Plantations of the Natives lying dispers'd up and down the Country. We found in the Woods, Trees of above 20 different sorts; Specimens of each I took on board, as all of them were unknown to any of us. The Tree which we cut for firing was something like Maple and yeilded a whitish Gum. There was another sort of a deep Yellow which we imagin'd might prove useful in dying. We likewise found one Cabage Tree which we cut down for the sake of the cabage. The Country abounds with a great Number of Plants, and the woods with as great a variety of beautiful birds, many of them unknown to us. The soil of both the hills and Valleys is light and sandy, and very proper for producing all kinds of Roots, but we saw only sweet potatoes and Yams among them; these they plant in little round hills,

and have plantations of them containing several Acres neatly laid out and kept in good order, and many of them are fenced in with low paling which can only serve for Ornament.

Monday, October 30th 1769pm little wind and cloudy weather. At 1 Tack'd and stood in shore; at 7 o'Clock Tolaga Bay bore W-N-W, distant one League. Tack'd and lay her head off; had it calm until 2am, when a breeze sprung up at S-W, and we made Sail to the Northward. At 6, Gable end Foreland bore S-S-W, and Tolaga bay S-S-W 1/4 W, distance 3 lg. At 8, being about 2 mi from the shore, some Canoes that were fishing came after the Ship; but we having a fresh of wind they could not come up with us, and I did not chuse to wait for them. At Noon, Lat per observation  $37^{\circ} 49' S$ , a small Island lying off the Northernmost land in sight, bore N  $16^{\circ} E$ , distant 4 mi; course from Tolaga bay N by E 1/2 E, distance 13 lg. The Land from thence is of a moderate but unequal height, forming several small bays wherein are sandy beaches. Hazy, cloudy weather prevented us from seeing much of the inland country, but near the Shore we could see several Villages and Plantations of the Natives. Soundings from 20 to 30 fm.

Tuesday, October 31st 1769 At half-past onepm hauled round the Island above mentioned, which lies E 1 mile from the N-E point of the land. The lands from hence Trends N-W by W, and W-N-W, as far as we could see. This point of Land I have called E Cape, because I have great reason to think that it is the Eermost land on this whole Coast; and for the same reason I have called the Island which lays off it, E Island. It is but of a small circuit, high and round, and appears white and barren. The Cape is of a moderate height with white cliffs, and lies in the Lat of  $37^{\circ} 42' 30$  seconds S, and Lon  $181^{\circ} 00' W$  from the Meridian of Greenwich. After we had rounded the E Cape we saw, as we run along shore, a great number of Villages and a great deal of Cultivated land; and in general the country appear'd with more fertility than what we had seen before; it was low near the Sea, but hilly inland. At 8, being 8 lg to the Westward of Cape E, and 3 or 4 mi from the shore, shortned sail and brought too for the night, having at this Time a fresh Gale at S-S-E and squally weather; but it soon fell moderate, and at 2am made Sail again to the S-W as the land now Trended. At 8 saw land which made like an Island bearing W. At the same time the S-Wermost part of the Main bore S-W. At 9, five Canoes came off to us, in one of which were upwards of 40 Men all Arm'd with Pikes, etc.; from this and other Circumstances it fully appear'd that they came with no friendly intentions; and I at this Time being very buisey, and had no inclination to stay upon deck to watch their Motions, I order'd a Grape shot to be fir'd a little wide of them. This made them pull off a little, and then they got together either to consult what to do or to look about them. Upon this I order'd a round shott to be fir'd over their heads, which frightend them to that degree that I believe they did not think themselves safe until they got ashore. This occasion'd our calling the Point of land off which this hapned, Cape Runaway. Lat  $37^{\circ} 32' S$ , Lon  $181^{\circ} 50' W$ , and 17 or 18 lg to the Westward of E Cape. 4 lg to the Westward of E Cape is a bay which I have named Hicks's bay, because Lieutenant Hicks was the first who discover'd it.

Wednesday, November 1st 1769pm, as we stood along shore (having little wind, and Variable), we saw a great deal of Cultivated land laid out in regular inclosures, a sure sign that the Country is both fertile and well inhabited. Some Canoes came off from the shore, but would not come near the Ship. At 8 brought to 3 mi from the Shore, the land seen yesterday bearing W, and which we now saw was an Island, bore S-W, distant 8 lg. I have named it White Island, because as such it always appear'd to us. At 5am made Sail along shore to the S-W, having little wind at E-S-E and Cloudy weather. At 8 saw between 40 and 50 Canoes in shore. Several of them came off to the Ship, and being about us some time they ventur'd alongside

and sold us some Lobsters, Muscels, and 2 Conger Eales. After these were gone some others came off from another place with Muscels only, and but few of these they thought proper to part with, thinking they had a right to everything we handed them into their Canoes without making any return. At last the People in one Canoe took away some linnen that was towing over the side, which they would not return for all that we could say to them. Upon this I fir'd a Musket Ball thro' the Canoe, and after that another musquet load with Small Shott, neither of which they minded, only pulled off a little, and then shook their paddles at us, at which I fir'd a third Musquet; and the ball, striking the Water pretty near them, they immediately apply'd their Paddles to another use; but after they thought themselves out of reach they got altogether, and Shook their Paddles again at us. I then gave the Ship a Yaw, and fir'd a 4 Pounder. This sent them quite off, and we kept on our course along shore, having a light breeze at E-S-E. At noon we were in the Lat of  $37^{\circ} 55'$ , White Island bearing N  $29^{\circ}$  W, distant 8 lg.

Thursday, November 2nd 1769 Gentle breezes from N-W round N to E-S-E and fair weather. At 2pm saw a pretty high Island bearing W from us, and at 5 saw more Islands and Rocks to the Westward of it. Hauld our wind in order to go without them, but, finding that we could not weather them before dark, bore up, and run between them and the Main. At 7 was close under the first Island, from whence a large double Canoe full of People came off to us. This was the first double Canoe we had seen in this Country. They staid about the Ship until it was dark, then left us; but not before they had thrown a few stones. They told us the name of the Island, which was Mowtohora. It is but of a small Circuit, but high, and lies 6 mi from the Main. Under the S side is Anchorage in 14 fm. S-W by S from this Island on the Main land, seemingly at no great distance from the Sea, is a high round Mountain, which I have named Mount Edgcombe. It stands in the middle of a large Plain, which make it the more Conspicuous. Lat  $37^{\circ} 59'$  S, Lon  $183^{\circ} 07'$  W. In standing to the Westward we Shoalded our Water from 17 to 10 fm, and knowing that we were not far from some Small Islands and Rocks that we had seen before dark, after Passing of which I intended to have brought too for the night, but I now thought it more prudent to tack, and spend the Night under the Island of Mowtohora, where I knew there was no danger. And it was well we did, for in the morning, after we had made Sail to the Westward, we discovered Rocks ahead of us Level with and under the Water. They lay  $1 \frac{1}{2}$  lg from the Island Mowtohora, and about 9 mi from the Main, and N-N-E from Mount Edgcombe. We passed between these Rocks and the Main, having from 7 to 10 fm. The double Canoe which we saw last night follow'd us to-day under Sail, and kept abrE of the Ship near an hour talking to Tupia, but at last they began to pelt us with stones. But upon firing one Musquet they dropt aStern and left us. At  $\frac{1}{2}$  past 10 Passed between a low flat Island and the Main, the distance from one to the other being 4 mi; depth of Water 10, 12, and 15 fm. At Noon the flat Island bore from N-E to E  $\frac{1}{2}$  N, distance 5 or 6 mi; Lat in per Observation  $37^{\circ} 39'$  S, Lon  $183^{\circ} 30'$  W. The Main land between this and the Island of Mowtohora, which is 10 lg, is of a moderate height, and all a level, flat Country, pretty clear of wood and full of Plantations and Villiages. These Villiages are built upon Eminences Near the Sea, and are Fortified on the land side with a Bank and a Ditch, and Pallisaded all round. Besides this, some of them appear'd to have out-works. We have before now observed, on several parts of the Coast, small Villiages inclosed with Pallisades and works of this kind built on Eminences and Ridges of hills, but Tupia had all along told us that they were Mories, or places of worship; but I rather think they are places of retreat or strong hold where they defend themselves against the Attack of an Enemy, as some of them seem'd not ill design'd for that Purpose.

Friday, November 3rd 1769pm Fresh Gales at N-E by E and hazey weather. At 2 pass'd a small high Island lying 4 mi from a high round head on the Main from this head the land Trends

N-W as far as we could see, and appeared to be very rugged and hilly. The weather being very hazey, and the Wind blowing fresh on shore, we hauled off close upon a wind for the weathermost Island in sight, which bore from us N-N-E, distant 6 or 7 lg. Under this Island we spent the Night, having a fresh gale at N-E and N-E by E, and hazey weather with rain; this Island I have called the Mayor. At 7am it bore S 47° E, distant 6 lg, and a Cluster of small Islands and Rocks bore N 1/2 E, distant one League. At the time had a Gentle breeze at E-N-E and clear weather. The Cluster of Islands and Rocks just mentioned we named the Court of Aldermen; they lay in the Compass of about half a League every way, and 5 lg from the Main, between which and them lay other Islands. The most of them are barren rocks, and of these there is a very great Variety, some of them are of as small a Compass as the Monument in London, and Spire up to a much greater height; they lay in the Lat of 36° 57', and some of them are inhabited. At Noon they bore S 60° E, distant 3 or 4 lg, and a Rock like a Castle lying not far from the Main, bore N 40° W, one League. Lat observed 36° 58' S; Course and distance since Yesterday noon is N-N-W 1/2 W, about 20 lg. In this Situation had 28 fm water, and a great many small Islands and Rocks on every side of us. The Main land appears here with a hilly, rugged, and barren surface, no Plantations to be seen, nor no other signs of its being well inhabited.

Saturday, November 4th 1769 The first and middle parts, little wind at E-N-E and Clear weather; the Latter had a fresh breeze at N-N-W and hazey with rain. At 1pm 3 Canoes came off from the Main to the Ship, and after Parading about a little while they darted 2 Pikes at us. The first was at one of our Men as he was going to give them a rope, thinking they were coming on board; but the 2nd they throw'd into the Ship; the firing of one musquet sent them away. Each of these Canoes were made out of one large Tree, and were without any sort of Ornament, and the people in them were mostly quite naked. At 2pm saw a large op'ning or inlet in the land, which we bore up for with an intent to come to an Anchor. At this time had 41 fm, which gradually decreased to 9 fm, at which time we were 1 1/2 mile from a high Tower'd Rock lying near the S point of the inlet; the rock and the Nermost of the Court of Aldermen being in one bearing S 61° E. At 1/2 past 7 Anchor'd in 7 fm a little within the S Entrance of the Bay or inlet. We were accompanied in here by several Canoes, who stay'd about the Ship until dark; and before they went away they were so generous as to tell us that they would come and attack us in the morning; but some of them paid us a Visit in the night, thinking, no doubt, but what they should find all hands asleep, but as soon as they found their mistake they went off. My reasons for putting in here were the hopes of discovering a good Harbour, and the desire I had of being in some convenient place to observe the Transit of Mercury, which happens on the 9th Instant, and will be wholly Visible here if the day is clear. If we be so fortunate as to obtain this observation, the Lon of this place and Country will thereby be very accurately determined. Between 5 and 6 o'Clock in the morning several Canoes came off to us from all parts of the Bay; in them were about 130 or 140 People. To all appearances their first design was to attack us, being all Completely Arm'd in their way; however, this they never attempted, but after Parading about the Ship near 3 Hours, sometimes trading with us, and at other times Tricking of us, they dispersed; but not before we had fir'd a few Musquets and one great gun, not with any design to hurt any of them, but to shew them what sort of Weapons we had, and that we could revenge any insult they offer'd to us. It was observable that they paid but little regard to the Musquets that were fir'd, notwithstanding one ball was fir'd thro' one of their Canoes, but what Effect the great gun had I know not, for this was not fir'd until they were going away.

At 10, the weather Clearing up a little, I went with 2 Boats to sound the Bay and to look for a more convenient Anchoring place, the Master being in one Boat, and I in the other. We pull'd first over the N Shore, where some Canoes came out to meet us, but as we came near them they retir'd to the Shore and invited us to follow them, but seeing they were all Arm'd I did not think fit to Except of their Invitation; but after Trading with them out of the Boat for a few' we left them and went towards the head of the Bay. I observed on a high Point a fortified Village, but I could only see a part of the works, and as I intend to see the whole, shall say no more about it at this time. After having fix'd upon an Anchoring place not far from where the Ship lay I return'd on board.

Sunday, November 5th 1769 Winds at N-N-W, Hazy weather with rain in the night. At 4pm weigh'd and run in nearer the S shore and Anchor'd in 4 1/2 fm, a soft sandy bottom, the S point of the Bay bearing E, distant 1 mile, and a River (into which the boats can go at low Water) S-S-E, distant 1 1/2 mi. In the morning the Natives came off again to the Ship, but their behaviour was very different to what it was Yesterday morning, and the little traffick we had with them was carried on very fair and friendly. Two came on board the Ship-to each I gave a Piece of English Cloth and some Spike Nails. After the Natives were gone I went with the Pinnace and Long boat into the River to haul the Sean, and sent the Master to sound the Bay and drudge for fish in the Yawl. We hauled the Sean in several places in the River, but caught only a few Mullet, with which we returned on board about Noon.

Monday, November 6th 1769 Moderate breezes at N-N-W, and hazy weather with rain in the night. pm I went to another part of the Bay to haul the Sean, but meet with as little Success as before; and the Master did not get above 1/2 a Bucket full of Shells with the Drudge. The Natives brought to the Ship, and sold to our People, small Cockles, Clams, and Mussels, enough for all hands. These are found in great plenty upon the Sand Banks of the River. In the morning I sent the Long boat to Trawl in the Bay, and one Officer with the Marines and a party of men to Cut wood and haul the Sean, but neither the Sean nor the Trawl meet with any success; but the Natives in some measure made up for this by bringing several Baskets of dry'd or ready dress'd fish; altho' it was none of the best I order'd it all to be bought up in order to encourage them to Trade.

Tuesday, November 7th 1769 The first part moderate and fair; the remainder a fresh breeze, N, with dirty, hazy, raining Weather. pm got on board a Long boat Load of Water, and Caught a dish of fish in the Sean. Found here a great Quantity of Sellery, which is boild every day for the Ship's Company as usual.

Wednesday, November 8th 1769 pm fresh breeze at N-N-W and hazy, rainy weather; the remainder a Gentle breeze at W-S-W and Clear Weather. am heeld and Scrubb'd both sides of the Ship and Sent a Party of Men ashore to Cutt wood and fill Water. The Natives brought off to the Ship, and Sold us for Small pieces of Cloth, as much fish as served all hands; they were of the Mackrell kind, and as good as ever was Eat. At Noon I observ'd the Sun's Meridian Zenith distance, by the Astronomical Quadrant, which gave the Lat 36° 47' 43 seconds S; this was in the River before mentioned, that lies within the S Entrance of the Bay.

Thursday, November 9th 1769 Variable light breezes and Clear weather. As soon as it was daylight the Natives began to bring off Mackrell, and more than we well know what to do with; notwithstanding I order'd all they brought to be purchased in order to encourage them in this kind of Traffick. At 8, Mr. Green and I went on shore with our Instruments to observe the

Transit of Mercury, which came on at 7 hours 20' 58 seconds Apparent time, and was observed by Mr. Green only. I, at this time, was taking the Sun's Altitude in order to Ascertain the time. The Egress was observed as follows:

By Mr. Green:

Internal Contact at 12 hours 8' 58 seconds Afternoon.

External Contact at 12 hours 9' 55 seconds Afternoon.

By myself:

Internal Contact at 12 hours 8' 45 seconds Afternoon.

External Contact at 12 hours 9' 43 seconds Afternoon.

Lat observed at noon  $36^{\circ} 48' 28$  seconds, the mean of this and Yesterday's observation gives  $36^{\circ} 48' 5 \frac{1}{2}$  seconds S; the Lat of the Place of Observation, and the Variation of the Compass was at this time found to be  $11^{\circ} 9'$  E. While we were making these observations 5 Canoes came alongside the Ship, 2 Large and 3 Small ones, in one were 47 People, but in the other not so many. They were wholly strangers to us, and to all appearance they came with a Hostile intention, being compleatly Arm'd with Pikes, Darts, Stones, etc.; however, they made no attempt, and this was very probable owing to their being inform'd by some other Canoes (who at this time were alongside selling fish) what sort of people they had to Deal with. When they first came alongside they begun to sell our people some of their Arms, and one Man offer'd to Sale a Haahow, that is a Square Piece of Cloth such as they wear. Lieutenant Gore, who at this time was Commanding Officer, sent into the Canoe a piece of Cloth which the Man had agreed to Take in Exchange for his, but as soon as he had got Mr. Gore's Cloth in his Possession he would not part with his own, but put off the Canoe from alongside, and then shook their Paddles at the People in the Ship. Upon this, Mr. Gore fir'd a Musquet at them, and, from what I can learn, kill'd the Man who took the Cloth; after this they soon went away. I have here inserted the account of this Affair just as I had it from Mr. Gore, but I must own it did not meet with my approbation, because I thought the Punishment a little too severe for the Crime, and we had now been long Enough acquainted with these People to know how to Chastise Trifling faults like this without taking away their Lives.

Friday, November 10th 1769pm, Gentle breezes and Variable; the remainder, a Strong breeze at E-N-E, and hazey weather.am, I went with 2 Boats, accompanied by Mr. Banks and the other Gentlemen into the River which Emptys itself into the head of the Bay, in order to Examine it; none of the Natives came off to the Ship this morning, which we think is owing to bad weather.

Saturday, November 11th 1769 Fresh Gales at E-N-E, and Cloudy, hazey weather with rain. Between 7 and 8 o'Clockpm I returnd on board from out the River, having been about 4 or 5 mi up it, and could have gone much farther had the weather been favourable. I landed on the E side and went upon the Hills, from whence I saw, or at IE I thought I saw, the head of the River. It here branched into several Channels, and form'd a Number of very low flat Islands, all cover'd with a sort of Mangrove Trees, and several places of the Shores of both sides the River were Cover'd with the same sort of wood. The sand banks were well stored with Cockles and Clams, and in many places were Rock Oysters. Here is likewise pretty plenty of Wild Fowl, such as Shags, Ducks, Curlews, and a Black bird, about as big as a Crow, with a long, sharp bill of a Colour between Red and Yellow; we also saw fish in the River, but of what sort I know not. The Country especially on the E side is barren, and for the most part destitute of wood, or

any other signs of Fertility; but the face of the country on the other side looked much better, and is in many places cover'd with wood. We meet with some of the Natives and saw several more, and Smokes a long way inland, but saw not the IE signs of Cultivation, either here or in any other part about the Bay, so that the inhabitants must live wholly on shell and other fish, and Fern roots, which they Eat by the way of Bread. In the Entrance of this river, and for 2 or 3 mi up, it is very safe and Commodious Anchoring in 3, 4, and 5 fm, and Convenient places for laying a Ship aShore, where the Tide rises and falls about 7 feet at full and Change. I could not see whether or no any considerable fresh Water Stream came out of the Country into this river, but there are a number of small Rivulets which come from the Adjacent hills.

A little within the Entrance of the River on the E side is a high point or peninsula jutting out into the River on which are the Remains of one of their Fortified towns. The Situation is such that the best Engineer in Europe could not have Chose a better for a Small Number of men to defend themselves against a greater; it is strong by Nature and made more so by Art. It is only Accessible on the land Side, and there have been cut a Ditch and a Bank raised on the inside. From the Top of the Bank to the Bottom of the Ditch was about 22 feet, and depth of the Ditch on the land side 14 feet; its breadth was in proportion to its depth, and the whole seem'd to have been done with great Judgment. There had been a row of Pickets on the Top of the Bank, and another on the outside of the Ditch; these last had been set deep in the ground and Sloping with their upper ends hanging over the Ditch. The whole had been burnt down, so that it is probable that this place had been taken and destroy'd by an Enemy. The people on this side of the Bay seem now to have no houses or fix'd habitations, but Sleep in the open Air, under Trees and in small Temporary shades; but to all appearance they are better off on the other side, but there we have not set foot. In the morning, being dirty rainy weather, I did not Expect any of the Natives off with fish, but thinking that they might have some ashore I sent a Boat with some Trade, who return'd about noon loaded with Oysters, which they got in the River which is abrE of the Ship, but saw no fish among the Natives.

Sunday, November 12th 1769pm had Strong Gales at N-E, and hazey, rainy weather;am a fresh breeze at N-W, and Clear weather. In the morning got on board a Turn of Water, and afterwards sent the Long boat into the River for Oysters to take to sea with us; and I went with the Pinnace and Yawl, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, over to the N side of the Bay in order to take a View of the Country and the Fortified Village which stands there. We landed about a mile from it, and were meet by the inhabitants in our way thither, who, with a great deal of good nature and friendship, conducted us into the place and shew'd us everything that was there.

This village is built upon a high Promontory or point on the N side and near the head of the Bay. It is in some places quite inaccessible to man, and in others very difficult, except on that side which faced the narrow ridge of the hill on which it stands. Here it is defended by a double ditch, a bank and 2 rows of Picketing, the inner row upon the Bank; but not so near the Crown but what there was good room for men to Walk and handle their Arms between the Picketing and the inner Ditch. The outer Picketing was between the 2 Ditches, and laid sloping with their upper ends hanging over the inner Ditch. The Depth of this Ditch from the bottom to the Crown of the bank was 24 feet. Close within the inner Picketing was erected by strong Posts a stage 30 feet high and 40 in length and 6 feet broad. The use of this stage was to stand upon to throw Darts at the Assailants, and a number of Darts lay upon it for that purpose. At right angles to this Stage and a few paces from it was another of the same Construction and bigness; this stood likewise within the Picketing, and was intended for the same use as the



other-viz., to stand upon to throw stones and darts upon the Enemy as they advanc'd up the side of the Hill where lay the Main way into the place. It likewise might be intended to defend some little outworks and hutts that lay at the Skirts and on this side of the Hill. These outworks were not intended as advanced Posts, but for such of the Inhabitants to live in as had not room in the Main works, but had taken Shelter under it. Besides the works on the land side, above described, the whole Villiage was Pallisaded round with a line of pretty strong Picketing run round the Edge of the hill. The ground within having not been level at first, but laid Sloping, they had divided it into little squares and Leveled each of these. These squares lay in the form of an Amphitheatre, and were each of them Pallisaded round, and had communication one with another by narrow lanes and little gateways, which could easily be stoped up, so that if an Enemy had forced the outer Picketing he had several others to incounter before the place could be easily reduced, supposing them to defend everyone of the places one after another. The main way leading into this fortification was up a very steep part of the Hill and thro' a narrow passage about 12 feet long and under one of the Stages. I saw no door nor gate, but it might very soon have been barricaded up. Upon the whole I looked upon it to be very strong and well choose Post, and where a small number of resolute men might defend themselves a long time against a vast superior force, Arm'd in the manner as these People are. These seem'd to be prepared against a Siege, having laid up in store an immense quantity of Fern roots and a good many dry'd fish; but we did not see that they had any fresh Water nearer than a brook which runs close under the foot of a hill, from which I suppose they can at times get water, tho' besiged, and keep it in gouards until they use it. Under the foot of the point on which the Villiage stands are 2 Rocks, the one just broke off from the Main and other detached a little from it. They are both very small, and more fit for Birds to inhabit than men; yet there are houses and places of defence on each of them, and about a mile to Eastward of these is another of these small Fortified rocks, which communicates with the Main by a Narrow pathway, where there is a small Villiage of the Natives. Many works of this kind we have seen upon small Islands and Rocks and Ridges of hills on all parts of the Coast, besides a great number of Fortified towns, to all appearances Vastly superior to this I have described. From this it should seem that the People must have long and frequent Warrs, and must have been long accustomed to it, otherwise they never would have invented such strong holds as these, the Erecting of which must cost them immense labour, considering the Tools they have to work with, which are only made of Wood and Stone. It is a little strange that with such a Warlike People, as these undoubtedly are, no Omissive weapons are found among them, such as bows and Arrows, Slings, etc., things in themselves so easily invented, and are common in every other part of the world. The Arms they use are long spears or Lances, a Staff about 5 feet long. Some of these are pointed at one end like a Serjeant's Halberd, others are round and Sharp; the other ends are broad, something like the blade of an Oar. They have another sort about 4 1/2 feet long; these are shaped at one End like an Axe, and the other is made with a Sharp point. They have short Truncheons about a foot long, which they call Pattoo Pattoas; some made of wood, some of bone, and others of Stone. Those made of wood are Variously shaped, but those made of bone and Stone are of one shape, which is with a round handle, a broadish blade, which is thickest in the middle and taper'd to an Edge all round. The use of these are to knock Men's brains out, and to kill them outright after they are wounded; and they are certainly well contrived things for this purpose. Besides these Weapons they Throw stones and Darts; the Darts are 10 or 12 feet long, are made of hard wood, and are barbed at one end. They handle all their Arms with great Agility, particularly their long Pikes or Lances, against which we have no weapon that is an equal match except a Loaded Musquet.

Monday, November 13th 1769pm, Gentle Breezes at N-W and Clear weather. After taking a Slight View of the Country and Loaded both boats with Sellery, which we found in Great plenty near the Sea beach, we return'd on board about 5 o'Clock. The Long boat at the same time return'd out of the River Loaded as deep as she could swim with Oysters. And now I intended to put to Sea in the morning if wind and weather will permit. In the night had the wind at S-E, with rainy, dirty, hazey weather, which continued all day, so that I could not think of Sailing, but thought myself very happy in being in a good Port. Samuel Jones, Seaman, having been confin'd since Saturday last for refusing to come upon deck when all hands were called, and afterwards refused to Comply with the orders of the officers on deck, he was this morning punished with 12 lashes and remited back to confinement.

Tuesday, November 14th 1769 Fresh Gales, E, and rainy, Dirty weather.

Wednesday, November 15th 1769 In the evening I went in the Pinnacle and landed upon one of the Islands that lies off of the S Head of the Bay, with a view to see if I could discover any sunken rocks or other Dangers lying before the Entrance of the Bay, as there was a pretty large swell at this Time. The Island we landed upon was very small, yet there were upon it a Village, the inhabitants of which received us very friendly. This little Village was laid out in small Oblong squares, and each pailisaded round. The Island afforded no fresh Water, and was only accessible on one side: from this I concluded that it was not choose for any Conveniency it could afford them, but for its Natural Strength.

At 7am weigh'd, with a light breeze at W, and clear weather, and made Sail out of the Bay, steering N-E, for the Nermost of a Number of Islands lying off the N point of the Bay. These Islands are of Various extents, and lye Scattered to the N-W in a parallel direction with the Main as far as we could see. I was at first afraid to go within them, thinking that there was no safe Passage, but I afterwards thought that we might; and I would have attempted it, but the wind, coming to the N-W, prevented it, so that we were obliged to stand out to Sea. At Noon was in the Lat of  $36^{\circ} 4' S$ . The Nermost Island, above mentioned, bore N, distant half a League; the Court of Aldermen, S-E by S, distant 6 lg; and the Bay Sail'd from, which I have named Mercury Bay, on account of the observation being made there, S-W by W, distant 6 mi. Mercury Bay lies in the Lat of  $36^{\circ} 47' S$ , and the Lon of  $184^{\circ} 4' W$ , from the Meridian of Greenwich. It lies in S-W between 2 and 3 lg. There are several Islands lying both to the Southward and Northward of it, and a Small high Island or Rock in the middle of the Entrance. Within this Island the depth of water doth no were Exceed 9 or 8 fm; the best Anchorage is in a sandy Bay which lies just within the S head in 5 and 4 fm, bringing a high Tower Rock, which lies without the head, in one with the head, or just shut in behind it. Here it is very Convenient Wooding and Watering, and in the River are an immense quantity of Oysters and other small Shell fish; and this is the only thing it is remarkable for, and hath occasioned my giving it the Name of Oyster River. But the Snugest and Safest place for a Ship to lay in that wants to stay there any time is in the River at the head of the Bay, and where there is every conveniency the place can afford. To sail up and into it keep the S shore all the way on board. As we did not learn that the Natives had any name for this River, I have called it the River of Mangroves, because of the great quantity of these Trees that are found in it. The Country on the S-E side of this River and Bay is very barren, producing little else but Fern, and such other plants as delight in a Poor Soil. The land on the N-W side is pretty well cover'd with wood, the Soil more fertile, and would no doubt produce the Necessarys of Life, was it Cultivated. However, this much must be said against it, that it is not near so Rich nor fertile as the lands we have seen to the Southward; and the same may be said of its inhabitants, who, although pretty numerous,

are poor to the highest degree when Compar'd to others we have seen. They have no Plantations, but live only on Fern roots and fish; their Canoes are mean, and without ornament, and so are their Houses, or Hutts, and in general everything they have about them. This may be owing to the frequent wars in which they are Certainly ingaged; strong proofs of this we have seen, for the people who resided near the place where we wooded, and who Slept every night in the Open Air, placed themselves in such a manner when they laid down to sleep as plainly shew'd that it was necessary for them to be always upon their Guard. They do not own Subjection to Teeratie, the Earadehi, but say that he would kill them was he to come Among them; they confirm the Custom of Eating their Enemies, so that this is a thing no longer to be doubted. I have before observed that many of the People about this bay had no fix'd habitations, and we thought so then, but have since learnt that they have strong holds-or Hippas, as they call them-which they retire to in time of danger.

We found, thrown upon the Shore in several places in this Bay, a quantity of Iron Sand, which is brought down out of the Country by almost every little fresh-water brook. This proves that there must be of that Ore not far inland. Neither of the Inhabitants of this Place, nor any other where we have been, know the use of Iron or set the IE Value upon it, preferring the most Trifling thing we could give them to a Nail, or any sort of Iron Tools. Before we left this bay we cut out upon one of the Trees near the Watering Place the Ship's Name, date, etc., and, after displaying the English Colours, I took formal possession of the place in the Name of His Majesty.

Thursday, November 16th 1769 Fresh breezes between the N-W and S-W, and fair weather. At 1pm, having got within the Group of Islands which lies of the N head of Mercury Bay, hauld our wind to the Northward, and Kept plying to windward all the day between these Islands and some others laying to the Northward of them, with a View to get under the Main land, the Extream N-W point of which we could see, at Noon, bore W by N, distant 6 or 8 lg; Lat in Per Observation 36° 33' S.

Note, in speaking of Mercury Bay, I had forgot to mention that the Mangrove Trees found there produce a resinous substance very much like Rosin. Something of this kind, I am told, is found in both the E and W Indies. We found it, at first, in small Lumps upon the Sea Beach, but afterwards found it sticking to the Mangrove Trees, and by that means found out from whence it came.

Friday, November 17th 1769 The fore and middle parts had fresh Gales between the S-W and W by S, and Squally. Kept plying to windward in order to get under the land. At 6am fetched close under the lee of the Northernmost Island in sight, then Tackd and Stood to the Southward until 11, when we tack'd and Stood to the Northward. At this time the N head of Mercury Bay, or Point Mercury, bore S-E by E, distant 3 lg, being at this time between 2 and 3 lg from the Main land, and abrE of a place where there appear'd to be a Harbour; but the heavy squalls which we had from the Land would not permit us to take a nearer View of it, but soon brought us under our Close reefed Topsails. At Noon Point Mercury bore S-E, distant 4 lg, and the weathermost point of the Main land in sight bore N 60° W, distant 5 lg. Over the N-W side of Mercury Bay is a pretty high round hill, rising sloping from the Shore of the Bay. This hill is very conspicuous from where we now are.

Saturday, November 18th 1769 First part strong Gales at S-W and S-S-W, with heavy squalls: in the morning had Gentle breezes at S and S-E, towards noon had Whifling light Airs all round

the Compass. Kept plying to windward under close Reefed Topsails until daylight, at which time we had got close under the Main, and the wind coming at S-E we made sail and steer'd N-W by W, as the land lays, keeping close in shore. At 6 we passed a small Bay wherein there appear'd to be Anchorage, and pretty good Shelter from the Sea Winds, at the Entrance of which lies a Rock pretty high above water. 4 mi farther to the W-N-W is a very Conspicuous promontory or point of land which we got abt of about 7 o'Clock; it lies in the Lat of  $36^{\circ} 26'$  S and N  $48^{\circ}$  W, 9 lg from Point Mercury. From this point the Land trends W  $1/2$  S near one League, then S-S-E as far as we could see. Besides the Islands laying without us we could see land round by the S-W as far as N-W, but whether this was the Main or Islands was not possible for us at this Time to determine; the fear of losing the Main land determin'd me to follow its direction. With this View we hauld round the point and Steer'd to the Southward, but meeting with Whiffling light Airs all round the Compass, we made but little progress untill noon, when we found ourselves by Observation in the Lat of  $36^{\circ} 29'$  S; a small Island which lays N-W 4 mi from the Promontory above-mentioned bore N by E, distant  $6 \frac{1}{2}$  mi, being at this time about 2 mi from the Shore. While we lay under the land 2 large Canoes came off to us; in one of them were 62 people; they staid about us some time, then began to throw stones into the Ship, upon which I fir'd a Musquet ball thro' one of the Canoes. After this they retir'd ashore.

Sunday, November 19th 1769 At 1pm a breeze sprung up at E, which afterwards came to N-E, and with it we steer'd along shore S by E and S-S-E, having from 25 to 18 fm Water. At  $1/2$  past 7, having run 7 or 8 lg since Noon, we Anchor'd in 23 fm, not choosing to run any farther in the Dark, having the land on both sides of us forming the Entrance of a Streight, Bay or River, lying in S by E, for on that point of the Compass we could see no land. At daylightam, the wind being still favourable, we weigh'd and run under an Easy sail up the inlet, keeping nearest the E side. Soon after we had got under Sail 3 large Canoes came off to the Ship, and several of the people came on board upon the very first invitation; this was owing to their having heard of our being upon the Coast and the manner we had treated the Natives. I made each of those that came on board a small present, and after about an Hour's stay they went away well Satisfied. After having run 5 lg from the place where we Anchor'd last night our Depth of Water gradually decreased to 6 fm, and into less I did not choose to go, and as the wind blew right up the inlet and tide of flood, we came to an Anchor nearly in the middle of the Channell, which is here about 11 mi over, and after this sent 2 Boats to sound, the one on one side and the other on the other side.

Monday, November 20th 1769 Moderate breezes at S-S-E and fair weather. At 2pm the boats return'd from sounding, not having found above 3 feet more water than were we now lay; upon this I resolv'd to go no farther with the Ship but to examine the head of the Bay in the Boat, for as it appear'd to run a good way inland, I thought this a good opportunity to see a little of the interior part of the Country and its produce. Accordingly at daylight in the morning I set out with the Pinnace and Long boat accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia. We found the inlet end in a River, about 9 mi above the Ship, into which we Enter'd with the first of the flood, and before we had gone 3 mi up it found the Water quite fresh. We saw a number of Natives and landed at one of their Villages, the inhabitants of which received us with open Arms. We made but a Short stay with them but proceeded up the river until near Noon, when finding the face of the country to continue pretty much the same, and no alteration in the Course or stream of the River or the IE probability of seeing the end of it, we landed on the W side in order to take a View of the lofty Trees which Adorn its banks, being at this time 12 or 14 mi within the Entrance, and here the Tide of Flood runs as strong as it does in the River Thames below bridge.

Tuesday, November 21st 1769 After Landing as above-mention'd, we had not gone a hundred yards into the woods before we found a Tree that girted 19 feet 8 inches, 6 feet above the ground, and having a Quadrant with me, I found its length from the root to the first branch to be 89 feet; it was as Streight as an Arrow and Taper'd but very little in proportion to its length, so that I judged that there was 356 Solid feet of timber in this Tree, clear of the branches. We saw many others of the same sort, several of which were Taller than the one we measured, and all of them very stout; there were likewise many other sorts of very Stout Timber Trees, all of them wholly unknown to any of us. We brought away a few specimens, and at 3 o'Clock we embarqued in order to return (but not before we had named this river the Thames, on account of its bearing some resemblance to that River in England) on board with the very first of the Ebb. In our return down the river, the inhabitants of the Village where we landed in going, seeing that we return'd by another Channell, put off in their Canoes and met us and Trafficked with us in the most friendly manner immaginable, until they had disposed of the few Trifles they had. The tide of Ebb just carried us out of the narrow part of the River into the Sea reach, as I may call it, where meeting with the flood and a Strong breeze at N-N-W obliged us to come to a Grapnel, and we did not reach the Ship until 7 o'Clock in theam Intending to get under Sail at high water the Long boat was sent to take up the Kedge Anchor, but it blow'd so strong that she could not reach the Buoy, and the gale increasing soon obliged us to veer away more Cable and Strike Top Gallant Yards.

Wednesday, November 22nd 1769 Winds at N-N-W. Theam fresh Gales and hazey with rain; the remainder, moderate and Clear. At 3pm the Tide of Ebb making, we took up our Anchors and got under Sail and ply'd down the River until 8 o'Clock, when we again came to an Anchor in 7 fm, muddy bottom. At 3am weigh'd with the first of the Ebb and kept plying until the flood obliged us to anchor again. After this I went in the Pinnace over to the Western Shore, but found there neither inhabitants or anything else worthy of Note. At the time I left the Ship a good many of the Natives were alongside and on board Trafficking with our people for such Trifles as they had, and seem'd to behave as well as people could do, but one of them took the 1/2 hour glass out of the Bittacle, and was caught in the very fact, and for which Mr. Hicks, who was Commanding Officer, brought him to the Gangway and gave him a Dozen lashes with a Catt of nine Tails. The rest of the people seem'd not displeas'd at it when they came to know what it was for, and some old man beat the fellow after he had got into his Canoe; however, soon after this they all went away.

Thursday, November 23rd 1769pm Gentle breezes at N-N-W and fair weather. Between 3 and 4 o'Clock got under Sail with the first of the Ebb and ply'd to windward until 9 when we anchor'd in 16 fm over upon the E shore. In the night had light Airs and Calm; at 3am weighed but had little or no wind until near noon, when a light breeze sprung up at N-N-W. At this time we were close under the W shore in 7 fm Water; Lat 36° 51' S.

Friday, November 24th 1769pm, Fresh Gales and dark, Cloudy, squally weather, with Thunder, Lightning, and rain. Winds from the N-W to the S-W, and this last carried us by 7 o'Clock without the N-W point of the River, but the weather being bad and having land on all sides of us, and a Dark night coming on, I thought it most adviseable to Tack and stretch in under ye Point where we Anchor'd in 19 fm. At 5am weighed and made Sail to the N-W under our Courses and double Reef'd Topsails, the wind being at S-W by W and W-S-W, a strong Gale and Squally blowing right off the land, which would not permit us to come near it, so that from the time of our getting under Sail until' Noon (during which time we ran 12 lg) we had but

a slight and distant View of the Coast and was not able to distinguish whether the points we saw were parts of the Main or Islands lying before it, for we never once lost sight of the Main Land. At noon our Lat by observation was  $36^{\circ} 15' 20$  seconds S, being at this time not above 2 mi from a Point of Land on the Main and  $3 \frac{1}{2}$  lg from a very high Island which bore N-E by E of us; in this Situation had 26 fm Water. The farthest point we could see on the Main bore from us N-W, but we could see several small Islands lying to the Northward of that direction. The point of land we are now abreast of, I take to be the N-W Extremity of the River Thames, for I shall comprehend under that Name the Deep Bay we have been in for this week past, the N-E point of which is the Promontory we past on Saturday morning last, and which I have named Cape Colvill in honour of the Right hon'ble the Lord Colvill; Lat  $36^{\circ} 26' S$ ; Lon  $184^{\circ} 27' W$ . It rises directly from the Sea to a Considerable height, but what makes it most remarkable is a high Rock standing close to the pitch of the point, and from some points of view may be distinguished at a very great distance. From the S-W point of this Cape the river Extends itself in a direct line S by E, and is no where less than 3 lg broad until you are 14 lg above the Cape, there it is at once Contracted to a Narrow stream. From this place it still continues the same S by E Course thro' a low flat Country or broad Valley that lies Parallel with the Sea Coast, the End of which we could not see. The land on the E side of the Broadest part of this river is Tolerable high and hilly, that on the W side is rather low, but the whole is cover'd with woods and Verdure and looks to be pretty fertile, but we saw but a few small places that were Cultivated. About the Entrance of the narrow part of the River the land is mostly Cover'd with Mangroves and other Shrubs, but farther in are immense woods of as stout lofty timber as is to be found perhaps in any other part of the world. In many places the woods grow close upon the very banks of the River, but where it does not the land is Marshy such as we find about the Thames in England. We saw poles stuck up in many places in the River to set nets for Catching of fish; from this we imagin'd that there must be plenty of fish, but of what sort we know not for we saw none. The Greatest Depth of Water we found was 26 fm and decreaseth pretty gradually as you run up to  $1 \frac{1}{2}$  and 1 fathom. In the mouth of the fresh-water Stream or narrow part is 3 and 4 fm, but before this are sand banks and large flats; Yet, I believe, a Ship of a Moderate draught of Water may go a long way up this River with a flowing Tide, for I reckon that the Tides rise upon a perpendicular near 10 feet, and is high water at the full and Change of the Moon about 9 o'Clock. Six lg within Cape Colvill, under the Eastern Shore, are several small Islands, these Islands together with the Main seem'd to form some good Harbours. Opposite to these Islands under the Western Shore lies some other Islands, and it appear'd very probable that these form'd some good Harbours likewise. But even supposing there were no Harbours about this River, it is good anchoring in every part of it where the depth of Water is Sufficient, being defended from the Sea by a Chain of Large and Small Islands which I have named Barrier Isles, lying across the Mouth of it extending themselves N-W and S-E 10 lg. The S end of these Islands lies N-E  $4 \frac{1}{2}$  lg from the N-W point of the River, which I have named point Rodney; it lies W-N-W 9 lg from Cape Colvill, Lat  $36^{\circ} 15'$ ; Lon  $184^{\circ} 58' W$ . The Natives residing about this River do not appear to be very numerous considering the great Extent of Country; at IE not many came off to the Ship at one Time, and as we were but little ashore ourselves we could not so well judge of their numbers. They are a Strong, well made, active People as any we have seen yet, and all of them Paint their Bodys with Red Oker and Oil from Head to foot, a thing that we have not seen before. Their Canoes are large, well built and Ornamented with Carved work in general as well as most we have seen.

Saturday, November 25th 1769pm, had fresh Gales at S-W, and Squally weather. We kept standing along Shore to the N-W, having the Main land on the one side and Islands on the other; our Soundings were from 26 to 12 fm. At  $\frac{1}{2}$  past 7pm we Anchor'd in a Bay in 14 fm,

sandy bottom. We had no sooner come to an Anchor than we caught between 90 and 100 Bream (a fish so called), this occasioned my giving this place the Name of Bream Bay. The 2 points which forms this Bay lie N and S 5 lg from each other. The Bay is every where pretty broad and between 3 and 4 lg deep; at the bottom of it there appears to be a fresh water River. The N head of the Bay, called Bream head, is high land and remarkable on account of several peaked rocks ranged in order upon the top of it; it lies in the Lat  $35^{\circ} 46'$  S and  $N 41^{\circ} W$ , distant  $17 \frac{1}{2}$  lg from Cape Colvill. This Bay may likewise be known by some Small Islands lying before it called the Hen and Chickens, one of which is pretty high and terminates at Top in 2 peaks. The land between Point Rodney and Bream Head, which is 10 lg, is low and wooded in Turfs, and between the Sea and the firm land are white sand banks. We saw no inhabitants but saw fires in the Night, a proof that the Country is not uninhabited. At daylight we left the Bay and directed our Course along shore to the Northward, having a Gentle breeze at S by W and Clear weather. A little after sunrise found the Variation to be  $12^{\circ} 42'$  E. At Noon, our Lat by observation was  $36^{\circ} 36'$  S; Bream head bore S distant 10 mi; some small Islands (Poor Knights) at N-E by N distant 3 lg, and the Nermost land in sight bore N-N-W, being at this Time 2 mi from the Shore, and in this Situation had 26 fm; the land here about is rather low and pretty well cover'd with wood and seems not ill inhabited.

Sunday, November 26th 1769pm, Gentle breezes between the E-N-E and N, kept ranging along shore to the Northward. At the distance of 4 or 5 mi off saw several Villages and some Cultivated lands; towards evening several Canoes came off to us, and some of the Natives ventur'd on board; to 2, who appear'd to be Chiefs, I gave presents. After these were gone out of the Ship, the others became so Troublesome that in order to get rid of them we were at the expence of 2 or 3 Musquet Balls, and one 4 pound Shott, but as no harm was intended them, none they received, unless they hapned to over heat themselves in pulling on shore. In the Night had variable light Airs, but towards morning had a light breeze at S, and afterward at S-E; with this we proceeded slowly to the Northward. At 6am several Canoes came off from the place where they landed last night, and between this and noon many more came from other parts. Had at one time a good many of the people on board, and about 170 alongside; their behaviour was Tolerable friendly, but we could not prevail upon them to Traffic with us. At noon, the Mainland Extending from S by E to N-W by W; a remarkable point of land bore W, distant 4 or 5 mi. Lat Observed  $35^{\circ} 11'$  S.

Monday, November 27th 1769pm, Gentle breezes E, and Clear weather. At 3 passed the point of land afore-mentioned, which I have named Cape Brett in honour of Sir Piercy. The land of this Cape is considerable higher than any part of the Adjacent Coast. At the very point of the Cape is a high round Hillock, and N-E by N, near one mile from this is a small high Island or Rock with a hole pierced thro' it like the Arch of a Bridge, and this was one reason why I gave the Cape the above name, because Piercy seem'd very proper for that of the Island. This Cape, or at least some part of it, is called by the Natives Motugogogo; Lat  $35^{\circ} 10'$  30 seconds S, Lon  $185^{\circ} 25'$  W. On the W side of Cape Brett is a large and pretty deep Bay lying in S-W by W, in which there appear'd to be several small Islands. The point that forms the N-W entrance I have named Point Pocock; it lies W  $\frac{1}{4}$  N, 3 or 4 lg from Cape Brett. On the S-W side of this Bay we saw several Villages situated both on Islands and on the Main land, from whence came off to us several large Canoes full of People, but, like those that had been alongside before, would not Enter into a friendly Traffick with us, but would Cheat whenever they had an opportunity. The people in these Canoes made a very good appearance, being all stout well-made men, having their Hair-which was black-comb'd up and tied upon the Crown of their heads, and there stuck with white feathers; in each of the Canoes were 2 or 3 Chiefs, and the

Habits of these were rather superior to any we had yet seen. The Cloth they wore was of the best sort, and cover'd on the outside with Dog Skins put on in such a manner as to look Agreeable enough to the Eye. Few of these people were Tattow'd or marked in the face, like those we have seen farther to the S, but several had their Backsides Tattow'd much in the same manner as the inhabitants of the Islands within the Tropics. In the Course of this day, that is this afternoon and Yesterday forenoon, we reckoned that we had not less than 400 or 500 of the Natives alongside and on board the ship, and in that time did not range above 6 or 8 lg of the Sea Coast, a strong proof that this part of the Country must be well inhabited. In the Evening, the Wind came to the Westward of N, and we Tack'd and stood off N-E until 11 o'Clock, when the wind coming more favourable we stood again to the Westward. At 8 a.m we were within a mile of Groups of Islands lying close under the Mainland and N-W by W 1/2 W, distance 22 mi from Cape Brett. Here we lay for near 2 Hours, having little or no wind. During this time several Canoes came off to the Ship, and 2 or 3 of them sold us some fish-Cavallys as they are called-which occasioned my giving the Islands the same name. After this some others began to Pelt us with Stones, and would not desist at the firing of 2 Musquet Balls thro' one of their Boats; at last I was obliged to pepper 2 or 3 fellows with small Shott, after which they retir'd, and the wind coming at N-W we stood off to Sea. At Noon, Cavally Islands bore S-W by S, distant 4 mi; Cape Brett S-E, distant 7 lg, and the Wermost land in sight, making like Islands, bore W by N; Lat in per Observation 34° 55' S.

Tuesday, November 28th 1769 A Fresh breeze from the Westward all this day, which being right in our teeth, we kept beating to windward with all the sail we could Crowd, but instead of Gaining we lost ground.am, being close in with the land to the Westward of the Bay, which lies on this side of Cape Brett, we saw at some distance inland 2 pretty large Villages Pallisaded in the same manner as others we have seen. At noon, Cape Brett S-E by E 1/2 E, distant 6 lg; Lat observed 35° 0' S.

Wednesday, November 29th 1769 Fresh Gales at N-W and W-N-W, kept plying to Windward until 7am, and finding that we lost ground every board we made, I thought I could not do better than to bear up for the Bay, which lies to the Westward of Cape Brett, it being at this Time not above 2 lg to LeEastward of us, for by putting in there we should gain some knowledge of it, on the Contrary, by Keeping the Sea with a Contrary wind, we were sure of meeting with nothing new. These reasons induced me to bear away for the Bay, and at 11 o'Clock we Anchor'd under the S-W side of one of the many Islands that line the S-E side of it, in 4 1/2 fm; but as we fell into this shoald water all at once, we Anchor'd sooner than was intended, and sent the Master with 2 Boats to sound, who found that we had got upon a Bank that spitted off from the N-W end of the Island, and that on the outside of it was 8 and 10 fm Water.

Thursday, November 30th 1769pm, had the winds W, with some very heavy Showers of Rain. We had no sooner come to an Anchor than between 300 and 400 of the Natives Assembled in their Canoes about the Ship; some few were admitted on board, and to one of the Chiefs I gave a piece of Broad Cloth and distributed a few Nails, etc., among some others of them. Many of these People had been off to the Ship when we were at Sea, and seem'd to be very sencible of the use of Fire Arms, and in the Trade we had with them they behaved Tolerable well, but continued so not long, before some of them wanted to take away the Buoy, and would not desist at the firing of several Musquets until one of them was hurt by small Shott, after which they withdrew a small distance from the Ship, and this was thought a good opportunity to try what Effect a Great Gun would have, as they paid so little respect to a Musquet, and accordingly one was fir'd over their Heads. This, I believe, would have sent them quite off, if it



had not been for Tupia, who soon prevail'd on them to return to the Ship, when their behaviour was such as gave us no room to suspect that they meant to give us any farther Trouble.

After the Ship was moved into Deeper Water I went with the Pinnace and Yawl, mann'd and Arm'd, and landed upon the Island, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We had scarce landed before all the Canoes left the Ship and landed at different parts of the Island, and before we could well look about us we were surrounded by 2 or 300 People, and, notwithstanding that they were all Arm'd, they came upon us in such a confused, straggling manner that we hardly suspected that they meant us any harm; but in this we were very soon undeceived, for upon our Endeavouring to draw a line on the sand between us and them they set up the War dance, and immediately some of them attempted to seize the 2 Boats. Being disappointed in this, they next attempted to break in upon us, upon which I fir'd a Musquet loaded with small Shott at one of the Forwardest of them, and Mr. Banks and 2 of the Men fir'd immediately after. This made them retire back a little, but in less than a minute one of the Chiefs rallied them again. Dr. Solander, seeing this, gave him a peppering with small Shott, which sent him off and made them retire a Second time. They attempted to rally several times after, and only seem'd to want some one of resolution to head them; but they were at last intirely dispers'd by the Ship firing a few shott over their Heads and a Musquet now and then from us. In this Skirmish only one or 2 of them was Hurt with small Shott, for I avoided killing any one of them as much as Possible, and for that reason withheld our people from firing. We had observed that some had hid themselves in a Cave in one of the Rocks, and sometime after the whole was over we went Towards them. The Chief who I have mentioned to have been on board the Ship hapned to be one of these; he, his wife, and another came out to meet us, but the rest made off. Those 3 people came and sat down by us, and we gave them of such things as we had about us. After this we went to another part of the Island, where some of the inhabitants came to us, and were as meek as lambs. Having taken a View of the Bay from the Island and Loaded both Boats with Sellery, which we found here in great plenty, we return'd on board, and at 4am hove up the Anchor in order to put to Sea, with a light breeze at E, but it soon falling Calm, obliged us to come too again, and about 8 or 9 o'Clock, seeing no probability of our getting to Sea, I sent the Master to Sound the Harbour. But before this I order'd Matthew Cox, Henry Stevens, and Emanl Parreyra to be punished with a dozen lashes each for leaving their duty when ashore last night, and digging up Potatoes out of one of the Plantations. The first of the 3 I remitted back to Confinement because he insisted that there was no harm in what he had done. All this Forenoon had abundance of the Natives about the Ship and some few on board. We Trafficked with them for a few Trifles, in which they dealt very fair and friendly.

Friday, December 1st 1769 Winds at N-N-W a Gentle breeze. At 3pm, the Boats having return'd from sounding, I went with them over to the S side of the Harbour, and landed upon the Main, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We met with nothing new or remarkable. The place where we landed was in a small sandy Cove, where there are 2 small Streams of Fresh Water and Plenty of Wood for fuel. Here were likewise several little Plantations planted with Potatoes and Yams. The Soil and Natural produce of the Country was much the same as what we have hitherto met with. The people we saw behaved to us with great marks of friendship. In the evening we had Some very heavy showers of rain, and this brought us on board sooner than we intended.am, the wind being still contrary, I sent some people ashore upon the Island to cut Grass for our Sheep, in the doing of which the inhabitants gave them no sort of disturbance, and in the same friendly manner did those behave that were alongside the Ship. Punished Matthew Cox with 6 Lashes, and then dismiss'd him.

Saturday, December 2nd 1769 Winds at N-W and N.p.m a Gentle breeze; the remainder Strong Gales and hazey, with much rain towards Noon. At 8am hoisted out the Long boat, and sent her ashore for water, and the Pinnacle to haul the Sean; but they had not got well ashore before it began to blow and rain very hard. This occasioned them to return on board with one Turn of water and but a very few fish.

Sunday, December 3rd 1769pm, Strong Gales at N, with rain; the remainder Gentle breezes from the Westward.am, sent 2 Boats to sound the Harbour and one to haul the Sean, the latter of which met with very little Success.

Monday, December 4th 1769 Gentle breezes at N-W, W-N-W, and W; very fair weather.p.m, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and myself landed upon one of the Islands on the N side of the one the Ship lays under. This Island is about 3 mi in Circuit, and hath upon it 40 or 50 Acres of Land cultivated and planted with roots; here are likewise several small streams of Excellent water. This Island, as well as most others in this Bay, seem to be well inhabited. At 4am sent the Long boat to the above Island for water and some hands to cut Grass, and at 9, I went with the Pinnacle and Yawl over upon the Main, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. In our way we passed by a point of land on which stood a Hippa or Fortified Village, the inhabitants of which waved us to come ashore, and accordingly we landed, which we had no sooner done than the People came about us with Quantitys of various sorts of fish, which we purchased of them for meer Trifles. After this they shew'd us the Village, which was a neat Compact place, and its situation well Choose. There were 2 or 3 more near unto this, but these we did not go to. We afterwards went a little way into the Country, and had some of the Natives along with us; we met with a good deal of Cultivated land, planted mostly with sweet potatoes. The face of the Country appear'd Green and pleasant, and the soil seem'd to be pretty rich and proper for Cultivation. The land is every where about this Bay of a moderate height, but full of small Hills and Vallies, and not much incumbered with wood. We met with about 1/2 a dozen Cloth plants, being the same as the inhabitants of the Islands lying within the Tropics make their finest Cloth on. This plant must be very scarce among them, as the Cloth made from it is only worn in small pieces by way of Ornaments at their ears, and even this we have seen but very seldom. Their knowing the use of this sort of Cloth doth in some measure account for the extraordinary fondness they have shew'd for it above every other thing we had to give them. Even a sheet of white paper is of more value than so much English Cloth of any sort whatever; but, as we have been at few places where I have not given away more or less of the latter, it's more than probable that they will soon learn to set a value upon it, and likewise upon Iron, a thing not one of them knows the use of or sets the IE value upon; but was European commodities in ever such Esteem among them, they have no one thing of Equal value to give in return, at IE that we have seen.

Tuesday, December 5th 1769pm, had the winds at S-W and W-S-W, a fresh breeze. At 3 o'Clock we return'd on board, and after dinner Visited another part of the Bay, but met with nothing new. By the evening all our Empty Casks were fill'd with water, and had at the same time got on board a large quantity of Sellery, which is found here in great Plenty. This I still caused to be boild every morning with Oatmeal and Portable Soup for the Ship's Company's breakfast. At 4am weigh'd with a light breeze at S-E, but had Variable light Airs and sometimes Calm until near Noon, when a Gentle breeze sprung up at N. At this time we had not got out of the Bay; our Lat by Observation was 35° 9' S. This Bay I have before observed, lies on the W side of Cape Brett: I have named it the Bay of Islands, on account of the Great Number which

line its shores, and these help to form Several safe and Commodious Harbours, wherein is room and Depth of Water sufficient for any number of Shipping. The one we lay in is on the S-W side of S-Wermost Island, that lies on the S-E side of the Bay. I have made no accurate Survey of this Bay; the time it would have requir'd to have done this discouraged me from attempting it; besides, I thought it quite Sufficient to be able to Affirm with Certainty that it affords a good Anchorage and every kind of refreshment for Shipping, but as this was not the Season for roots, we got only fish. Some few we Caught ourselves with hook and line and in the Sean, but by far the greatest part we purchased of the Natives, and these of Various sorts, such as Sharks, Stingrays, Breams, Mullet, Mackerel, and several other sorts. Their way of Catching them is the same as ours, viz., with Hook and line and Seans; of the last they have some prodigious large made all of a Strong Kind of Grass. The Mackerel are in every respect the same as those we have in England, only some are larger than any I ever saw in any other Part of the World; although this is the Season for this fish, we have never been able to Catch one with hook and line. The inhabitants of this Bay are far more numerous than at any other place we have yet been in, and seem to live in friendship one with another, although it doth not at all appear that they are united under one head. They inhabited both the Islands and the Main, and have a Number of Hippas, or Strong Holds, and these are all built in such places as nature hath in a great part fortified, and what she hath left undone the people themselves have finished. It is high water in this Bay at full and change of the Moon about 8 o'clock, and the tide at these times rises and falls upon a perpendicular 6 or 8 feet. It appears, from the few Observations I have been able to make of the Tides on the Sea-Coast, that the flood comes from the Southward, and I have lately had reasons to think that there is a current which comes from the Westward and sets along shore to the S-E or S-S-E, as the Land lays.

Wednesday, December 6th 1769pm, had a Gentle breeze at N-N-W, with which we kept turning out of the Bay, but gain'd little or nothing; in the evening it fell little wind; at 10 o'Clock it was Calm. At this time the tide or Current seting the Ship near one of the Islands, where we were very near being ashore; but, by the help of our Boats and a light Air from the Southward, we got clear. About an hour after, when we thought ourselves out of all danger, the Ship struck upon a Sunken rock and went immediately clear without receiving any perceptible damage. Just before the man in the Chains had 17 fm Water, and immediately after she struck 5 fm, but very soon Deepned to 20. This rock lies half-a-mile W-N-W from the Nermost or outermost Island that lies on the S-E side of the Bay. Had light Airs from the Land and sometimes Calm until 9 o'Clockam; at this time we had got out of the Bay, and a breeze springing up at N-N-W, we stood out to Sea. At noon Cape Brett bore S-S-E 1/2 S, distant 10 mi. Lat observed, 34° 59' S.

Thursday, December 7th 1769pm, a fresh breeze from the Westward and Clear weather. At 3 o'Clock took several Observations of the Sun and Moon; the mean result of them gives 185° 36' W Lon from the Meridian of Greenwich. What winds we have had this 24 hours hath been against us, so that at Noon we had advanced but very little to the Westward.

Friday, December 8th 1769 Forepart ofpm had a Gentle breeze at N-N-W, with which we stood in shore and fetched close under the Cavalle Islands. They are a Group of Small Islands lying close under the Main land, and 7 lg N 60 W from Cape Brett, and 3 1/2 lg from Point Rodney. From these Islands the Main land trends W by N. We were here Visited by several Canoes, and the People in them seem'd desirous of Trafficking with us, but at this time a breeze of wind sprung up at S, they could not keep up with the Ship, and I would not wait for them. The wind did not continue long at S before it veer'd to S-W and W, a light breeze. Found the Variation in

the Evening to be  $12^{\circ} 42'$  E, and in the Morning  $13^{\circ}$  E. Kept standing to the W-N-W and N-W until 10am, at which time we tacked and stood in for the Shore, being about 5 lg off, and in this situation had 118 fm Water. At Noon Cape Brett bore S-E, distant 13 lg, and the Wermost land in sight bore W by S, being at this time about 4 lg from Land. Lat in per Observation,  $34^{\circ} 42'$  S.

Saturday, December 9th 1769pm, had a Gentle Breeze at W, which in the Evening came to S and continued so all night; this by daylight brought us pretty well in with the land, 7 lg to the Westward of the Cavalle Isles, and where lies a deep Bay running in S-W by W and W-S-W, the bottom of which we could but just see, and there the land appear'd to be low and level, the 2 points which form the Entrance lie W-N-W and E-S-E 5 mi from each other. This Bay I have named Doubtless Bay, the wind not permitting us to look into this Bay we steer'd for the Wermost land we had in sight, which bore from us W-N-W, distant 3 lg, but before we got the length of it it fell calm, and continued so until 10 o'Clock, when a breeze sprung up at W-N-W, and with it we stood off N. While we lay becalm'd, several of the Natives came off to the Ship in 5 Canoes, but were fearful of venturing alongside. After these were gone, 6 more came off; these last came boldly alongside, and sold us fish of different sorts sufficient to give all hands a little.

At noon, the Cavalle Islands bore S-E by E, distant 8 lg, and the Entrance of Doubtless Bay S by W distant 3 lg, and the N-W Extremity of the Land in sight, which we judge to be the Main, bore N-W by W. Our Lat by observation was  $34^{\circ} 44'$  S.

Sunday, December 10th 1769 Had the winds from the Western board all this day, a Gentle breeze and clear weather. In the evening found the Variation to be  $12^{\circ} 41'$  E per Azimuth and  $12^{\circ} 40'$  by the Amplitude; in the morning we stood Close in with the Land, 7 lg to the Westward of Doubtless Bay. Here the shore forms another large open Bay; the Bottom of this and Doubtless Bay cannot be far from each other, being to all appearance only seperated by a low neck of land from which juts out a Peninsula or head land, which I have named Knockle Point. W by S 6 lg from this point and about the middle of the Bay is a high Mountain or Hill standing upon a desert shore, on which account we called it Mount Camel; Lat  $34^{\circ} 51'$ ; Lon  $186^{\circ} 50'$ . In this Bay we had 24 and 25 fm Water, the bottom good for Anchorage, but their seems to be nothing that can induce Shipping to put into it for no Country upon Earth can look more barren than the land about this bay doth. It is in general low, except the Mountain just Mentioned, and the Soil to all appearance nothing but white sand thrown up in low irregular hills, lying in Narrow ridges parrallel with the shore; this occasioned me to name it Sandy Bay. The first ridge behind the Sea beach is partly cover'd with Shrubs, Plants, etc., but the second ridge hath hardly any green thing upon it, which induced me to think that it lies open to the Western Sea. As barren as this land appears it is not without inhabitants. We saw a Village on this Side of Mount Camel and another on the Eastern side of the Bay, besides 5 Canoes that were pulling off to the Ship, but did not come up with us. At 9am we tacked and stood to the Northward at Noon. Lat in Per observation  $34^{\circ} 38'$ . The Cavalle Isles bore S-E by E, distant 13 lg; the Northern Extremity of the land in sight making like an Island bore N-W  $1/4$  N, distant 9 lg, and Mount Camel bore S-W by S, distant 6 lg. Tacked and stood in Shore.

Monday, December 11th 1769 Gentle breezes at N. M.d and pleasant weather. Kept plying all the day, but got very little to Windward; at Noon was in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 32'$  S, the Nermost inland set yesterday at noon bore N-W by W, distant 6 or 7 lg.

Tuesday, December 12th 1769 Moderate breezes of Wind between the N-W and N and Smooth Water, yet we gain'd very little in plying to Windward; at Noon Mount Camel bore S by W 1/4, distant 4 or 5 lg. Lat observed 34° 34' S.

Wednesday, December 13th 1769 Fore part ofpm, Moderate breezes at N by W and fair weather; stood in shore until 5 O'Clock, at which time we tack'd and stood to the N-E being 2 lg to the Northward of Mount Camel and 1 1/2 mile from shore, and this situation had 22 fm water. At 10 it began to blow and rain, which brought us under double Reef Top sails; at 12 Tack'd and Stood to the Westward until 7am when we Tack'd and stood again to N-E, being at this time about a mile to windward of the place where we tack'd last night. Soon after we Tack'd it came on to blow very hard at N-N-W with heavy squalls attended with rain, this brought us under our Courses and Split the Main Top sail in such a manner that it was necessary to unbend it and bring another to the Yard. At 10 it fell more moderate and we set the Top sails double reef'd. At Noon had strong Gales and hazey weather, Tack'd and stood to the Westward. No land in sight for the first time since we have been upon the Coast.

Thursday, December 14th 1769 Strong Gales at W and W-S-W with Squalls at times attended with Rain. At 1/2 past 3pm Tack'd and stood to the Northward. A small Island lying off Knockle point, bore S 1/2 W, distant half a League. In the evening brought the Ship under her Courses, having first Split the Fore and mizen Top sails; at midnight wore and Stood to the Southward until 5am, then Tack'd and stood to the N-W. At this time saw the land bearing S, distant 8 or 9 lg; by this we found we had fell very much to LeEastward since Yesterday morning. Set the Top sails close Reef and the people to dry and repair the Damaged Sails. At Noon a strong Gale and clear weather, Lat observ'd 34° 6' S. Saw land bearing S-W being the same N-Wermost land we have seen before, and which I take to be the Northern Extremity of this Country, as we have now a large swell rowling in from the Westward which could not well be, was we covered by any land on that point of the Compass.

Friday, December 15th 1769 Fresh Gales at S-W, and for the most part clear weather with a large Swell from the Westward. At 8pm Tack'd and Stood to the S-E until 8am, and then Tack'd and stood to the Westward with as much sail as the Ship could bear. At Noon we were in the Lat of 34° 10' S, and Lon 183° 45' W, and by Estimation about 15 lg from the Land notwithstanding we used our utmost Endeavours to keep in with it.

Saturday, December 16th 1769 Fresh breezes between the S by W and S-W. Clear weather with a Swell from the Westward. At 6am saw the land from the Mast Head bearing S-S-W. Got Top Gallant Yards up and set the Sail, unbent the Foresail to repair and brought another to the Yard. At Noon, Lat observ'd 33° 43' S; Course made since Yesterday Noon N 60° W; distance 56 mi. The Land in sight bearing S by W, distant 14 lg.

Sunday, December 17th 1769 A Gentle breeze between the S-W by W and W with Clear weather. In standing in Shore sounded several times and had no ground with 90 fm of line. At 8am Tack'd in 108 fm 3 or 4 mi from the Shore, being the same point of Land as we had to the N-W of us before we were blown off. At Noon it bore S-W, distant about 3 mi. Mount Camel bore S by E, distant 11 lg, and the Wermost land in sight bore S 75° W; Lat observ'd 34° 20' S. The people at work repairing the Sails, the most of them having been Split in the late blowing weather.

Monday, December 18th 1769 Moderate breezes at W and W-N-W and Clear weather. At 4pm Tack'd and stood in shore, in doing of which we meet with a Strong rippling, and the Ship fell fast to leEastward, occasioned, as we thought, by a Current setting to the Eastward. At 8 Tack'd and stood off N until 8am, when we Tack'd and stood in, being about 10 lg from the Land. At Noon the Point of Land we were near to yesterday at noon bore S-S-W, distant 5 lg. Lat observed  $34^{\circ} 8' S$ .

Tuesday, December 19th 1769 The wind still continues at W.pm, a moderate breeze and Clear weather. At 7 Tack'd in 35 fm; the point of land before mentioned bore N-W by N, distant 4 or 5 mi, having not gained one inch to windward this last 24 hours, which is a great proof that there must be a Current setting to the Eastward. The Point of Land above mentioned I have called N Cape, judging it to be the Nermost Extremity of this Country. It lies in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 22' S$  and Lon  $186^{\circ} 55' W$  from Greenwich, and N  $63^{\circ} W$  31 lg from Cape Brett; it forms the N Point of Sandy Bay, and is a peninsula jutting out N-E about 2 mi, and Terminates in a Bluff head which is flat at Top. The Isthmus which joins this head to the Mainland is very low, on which account the land off the Cape from several situations makes like an Island. It appears still more remarkable when to the Southward of it by the appearance of a high round Island at the S-E Point of the Cape; but this is likewise a deception, being a round hill join'd to the Cape by a low, narrow neck of Land; on the S-E side of the Cape there appears to be anchorage, and where ships must be covered from S-E and N-W winds. We saw a Hippa or Village upon the Cape and some few inhabitants. In the night had some Squalls attended with rain, which obliged us to take another Reef in our Topsails. At 8am Tack'd and stood in Shore, and being moderate loosed a Reef out of each Topsail and set the small sails. At noon we were in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 2' S$ , and being hazey over the land we did not see it.

Wednesday, December 20th 1769pm, Fresh breezes at W by N, and Clear weather. At 6 Tack'd and stood off, N Cape bore S, distant 3 or 4 mi. At 4am Tack'd and stood in, Wind at W-N-W a fresh breeze, but at 9 it increased to a Strong Gale with heavy squalls attended with Thunder and Rain, which brought us under our Courses. At 11 it Cleared up and the Wind came to W-S-W; we set the Topsails, double Reef'd and Tack'd and stood to the N-W. At Noon, a Stiff Gale and Clear weather; Lat observed  $34^{\circ} 14' S$ . N Cape S-S-W, distant 3 lg.

Thursday, December 21st 1769 Fresh breezes at S-W and clear weather with a heavy swell first from the W, then from the S-W. At 8am loosed the 2nd Reef out of the Topsails; at noon clear weather, no land in sight. The N Cape bore S  $25^{\circ} E$ , distant 24 lg. Lat observed  $33^{\circ} 17' S$ .

Friday, December 22nd 1769 A moderate Gale at S by W and S-S-W and Cloudy weather. At 8am got up Top Gallant Yards and set the sails. At Noon Lat observ'd  $33^{\circ} 2' S$ . Course and distant since Yesterday at Noon is N  $69 \frac{1}{2} W$ , 37 mi. The N Cape bore S  $39^{\circ} E$ , distant 38 lg.

Saturday, December 23rd 1769 Gentle breezes between the S by W and S-W, and Clear settled weather, with a swell from the S-W. Course and distance sailed since Yesterday at Noon is S  $60^{\circ} E$ , 30 mi. Lat observed  $33^{\circ} 17' S$ . N Cape S  $36' E$ , distant 27 lg.

Sunday, December 24th 1769 Light Airs next to a Calm all this 24 Hours. At 7pm saw the land from the Mast head bearing S  $1/2 E$ ; at 11am saw it again bearing S-S-E, distant 8 lg. At Noon Lat observed  $33^{\circ} 48' S$ .

Monday, December 25th 1769 A Gentle breeze at S-E, the weather a little hazey.pm, stood to the S-W. At 4 the land above mentioned bore S-E by S, distant 4 lg. It proves to be a small Island, which we take to be the 3 Kings discover'd by Tasman; there are several Smaller Islands or Rocks lying off the S-W end and one at the N-E end. It lies in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 10' S$ , and Lon  $187^{\circ} 45' W$  and  $W 14^{\circ} N$ , 14 or 15 lg from the N Cape. At midnight Tack'd and stood to the N-E until 6am, then Tack'd and stood to the Southward. At Noon the Island of the 3 Kings bore E  $8^{\circ} N$ , distant 5 or 6 lg. Lat observed  $34^{\circ} 12' S$ , Lon in  $188^{\circ} 5' W$ ; variation per Azimuth taken this morning  $11^{\circ} 25' E$ .

Tuesday, December 26th 1769 Moderate breezes, E and hazey weather; standing to the Southward close upon a wind. At Noon was in the Lat of  $35^{\circ} 10' S$  and Lon  $188^{\circ} 20' W$ . The island of the 3 Kings N  $26^{\circ} W$ , distant 22 lg. In this situation had no land in sight, and yet by observation we are in the Lat of the Bay of Islands, and by my reckoning but 30 lg to the Westward of the N Cape, from whence it appears that the Northern part of this land must be very narrow, otherwise we must have seen some part of the W side of it.

Wednesday, December 27th 1769 Winds at E.pm, a fresh Gale, with which we stood to the Southward until 12 at Night, then Tack'd and Stood to the Northward. At 4am the wind began to freshen, and increased in such a manner that at 9 we were obliged to bring the Ship too under her Mainsail, it blowing at this time excessive hard with heavy Squalls attended with rain, and at the same time thick hazey weather. Course made good since Yesterday at Noon S-S-W  $1/2 W$ , distance 11 mi. Lat in  $35^{\circ} 19' S$ , Lon in  $188^{\circ} 29' W$ . The Island of the 3 Kings, N  $27^{\circ} E$ , distant 77 mi.

Thursday, December 28th 1769 The Gale continued without the IE intermission until 2am, when the wind fell a little and began to veer to the Southward and to the S-W where it fixed at 4, and we made Sail and steer'd E in for the Land under the Foresail and Mainsail, but was soon obliged to take in the latter as it began to blow very hard and increased in such a manner that by 8 o'Clock it was a meer Hurricane attended with rain and the Sea run prodigious high. At this time we wore the Ship, hauld up the Topsail, and brought her too with her head to the N-W under a Reefed Mainsail, but this was scarcely done before the Main Tack gave way and we were glad to take in the Mainsail and lay too under the mizen staysail and Ballanced mizen, after which we reefd the Foresail and furl'd both it and the Mainsail. At Noon the Gale was a little abated, but had still heavy squalls attended with rain. Our Course made good to-day is N, a little E, 29 mi; Lat in per Account  $34^{\circ} 50' S$ ; Lon in  $188^{\circ} 27' W$ ; the 3 Kings N  $41 E$ ; distant 52 mi.

Friday, December 29th 1769 Winds at S-W and S-W by W. A very hard Gale with Squalls but mostly fair weather. At 7pm wore and lay on the other Tack. At 6am loosed the Reef out of the Foresail and Set it and the Reefd Mainsail. At 11 unbent both Foresail and Mainsail to repair, and bent others and made Sail under them. At Noon Lat observed  $34^{\circ} 45' S$ . Course and distance saild since yesterday E by N 29 mi.

Saturday, December 30th 1769 Winds at S-W.pm, hard Gales with some Squalls attended with rain.am, more moderate and fair. At 8pm wore and stood to the N-W until 5am, then wore and stood to the S-E and being pretty moderate we set the Topsails close Reef'd, but the S-W Sea runs so high that the Ship goes Bodily to leEastward. At 6 saw the land bearing N-E distant about 6 lg which we judge to be the same as Tasman calls Cape Maria Van Dieman; at Noon it

bore N-N-E 1/2 E and we could see the land extend to the E and Southward as far as S-E by E. Our Lat by observation 34° 50' S.

Sunday, December 31st 1769 Fresh gales at S-W and S-W by S accompanied by a large Sea from the same Quarter. At 1pm Tack'd and Stood to the N-W until 8, then stood to the S-E. At this time the Island of the 3 Kings bore N-W by W, distant 11 lg, and Cape Maria Van Diemen N by E. At midnight wore and Stood to the N-W until 4am, then wore and Stood to the S-E; at Noon our Lat by observation was 34° 42' S. The land of Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N-E by N distant about 5 lg.

Monday, January 1st 1770pm, fresh breezes at S-W by S and Squally, the remainder moderate breezes at S-W by S and S-W clear weather. At 7pm Tack'd and stood to the Westward. At this time Mount Camel bore N 83° E and the Nermost land or Cape Maria Van Diemen N by W, being distant from the Nearest Shore 3 lg; in this situation had 40 fm Water.

NOTE. Mount Camel doth not appear to lay little more than a mile from the Sea on this Side and about the same distance on the other, so that the land here cannot be above 2 or 3 mi broad from Sea to Sea, which is what I computed when we were in Sandy Bay on the other side of the Coast. At 6am Tack'd and Stood to the Eastward, the Island of the 3 Kings N-W by N. At Noon Tack'd again and stood to the Westward, being in the Lat of 34° 37' S; the Island of the 3 Kings bore N-W by N, distant 10 or 11 lg; and Cape Maria Van Diemen N 31 E, distant 4 1/2 lg; in this situation had 54 fm. I cannot help thinking but what it will appear a little strange that at this season of the Year we should be 3 Weeks in getting 10 lg to the Westward and 5 Weeks in getting 50 lg, for so long it is since we pass'd Cape Brett; but it will hardly be credited that in the midst of Summer and in the Lat of 35° S such a Gale of wind as we have had could have hapned which for its Strength and Continuance was such as I hardly was ever in before. Fortunately at this time we were a good distance from land, otherwise it would have proved fatal to us.

Tuesday, January 2nd 1770 Fresh breezes at S-S-W and W accompanied with a rowling Sea from the S-W. At 5pm the wind Veering to the Westward we Tack'd and Stood to the Southward. At this time the N Cape bore E 3/4 N and was just open of a point that lies 3 lg W by S from it, being now well assured that it is the Nermost Extremity of this Country and is the E point of a Peninsula which Stretches out N-W and N-W by N 17 or 18 lg, and as I have before observed is for the most part low and narrow except its Extremity where the land is Tollerable high and Extends 4 or 5 lg every way. Cape Maria Van Diemen is the W point of the Peninsula and lies in the Lat of 34° 30' S; Lon 187° 18' W from Greenwich. From this Cape the Land Trends away S-E by S and S-E to and beyond Mount Camel, and is everywhere a barren shore affording no better prospect than what ariseth from white sand Banks. At 1/2 past 7pm the Island of the 3 Kings bore N-W by N and Cape Maria Van Diemen N-E by E, distant 4 lg. At 5am Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N-N-E 1/2 E and Mount Camel E. At Noon was in the Lat of 35° 17' and Cape Maria Van Diemen by judgment bore N distant 16 lg; having no land in sight, not daring to go near it as the wind blow'd fresh right on shore and a high rowling Sea from the Same Quarter, and knowing that there was no Harbour that we could put into in case we were Caught upon a lee shore.

Wednesday, January 3rd 1770 Winds at W-S-W and S-W; a fresh breeze and Squally, the remainder moderate with frequent Squalls attended with rain. In the evening shortned Sail and at midnight Tack'd and made a Trip to the N-W until 2am, then wore and stood to the



Southward. At daylight made Sail and Edged away in order to make the Land; at 10 saw it bearing N-E and appeared to be high land; at Noon it extended from N to E-N-E distant, by Estimation, 8 or 10 lg, and Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N 2° 30' W, distant 33 lg. Our Lat by observation was 36° 2' S. A high rowling swell from the S-W.

Thursday, January 4th 1770 Winds at S-W and S-W by S; mostly a fresh Gale accompanied with a rowling sea from the same Quarter. Being desirous of taking as near a View of the coast as we could with safety we kept Edging in for it until 7 o'Clockpm, being at this time 6 lg from the Land. We then hauld our wind to S-E and kept on that Course close upon the wind all night, sounding several times but had no ground with 100 and 110 fm. At 8 o'Clockam was about 5 lg from the Land and a place which lies in the Lat of 36° 25' that had the Appearance of a Bay or inlet bore E. In order to see more of this place we kept on our Course until 11 o'Clock when we were not above 3 lg from it, and then found that it was neither a Bay nor inlet, but low land bounded on each side by higher lands which caused the deception. At this time we Tack'd and stood to the N-W. At Noon we were between 3 and 4 lg from the Land and in the Lat of 36° 31' and Lon 185° 50' W. Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N 25 W, distant 44 1/2 lg. From this I form my judgment of the direction of this Coast, which is nearly S-S-E 3/4 E and N-N-W 3/4 W, and must be nearly a Strait Shore. In about the Lat 35° 45' is some high land adjoining to the Sea; to the Southward of that the land is of a moderate heigth, and wears a most desolate and inhospitable aspect. Nothing is to be seen but long sand Hills, with hardly any Green thing upon them, and the great Sea which the prevailing W winds impel upon the Shore must render this a very Dangerous Coast. This I am so fully sencible of, that was we once clear of it I am determined not to come so near Again, if I can possible avoid it, unless we have a very favourable wind indeed.

Friday, January 5th 1770 Fresh gales at S-W with frequent Squalls attended with rain. The S-W swell still keeping up we stood to the N-W all this day with a prest Sail in order to get an Offing. At Noon True Course made good N 38 W, distance 102 mi. Lat in per Observation 35° 10' S. Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N 10° E; distant 41 mi.

Saturday, January 6th 1770 First part a fresh breeze at S-W by S; in the night had it at S.am, light Airs from the Southward next to a Calm, and Clear weather. Course made good to-day is N 76 W; distance 8 mi; Lat per Observation 35° 8' S.

Sunday, January 7th 1770 Variable light Airs and Sometimes Calm with Clear pleasant weather. At daylight saw the land which we took to be Cape Maria Van Diemen bearing N-N-E, distant 8 or 9 lg. At Noon Lat in per Observation 35° 0' S. Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N, distant 11 lg.

Monday, January 8th 1770 Gentle breezes at N-E and pleasant weather. At 6pm saw the land bearing E, and sometime after saw a Turtle upon the Water. At Noon the land Extending from N to E, distant 5 or 6 lg, being the high land before mentioned and which it intersected in 2 places each having the appearance of a Bay or inlet, but I believe it is only low land. Course and distance made good since Yesterday at Noon is S 33 E, 53 mi. Lat per Observation 35° 45' S. Cape Maria Van Diemen N 25 W, distant 30 lg.

Tuesday, January 9th 1770 Gentle breezes between the N-E and N-W, Cloudy weather sailing along shore within sight of Land at Noon. Course and distance Sailed S 37 E, 69 mi. Lat in per Observation 36° 39' S; the place we were abrE of the 4th Instant, which we at first took for a

Bay or Inlet bore N-E by N, distant 5 1/2 lg, and Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N 29 W, distant 47 lg.

Wednesday, January 10th 1770 Winds at N-N-E and N, the first part a Gentle breeze, the remainder a fresh breeze and Cloudy with rain towards Noon. Continued a S-E Course until 8 o'clockpm at which time we had run 7 lg since Noon, and were between 3 and 4 lg from the Land which appear'd to be low and Sandy such as I have before Discribed, and we then steer'd S-E by E in a Parrallel direction with the Coast, our Depth of Water from 48 to 34 fm; a black sandy bottom; at daylight found ourselves between 2 and 3 lg from the land which was of a Moderate height and Cloathed with Wood and Verdure. At 7 o'clock steer'd S by E and afterwards S by W, the land laying in that direction; at 9 was abt of a Point of Land which rises sloping from the Sea to a Considerable height; it lies in the Lat of 37° 43' S; I named it Woodyhead. S-W 1/2 W 11 mi from this Head is a very small Island which we named Gannet Island, on account of the Great Number of these Birds we saw upon it. At Noon a high Craggy point bore E-N-E, distance 1 1/2 lg; this point I have named Albetross Point; it lies in the Lat of 38° 4' S, and Lon 184° 42' W, and from Woodyhead S 17' W 7 lg. On the N side of it the shore forms a Bay wherein there appears to be anchorage and Shelter for Shipping against S Winds; our Course and distance saild since Yesterday at Noon is S 37 E, distance 69 mi. Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N 30 W, distant 82 lg.

Thursday, January 11th 1770 At 1/2 past Noon the wind Shifted at Once from N-N-E to S-S-W with which we stood to the Westward until 4pm, then Tack'd and stood on Shore until 7, when we again stood to the Westward having but little wind. At this Time Albetross Point bore N-E, distant near 2 lg, and the Sermost land in sight bore S-S-W 1/2 W being a very high Mountain and made very much like the Peak of Teneriff; in this Situation had 30 fm Water; had little wind all night; at 4am Tacked and stood in Shore, but it soon after fell Calm and being in 42 fm Water; the People caught about 10 or 12 Bream. At 11 a light breeze sprung up from the Westward and we made Sail to the Southward. At Noon was by Observation in the Lat of 38° 4' S; Albetross Point bore due E, distant 5 or 6 lg.

Friday, January 12th 1770 Gentle breezes from between the N-W and N-N-E; Fore and middle part Clear Weather; the Latter part dark and Cloudy; steering along shore S by W and S-S-W at the distance of 4 lg off. At 7pm saw the top of the Peaked Mountain to the Southward above the Clouds bearing from us S; at the same time the Sermost land we had in Sight bore S by W. Took several Azimuths both in the Evening and the Morning which gave the Variation 14° 15' E. At Noon had the winds very Variable with dark cloudy weather attended with excessive heavy Showers of rain; at this time we were about 3 lg from the Shore which lies under the Peaked Mountain before mentioned. This Peak we did not see, it being hid in the Clouds, but judged it to bear about S-S-E, and some very remarkable peaked Islands, lying under the Shore, bore E-S-E, distant 3 or 4 lg.

Saturday, January 13th 1770 Winds Variable.pm, Cloudy weather. At 7 o'clock sounded and had 42 fm water, being distant from the Shore between 2 and 3 lg and the Peaked Mountain as near as I could judge bore E. After it was Dark saw a fire upon the Shore, a sure sign that the Country is inhabited. In the night had some Thunder, Lightning, and Rain; at 5am saw for a few' the Top of the Peaked Mountain above the Clouds bearing N-E. It is of a prodigious height and its Top is cover'd with Everlasting Snow; it lies in the Lat of 39° 16' S, and in the Lon of 185° 15' W. I have named it Mount Egmont in honour of the Earl of Egmont. This mountain seems to have a pretty large base and to rise with a Gradual Ascent to the Peak,

and what makes it more Conspicuous is its being situated near the Sea and in the midst of a flat Country which afforded a very good Aspect, being Cloathed with Woods and Verdure. The shore under the foot of this Mountain forms a large Cape which I have named Cape Egmont; it lies S-S-W 1/2 W, 27 lg from Albetross Point. On the N-E side of the Cape lay 2 Small Islands near to a very remarkable Point of the Main that riseth to a good height in the very form of a Sugar Loaf. To the Southward of the Cape the Land tends away S-E by E and E-S-E, and seems to be every where a bold shore. At Noon had variable light Airs and Clear weather. Lat observ'd 39° 32' S. Cape Egmont bore about N-E, and we were about 4 lg from the Shore in that direction; in this situation had 40 fm Water.

Sunday, January 14th 1770pm, had a Gentle Breeze at W. In the evening came to N-W by W and Continued so all night and blow'd a fresh breeze; we steer'd along shore E-S-E and S-E by E, keeping between 2 and 3 lg off. At 1/2 past 7pm Saw for a few' Mount Egmont which bore from us N 17 W, distant 10 lg. At 5am Steer'd S-E by S the land inclining more S, but half an hour after we saw land bearing S-W by S which we hauld up for. At this time the weather was squally attended with showers of rain. At noon had a Steady fresh breeze at W by N and Cloudy weather; the S-W Extremity of the Land in sight bore S 63° W and some high land, which makes like an Island lying under the Main, bore S-S-E, distant 5 lg. The bottom of the Bay we are now in, and which bears from us S we cannot see, altho' it is very Clear in that Quarter. Our Lat by Observation is 40° 27' S, Lon 184° 39' W.

Monday, January 15th 1770 Fore and middle parts, fresh breezes between the W and N-W and fair weather. At 8pm we were within 2 lg of the Land, we discover'd in the morning, having run 10 lg since Noon; the land seen then bearing S 63° W bore now N 59° W, distant 7 or 8 lg and makes like an Island. Between this land or Island and Cape Egmont is a very broad and Deep Bay or inlet the S-W side of which we are now upon, and here the Land is of a Considerable height, distinguished by Hills and Valleys, and the Shore seems to form several Bays, into one of which I intend to go with the Ship in order to Careen her (she being very foul) and to repair some few defects, recruit our Stock of Wood, Water, etc. With this View we Kept plying on and off all Night, having from 80 to 63 fm Water; at daylight stood in for an inlet which runs in S-W. At 8am we were got within the Entrance which may be known by a Reef of Rocks stretching off from the N-W point, and some rocky Islands lying off the S-E point. At 9 o'clock being little wind and Variable we were carried by the Tide or Current within 2 Cables length of the N-W Shore where we had 54 fm, but with the help of our Boats we got Clear, at this time we saw rise up twice near the Ship a Sea Lyon, the Head of which was Exactly like the head of the Male one described by Lord Anson. We likewise saw a Canoe with some of the Natives cross the Bay, and a Village situated upon a point of an Island, which lies 7 or 8 mi with the Entrance. At Noon we were the length of this Island, and being little wind had the Boats ahead Towing.

## **Chapter 6: Exploration of the middle Island of New Zealand**

Tuesday, January 16th 1770 Variable light Airs and Clear settled weather. At 1pm hauled close round the S-W end of the Island, on which stands the Village before mention'd, the inhabitants of which were all in Arms. At 2 o'Clock we anchor'd in a very Snug Cove, which is on the N-W side of the Bay facing the S-W end of the Island in 11 fm; soft Ground, and moor'd with the Stream Anchor. By this time several of the Natives had come off to the Ship in their Canoes, and after heaving a few stones at us and having some Conversation with Tupia, some of them Ventur'd on board, where they made but a very short stay before they went into their

Canoes again, and soon after left us altogether. I then went ashore in the bottom of the Cove, accompanied by most of the Gentlemen on board. We found a fine Stream of Excellent Water, and as to wood the land is here one intire forest. Having the Sean with us we made a few hauls and caught 300 pounds weight of different sorts of fish, which were equally distributed to the Ship's Company.am, Careen'd the Ship, scrubb'd and pay'd the Larboard side. Several of the Natives Visited us this Morning, and brought with them some stinking fish, which, however, I order'd to be bought up to encourage them in this kind of Traffick, but Trade at this time seem'd not to be their Object, but were more inclinable to Quarrel, and as the Ship was upon the Carreen I thought they might give us some Trouble, and perhaps hurt some of our people that were in the Boats alongside. For this reason I fir'd some small shott at one of the first Offenders; this made them keep at a proper distance while they stay'd, which was not long before they all went away. These people declared to us this morning, that they never either saw or heard of a Ship like ours being upon this Coast before. From this it appears that they have no Tradition among them of Tasman being here, for I believe Murtherers bay, the place where he anchor'd, not to be far from this place; but this cannot be it from the Lat, for I find by an Observation made this day at Noon that we are at an Anchor in 41° 5' 32 seconds S, which is 15 mi to the Southward of Murtherers Bay.

Wednesday, January 17th 1770 Light Airs, Calm and pleasant weather.pm, righted ship and got the other Side ready for heeling out, and in the Evening Haul'd the Sean and caught a few fish. While this was doing some of us went in the pinnace into another Cove, not far from where the Ship lays; in going thither we meet with a Woman floating upon the Water, who to all appearance had not been dead many days. Soon after we landed we meet with 2 or 3 of the Natives who not long before must have been regaling themselves upon human flesh, for I got from one of them the bone of the Fore arm of a Man or Woman which was quite fresh, and the flesh had been but lately picked off, which they told us they had eat; they gave us to understand that but a few days before they had taken, Kill'd, and Eat a Boats Crew of their Enemies or strangers, for I believe they look upon all strangers as Enemies. From what we could learn the woman we had seen floating upon the Water was in this Boat and had been drowned in the fray. There was not one of us that had the IE doubt but what these people were cannibals; but the finding this bone with part of the sinews fresh upon it was a stronger proof than any we had yet met with, and, in order to be fully satisfied of the truth of what they had told us, we told one of them that it was not the bone of a man, but that of a dog; but he, with great fervency, took hold of his Fore Arm, and told us again that it was that bone: and to convince us that they had eat the flesh he took hold of the flesh of his own Arm with his teeth and made Signs of Eating.am, Careen'd, Scrub'd, and pay'd the Starboard side of the Ship; while this was doing some of the Natives came alongside seemingly only to look at us. There was a woman among them who had her Arms, thighs, and Legs cut in several place's; this was done by way of Mourning for her Husband who had very lately been Kill'd and Eat by some of their Enemies as they told us and pointed towards' the place where it was done, which lay somewhere to the Eastward. Mr. Banks got from one of them a Bone of the fore Arm, much in the same state as the one before mentioned; and to show us that they eat the flesh, they bit and Naw'd the bone and draw'd it through their Mouths, and this in such a manner as plainly Shew'd that the flesh to them was a Dainty Bit.

Thursday, January 18th 1770 Winds mostly from the S-W; a gentle breeze and Clear settled weather.pm, righted the Ship and sent on shore all or most of our empty Casks, and in the Morning the Coopers went about Trimming them, and the Carpenters went to work to Caulk the sides and to repair other defects in the Ship, while the seamen are Employ'd in the hold

Cutting Wood, etc., etc. I made a little Excursion in the pinnace in order to take a View of the Bay, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We met with nothing remarkable, and as we were on the W side of the Bay where the land is so closely cover'd with wood that we could not penetrate into the country.

Friday, January 19th 1770 Winds and weather as yesterday, and the employment of the people the same. In thepm some of our people found in the Skirts of the Wood 3 hip Bones of Men; they lay near to a Hole or Oven, that is a place where the Natives dress their Victuals; this Circumstance, trifling as it is, is still a further proof that these people eat human flesh. In theam set up the Forge to repair the Braces of the Tiller and such other Iron work as was wanting. The Natives came alongside and sold us a quantity of large Mackrell for Nails, pieces of Cloth and paper, and in this Traffick they never once attempted to defraud us of any one thing but dealt as fair as people could do.

Saturday, January 20th 1770 Winds S and fair, pleasant weather. Employ'd wooding, Watering, etc., and in theam sent part of the Powder ashore to be Air'd. Some of the Natives brought alongside in one of their Canoes 4 of the heads of the Men they had lately kill'd; both the Hairy Scalps and Skin of the faces were on. Mr. Banks bought one of the 4, but they would not part with any of the other on any account whatever. The one Mr. Banks got had received a blow on the Temple that had broke the Skull. This morning I set out in the Pinnace accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to Survey the W Coast of the Bay; we took our rout towards the head of the Bay, but it was near noon before we had got beyond the place we had been before.

Sunday, January 21st 1770pm, a Gentle breeze of Wind S, the remainder light Airs and Calm with clear, settled weather.pm, the people employ'd as usual, and at 8 o'Clock we return'd on board the Pinnace from surveying the bay, in the doing of which I met with an Excellent Harbour, but saw no inhabitants or any Cultivated land. In theam after hauling the Sean for fish, I gave every body leave to go ashore at the Watering place to amuse themselves as they thought proper.

Monday, January 22nd 1770pm, and in the night had variable light Airs and Calms.am, had a fresh breeze S and Cloudy weather. In the morning the people were set about the necessary business of the Ship, and I set out in the Pinnace accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with a view of examining the head of the inlet, but after rowing between 4 and 5 lg up it, and finding no probability of reaching it, or even seeing the end, the wind being against us and the day already half spent; we landed at Noon on the S-E side in order to try to get upon one of the Hills, to view the inlet from thence.

Tuesday, January 23rd 1770pm, Winds S, a fresh breeze. Agreeable to what is mentioned above I took one hand with me and Climbed up to the Top of one of the Hills, but when I came there I was hindered from seeing up the inlet by higher hills, which I could not come at for impenetrable woods, but I was abundantly recompensed for the trouble I had in assending the Hill, for from it I saw what I took to be the Eastern Sea, and a Strait or passage from it into the Western Sea; a little to the Eastward of the Entrance of the inlet in which we now lay with the Ship. The Main land which lies on the S-E side of this inlet appeared to me to be a narrow ridge of very high hills, and to form a part of the S-W side of the Strait; the land on the opposite side seem'd to tend away E, as far as the Eye could see. To the S-E appeared an Open Sea, and this I took to be the Eastern. I likewise saw some Islands lying on the E side of the inlet,

which before I had taken to be a part of the main land. As soon as I had descended the hill and we had refreshed ourselves, we set out in order to return to the Ship, and in our way passed through and Examined the Harbours, Coves, etc., that lay behind the Islands above mentioned. In this rout we met with an old Village in which were a good many Houses, but no Body had lived in them lately; we likewise saw another that was inhabited, but the day being so far spent, that we had not time to go to it, but made the best of our way to the Ship, which we reached between 8 and 9 o'Clock. In the night had much rain with Cloudy, Hazy weather, which continued by intervals until Noon.

Wednesday, January 24th 1770pm, had a fresh breeze S and cloudy weather. After dinner I employ'd myself in carrying on the survey of the place, and upon one of the Islands where I landed were a number of houses but no inhabitants, neither had any been there lately. In the morning the Gunner was sent ashore with the remainder of the powder to-day, and the Long boat was sent with a Gang of hands to one of the Islands to cut Grass for our Sheep, and the rest of the people were employ'd about the usual work of the Ship. This forenoon some of us visited the Hippa which is situated on the point of the Island mentioned on our first arrival; the inhabitants of this place shew'd not the IE dislike at our coming, but, on the contrary, with a great deal of seeming good nature shew'd us all over the place. We found among them some human bones, the flesh of which they told us they had eat; they likewise informed us that there was no passage into the Sea thro' this inlet, as I had imagined their was, because above where I was in the Boat it turn'd away to the Westward. Leaving these people, we Travelled to the other end of the Island, and there took Water and Crossed over upon the Main, where we met with several Houses that were at present, or had very lately been, inhabited, but we saw but very few of the inhabitants, and these were in their Boats fishing; after Viewing this place we returned on board to Dinner.

Thursday, January 25th 1770 Winds at N W, a Gentle breeze and fair weather. pm the Long boat having return'd with a Load of Grass, she was employ'd bringing on board Wood and Water, and the Caulkers having finished Caulking the Ship's sides (a thing they have been employ'd upon ever since we came here), they were pay'd with Tar. Early in theam the Long boat was sent again for Grass, and return'd at Noon with a Load.

Friday, January 26th 1770 Gentle breezes and pleasant weather. In thepm I made a little Excursion in the pinnace along shore towards the Mouth of the inlet, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We found in a small Cove several of the Natives, of whom we purchased a quantity of fresh fish; and upon our return to the Ship found that the Sean had been equally as Successfull, which we generally haul morning and evening, and seldom fail of getting fish sufficient for all hands. In theam I made an Excursion into one of the Bays which lye on the E side of the inlet, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. Upon our landing we assended a very high hill, from which we had a full View of the passage I had before discovered, and the land on the opposite shore, which appeared to be about 4 lg from us; but as it was hazey near the Horizon we could not see far to the S-E. However, I had now seen enough of this passage to Convince me that there was the Greatest probability in the World of its running into the Eastern Sea, as the distance of that Sea from this place cannot Exceed 20 lg even to where we where. Upon this I resolved after putting to Sea to Search this passage with the Ship. We found on the Top of the Hill a parcel of loose stones, of which we built a Pyramid, and left in it some Musquet balls, small Shott, beads, and whatever we had about us that was likely to stand the test of Time; after this we descended the hill, and found along with Tupia and the boat's Crew several of the Natives, setting in the most free and friendly manner

imaginable. Tupia always accompanies us in every Excursion we make, and proves of infinite Service. In our return to the Ship we visited the Hippa we had seen on Tuesday last, which is situated on a small Island, or rather a Rock. The inhabitants of this place invited us ashore with their usual Marks of Friendship, and shew'd us all over the place; which indeed was soon done, for it was very small, yet it contain'd a good number of people, and they had in it, Split and hanging up to dry, a prodigious quantity of various sorts of small fish, a part of which they sold to us for such Trifles as we had about us.

Saturday, January 27th 1770 Fresh gales, W. This day we got the Tiller properly secured, which hath been the Employment of the Armourers and part of the Carpenters since we Anchor'd at this place; the former in repairing and making new Iron work, and the Latter in fixing a Transom, for the want of which the Tiller has often been in danger of being broke; the Iron braces that supply'd the want of a Transom have broke every time they have been repair'd. Coopers still employ'd repairing the Casks; some hands with the Long boat getting on board Stones to put into the bottom of the bread room to bring the Ship more by the Stern; while others were employ'd cutting wood, repairing the rigging, and fishing.

Sunday, January 28th 1770 Strong Gales W.pm fair and Cloudy, the remainder thick, hazey weather, with much rain.

Monday, January 29th 1770 Winds as yesterday.pm rainy weather, the remainder fair and Cloudy. Pretty early in theam an old man, who had made us several visits upon our first Arrival here, came on board, and told us that one of our boats had fir'd upon and wounded 2 of their people, one of which was dead of his wounds. This affair hapned on Sunday was a week, and never before now came to my Knowledge; on that day the Master and 5 Petty officers desir'd to have a small boat to go a fishing; but instead of Keeping within the usual bounds and under the protection of the Ship, they went over to the Hippa on the Island, from which some of the inhabitants put off in 2 Canoes, as they thought to attack them; this Caused the Master to fire, and, according to the report of the old Man, wounded 2, one of which is since dead; but this last circumstance was soon after contradicted by another of the Natives, who Mr. Green and Tupia saw ashore, and I wish this last report may be true, because I find the reasons for firing upon them are not very Justifiable. This morning I went out to the Mouth of the Inlet and landed upon the W point, and from the Top of a pretty high hill which is there I had a view of this Coast to the N-W. The farthest land I could see in that Quarter was an Island about 10 lg off, and lying pretty near the Main, and is the same as hath been before mentioned. Between this Island and the place where I was lay some other Islands close under the Shore, which forms several Bays, where there appears to be safe Anchorage for Shipping. After I had set the different points, etc., we Erected upon the Top of the Hill a Tower or Pile of Stones, in which we left a Piece of Silver Coin, some Musquet Balls, Beads, etc., and left flying upon it a piece of an old Pendant. After this we return'd to the Boat, and in our way to the Ship visited some of the Natives we met with along shore, and purchased of them a small quantity of fish.

Tuesday, January 30th 1770 Winds at N-W, Gentle breezes, and fair weather. Early in theam a boat was sent to one of the Islands to get Sellery to boil for the People's breakfasts. While our people were gathering it near some empty huts about 20 of the Natives landed there-Men, Women, and Children. They had no sooner got out of their Canoe than 5 or 6 Women set down together, and cut and sacrificed themselves – viz., their Legs, Shins, Arms, and Faces, some with Shells, and others with pieces of Jaspar. So far as our people could understand them, this was done on account of their husbands being lately killed and devoured by their

Enemies. While the women was performing this Ceremony, the Men went about repairing the Huts without showing the IE Concern. The Carpenter went with part of his people into the Woods to cut and Square some Timber to saw into boards for the use of the Ship, and to prepare two Posts to be set up with inscriptions on them.

Wednesday, January 31st 1770 Little wind and Variable. In thepm the Carpenters having prepared the 2 Posts with inscriptions upon them, setting forth the Ship's Name, Month, and Year, one of them was set up at the Watering Place, on which was hoisted the Union flag; and in the Morning I took the other over to the Island which is known by the name of Motuouru, and is the one that lies nearest to the Sea; but before I attempted to set up the Post I went first to the Hippa, having Dr. Monkhouse and Tupia along with me. We here met with the old Man I have before spoke of. The first thing I did was to inquire after the Man said to be kill'd by our people, and the one that was wounded at the same time, when it did not appear to me that any such accidents had happened. I next (by means of Tupia) explain'd to the old Man and several others that we were Come to set up a Mark upon the Island, in order to shew to any ship that might put into this place that we had been here before. They not only gave their free Consent to set it up, but promised never to pull it down. I then gave every one a present of one thing or another; to the old man I gave Silver, three penny pieces dated 1763, and Spike Nails with the King's Broad Arrow cut deep in them; things that I thought were most likely to remain long among them. After I had thus prepared the way for setting up the post, we took it up to the highest part of the Island, and after fixing it fast in the ground, hoisted thereon the Union flag, and I dignified this Inlet with the name of Queen Charlotte's Sound, and took formal possession of it and the Adjacent lands in the Name and for the use of his Majesty. We then drank her Majesty's health in a Bottle of wine, and gave the Empty bottle to the old man (who had attended us up the hill), with which he was highly pleased. Whilst the Post was setting up we asked the old man about the Strait or Passage into the Eastern sea, and he very plainly told us there was a Passage, and as I had some Conjectures that the lands to the S-W of this Strait (which we are now at) was an Island, and not a Continent, we questioned the old Man about it, who said it consisted of two Wannuas, that is 2 lands or Islands that might be Circumnavigated in a few days, even in 4. This man spoke of 3 lands, the 2 above mentioned which he called Tovy-poinammu, which Signifies green Talk or Stone, such as they make their Tools or ornaments, etc., and for the third he pointed to the land on the E side of the Strait; this, he said, was a large land, and that it would take up a great many Moons to sail round it; this he called Aeheino Mouwe, a name many others before had called it by. That part which borders on the strait he called Teiria Whitte. After we had done our business upon the Island we returned on board, bringing the old Man along with us, who after dinner went ashore in a Canoe that came to attend upon him.

Thursday, February 1st 1770pm having compleated the Ship with wood, and filled all our water, the Boatswain was sent ashore with a party of Men to cut and make brooms, while others were Employ'd about the rigging, fishing, etc. In the night and the remainder of the day had a Strong Gale from the N-W, attended with very much rain.

Friday, February 2nd 1770 In thepm the Gale increased to a Storm, attended with rain and squalls, which came down in Excessive heavy gusts from off the high land, in one of which the hawser we had fast to the shore broke; this obliged us to let go another Anchor. Towards midnight the Gale moderated, and in the morning it fell Calm, and we took up the Sheet Anchor, looked at the best bower, and moored the ship again to the Shore. The heavy rain, which both fell and Continues to fall, hath caused the Brook we water'd at to overflow its



banks, and carry away 10 small Casks we had Standing there full of Water, and notwithstanding we searched the whole Cove, we could not find one of them.

Saturday, February 3rd 1770 Winds N, mostly fair weather. Very early in theam sent the Long boat for Sellery to boil for the Ship's Company's breakfast, and as I intended sailing the first opportunity, I went over to the Hippa, which is on the E side of the sound, and purchased of the inhabitants a quantity of split and half dry'd fish, and such as I could get. While we were at this Hippa, Tupia made farther enquiry about the Lands and Strait, and these people confirm'd everything the old Man had before told us. About noon we took our leave of them, which some seem'd not sorry for; notwithstanding they sold us their fish very freely, there were some few among them who shew'd evident signs of disapprobation.

Sunday, February 4th 1770 Winds N, a fresh breeze and fair weather. In thepm, after returning from the Hippa, some of us made an Excursion along shore to the Northward, in order to Traffic with the Natives for fish, in which we had no great Success. In the evening got everything off from the Shore, designing to sail in the Morning, but the wind not permitting, we amused ourselves in fishing, collecting of shells, etc.

Monday, February 5th 1770 Winds and weather as Yesterday. In theam Cast off the Hawser, hove short on the Bower, and carried out the Kedge Anchor, in order to warp the Ship out of the Cove. All the dry fish we have been able to procure from the Natives since we came here were this day divided amongst the Ship's Company.

Tuesday, February 6th 1770 At 2pm hove up the Anchor, warped the Ship out of the Cove, and got under Sail, but it soon after falling little wind, and that very Variable, we anchor'd again a little above Motu-ouru. The old man, seeing us under sail, came on board to take his leave of us. Amongst other conversation that passed between him and Tupia, he was asked if either he or any of his Ancestors had ever seen or heard of any Ship like this being in these parts; to which question he answer'd in the Negative, but said that his Ancestors had told him that there came once to this place a small Vessel from a distant part, wherein were 4 Men that were all kill'd upon their landing; and being asked where this distant land lay, he pointed to the N, intimating that it would take up a great many days to go thither. Something of this land was mentioned by the People of the Bay of Islands, who said that some of their Ancestors had been there; but it is very clear to us that there knowledge of this land is only traditionary. Had it Calm all night until 6 o'clock in the Morning, when a light breeze sprung up at N, and we got again under sail; but as the wind proved very unsteady, we got no farther than just without Motu-ouru by noon, but had a fair prospect of getting clear out of the Sound, which I shall next describe.

The entrance of this Sound is situated in the Lat of 41° S and Lon 184° 45' W, and near the middle of the S-W side of the Strait before mentioned. The land off the S-E head of the Sound called by the Natives, Koamaroo (off which lies 2 Small Islands and some rocks) makes the NarroW part of the Strait. There stretcheth out 2 mi N-E by N from the N-W head a reef of rocks, a part of which is above Water. This account of the 2 Heads will be found sufficient guide to know this sound, which is 3 lg broad at the Entrance, and lies in S-W by S-S-W, and W-S-W at IE 10 lg, and is a collection of some of the finest harbours in the world, as will evidently appear from the plan which was taken with all the accuracy that time and Circumstances would admit. The Harbour or Cove in which we lay, called Ship Cove, is not inferior to any in the Sound, both in point of Security and other Conveniences. It lies on the W

side of the Sound, and is the Sermost of 3 Coves lying within Motu-ouru, which Island bears E from it. You may sail into this Cove either between this last mentioned Island and the Isle Hamote, or Long Island, or between Motuouru and the W shore; in this last Channell are 2 Ledges of Rocks 3 fm under water, but they may be known by the Sea Weed which grows upon them. In sailing in or out of this sound with little wind attention must be had to the Tides, which flow 9 or 10 o'Clock full and Change of the Moon, and rises and falls upon a Perpendicular 7 or 8 feet. The flood comes in through the Strait from the S-E, and sets strong over upon the N-W Head and the reef laying off it; the Ebb sets with great rapidity to the S-E over upon the Islands and Rocks lying off the S-E Head. The Variation of the Compass from good observations we found to be  $13^{\circ} 5'$  E. The land about this Sound is of such height that we first saw it at the distance of 20 lg. It consists wholly of high hills and deep Valleys, well stored with a variety of excellent Timber, fit for all purposes except Ships' Masts, for which use it is too hard and heavy. The Sea abounds with a variety of fish, and in such plenty that, without going out of the Cove where we lay, we caught daily, what with the Sean, Hook, and Lines, quite sufficient for all hands, and upon our first arrival we found plenty of Shags and some few other Wild Fowls, which to people in our situation was fresh food not to be dispised. The Number of Inhabitants hardly exceeds 300 or 400 People. They live dispers'd along the Shore in search of their daily bread, which is fish and firn roots, for they Cultivate no part of the lands. Upon the appearance of danger they Retire to their Hippas or strongholds, for in this situation we found them, and they remain'd so for some days after. This people are poor when compared to many we have seen, and their Canoes are mean and without ornament. The little Traffick we had with them was wholly for fish, for we saw little else they had to dispose of. They had some knowledge of Iron, for they very readily took Nails in Exchange for fish, and sometimes Prefer'd them to anything else, which was more than the people of any other place would do. They were at first fond of Paper, but when they found it spoile by being wet they would not take it; nor did they set much value upon the cloth we got at George's Island, but shew'd an extraordinary fondness for English broad cloth and red Kersey, which shew'd them to be a more sensible People than many of their Neighbours. Besides the common dress, many of these People wore on their Heads round Caps made of Birds' feathers, which were far from being unbecoming.

Wednesday, February 7th 1770 In thepm had a light breeze at N by W, with which we got out of the Sound and stood over to the Eastward, in order to get the Strait well open before the tide of Ebb Made. At 7 the 2 Small Islands which lies off Cape Koamaroo, or the S-E head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, bore E, distant 4 mi. At this time we had it nearly Calm, and the tide of Ebb making out, we were Carried by the Rapidity of the Stream in a very short time close upon one of the Islands, where we narrowly escaped being dashed against the Rocks by bringing the Ship to an Anchor in 75 fm Water, with 150 fm of Cable out. Even this would not have saved us had not the Tide, which first set S by E, by meeting with the Island changed its direction to S-E, and carried us past the first point. When the Ship was brought up she was about 2 Cables' Lengths of the Rocks and in the Strength of the Stream, which set S-E at IE 4 or 5 Knotts or mi per Hour. A little before 12 o'Clock the Tide abated, and we began to heave; by 3 the Anchor was at the bows, and having a light breeze at N-W, we made sail over for the Eastern Shore; but having the tide against us we made but little way. The wind afterwards freshned, and Came to N and N-E, with which and the tide of Ebb we were in a short time hurried thro' the narroW part of the Strait, and then stood away for the Sermost land we had in sight, which bore from us S by W. Over this land appeared a Prodigious high Mountain the Summit of which was covered with snow. The narroW part of the Strait we have passed lies between Cape Koamaroo on Tovy-poinammu and Cape Teerawhitte on Aeheino-mouwe; the

distance from the one to the other I judged to be between 4 and 5 lg. And notwithstanding the strength of the Tides, now that is known, there is no great danger in passing it; in the doing of which I am of opinion that the N-E Shore is the safest to keep upon, for upon that side there appeared no danger, whereas on the other shore there are not only the Islands and Rocks lying off Cape Koamaroo, for I discover'd from the hill from which I had the Second View of the Strait, a Reef of Rocks stretching from these Islands 6 or 7 mi to the Southward, and lay about 2 or 3 mi off from the Shore. I shall not pretend here to assign limits to the length of this Strait; a view of the Chart will best illustrate that. About N 9 lg from Cape Teerawhitte, under the same shore, is a high remarkable Island, that may be distinctly seen from Queen Charlotte Sound, from which it lies N-E by E 1/4 E, distant 6 or 7 lg. I have called it Entry Isle, and was taken Notice of when we first past it on Sunday 14th of last Month. On the E side of Cape Teerawhitte the Land Trends away S-E by E about 8 lg, where it ends in a point, and is the Sermost land on Aeheinomouwe, which I have named Cape Pallisser in Honour of my worthy friend Capt. Pallisser. Lat  $41^{\circ} 34'$ , Lon  $183^{\circ} 58'$ , it bore from us this day at Noon S  $79^{\circ} E$ , distant 12 or 13 lg, being then in the Lat of  $41^{\circ} 27' S$ ; at the same time Cape Koamaroo bore N  $1/2 E$ , distant 7 or 8 lg. The Sermost point of land in sight bore S  $16^{\circ} W$ , and the snowy Mountain S-W being about 3 lg from the shore and abrE of a Deep Bay or inlet called Cloudy bay, in the bottom of which appear'd low land cover'd with tall Trees.

Thursday, February 8th 1770 In thepm had a fresh breeze at N-N-E and Cloudy weather. At 3 o'Clock was abrE of the Sermost point of land set at Noon, which I named Cape Campbell, Lat  $41^{\circ} 42' S$ , Lon  $184^{\circ} 47' W$ , it lies S by W, distant 12 or 13 lg from Cape Koamaroo, and together with Cape Pallisser forms the Southern Entrance of the Straits; the Distance of the one to the other is 13 or 14 lg W by S and E by N. From this Cape we steer'd along Shore S-W by S until 8 o'Clock, when the wind died away; but an Hour after a fresh breeze sprung up at S-W, and we put the Ship right before it. The reason of my doing this was owing to a notion, which some of the Officers had just started, that Aeheinomouwe was not an Island; founding their opinion on a supposition that the land might extend away to the S-E from between Cape Turnagain and Cape Pallisser, there being a space of about 12 or 13 lg which we had not seen. For my own part, I had seen so far into this Sea the first time I discover'd the Strait, together with many other Concurrent testimonies of its being an Island, that no such supposition ever enter'd my thoughts; but being resolved to clear up every doubt that might Arise on so important an Object, I took the opportunity of the Shifting of the Wind to Stand to the Eastward, and accordingly steer'd N-E by E all night. At 9 o'Clockam we were abrE of Cape Pallisser, where we found the Land trend away N-E towards Cape Turnagain, which I reckon'd to be distant from us about 26 lg, but as the weather was hazey so that we could not see above 4 or 5 lg ahead, we Still kept standing to the N-E, with a light breeze at S. At Noon Cape Pallisser bore N  $72^{\circ} W$ , distant 3 lg; our Lat by account is  $41^{\circ} 30' S$ .

Friday, February 9th 1770 Gentle breezes at S and S-S-E, hazey Cloudy weather. In thepm 3 Canoes came off to the Ship, wherein were between 30 and 40 of the Natives, who had been pulling after us sometime. It appeared from the behaviour of these people that they had heard of our being upon the Coast, for they came alongside, and some of them on board the Ship, without shewing the IE signs of fear. They were no sooner on board than they asked for Nails, but when Nails was given them they asked Tupia what they were, which was plain that they had never seen any before; yet they not only knowed how to ask for them, but know'd what use to make of them, and therefore must have heard of Nails, which they call Whow, the name of a Tool among them made generally of bone, which they use as a Chisel in making Holes, etc. These people asking so readily for Nails proves that their connections must extend as far

N as Cape Kidnapper, which is 45 lg, for that was the Sermost place on this side the coast we had any Traffick with the Natives; and it is most probable that the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's sound got the little knowledge they seem'd to have of Iron by the Connections they may have with the Teerawhitteans bordering upon them; for we have no reason to think that the inhabitants of any part of this land had the IE knowledge of Iron before we came amongst them. After a short stay these people were dismissed with proper presents, and we continued our Course along shore to the N-E until 11 o'Clockam, when the weather clear'd up, and we saw Cape Turnagain bearing N by E 1/4 E, distant 7 lg. I then called the Officers upon deck, and asked them if they were now satisfied that this land was an Island; to which they answer'd in the Affirmative, and we hauled our wind to the Eastward. At Noon our Lat by observation was 40° 55' S, which is 21 mi to the Southward of Cape Turnagain, it bearing N by E, and Cape Pallisser by this day's run bears S 43° W, 19 or 20 lg.

Saturday, February 10th 1770 Gentle breezes at S-E and Cloudy weather. At 4pm Tack'd and stood S-W until 8am, when being not above 3 or 4 mi from the Shore we Tack'd, and stood off 2 hours, and then stood again to the S-W until noon, when being in the Lat of 41° 13' S, and about 2 mi from the Shore, the land of Cape Pallisser bearing S 53° W, had 26 fm of water.

Sunday, February 11th 1770pm had light breeze from the S-E. In the night it was Calm until 9am, when a Gentle breeze sprung up at E-N-E, with which we made sail to the Southward, having a large swell rolling in from that Quarter. At Noon was in the Lat of 41° 6' S, distant from the Shore 1 1/2 lg; a remarkable hillock, which stands close to the Sea, bore N 1/2 E, distance 4 lg. At this time 2 Canoes came alongside the Ship, with whom we had some little Traffic, and then dismissed them.

Monday, February 12th 1770 Most part ofpm had a fresh breeze at N-E, which by sunset carried us the length of Cape Pallisser, and as the weather was clear I had an opportunity of Viewing the land of this Cape, which is of a height Sufficient to be seen in clear weather 12 or 14 lg, and is of a broken and hilly surface. Between the foot of the high land and the Sea is a border of low, flat land, off which lies some rocks, that appear above water. Between this Cape and Cape Turnagain the land near the shore is in many places low and flatt, and appear'd green and pleasant; but inland are many Hills. From Cape Pallisser to Cape Teerawhitte the land is tollerable high, making in Table-points, and the Shore forms 2 Bays; at IE it appear'd so, for we were always too far off this part of the Coast to be particular. The wind continued at N-E until 12 at Night, when it died away, and veer'd round to the W, and afterwards to S and S-S-E little wind, so that by noon we had advanced no farther than 41° 52' S Lat. Cape Pallisser bearing N, distant 5 lg, and the Snowy mountain bore S 83° W.

Tuesday, February 13th 1770pm light Airs at S-E, the remainder Calm. At Noon found ourselves in the Lat of 42° 2' S, Cape Pallisser bearing N 20° E, distant 8 lg.

Wednesday, February 14th 1770pm a fresh breeze sprung up at N-E, and we Steer'd S-W by W for the Sermost land we had in sight, which bore from us at sunset S 74° W. At this time we found the Variation to be 15° 4' E. At 8am it fell Calm; at this time we had run 21 lg S 58° W since Yesterday at noon, which brought us abrE of the high Snowy mountain, it bearing from us N-W in this direction. It lay behind a Mountainous ridge of nearly the same height, which riseth directly from the Sea, and runs Parrallel with the Shore, which lies N-E 1/2 N and S-W 1/2 S. The N-E end of the ridge takes its rise but a little way inland from Cape Campbell. These mountains are distinctly seen both from Cape Koamaroo and Cape Pallisser, being

distant from the former S-W 1/2 S 22 lg, and from the Latter W-S-W 30 lg: but they are of a height sufficient to be seen at a much greater distance. By some on board they are thought to be much higher than the Peak of Teneriffe, which I cannot agree to; neither do I think them so high as Mount Egmont, on the S-W Coast of Aeheinomouwe, founding my opinion on the summit of the Latter being almost wholly covered with Snow, whereas it only lies upon these in patches. At noon was in the Lat of 42° 34' S; the Sermost land we had in sight bore S-W 1/2 W, and some low land that made like an Island lying close under the foot of the Ridge N-W by N, distant about 5 or 6 lg.

Thursday, February 15th 1770 In thepm 4 Double Canoes, in which were 57 Men, came off to the Ship; they kept at the distance of about a Stone's throw from us, and would not be prevailed upon to put alongside by all that Tupia could say to them. From this we concluded that they never had heard of our being upon the coast. At 8pm a breeze sprung up at S-S-W, with which we Stretched off S-E, because some on board thought they saw land in that Quarter. We continued on this course until 6am, at which time we had run 11 lg, but saw no land but that which we had left. Soon after this it fell calm, and continued so for an hour; then a light breeze sprung up at W, which afterwards veer'd to the N, and we stood to the Westward. At Noon our Lat by Observation was 42° 56' S, and the High Land we were abrE of yesterday at Noon, N-N-W 1/2 W.

Friday, February 16th 1770 In thepm had a light breeze N-E, with which we steer'd W, edging in for the land, which was distant from us about 8 lg. At 7 o'Clock the Sermost Extream of the land in sight bore W-S-W, being about 6 lg from the Shore; soon after this it fell Calm, and continued so most part of the night, with sometimes light Airs from the land. At daylight we discover'd land bearing S by W, and seemingly detached from the Coast we were upon; at 8 o'Clock a breeze sprung up at N by E, and we steer'd directly for it. At Noon was in the Lat of 43° 19' S; the Peak on the Snowy Mountains bore N 20° E, distant 27 lg; the Southern Extremity we could see of that land bore W, and the land discover'd in the morning, making like an Island, extending from S-S-W to S-W by W 1/2 W, distant about 8 lg; our Course and distance sail'd since yesterday at Noon S-W by W, 43 mi; Variation by this Morning's Amplitude 14° 39' E.

Saturday, February 17th 1770pm stood to the Southward for the land above mention'd, with the wind at N, a fresh breeze and Clear weather. At 8 o'Clock we had run 11 lg since Noon, when the land extended from S-W by W to N by W, being distant from the nearest shore about 3 or 4 lg; in this situation had 50 fm, a fine sandy bottom. Soon after this it fell Calm, and continued so until 6am, when a light breeze sprung up at N-W, which afterwards veer'd to N-E. At sun rise, being very Clear, we plainly discover'd that the last mentioned land was an Island by seeing part of the Land of Tovy-poenammu open to the Westward of it, extending as far as W by S. At 8 o'Clock the Extrems of the Island bore N 76° W and N-N-E 1/2 E, and an opening that had the Appearance of a Bay or Harbour, lying near the S point N 20° W, distant 3 or 4 lg, being in 38 fm, a brown Sandy bottom. This Island, which I have named after Mr. Banks, lies about 5 lg from the Coast of Tovy poenammu; the S point bears S 21° W from the higher peak on the Snowy Mountain so often mention'd, and lies in the Lat of 43° 52' S and in the Lon of 186° 30' W, by observations made of the Sun and Moon this morning. It is of a circular figure, and may be about 24 lg in Compass; the land is of a height sufficient to be seen 12 or 15 lg, and of a very broken, uneven Surface, and hath more the appearance of barrenness than fertility. Last night we saw smoke up it, and this morning some people, and therefore must be inhabited. Yesterday Lieutenant Gore, having the Morning Watch at the time

we first saw this Island, thought he saw land bearing S-S-E and S-E by E; but I, who was upon Deck at the same time, was very Certain that it was only Clouds, which dissipated as the Sun rose. But neither this, nor the running 14 lg to the S, nor the seeing no land to the Eastward of us in the Evening, could Satisfy Mr. Gore but what he saw in the morning was, or might be, land; altho' there was hardly a possibility of its being so, because we must have been more than double the distance from it at that time to what we were either last night or this morning, at both of which times the weather was Exceeding Clear, and yet we could see no land either to the Eastward or Southward of us. Notwithstanding all this, Mr. Gore was of the same opinion this morning; upon this I order'd the Ship to be wore, and to be steer'd E-S-E by Compass on the other Tack, the point on which he said the land bore at this time from us. At Noon we were in the Lat of  $44^{\circ} 7' S$ ; the S point of Banks Island bore N, distant 5 lg.

Sunday, February 18th 1770 Gentle breezes at N and fair weather. pm stood E-S-E in search of Mr. Gore's imaginary land until 7 o'clock, at which time we had run 28 mi since Noon; but seeing no land but that we had left, or signs of any, we bore away S by W, and continued upon that Course until Noon, when we found ourselves in the Lat of  $45^{\circ} 16' S$ . Our Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday is S  $8^{\circ} E$ , 70 mi; the S point of Banks Island N  $6^{\circ} 30' W$ , distant 28 lg; Variation per Amplitude this Morning  $15^{\circ} 30'$ . Seeing no signs of Land, I thought it to no purpose standing any farther to the Southward, and therefore hauled to the Westward, thinking we were far enough to the Southward to weather all the land we had left; but this opinion was only founded on the information we had had from the Natives of Queen Charlotte's sound.

Monday, February 19th 1770 pm had a Moderate breeze at N-N-W and N until 8 o'clock, when it fell little wind, and was very unsettled until 10, at which time it fix'd at S, and freshen'd in such a manner that before the morning it brought us under our close reefed Topsails. At 8am having run 28 lg upon a W by N  $1/2 N$  Course, and now judging ourselves to be to the Westward of the Land of Tovy Poenammu, we bore away N-W with a fresh Gale at S. At 10 o'clock, having run 11 mi upon this Course, we saw land extending from the S-W to the N-W at the distance of about 10 lg from us, which we hauled up for. At Noon our Lat per observation was  $44^{\circ} 38' S$ ; the S-E point of Banks Island bore N  $59^{\circ} 30' E$ , distant 30 lg, and the Main body of the land in sight W by N. Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon is N  $66^{\circ} 45' W$ , 96 mi.

Tuesday, February 20th 1770 Allpm had little wind, which veer'd round from S by E to N-N-E. Steer'd S-S-W, but got very little to the Southward on account of a head Sea. At 2 o'Clock sounded in 35 fm, fine sandy Bottom, being about 6 lg from the land. At 7 o'Clock the Extrems of the land extending from S-W by S to N by W, distant from the nearest shore 6 lg, depth of water 32 fm. At 12 o'Clock it fell Calm, and continued so until 4am, when a fresh breeze sprung up at S by W, with which we stood in shore W by S, 4 lg, our Depth of Water from 32 to 13 fm. In this last Depth we Tack'd and Stood off, being about 3 mi from the Shore, which lies nearly N and S, and is here very low and flatt, and continues so up to the skirts of the hills, which are at IE 4 or 5 mi inland. The whole face of the Country appears barren, nor did we see any signs of inhabitants. Lat at Noon  $44^{\circ} 44' S$ ; Lon made from Banks' Island to this land  $2^{\circ} 22' W$ .

Wednesday, February 21st 1770 Wind at S. A fresh Gale at 2pm, being in 50 fm, and 12 lg from the land, we tack'd and stood in Shore until 8 o'Clock, when we Tack'd and Stood off until 4am; then Tack'd and Stood in, at 8 o'Clock being 10 lg from the Land; had 57 fm. At Noon, being in the Lat  $44^{\circ} 35'$ , and 5 or 6 lg from the land, had 36 fm; notwithstanding we have

Carried as much sail as the Ship could bear, it is apparent from the observed Lats that we have been drove 3 lg to leEastward since Yesterday.

Thursday, February 22nd 1770 Moderate breezes between the S-E and S by W, and dark gloomy weather, with a Swell from the S-E plying to windward, keeping between 4 and 12 lg from the land; depth of water from 35 to 53 fm, fine sandy bottom. A great many Sea fowl and Grampusses about the Ship. In theam Condemn'd 60 fm of the B.B. Cable, and converted it into Junk; at Noon had no Observation, but by the land judged ourselves to be about 3 lg farther N than Yesterday.

Friday, February 23rd 1770 Winds S, a Gentle breeze, and for the most part Cloudy weather. At sunset, the weather clearing up, presented to our View a high peaked Mountain bearing N-W by N, and at the same time we saw the Land more Distincter than at any time we had before, extending from N to S-W by S, the inland parts of which appear'd to be high and Mountainous. We cannot tell yet whether or no this land joins to, or makes a part of, the land we have left; from the accounts received from the Natives of Queen Charlotte's sound it ought not, because if it did it must have been impossible for us to have sail'd round it in 4 Days; besides, the Mountains inland and the soundings off the Coast seem to indicate this Country to be more extensive than any they spoke of lying to the Southward. Having a large hollow swell from the S-E, which made me expect the Wind from the same quarter, we kept plying from 7 to 15 lg from the land, depth of Water 44 to 70 fm; at Noon our Lat, by Observation, was  $44^{\circ} 40'$  S; Lon made from Banks's Island 1 degree  $31'$  W.

Saturday, February 24th 1770 Calm until 6pm, at which time a light breeze sprung up at E-N-E, with which we steer'd S-S-E all night, edging off from the Land because of a hollow swell which we had from the S-E; depth of water from 60 to 75 fm. At daylight the wind began to freshen, and before noon blowed a fresh Gale, and veer'd to N-N-E; at 8am Saw the land extending as far as S-W by S, which we steer'd directly for, and at Noon we were in the Lat of  $45^{\circ} 22'$  S; the land in sight extending from S-W  $1/2$  S to N-N-W making high and hilly. Course and distance run since Yesterday at Noon is S  $15^{\circ}$  W, 47 mi. In thepm, while we lay becalm'd, Mr. Banks, in a small Boat, shott 2 Port Egmont Hens, which were in every respect the same sort of Birds as are found in great Numbers upon the Island of Faro; they are of a very dark brown plumage, with a little white about the under side of their wings, and are as large as a Muscovy Duck. These were the first that we have seen since we arrived upon the Coast of this Country, but we saw of them for some days before we made land.

Sunday, February 25th 1770 In thepm Steer'd S-W by S and S-W, edging in for the land, having the Advantage of a fresh Gale at N, which I was over desirous of making the most of, and by that means carried away the Maintop Gallant Mast and Foretopmast Steering Sail Boom; but these were soon replaced by others. Altho' we kept at no great Distance from the Shore, yet the weather was so Hazy that we could see nothing distinct upon the land, only that there were a ridge of Pretty high Hills lying Parrallel with, and but a little way from, the Sea Coast, which lies S by W and N by E, and seem'd to End in a high Bluff point to the Southward, which we run the length of by 8 o'Clock, when, being dark, and not knowing which way the Land Trended, we brought too for the night, having run 15 lg upon a S-W  $1/2$  W Course since Noon. The point bore at this time W, distant about 5 mi, depth of Water 37 fm, the bottom small pebble stones. At 4am we made Sail, but by this time the N wind was gone, and was succeeded by one from the Southward, which proved very Var'ble and unsteady. At day light the point above mention'd bore N, distant 3 lg, and we found that the land trended away from it

S-W by W, as far as we could see. This point of land I have Named Cape Saunders, in Honour of Sir Charles (Lat  $45^{\circ} 55' S$ ; Lon  $189^{\circ} 4' W$ ). It requires no discription to know it by, the Lat and the Angle made here by the Coast will be found quite sufficient; however, there is a remarkable saddle hill laying near the Shore, 3 or 4 lg S-W of the Cape. From 1 to 4 lg N of the Cape the Shore seem'd to form 2 or 3 Bays, wherein there appear'd to be Anchorage and Shelter from S-W, W, and N-W winds. I had some thoughts of bearing up for one of these places in the morning when the Wind came to S-W, but the fear of loosing time and the desire I had of pushing to the Southward, in order to see as much of the Coast as possible, or, if this land should prove to be an Island, to get round it, prevented me. Being not far from the Shore all this morning, we had an Opportunity of Viewing the Land pretty distinctly; it is of a Moderate height, full of Hills, which appear'd green and Woody, but we saw not the IE signs of inhabitants. At Noon Cape Saunders bore N  $30^{\circ} W$ , distant 4 lg. Lat per Log, for we had no Observation,  $46^{\circ} 0' S$ .

Monday, February 26th 1770 In thepm had the wind Whifling all round the Compass, sometimes blowing a fresh Gale, and at other times almost Calm. At 5 o'Clock it fixed at W-S-W, and soon blow'd so hard as to put us past our Topsails, and to split the foresail all to pieces. After getting another to the Yard, we continued standing to the Southward under 2 Courses. At 1am the wind Moderating, set the Topsails with one Reef out; but soon after day light the Gale increased to a Storm, with heavy Squalls, attended with rain. This brought us again under our Courses, and the Main Topsail being Split we unbent it and bent another. At 6 o'Clock the Sermost land in sight bore W by N, and Cape Saunders bore N by W, distant 8 lg; at Noon it bore N  $20' W$ , distant 14 lg. Lat observed  $46^{\circ} 35'$ .

Tuesday, February 27th 1770 A very hard gale at S-W by W, and W-S-W, with heavy squalls attended with Showers of rain, and a large hollow sea, without the IE intermission the whole of this 24 Hours. We continued under our Courses from Noon until 7pm, when we handed the Mainsail, and lay too under the Foresail with the head to the Southward. Lat at Noon  $46^{\circ} 54'$ ; Lon made from Cape Saunders 1 degree  $24' E$ .

Wednesday, February 28th 1770 Strong Gale at S-W, with a large Sea from the Same quarter. At 7pm made sail under the Courses; at 8am set the Topsails close reefed. At Noon, being in the Lat of  $47^{\circ} 43' S$ , and Lon E from Cape Saunders  $2^{\circ} 10'$ , wore and stood to the Northward.

Thursday, March 1st 1770 Winds between the S-W and N-N-W, a fresh gale. In thepm found the Variation to be  $16^{\circ} 34' E$ . At 8 Tack'd and Stood to the Southward, with the wind at W, which before the morning veer'd to N-W, accompanied with hazey weather and drizzling rain; at day light loosed a reef out of Each Topsail, and set some of the small sails. At Noon our Lat by account was  $47^{\circ} 52' S$ , and Lon made from Cape Saunders 1 degree  $8' E$ .

Friday, March 2nd 1770 Strong Gales from the W, with heavy Squalls, attended with showers of rain. In thepm Stood to the Southward till half-past 3, when being in the Lat  $48^{\circ} 0' S$  and Lon  $188^{\circ} 00' W$ , and seeing no Visible signs of Land, we Tack'd and Stood to the Northward, having a very large swell from the S-W by W. Soon after we tack'd we close reef'd the Topsails, and in the night were obliged to hand them, but at day light set them again. At Noon our Lat by Observation was  $46^{\circ} 42' S$ , Cape Saunders bearing N  $46^{\circ} W$ , distant 68 mi.



Saturday, March 3rd 1770pm Wind and weather as Yesterday.am quite Moderate, yet the S-W swell continues, which makes me conjecture that there is no land near in that quarter. At Noon our Lat was  $46^{\circ} 42'$  S, being E of Cape Saunders 1 degree  $30'$ .

Sunday, March 4th 1770 At 4pm the Wind coming to the Northward we stood to the Westward with all the sail we could make. In the morning got up Topgallant yards, and set the sails; found the Variation to be  $16^{\circ} 16'$  E. Saw several Whales, Seals, and one Penguin; this bird was but Small of the sort, but seem'd to be such a one as we had never seen before. We have seen several Seals since we passed the Straits, but never saw one upon the whole Coast of Aeheinomouwe. We sounded both in the Night and the morning, but found no bottom with 150 fm Line; at Noon we saw Cape Saunders bearing N  $1/2$  W; our Lat by observation was  $46^{\circ} 31'$  S.

Monday, March 5th 1770 Most part ofpm had a fresh breeze at N by E. Half past 1 saw Land bearing W by S, which we steer'd for; before dark we were within 3 or 4 lg of it, and seeing no land farther to the S we were in hopes this would prove the Southern point. At 7 shortned sail, and kept under an easy sail all night, standing to the W-S-W, having the wind at N-W, and N-N-W until 2am, when it fell Calm, and soon after a breeze sprung up at S-E by S, and daylight coming on we made sail. During the whole night we saw a large fire upon the land; a certain sign of its being inhabited. At 7 the Extreame of the land bore from N  $38^{\circ}$  E to W  $6'$  S, being distant from the Shore about 3 lg. The land appear'd of a Moderate height, and not hilly. At  $1/2$  past 10 o'Clock the Wermost land in sight bore W  $1/2$  N, distant 7 lg; at Noon had fresh Gales at S-S-E, and thick hazey weather with rain. Our Lat by account was  $46^{\circ} 50'$  S, and Lon made from Cape Saunders 1 degree  $56'$  W.

Tuesday, March 6th 1770pm Winds at S by E and S-E, and thick hazey weather until 3 o'clock, when it clear'd up, and we saw the land extending from N-E by N to N-W  $1/2$  N, and soon after low land, making like an Island, bearing W  $1/2$  S. Keeping on our Course to the W by S, we in 2 hours' time saw high land over the low, extending to the Southward as far as S-W by S; we could not see this land join to that to the Northward of us, there either being a total seperation, a deep Bay, or low land between them. At 8 o'Clock, being within 3 lg of the low land (which we now took to be an Island), we Tack'd and stood to the Eastward, having the wind at S, which proved very unsettled all night; by which means, and a little bad management, I found the Ship in the morning considerably farther to the Eastward than I expected, and the wind afterwards coming to S-W and W-S-W, so that at noon we found ourselves much about the same place as we were Yesterday, our Lat by observation being  $46^{\circ} 50'$  S, the land extending from N-E by E to W by N  $1/2$  N, the nearest part bearing N, distance 3 lg; the land to the S-W just in sight.

Wednesday, March 7th 1770 Light Airs in the S-W quarter.pm Clear weather, remainder dark and Cloudy. In thepm found the Variation per several Azimuths, and the Amplitude to be  $15^{\circ} 10'$  E, and by the Amplitude in the morning to be  $15^{\circ} 56'$  E. Stood to the S-E until 8am, then tack'd and stood to the N-W; but it soon after fell Calm, and continued so until noon, when by our account we were in the Lat of  $47^{\circ} 6'$  S, and had made 12 mi Eing since Yesterday at Noon.

Thursday, March 8th 1770 Light Airs next to a Calm from S-S-E to N-E, with which we kept Steering to the S-W, but made but little way because of a swell which took us right ahead. At daylightam we saw, or thought we saw, from the Masthead, the land which we have left to the Northward of us joined to that to the S-W of us; and at the same time we imagined we saw the

land extend to the Southward as far as S-S-W; but after steering this Course until noon we discovered our mistake, for there was no land to be seen to the Southward of W, which Course we now steer'd, being by observation in the Lat of  $47^{\circ} 12'$ ; Lon made from Cape Saunders  $2^{\circ} 2' W$ .

Friday, March 9th 1770pm Winds at N, a Gentle breeze and Clear weather. Stood to the Westward until sunset, at which time the Extrems of the land bore from N by E to W, distant about 7 or 8 lg; Depth of Water 55 fm; Variation by the Amplitude  $16^{\circ} 29' E$ . The wind now veer'd to the Westward, and as the weather was fine and Moonlight we kept standing close upon a Wind to the S-W all night. At 4am Sounded, and had 60 fm; at daylight we discover'd under our lee bow Ledges of Rocks, on which the Sea broke very high, extending from S by W to W by S, and not above  $3/4$  of a mile from us; yet upon sounding we had 45 fm, a Rocky bottom. The wind being at N-W we could not weather the Ledge, and as I did not care to run to leEastward, we tackt and made a Trip to the Eastward; but the wind soon after coming to the N enabled us to go clear of all. Our soundings in passing within the Ledge was from 35 to 47 fm, a rocky bottom. This Ledge lies S-E, 6 lg from the Sermost part of the Land, and S-E by S from some remarkable hills which stand near the Shore. These rocks are not the only dangers that lay here, for about 3 lg to the Northward of them is another Ledge of Rocks, laying full 3 lg from the land, whereon the Sea broke very high. As we passed these rocks in the night at no great distance, and discover'd the others close under our Lee at daylight, it is apparent that we had a very fortunate Escape. I have named them the Traps, because they lay as such to catch unwearry Strangers. At Noon our Lat per observation was  $47^{\circ} 26' S$ ; Lon made from Cape Saunders  $3^{\circ} 4' W$ , the land in sight-which has very much the appearance of an Island-extending N-E by N to N-W by W, distant from the Shore about 4 or 5 lg; the Eermost ledge of rocks bore S-S-E, distant  $1 \frac{1}{2}$  lg; and Nermost N-E  $1/2 E$ , 3 lg. This land is of a moderate height, and has a very barren Aspect; not a Tree to be seen upon it, only a few Small Shrubs. There were several white patches, on which the sun's rays reflected very strongly, which I take to be a kind of Marble such as we have seen in many places of this Country, particularly to the Northward.

Saturday, March 10th 1770pm Moderate breezes at N-W by N and N with which we stood close upon a Wind to the Westward. At sunset the Sermost point of land, which I afterwards named S Cape, and which lies in the Lat of  $47^{\circ} 19' S$ , Lon  $192^{\circ} 12' W$  from Greenwich, bore N  $38^{\circ} E$ , distant 4 lg, and the Wermost land in sight bore N  $2^{\circ} E$ . This last was a small Island, lying off the point of the Main. I began now to think that this was the Sermost land, and that we should be able to get round it by the W, for we have had a large hollow swell from the S-W ever since we had the last gale of wind from that Quarter, which makes one think there is no land in that direction. In the Night it began to blow, so that at or before daylight we were brought under our 2 Courses; but at 8am it fell moderate, and we set the Topsails close Reef, and the mizn and mizn Staysail being split, we unbent them and bent others. At Noon, the wind Coming at W, we Tackt and stood to the Northward, having no land in sight; our Lat by observation was  $47^{\circ} 33' S$ , Lon W from the S Cape  $0^{\circ} 59'$ .

Sunday, March 11th 1770 Winds between the W and N-W, a fresh Gale, and Clear weather. Stood away N-N-E close upon a wind without seeing any land until 2am, when we discover'd an Island bearing N-W by N, distant 4 or 5 lg. Two hours after this we saw the Land ahead, upon which we Tackt and stood off until 6 o'Clock; then stood in, in order to take a nearer View of it. At 11, being about 3 lg from the land, and the wind seem'd to incline on Shore, we Tackt and stood off to the Southward. And now we thought that the land to the Southward, or that we

have been sailing round these 2 days past, was an Island, because there appeared an Open Channell between the N part of that land and the S part of the other in which we thought we saw the Small Island we were in with the 6th Instant; but when I came to lay this land down upon paper from the several bearings I had taken, it appeared that there was but little reason to suppose it an Island. On the contrary, I hardly have a doubt but what it joins to, and makes a part of, the Mainland, the Western extremity of which bore at Noon N 59° W, and the Island seen in the Morning S 59° W, distant 5 lg. Lat observed 46° 24' S, Lon 192° 49' W. It is nothing but a barren rock of about a mile in Circuit, remarkably high, and lies full 5 lg from the Main. The shore of the Main lies nearest E by S and W by N, and forms a large open bay, in which there is no appearance of a Harbour or other place of safety for shipping against S-W and S winds. The face of the Country bears a very rugged Aspect, being full of high craggy hills, on the Summits of which were several patches of Snow. However, the land is not wholly barren; we could see wood, not only in the Valleys, but on several of the Hills; but we saw no signs of inhabitants.

Monday, March 12th 1770 Fresh Gales between the W and N-W; latter part squally, with rain. Stood to the S-W by S until 11am, at which time the wind shifted to the S-W by W. We wore, and stood to the N-N-W, being then in the Lat of 47° 40' S, and Lon 193° 50' W, having a Hollow Sea from the S-W.

Tuesday, March 13th 1770 Strong Gale between the S-W by W and S-S-W, with a large Hollow sea from the same Quarter. In thepm had frequent Squalls, with Showers of rain; in the night had several very heavy squalls, attended with Showers of Hail, which obliged us to take in our Topsails. During the night steer'd N-N-W until 6am, when, seeing no land, we steer'd N by E, and set the Main Topsail, single reef. At 8 set the Foretopsail, single reef, and loosed all the Reefs out of the Maintopsail, and Steer'd N-E by E 1/2 E in order to make the land. At 10 saw it bearing E-N-E, and appeared to be very high; but, being hazey over it, we could see nothing distinct neither now nor at Noon, when, by Observation, we were in the Lat of 46° 0' S. Course and distance Sailed since Yesterday N 5° W, 96 mi. Lon made from the S Cape 1 degree 40' W.

Wednesday, March 14th 1770 In thepm had a fresh Gale from the Southward, attended with Squalls. At 2 it Clear'd up over the land, which appeared high and Mountainous. At 1/2 past 3 double reefed the Topsails, and hauld in for a Bay, wherein their appear'd to be good Anchorage, and into which I had thought of going with the Ship; but after standing in an hour, we found the distance too great to run before dark, and it blow'd too hard to attempt it in the night, or even to keep to Windward; for these reasons we gave it up, and bore away along shore. This bay I have named Dusky Bay. It lies in the Lat of 45° 47' S; it is about 3 or 4 mi broad at the Entrance, and seems to be full as deep. In it are several Islands, behind which there must be Shelter from all winds, provided there is a Sufficient Depth of Water. The N point of this bay, when it bears S-E by S, is very remarkable, there being off it 5 high peaked rocks, standing up like the 4 fingers and thumb of a Man's hand; on which account I have named it Point Five Fingers. The land of this point is farther remarkable by being the only Level land near it, and extends near 2 lg to the Northward. It is pretty high, wholly cover'd with wood, and hath very much the Appearance of an Island, by its aspect being so very different from the Land behind it, which is nothing but barren rocky Mountains. At Sunset the Sermost Land in sight bore due S, distant 5 or 6 lg; and as this is the Wermost point of land upon the whole Coast I have called it W Cape. It lies about 3 lg to the Southward of the bay above-mentioned, in the Lat of 45° 54' S, and Lon 193° 17' W. The land of this Cape seems to be of a moderate

height next the Sea, and hath Nothing remarkable about it that we could see, Except a very White Clift 2 or 3 lg to the Southward of it. The land to the Southward of Cape W trends away towards the S-E; to the Northward of it it Trends N-N-E and N-E. At 7 o'Clock brought the Ship too under the Foresail, with her head off Shore, having a fresh Gale at S by E. At midnight it moderated, and we wore and lay her head in shore until 4am; then made Sail, and Steer'd along shore N-E 1/2 N, having a moderate breeze at S-S-E. At Noon we were by observation in the Lat  $45^{\circ} 13' S$ ; Course and distance sailed since Yesterday N  $41^{\circ} E$ , 62 mi; Lon made from Cape W  $0^{\circ} 29' E$ , being at this time about 1 1/2 lg from Shore. Sounded, and had no ground with 70 fm Line. A little before Noon we passed a little Narrow opening in the land, where there appear'd to be a very Snug Harbour, form'd by an Island, in the Lat of  $45^{\circ} 16' S$ ; inland, behind this Opening, were Mountains, the summits of which were Cover'd with Snow that seem'd to have fallen lately, and this is not to be wondered at, for we have found it very cold for these 2 days past. The land on each side the Entrance of this Harbour riseth almost perpendicular from the Sea to a very considerable Height; and this was the reason why I did not attempt to go in with the Ship, because I saw clearly that no winds could blow there but what was right in or right out, that is, W or E; and it certainly would have been highly imprudent in me to have put into a place where we could not have got out but with a wind that we have lately found to blow but one day in a Month. I mention this because there was some on board that wanted me to harbour at any rate, without in the IE Considering either the present or future Consequences.

Thursday, March 15th 1770 Clear weather, Winds at S-W and S-W by S, a Gentle breeze, except in the night, when we had variable light Airs and Calm. In the evening, being about 2 lg from the land, we sounded, but had no ground with 103 fm. Variation per Azimuth  $14^{\circ} E$ , per Amplitude  $15^{\circ} 2' E$ . With what wind we had we made the best of our way along shore to the N-E, keeping at the distance of 2 or 3 lg off from the Land. At Noon we were in the Lat of  $44^{\circ} 47'$ , having run only 12 lg upon a N-E 1/4 N Course since Yesterday at Noon; Lon made from Cape W 1 degree 3' E.

Friday, March 16th 1770 Winds at S-W; a fresh breeze and Clear. Steer'd along shore N-E 1/4 E until 6pm, when we Shortned Sail, and brought too for the Night. Variation per Azimuth  $13^{\circ} 48' E$ . At 4am made sail, and Stood in for the land. At daylight saw the appearance of an inlet into the land; but upon a nearer approach found that it was only a deep Valley, bounded on each side by high lands, upon which we bore away N-E 1/4 E along shore, keeping about 4 or 5 mi off. At Noon the Nermost point of land in sight bore N  $60^{\circ} E$ , distant 10 mi; Lat per Observation  $44^{\circ} 5'$ ; Lon made from Cape W  $2^{\circ} 8' E$ .

Saturday, March 17th 1770 Continued our Course along shore, having in thepm the advantage of a fresh Gale at S-W. At 2, past by the point afore-mentioned, which is of a Moderate height, with deep Red Clifts, down which falls 4 Small streams of Water, on which account it is named Cascades Point. Lat  $44^{\circ} 0' S$ ; Lon  $2^{\circ} 20' E$  from Cape W. From this point the land at first Trends N  $76^{\circ} E$ , but afterwards more to the Northward E-N-E, 8 lg. From this point and near the Shore lies a small low Island, which bore from us S by E, distant 1 1/2 lg. At 7 o'Clock we Shortned sail, and brought too under the Topsails, with her head off Shore, having 33 fm, and fine sandy bottom. At 10, had 50 fm, and at 12, wore in 65 fm, having drove about 5 mi N-N-W since we brought too. Two hours after this had no ground with 140 fm; which shews that the soundings extend but a little way from the land. From 2 to 8am had it Calm and hazey, with drizzling rain, at which time a breeze sprung up at S-W, with which we steer'd along shore N-E

by E 1/4 E, keeping about 3 lg from the land. At Noon had no Observation, being Hazy with rain. Our run since Yesterday at Noon is N-E by E, 55 mi; Lon from Cape W 3° 12' E.

Sunday, March 18th 1770 In thepm had a fresh breeze at S-W by W, attended with drizzling rain. At 8, being about 3 lg from the land, shortned sail, and brought too, having run 10 lg N-E by E since noon; at this time had 44 fm, and 2 hours before had 17 fm, fine sandy bottom, being then about 1 League from the land. Had it Calm the most part of the Night, and until 10am, when a light breeze sprung up at S-W by W. We Made sail along shore N-E by N, having a large swell from the W-S-W, which had risen in the Night. At Noon Lat in per Observation 43° 4' S; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday is N 54° E, 54 mi; Lon made from Cape W 4° 12' E. The Mountains and some of the Vallies we observed this morning were wholly cover'd with Snow, part of which we suppos'd to have fallen in thepm and fore part of the Night, at the time that we had rain-and yet the weather is not Cold.

Monday, March 19th 1770 In thepm had a fresh breeze at S-W by W and W-S-W, which we made the most of until 6, when we shortned sail, and at 10 brought too, and sounded 115 fm, judging ourselves to be about 5 lg from the land. At midnight it fell little wind, on which account we made sail. At 8am the wind veer'd to the N-W by N, with which we stood to the N-E close upon a wind until noon, at which time we Tack'd, being about 3 lg from the land, and by Observation in the Lat of 42° 8' and Lon from Cape W 5° 5' E Course and distance run since Yesterday at Noon N 35° E, 68 mi; Depth of Water 65 fm, the land extending from N-E by N to S-S-W.

Tuesday, March 20th 1770 Fresh Gales at N-W by N and N by W.pm fair weather; the remainder hazy, with rain, and Squall, which brought us under close Reeft Topsails. Stood to the Westward until 2am, when we made a Trip to the Eastward, and afterwards stood to the Westward until Noon, when, by our reckoning, we were in the Lat of 42° 23' S. Course and distance sail'd S 74° W, 54 mi; Lon made from Cape W 5° 55' E. Tack'd and stood to the Eastward.

Wednesday, March 21st 1770 In thepm had a fresh Gale at N by W, attended with rain until 6, when the Wind shifted to S and S-S-W, and continued to blow a fresh Gale, with which we steer'd N-E by N until 6am, at which time we haul'd in E by N in order to make the land which we saw soon after. At Noon our Lat per Account was 41° 37', and Lon from Cape W 5° 42' E; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday N 60° E, 92 mi. At this time we were not above 3 or 4 lg from the land, but being very foggy upon it we could see nothing distinct, and as we had not much wind, and a prodigious swell rowling in upon the Shore from the W-S-W, I did not think it safe to go nearer.

Thursday, March 22nd 1770 In thepm had a Gentle breeze from the S-S-W, with which we steer'd along shore N-E until 8, when being about 2 or 3 lg from shore we sounded, and had 34 fm, upon which we haul'd off N-W by N until 11, then brought too, having at this time 64 fm. At 4am made sail to the N-E, wind at S-S-W, a light breeze. At 8 the wind veer'd to the Westward, and soon after fell Calm; at this time we were about 3 or 4 mi from the Shore, and in 54 fm, having a large swell from the W-S-W rowling Obliquely upon the Shore, which put me under a good deal of Apprehension that we should be obliged to Anchor; but by the help of a light Air now and then from the S-W quarter we were Enabled to keep the Ship from driving much nearer the shore. At Noon the Nermost land in sight bore N-E by E 1/4 E, distant 8 or 10

lg; our Lat by account was 40° 55' S, Lon from Cape W 6° 35' E; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon N 36° E, 42 mi; very foggy over the Land.

Friday, March 23rd 1770 Light Airs from the Southward, at intervals Calm, the fore part hazey, the remainder clear, pleasant weather. At Noon our Lat, by observation, 40° 36' 30 seconds S, Lon from Cape W 6° 52' E; the Eermost point of Land in sight bore E 10° N, distant 7 lg, and a bluff head or point we were abrE of yesterday at Noon, off which lay some rocks above Water, bore S 18° W, distant 6 lg. This point I have named Rocks Point, Lat 40° 55' S. Having now nearly run down the whole of this N-W Coast of Tovy Poenammu, it is time I should describe the face of the Country as it hath at different times appeared to us. I have mentioned on the 11th Instant, at which time we were off the Southern part of the Island, that the land seen then was rugged and mountainous; and there is great reason to believe that the same ridge of Mountains extends nearly the whole length of the Island from between the Wermost Land seen that day and the Eermost seen on the 13th. There is a space of about 6 or 8 lg of the sea Coast unexplored, but the Mountains inland were Visible enough. The land near the Shore about Cape W is rather low, and riseth with a gradual assent up to the foot of the Mountains, and appear'd to be mostly covered with wood. From Point Five Fingers down to the Lat of 44° 20' there is a narrow ridge of Hills rising directly from the Sea, which are Cloathed with wood; close behind these hills lies the ridge of Mountains, which are of a Prodidgious height, and appear to consist of nothing but barren rocks, covered in many places with large patches of Snow, which perhaps have lain there since the Creation. No country upon Earth can appear with a more rugged and barren Aspect than this doth; from the Sea for as far inland as the Eye can reach nothing is to be seen but the Summits of these rocky Mountains, which seem to lay so near one another as not to admit any Vallies between them. From the Lat of 44° 20' to the Lat 42° 8' these mountains lay farther inland; the Country between them and the Sea consists of woody Hills and Vallies of Various extent, both for height and Depth, and hath much the Appearance of Fertility. Many of the Vallies are large, low, and flatt, and appeared to be wholly covered with Wood; but it is very probable that great part of the land is taken up in Lakes, Ponds, etc., as is very common in such like places. From the last mentioned Lat to Cape Farewell, afterwards so Called, the land is not distinguished by anything remarkable; it rises into hills directly from the Sea, and is covered with wood. While we were upon this part of the Coast the weather was foggy, in so much that we could see but a very little way inland; however, we sometimes saw the Summits of the Mountains above the fogg and Clouds, which plainly shew'd that the inland parts were high and Mountainous, and gave me great reason to think that there is a Continued Chain of Mountains from the one End of the Island to the other.

Saturday, March 24th 1770 In thepm had a Gentle breeze at S-W, which by Dark run us the length of the Eastern Point set at Noon, and not knowing what Course the land took on the other side, we brought too in 34 fm about one League from the land. At 8, it falling little wind, we fill'd and stood on until 12, at which time we brought too until 4am, then made Sail. At daylight we saw low land extending from the above point to the E-S-E as far as the Eye could reach, the Eastern Extremity of which appear'd in round Hillocks; by this time the wind had veer'd to the Eastward, which obliged us to ply to windward. At Noon the point above mention'd bore S-W by S, distant 16 mi; Lat observ'd 40° 19' S. This point I afterwards named Cape Farewell, for reasons which will be given in their proper place.

Sunday, March 25th 1770 Winds E; towards Noon had little winds and hazey, with rain. Made several trips, but gain'd nothing to Windward, so that at Noon our Situation was nearly as Yesterday.

Monday, March 26th 1770 At 3pm the wind came to N, and we Steer'd E-S-E with all the Sail we could set until dark, when we shortned sail until the morning, having thick misty weather. All Night we kept the lead going continually, and had from 37 to 48 fm. At day light we saw the land bearing S-E by E, and an Island laying near it bearing E-S-E, distant 5 lg. This I knew to be the Island seen from the Entrance of Queen Charlotte's sound, from which it bears N-W by N, Distant 9 lg. At Noon it bore S-E, distant 4 or 5 mi, and the N-W head of Queen Charlotte's sound bore S-E by S, distant 10 1/2 lg; Lat ohserv'd 43° 33' S.

Tuesday, March 27th 1770 Fresh breeze of Wind W, and hazey, misty weather, with Drizzling rain. As we have now Circumnavigated the whole of this Country, it is time for me to think of quitting it; but before I do this it will be necessary to compleat our Water first, especially as we have on board above 30 Tons of Casks empty, and knowing that there is a Bay between the above-mentioned Island and Queen Charlotte's sound, wherein no doubt there is Anchorage and convenient Watering places. Accordingly, in thepm we hauled round the Island and into the bay, leaving 3 more Islands on our Starboard hand, which lay close under the W Shore 3 or 4 mi within the Entrance. As we run in we kept the lead going, and had from 40 to 12 fm. At 6 we Anchor'd in 11 fm, Muddy bottom, under the W Shore, in the Second Cove within the fore-mentioned Island. At daylight I took a Boat and went to look for a Watering place, and a proper birth to moor the Ship in, both of which I found convenient enough. After the Ship was moor'd I sent an Officer ashore to Superintend the Watering, and the Carpenter with his Crew to cut wood, while the Long boat was employed carrying on shore Empty Casks.

Wednesday, March 28th 1770 Winds W, which in theam blow'd a fresh Gale, attended with rain. Employ'd getting on board Wood and Water and fishing; in the Latter we were pretty Successfull.

Thursday, March 29th 1770 In thepm had a Strong Gale from the Westward.am Variable light Airs from the Eastward and hazey rainy weather the whole day; which, however, did not prevent us getting on board Wood and Water.

Friday, March 30th 1770 Winds at S-E, a moderate breeze; the first and middle part dark, Hazey weather, with rain; the latter, fair. In theam, as the wind seem'd to be settled at S-E, and having nearly compleated our Water, we warped the Ship out of the Cove in order to have room to get under Sail. Before this was done it was Noon, at which time I went away in the Pinnacle, in order to examine the Bay, and to Explore as much of it as the little time I had would Admit.

Saturday, March 31st 1770 In thepm, after rowing a League and a half or 2 lg up the Bay, I Landed upon a point of Land on the W side, where, from an Eminency, I could see this Western Arm of the Bay run in S-W by W, about 5 lg farther, yet did not see the Head of it. There appeared to be several other inlets, or at IE small bays, between this and the N-W head of Queen Charlotte's sound, in every one of which I make no doubt but what there is Anchorage and Shelter for Shipping, as they are partly cover'd from the Sea wind by these Islands that lay without them. The land about this bay, at IE what I could see of it, is of a very hilly, uneven Surface, and appears to be mostly cover'd with wood, Shrubs, Firns, etc., which renders Travelling both difficult and Fatiguing. I saw no inhabitants, neither have we seen any since we have been in this bay, but met with several of their Huts, all of which appear'd to have been at IE 12 Months deserted.

Upon my return to the Ship, in the Evening, I found the Water, etc., all on board, and the Ship ready for Sea; and being now resolv'd to quit this Country altogether, and to bend my thought towards returning home by such a rout as might Conduce most to the Advantage of the Service I am upon, I consulted with the Officers upon the most Eligible way of putting this in Execution. To return by the way of Cape Horn was what I most wished, because by this rout we should have been able to prove the Existance or Non-Existance of a Southern Continent, which yet remains Doubtfull; but in order to Ascertain this we must have kept in a higher Lat in the very Depth of Winter, but the Condition of the Ship, in every respect, was not thought sufficient for such an undertaking. For the same reason the thoughts of proceeding directly to the Cape of Good Hope was laid aside, especially as no discovery of any Moment could be hoped for in that rout. It was therefore resolved to return by way of the E Indies by the following rout: upon Leaving this Coast to steer to the Westward until we fall in with the E Coast of New Holland, and then to follow the direction of that Coast to the Northward, or what other direction it might take us, until we arrive at its Northern extremity; and if this should be found impracticable, then to Endeavour to fall in with the Land or Islands discovered by Quiros.

With this view, at daylight we got under Sail and put to Sea, having the Advantage of a fresh Gale at S-E and Clear weather. At Noon the Island, which lies off the N-W point of the Bay, bore E 9° S, distant 10 mi; our Lat, by Observation, was 40° 35' S. This bay I have named Admiralty Bay; the N-W point Cape Stephens, and the E Point Jackson, after the 2 Secretaries. It may always be known by the Island above mentioned, which is pretty high, and lies N-E, 2 mi from Cape Stephens; Lat 40° 37' S; Lon 185° 6' W. Between this Island and Cape Farewell, which is W by N and E by S, distant 14 or 15 lg from each other, the Shore forms a large deep Bay, the bottom of which we could hardly see in sailing in a Strait line from the one Cape to the other; but it is not at all improbable but what it is all lowland next the Sea, as we have met with less water here than on any other part of the Coast at the same distance from Land; however, a Bay there is, and is known on the Chart by the Name of Blind Bay, but I have reason to believe it to be Tasman's Murderers' Bay.

Before I quit this land altogether I shall give a short general discription of the Country, its inhabitants, their manners, Customs, etc., in which it is necessary to observe that many things are founded only on Conjecture, for we were too short a time in any one place to learn much of their interior policy, and therefore could only draw conclusions from what we saw at different times.

Part of the E Coast of this Country was first discovered by Abel Tasman in 1642, and by him called New Zeland; he, however, never landed upon it; probably he was discouraged from it by the Natives killing 3 or 4 of his People at the first and only place he Anchor'd at. This country, which before now was thought to be a part of the imaginary Southern Continent, consists of 2 large Islands, divided from each other by a Strait or Passage of 4 or 5 lg broad. They are situated between the Lat of 34 and 48° S, and between the Lon of 181 and 194° W from the Meridian of Greenwich. The situation of few parts of the world are better determin'd than these Islands are, being settled by some hundreds of Observations of the Sun and Moon, and one of the Transit of Mercury made by Mr. Green, who was sent out by the Royal Society to observe the Transit of Venus.

The Nermost of these Islands, as I have before observed, is called by the Natives Aeheinomouwe and the Sermost Tovy Poenammu. The former name, we were well assured, comprehends the whole of the Northern Island; but we were not so well satisfied with the latter



whether it comprehended the whole of the Southern Islands or only a part of it. This last, according to the Natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound, ought to consist of 2 Islands, one of which at IE we were to have sail'd round in a few days; but this was not verify'd by our own Observations. I am inclinable to think that they know'd no more of this land than what came within the Limits of their sight. The Chart which I have drawn will best point out the figure and Extent of these Islands, the situation of the Bays and Harbours they contain, and the lesser Islands lay about them.

And now I have mentioned the Chart, I shall point out such places as are drawn with sufficient accuracy to be depended upon and such as are not, beginning at Cape Pallisser and proceed round Aeheinomouwe by the E Cape, etc. The Coast between these 2 Capes I believe to be laid down pretty accurate, both in its figure and the Course and distance from point to point; the opportunities I had and the methods I made use on to obtain these requisites were such as could hardly admit of an Error. From the E Cape to Cape Maria Van Diemen, altho' it cannot be perfectly true, yet it is without any very Material error; some few places, however, must be excepted, and these are very Doubtfull, and are not only here, but in every other part of the Chart pointed out by a Pricked or broken line. From Cape Maria Van Diemen up as high as the Lat of  $36^{\circ} 15'$  we seldom were nearer the Shore than from 5 to 8 lg, and therefore the line of the Sea Coast may in some places be erroneous. From the above Lat to nearly the Length of Entry Island we run along and near the shore all the way, and no circumstance occur'd that made me liable to commit any Material error. Excepting Cape Teerawhitte, we never came near the Shore between Entry Island and Cape Pallisser, and therefore this part of the coast may be found to differ something from the truth; in Short, I believe that this Island will never be found to differ Materially from the figure I have given it, and that the Coast Affords few or no Harbours but what are either taken notice of in this Journal, or in some Measure pointed out in the Chart; but I cannot say so much for Tovy Poenammu. The Season of the Year and Circumstance of the Voyage would not permit me to spend so much time about this Island as I had done at the other, and the blowing weather we frequently met with made it both dangerous and difficult to keep upon the Coast. However, I shall point out the places that may be Erroneous in this as I have done in the other. From Queen Charlotte's sound to Cape Campbell, and as far to the S-W as the Lat  $43^{\circ}$ , will be found to be pretty Accurate; between this Lat and the Lat  $44^{\circ} 20'$  the coast is very Doubtfully laid down, a part of which we hardly, if at all, saw. From this last mentioned Lat to Cape Saunders we were generally at too great a distance to be Particular, and the weather at the same time was unfavourable. The Coast, as it is laid down from Cape Saunders to Cape S, and even to Cape W, is no doubt in many places very erroneous, as we hardly were ever able to keep near the Shore, and were sometimes blown off altogether. From the W Cape down to Cape Farewell, and even to Queen Charlotte's sound, will in most places be found to differ not much from the truth.

Mention is likewise made in the Chart of the appearance or aspect of the face of the Country. With respect to Tovy Poenammu, it is for the most part very Mountainous, and to all appearance a barren Country. The people in Queen Charlotte's sound-those that came off to us from under the Snowy Mountain, and the five we saw to the S-W of Cape Saunders-were all the inhabitants, or Signs of inhabitants, we saw upon the whole Island; but most part of the Sea Coast of Aeheinomouwe, except the S-W side, is well inhabited; and although it is a hilly, Mountainous Country, yet the very Hills and Mountains are many of them cover'd with wood, and the Soil of the plains and Valleys appear'd to be very rich and fertile, and such as we had an opportunity to examine we found to be so, and not very much incumber'd with woods.

It was the Opinion of every body on board that all sorts of European grain, fruit, Plants, etc., would thrive here; in short, was this Country settled by an industrious people they would very soon be supplied not only with the necessaries, but many of the Luxuries, of Life. The Sea, Bays, and Rivers abound with a great Variety of Excellent Fish, the most of them unknown in England, besides Lobsters, which were allowed by every one to be the best they ever had eat. Oysters and many other sorts of shell fish all Excellent in their kind. Sea and Water Fowls of all sorts are, however, in no great plenty; those known in Europe are Ducks, Shags, Gannets, and Gulls, all of which were Eat by us, and found exceeding good; indeed, hardly anything came Amiss to us that could be Eat by Man. Land fowl are likewise in no great plenty, and all of them, except Quails, are, I believe, unknown in Europe; these are exactly like those we have in England. The Country is certainly destitute of all sorts of bEs, either wild or tame, except dogs and Rats; the former are tame, and lived with the people, who breed and bring them up for no other purpose than to Eat, and rats are so scarce that not only I, but many others in the Ship, never see one. Altho' we have seen some few Seals, and once a Sea Lion upon this Coast, yet I believe they are not only very scarce, but seldom or ever come ashore; for if they did the Natives would certainly find out some Method of Killing them, the Skins of which they no doubt would preserve for Cloathing, as well as the Skins of Dogs and birds, the only Skins we ever saw among them. But they must sometimes get Whales, because many of the Patta Pattoas are made of the bones of some such fish, and an Ornament they wear at their brE (on which they set great Value), which are supposed to be made of the Tooth of a Whale; and yet we know of no method or instrument they have to kill these Animals.

In the woods are plenty of Excellent Timber, fit for all purposes except Ships' Masts; and perhaps upon a Close Examination some might be found not improper for that purpose. There grows spontaneously everywhere a kind of very broad-bladed grass, like flags of the Nature of Hemp, of which might be made the very best of Cordage and Canvas, etc. There are 2 sorts, one finer than the other; of these the Natives make Cloth, rope, Lines, netts, etc. Iron Ore is undoubtedly to be found here, particularly about Mercury Bays, where we found great quantities of Iron sand; however, we met with no Ore of any Sort, neither did we ever see any sort of Metal with the Natives. We met with some stones at Admiralty Bay that appear'd to be mineral in some degree, but Dr. Solander was of Opinion that they contain'd no Sort of Metal. The white stone we saw near the S Cape and some other parts to the Southward, which I took to be a kind of Marble, such as I had seen on one of the Hills I was upon in Mercury Bay, Mr. Banks-I afterwards found-was of Opinion that they were mineral to the highest degree; he is certainly a much better Judge of these things than I am, and therefore I might be mistaken in my opinion, which was only founded on what I had before seen not only in this Country, but in other parts where I have been; and at the same time I must observe we were not less than 6 or 8 lg from the Land, and nearer it was not possible for us at that time to come without running the Ship into Apparent Danger. However, I am no Judge how far mineral can be distinguished as such; certain it is that in Southern parts of this Country there are whole Mountains of Nothing Else but stone, some of which, no doubt, may be found to contain Metal.

Should it ever become an object of settling this Country, the best place for the first fixing of a Colony would be either in the River Thames or the Bay of Islands; for at either of these places they would have the advantage of a good Harbour, and by means of the former an Easy Communication would be had, and settlements might be extended into the inland parts of the Country. For a very little trouble and Expence small Vessels might be built in the River proper for the Navigation thereof. It is too much for me to assert how little water a Vessel ought to draw to Navigate this River, even so far up as I was in the Boat; this depends intirely upon the

Depth of Water that is upon the bar or flat that lay before the narrow part of the River, which I had not an opportunity of making myself acquainted with, but I am of Opinion that a Vessel that draws not above 10 or 12 feet may do it with Ease. So far as I have been able to Judge of the Genius of these people it does not appear to me to be at all difficult for Strangers to form a settlement in this Country; they seem to be too much divided among themselves to unite in opposing, by which means, and kind and Gentle usage, the Colonists would be able to form strong parties among them.

The Natives of this Country are a Strong, rawboned, well made, Active People, rather above than under the common size, especially the Men; they are of a very dark brown colour, with black hair, thin black beards, and white teeth, and such as do not disfigure their faces by tattowing, etc., have in general very good features. The Men generally were their Hair long, Coomb'd up, and tied upon the Crown of their Heads; some of the women were it long and loose upon their Shoulders, old women especially; others again were it crop'd short. Their coombs are made some of bones, and others of Wood; they sometimes Wear them as an Ornament stuck upright in their Hair. They seem to enjoy a good state of Health, and many of them live to a good old Age. Many of the old and some of the middle aged Men have their faces mark'd or tattow'd with black, and some few we have seen who have had their buttocks, thighs, and other parts of their bodies marked, but this is less common. The figures they mostly use are spirals, drawn and connected together with great nicety and judgement. They are so exact in the application of these Figures that no difference can be found between the one side of the face and the other, if the whole is marked, for some have only one side, and some a little on both sides; hardly any but the old Men have the whole tattow'd. From this I conclude that it takes up some time, perhaps Years, to finish the Operation, which all Who have begun may not have perseverance enough to go through, as the manner in which it must be done must certainly cause intollerable pain, and may be the reason why so few are Marked at all-at IE I know no other. The Women inlay the Colour of Black under the skins of their lips, and both sexes paint their faces and bodies at times more or less with red Oker, mixed with fish Oil.

Their common Cloathing are very much like square Thrumb'd Matts, that are made of rope Yarns, to lay at the doors or passages into houses to clean ones shoes upon. These they tie round their necks, the Thrumb'd side out, and are generally large enough to cover the body as low as the knee; they are made with very little Preparation of the broad Grass plant before mentioned. Beside the Thrumb'd Matts, as I call them, they have other much finer cloathing, made of the same plant after it is bleached and prepared in such a Manner that it is as white and almost as soft as flax, but much stronger. Of this they make pieces of cloth about 5 feet long and 4 broad; these are wove some pieces close and others very open; the former are as stout as the strongest sail cloth, and not unlike it, and yet it is all work'd or made by hand with no other Instrument than a Needle or Bodkin. To one end of every piece is generally work'd a very neat border of different colours of 4 or 6 inches broad, and they very often Trim them with pieces of Dog Skin or birds' feathers. These pieces of Cloth they wear as they do the other, tying one End round their Necks with a piece of string, to one end of which is fixed a Needle or Bodkin made of Bone, by means of which they can easily fasten, or put the string through any part of the Cloth; they sometimes wear pieces of this kind of Cloth round their middles, as well as over their Shoulders. But this is not common, especially with the Men, who hardly ever wear anything round their middles, observing no sort of Decency in that respect; neither is it at all uncommon for them to go quite Naked without any one thing about them besides a belt round their waists, to which is generally fastened a small string, which they tye round the prepuse; in this manner I have seen hundreds of them come off to and on board the Ship, but they

generally had their proper Cloathing in the boat along with them to put on if it rain'd, etc. The Women, on the other hand, always wear something round their middle; generally a short, thumbed Matt, which reaches as low as their Knees. Sometimes, indeed, I have seen them with only a Bunch of grass or plants before, tyed on with a piece of fine platting made of sweet-scented grass; they likewise wear a piece of cloth over their Shoulders as the Men do; this is generally of the Thrum kind. I hardly ever saw a Woman wear a piece of fine cloth. One day at Talago I saw a strong proof that the Women never appear naked, at IE before strangers. Some of us hapned to land upon a small Island where several of them were Naked in the Water, gathering of Lobsters and shell fish; as soon as they saw us some of them hid themselves among the Rocks, and the rest remain'd in the Sea until they had made themselves Aprons of the Sea Weed; and even then, when they came out to us, they shew'd Manifest signs of Shame, and those who had no method of hiding their nakedness would by no means appear before us.

The Women have all very soft Voices, and may by that alone be known from the Men. The Making of cloth and all other Domestick work is, I believe, wholly done by them, and the more Labourious work, such as building Boats, Houses, Tilling the ground, etc., by the Men. Both men and women wear ornaments at their Ears and about their Necks; these are made of stone, bone, Shells, etc., and are variously shaped; and some I have seen wear human Teeth and finger Nails, and I think we were told that they did belong to their deceased friends. The Men, when they are dressed, generally wear 2 or 3 long white feathers stuck upright in their Hair, and at Queen Charlotte's sound many, both men and women, wore Round Caps made of black feathers.

The old men are much respected by the younger, who seem to be govern'd and directed by them on most Occasions. We at first thought that they were united under one head or Chief, whose Name is Teeratu; we first heard of him in Poverty Bay, and he was own'd as Chief by every one we met with from Cape Kidnappers to the Northward and Westward as far as the Bay of Plenty, which is a great extent of territories for an Indian Prince. When we were upon the E Coast they always pointed inland to the Westward for the place of his residence, which I believe to be in the Bay of Plenty, and that those Hippas or fortified Towns are Barrier Towns either for or against him; but most likely the former, and if so, may be the utmost Extent of his Dominions to the Westwards, for at Mercury bay they did not own him as their Prince, nor no where else either to the Westward or Southward, or any other single person; for at whatever place we put in at, or whatever people we spoke with upon the Coast, they generally told us that those that were at a little distance from them were their Enemies; from which it appear'd to me that they were very much divided into Parties, which make war one with another, and all their Actions and behaviour towards us tended to prove that they are a brave, open, war-like people, and void of Treachery.

Whenever we were Visited by any number of them that had never heard or seen anything of us before they generally came off in the largest Canoe they had, some of which will carry 60, 80, or 100 people. They always brought their best Cloaths along with them, which they put on as soon as they came near the Ship. In each Canoe were generally an old Man, in some 2 or 3; these used always to direct the others, were better Cloathed, and generally carried a Halbard or Battle Axe in their hands, or some such like thing that distinguished them from the others. As soon as they came within about a Stone's throw of the Ship they would there lay, and call out, "Haromoi harenta a patoo ago!" that is, "Come here, come ashore with us, and we will kill you with our patoo patoos!" and at the same time would shake them at us. At times they would

dance the War dance, and other times they would trade with and talk to us, and Answer such Questions as were put to them with all the Calmness imaginable, and then again begin the War Dance, shaking their Paddles, Patoo patoos, etc., and make strange contortions at the same time. As soon as they had worked themselves up to a proper pitch they would begin to attack us with Stones and darts, and oblige us, wether we would or no, to fire upon them. Musquetry they never regarded unless they felt the Effect; but great Guns they did, because they threw stones farther than they could Comprehend. After they found that our Arms were so much superior to theirs, and that we took no advantage of that superiority, and a little time given them to reflect upon it, they ever after were our very good friends; and we never had an instance of their attempting to surprize or cut off any of our people when they were ashore; opportunity for so doing they must have had at one time or another.

It is hard to account for what we have every where been told, of their Eating their Enemies killed in Battle, which they most Certainly do; Circumstances enough we have seen to Convince us of the Truth of this. Tupia, who holds this Custom in great aversion, hath very often Argued with them against it, but they have always as strenuously supported it, and never would own that it was wrong. It is reasonable to suppose that men with whom this custom is found, seldom, if ever, give Quarter to those they overcome in battle; and if so, they must fight desperately to the very last. A strong proof of this supposition we had from the People of Queen Charlotte's sound, who told us, but a few days before we Arrived that they had kill'd and Eat a whole boat's crew. Surely a single boat's crew, or at IE a part of them, when they found themselves beset and overpowered by numbers would have surrender'd themselves prisoners was such a thing practised among them. The heads of these unfortunate people they preserved as Trophies; 4 or 5 of them they brought off to shew to us, one of which Mr. Banks bought, or rather forced them to sell, for they parted with it with the utmost reluctancy, and afterwards would not so much as let us see one more for any thing we could offer them.

In the Article of Food these People have no great Variety; Fern roots, Dogs, Fish, and wild fowl is their Chief diet, for Cocos, Yams, and Sweet Potatoes is not Cultivated every where. They dress their Victuals in the same Manner as the people in the S Sea Islands; that is, dogs and Large fish they bake in a hole in the ground, and small fish, birds, and Shell fish, etc., they broil on the fire. Fern roots they likewise heat over the fire, then beat them out flat upon a stone with a wooden Mallet; after this they are fit for Eating, in the doing of which they suck out the Moist and Glutinous part, and Spit out the Fibrous parts. These ferns are much like, if not the same as, the mountain ferns in England.

They catch fish with Seans, Hooks and line, but more commonly with hoped netts very ingeniously made; in the middle of these they tie the bait, such as Sea Ears, fish Gutts, etc., then sink the Nett to the bottom with a stone; after it lays there a little time they haul it Gently up, and hardly ever without fish, and very often a large quantity. All their netts are made of the broad Grass plant before mentioned; generally with no other preparation than by Splitting the blade of the plant into threads. Their fish hooks are made of Crooked pieces of Wood, bones, and Shells.

The people shew great ingenuity and good workmanship in the building and framing their boats or Canoes. They are long and Narrow, and shaped very much like a New England Whale boat. Their large Canoes are, I believe, built wholly for war, and will carry from 40 to 80 or 100 Men with their Arms, etc. I shall give the Dimensions of one which I measured that lay ashore at Tolago. Length 68 1/2 feet, breadth 5 feet, and Depths 3 1/2, the bottom sharp,

inclining to a wedge, and was made of 3 pieces hollow'd out to about 2 Inches or an Inch and a half thick, and well fastned together with strong plating. Each side consisted of one Plank only, which was 63 feet long and 10 or 12 Inches broad, and about 1 1/4 Inch thick, and these were well fitted and lashed to the bottom part. There were a number of Thwarts laid a Cross and Lashed to each Gunwale as a strengthening to the boat. The head Ornament projected 5 or 6 feet without the body of the Boat, and was 4 feet high; the Stern Ornament was 14 feet high, about 2 feet broad, and about 1 1/2 inch thick; it was fixed upon the Stern of the Canoe like the Stern post of a Ship upon her Keel. The Ornaments of both head and Stern and the 2 side boards were of Carved Work, and, in my opinion, neither ill design'd nor executed. All their Canoes are built after this plan, and few are less than 20 feet long. Some of the small ones we have seen with Outriggers, but this is not Common. In their War Canoes they generally have a quantity of Birds' feathers hung in Strings, and tied about the Head and stern as Additional Ornament. They are as various in the heads of their Canoes as we are in those of our Shipping; but what is most Common is an odd Design'd Figure of a man, with as ugly a face as can be conceived, a very large Tongue sticking out of his Mouth, and Large white Eyes made of the Shells of Sea Ears. Their paddles are small, light, and neatly made; they hardly ever make use of sails, at IE that we saw, and those they have are but ill contrived, being generally a piece of netting spread between 2 poles, which serve for both Masts and Yards.

The Houses of these People are better calculated for a Cold than a Hot Climate; they are built low, and in the form of an oblong square. The framing is of wood or small sticks, and the sides and Covering of thatch made of long Grass. The door is generally at one end, and no bigger than to admit of a man to Creep in and out; just within the door is the fire place, and over the door, or on one side, is a small hole to let out the Smoke. These houses are 20 or 30 feet long, others not above half as long; this depends upon the largeness of the Family they are to contain, for I believe few familys are without such a House as these, altho' they do not always live in them, especially in the summer season, when many of them live dispers'd up and down in little Temporary Hutts, that are not sufficient to shelter them from the weather.

The Tools which they work with in building their Canoes, Houses, etc., are adzes or Axes, some made of a hard black stone, and others of green Talk. They have Chiszels made of the same, but these are more commonly made of Human Bones. In working small work and carving I believe they use mostly peices of Jasper, breaking small pieces from a large Lump they have for that purpose; as soon as the small peice is blunted they throw it away and take another. To till or turn up the ground they have wooden spades (if I may so call them), made like stout pickets, with a piece of wood tied a Cross near the lower end, to put the foot upon to force them into the Ground. These Green Talk Axes that are whole and good they set much Value upon, and never would part with them for anything we could offer. I offer'd one day for one, One of the best Axes I had in the Ship, besides a number of Other things, but nothing would induce the owner to part with it; from this I infer'd that good ones were scarce among them.

Diversions and Musical instruments they have but few; the latter Consists of 2 or 3 sorts of Trumpets and a small Pipe or Whistle, and the former in singing and Dancing. Their songs are Harmonious enough, but very doleful to a European ear. In most of their dances they appear like mad men, Jumping and Stamping with their feet, making strange Contorsions with every part of the body, and a hideous noise at the same time; and if they happen to be in their Canoes they flourish with great Agility their Paddles, Pattoo Pattoos, various ways, in the doing of which, if there are ever so many boats and People, they all keep time and Motion together to

a surprizing degree. It was in this manner that they work themselves to a proper Pitch of Courage before they used to attack us; and it was only from their after behaviour that we could tell whether they were in jest or in Earnest when they gave these Heivas, as they call them, of their own accord, especially at our first coming into a place. Their signs of Friendship is the waving the hand or a piece of Cloth, etc.

We were never able to learn with any degree of certainty in what manner they bury their dead; we were generally told that they put them in the ground; if so it must be in some secret or by place, for we never saw the IE signs of a burying place in the whole Country. Their Custom of mourning for a friend or relation is by cutting and Scarifying their bodys, particularly their Arms and brEs, in such a manner that the Scars remain indelible, and, I believe, have some signification such as to shew how near related the deceased was to them.

With respect to religion, I believe these people trouble themselves very little about it; they, however, believe that there is one Supream God, whom they call Tawney, and likewise a number of other inferior deities; but whether or no they worship or Pray to either one or the other we know not with any degree of certainty. It is reasonable to suppose that they do, and I believe it; yet I never saw the IE Action or thing among them that tended to prove it. They have the same Notions of the Creation of the World, Mankind, etc., as the people of the S Sea Islands have; indeed, many of their notions and Customs are the very same. But nothing is so great a proof of their all having had one Source as their Language, which differ but in a very few words the one from the other, as will appear from the following specimens, which I had from Mr. Banks, who understands their Language as well, or better than, any one on board.

#### English, New Zealand, South Sea Islands

A Chief, Eareete, Eare  
A Man, Taata, Taata  
A Woman, Ivahina, Ivahine  
The Head, Eupo, Eupo  
The Hair, Macauve, ?  
The Ear, Terringa, Terrea  
The Forehead, Erai, Erai  
The Eyes, Matu, Matu  
The Cheek, Paparinga, Paparea  
The Nose, Ahewh, Ahew  
The Mouth, Hangoutou, Outou  
The Chinn, Ecouwai, ?  
The Teeth, Hennihu, Nihio  
The Arm, Haringaringu, Rema  
The Finger, Maticara, Maneow  
The Belly, Ateraboo, Oboo  
The Naval, Apeto, Peto  
Come here, Haromai, Haromai  
Fish, Heica, Eyca  
A Lobster, Kooura, Tooura  
Coccos, Taro, Taro  
Sweet Potatoes, Cumala, Cumala  
Yamms, Tuphwhe, Tuphwhe

Birds, Mannu, Mannu  
 The Wind, Mebaw, Mattai  
 A Thief, Amootoo, Teto  
 To examine, Mataketake, Mataibai  
 To sing, Eheiva, Heiva  
 Bad, Keno, Eno  
 Trees, Oratou, Eraou  
 Grand Father, Toubouna, Toubouna  
 Friend, ?, Tio  
 No, Kaoura, Oure  
 One, Tahai, Tahai  
 Two, Rua, Rua  
 Three, Torou, Torou  
 Four, Ha, Hea  
 Five, Rema, Remo  
 Six, Ono, Ono  
 Seven, Etu, Hetu  
 Eight, Wharou, Wharou  
 Nine, Iva, Hyva  
 Ten, Angahourou, Ahourou  
 What do you call this or that, Owy Terra, Owy Terra

There are some small difference in the Language spoke by the Aeheinomoweans and those of Tovy Poenammu; but this difference seem'd to me to be only in the pronunciation, and is no more than what we find between one part of England and another. What is here inserted as a Specimen is that spoke by the People of Aeheinomouwe. What is meant by the S Sea Islands are those Islands we ourselves Touched at; but I gave it that title because we have always been told that the same Language is universally spoke by all the Islanders, and that this is a Sufficient proof that both they and the New Zelanders have had one Origin or Source, but where this is even time perhaps may never discover.

It certainly is neither to the Southward nor Eastward, for I cannot perswaide myself that ever they came from America; and as to a Southern Continent, I do not believe any such thing exist, unless in a high Lat. But as the Contrary opinion hath for many Years prevail'd, and may yet prevail, it is necessary I should say something in support of mine more than what will be directly pointed out by the Track of this Ship in those Seas; for from that alone it will evidently appear that there is a large space extending quite to the Tropick in which we were not, or any other before us that we can ever learn for certain. In our route to the Northward, after doubling Cape Horn, when in the Lat of  $40^{\circ}$ , we were in the Lon of  $110^{\circ}$ ; and in our return to the Southward, after leaving Ulietea, when in the same Lat, we were in the Lon of  $145^{\circ}$ ; the difference in this Lat is  $35^{\circ}$  of Lon. In the Lat of  $30^{\circ}$  the difference of the 2 Tracks is  $21^{\circ}$ , and that difference continues as low as  $20^{\circ}$ ; but a view of the Chart will best illustrate this.

Here is now room enough for the N Cape of the Southern Continent to extend to the Northward, even to a pretty low Lat. But what foundation have we for such a supposition? None, that I know of, but this, that it must either be here or no where. Geographers have indeed laid down part of Quiros' discoveries in this Lon, and have told us that he had these signs of a Continent, a part of which they have Actually laid down in the Maps; but by what Authority I know not. Quiros, in the Lat of  $25$  or  $26^{\circ}$  S, discover'd 2 Islands, which, I suppose,



may lay between the Lon of 130 and 140° W. Dalrymple lays them down in 146° W, and says that Quiros saw to the Southward very large hanging Clouds and a very thick Horizon, with other known signs of a Continent. Other accounts of their Voyage says not a word about this; but supposing this to be true, hanging Clouds and a thick Horizon are certainly no signs of a Continent-I have had many proofs to the Contrary in the Course of this Voyage; neither do I believe that Quiros looked upon such things as known signs of land, for if he had he certainly would have stood to the Southward, in order to have satisfied himself before he had gone to the Northward, for no man seems to have had discoveries more at heart than he had. Besides this, this was the ultimate object of his Voyage. If Quiros was in the Lat of 26° and Lon 146° W, then I am certain that no part of the Southern Continent can no where extend so far to the Northward as the above mentioned Lat. But the Voyage which seems to thrust it farthest back in the Lon I am speaking of, viz., between 130 and 150° W, is that of Admiral Roggeween, a Dutchman, made in 1722, who, after leaving Juan Fernandes, went in search of Davis's Island; but not finding it, he ran 12° more to the W, and in the Lat of 28 1/2° discover'd Eer Island. Dalrymple and some others have laid it down in 27° S and 106° 30' W, and supposes it to be the same as Davis's Isle, which I think cannot be from the Circumstance of the Voyage; on the other hand Mr. Pingre, in his Treatise concerning the Transit of Venus, gives an extract of Roggeween's Voyage and a map of the S Seas, wherein he places Eer Island in the Lat of 28 1/2° S, and in the Lon of 123° W his reason for so doing may be seen at large in the said Treatise. He likewise lays down Roggeween's rout through those S Seas very different from any other Author I have seen; for after leaving Eer Island he makes him to steer S-W to the height of 34° S, and afterwards W-N-W. If Roggeween really took this rout, then it is not probable that there is any Main land to the Northward of 35° S. However, Mr. Dalrymple and some Geographers have laid down Roggeween's track very different from Mr. Pingre. From Eer Isle they have laid down his Track to the N-W, and afterwards very little different from that of La Maire; and this I think is not probable, that a man who, at his own request, was sent to discover the Southern Continent should take the same rout thro' these Seas as others had done before who had the same thing in View; by so doing he must be Morally certain of not finding what he was in search of, and of course must fail as they had done. Be this as it may, it is a point that cannot be clear'd up from the published accounts of the Voyage, which, so far from taking proper notice of their Lon, have not even mentioned the Lat of several of the Islands they discover'd, so that I find it impossible to lay down Roggeween's rout with the IE degree of accuracy.

But to return to our own Voyage, which must be allowed to have set aside the most, if not all, the Arguments and proofs that have been advanced by different Authors to prove that there must be a Southern Continent; I mean to the Northward of 40° S, for what may lie to the Southward of that Lat I know not. Certain it is that we saw no Visible signs of Land, according to my Opinion, neither in our rout to the Northward, Southward, or Westward, until a few days before we made the Coast of New Zeland. It is true we have often seen large flocks of Birds, but they were generally such as are always seen at a very great distance from land; we likewise saw frequently peices of Sea or Rock Weed, but how is one to know how far this may drive to Sea. I am told, and that from undoubted Authority, that there is Yearly thrown up upon the Coast of Ireland and Scotland a sort of Beans called Oxe Eyes, which are known to grow no where but in the W Indies; and yet these 2 places are not less than 1200 lg asunder. Was such things found floating upon the Water in the S Seas one would hardly be perswaded that one was even out of sight of Land, so apt are we to Catch at everything that may at IE point out to us the favourite Object we are in persuit of; and yet experiance shews that we may be as far from it as ever.

Thus I have given my Opinion freely and without prejudice, not with any View to discourage any future attempts being made towards discovering the Southern Continent; on the Contrary, as I think this Voyage will evidently make it appear that there is left but a small space to the Northward of 40° where the grand object can lay. I think it would be a great pity that this thing, which at times has been the Object of many Ages and Nations, should not now be wholly be clear'd up; which might very Easily be done in one Voyage without either much trouble or danger or fear of miscarrying, as the Navigator would know where to go to look for it; but if, after all, no Continent was to be found, then he might turn his thoughts towards the discovery of those Multitude of Islands which, we are told, lay within the Tropical regions to the S of the Line, and this we have from very good Authority, as I have before hinted. This he will always have in his power; for, unless he be directed to search for the Southern lands in a high Lat, he will not, as we were, be obliged to go farther to the Westward in the Lat of 40° than 140 or 145° W, and therefore will always have it in his power to go to George's Island, where he will be sure of meeting with refreshments to recruit his people before he sets out upon the discovery of the Islands. But should it be thought proper to send a Ship out upon this Service while Tupia lives, and he to come out in her, in that case she would have a prodigious Advantage over every ship that hath been upon discoveries in those Seas before; for by means of Tupia, supposing he did not accompany you himself, you would always get people to direct you from Island to Island, and would be sure of meeting with a friendly reception and refreshment at every Island you came to. This would enable the Navigator to make his discoveries the more perfect and Compleat; at IE it would give him time so to do, for he would not be Obliged to hurry through those Seas thro' any apprehensions of wanting Provisions.

I shall now add a list of those Islands which Tupia and Several others have given us an account of, and Endeavour to point out the respective Situations from Otaheite, or George's Island; but this, with respect to many of them, cannot be depended upon. Those marked thus (\*) Tupia himself has been at, and we have no reason to doubt his Veracity in this, by which it will appear that his Geographical knowledge of those Seas is pretty Extensive; and yet I must observe that before he came with us he hardly had an Idea of any land being larger than Otaheite.

Island Name and Bearing from Otaheite in the N-E Quarter:

Oopate, between the N and N-N-E  
Ooura, between the N and N-N-E  
Teohcoa, between the N and N-N-E  
Oryvoa, between the N and N-N-E  
Ohevapato, between the N and N-N-E  
Otaah, N-N-E to N-E by N  
Ohevaroa, N-N-E to N-E by N  
Temanno, N-N-E to N-E by N  
Ootta, N-N-E to N-E by N

Island Name and Bearing from Otaheite in the S-E Quarter:

Moutou, S to S-E  
Toomitoaroaro, S to S-E  
Tennowhammeatane, S to S-E \*

Ohitetamaruire, S to S-E  
Ouropoe, S to S-E  
Mytea or Oznaburg Island, E-S-E and E \*  
Ohevanue, E-S-E and E  
Ohirotah, E-S-E and E

Island Name and Bearing from Otaheite in the S-W Quarter:

Imao or York Island, W by S and W-S-W \*  
Tapooamanue or Saunders Island, W by S and W-S-W \*  
Manua, Between the S and S-W \*  
Honue, Between the S and S-W \*  
Ohiteroa, Between the S and S-W \*  
Onawhaa, Between the S and S-W  
Otaohoera, Between the S and S-W  
Opooroo, Between the S and S-W  
Ooonow, Between the S and S-W  
Teorooromatiwhatea, Between the S and S-W  
Teatowhite, Between the S and S-W \*  
Oheavie, Between the S-W and W-S-W  
Pooromathetua, Between the S-W and W-S-W  
Teamoorohete, Between the S-W and W-S-W  
Ohetotarive, Between the S-W and W-S-W  
Ohetotareva, Between the S-W and W-S-W  
Ohitetoutoumi, Between the S-W and W-S-W  
Mooenatayo, W \*  
Tetupatunaeo, W  
Ohiteteutenatu, W  
Ohitepoto, W

Island Name and Bearing from Otaheite in the N-E Quarter:

Whareva, N-E  
Whatteruro, N-E  
Tetioo, N-E  
Tetineohva, N-E  
Terouwhah, N-E  
Whaoa, N-N-E  
Whatterretaah, N-N-E  
Whaneanea, N-N-E  
Ohevatoutua, E by N

Island Name and Bearing from Otaheite in the N-W Quarter:

Tethuroa, N by W \*  
Oonnah, N by W  
Obaha, N by W  
Maataah, N by W  
Huiheine, between the N and W \*  
Ulietea, between the N and W \*

Otaha, between the N and W \*  
 Bolabola, between the N and W \*  
 Tubai, between the N and W \*  
 Maurua, between the N and W \*  
 Opoopooa, between the N and W  
 Opopatea, between the N and W  
 Whennuaouda, between the N by W and W \*  
 Motehea, between the N by W and W \*  
 Oourio, between the N by W and W \*  
 Orurutu, between the N by W and W \*  
 Oateea, between the N by W and W \*  
 Oahooahoo, between the N by W and W  
 Oweha, between the N by W and W  
 Orotuma, between the N by W and W  
 Tenuna, between the N by W and W  
 Orevavie, between the N by W and W  
 Toutepa, between the N by W and W  
 Orarathoa, between the N by W and W  
 Oryvavai, between the N by W and W  
 Oahourou, between the N by W and W

\* were taken from a Chart of the Islands drawn by Tupia's own hands. He at one time gave us an account of near 130 Islands, but in his Chart he laid down only 74; and this is about the number that some others of the Natives of Otaheite gave us an account of; but the account taken by and from different people differ sensibly one from another both in names and numbers. The first is owing to the want of rightly knowing how to pronounce the names of the Islands after them; but be this as it may, it is very certain that there are these number of Islands, and very Probably a great many more, laying some where in the Great S Sea, the greatest part of which have never been seen by any European.

### **Chapter 7: Passage from New Zealand to New Holand**

Sunday, April 1st 1770 In thepm had a moderate breeze at E, which in the Night Veer'd to the N-E, and was attended with hazey, rainy weather. I have before made mention of our quitting New Zeland with an intention to steer to the Westward, which we accordingly did, taking our departure from Cape Farewell in the Lat of 40° 30' S and Lon 185° 58' W from Greenwich, which bore from us at 5pm W 18° N, distance 12 mi. After this we steer'd N-W and W-N-W, in order to give it a good berth, until 8 o'Clockam, at which time we steered W, having the Advantage of a fresh Gale at N by E. At Noon our Lat by account was 40° 12' S, Lon made from Cape Farewell 1 degree 11' W.

Monday, April 2nd 1770 In thepm had a moderate Gale at N, with thick hazey weather, attended with rain. At 8 it fell little wind, and Veer'd to W-S-W, at which time we Tack'd. At midnight the wind came to S-S-W, and increased to a brisk gale with fair Cloudy weather, which we made the most of as soon as it was daylight. At Noon our Lat, by Observation, was 40° 0', and Lon made from Cape Farewell 2° 31' W.

Tuesday, April 3rd 1770 Cloudy weather; Winds at S-W and S-S-W, a fresh Gale, with which we made our Course good N-W by W, and distance run from Yesterday at Noon to this day at Noon 38 1/2 lg. Lat, by observation, 38° 56' S; Lon made from Cape Farewell 4° 36' W.

Wednesday, April 4th 1770 Had a steady brisk Gale at S-S-W with some flying showers of rain and large hollow Sea from the Southward. In thepm unbent the Maintopsail to repair, and brought another to the Yard and set it close reefed. At Noon our Lat, by Observation, was 37° 56' S; Course and distance since Yesterday at Noon N 60° W, 122 mi; Lon made from Cape Farewell 6° 54' W.

Thursday, April 5th 1770 Fresh Gales at S, which in theam veer'd to S-E by S. At Noon our Lat, by observation, was 37° 23' S, Lon made from Cape Farewell 9° 10' W; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon N 73° 15' W, 37 lg.

Friday, April 6th 1770 Winds between the S by E and S-E, with a Continued swell from the S-S-W. At Noon our Lat in per Observation 37° 18' S; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon N 85° W, 58 mi. Lon made from Cape Farewell 10° 35' W.

Saturday, April 7th 1770 Gentle breezes at N-E, which in theam Veer'd to N-W. In thepm found the Variation by the Mean of several Azimuths to be 13° 50' E, being then in the Lat of 37° 23' S, and Lon 196° 44' W. In theam Punished Jno. Bowles, Marine, with 12 lashes for refusing to do his duty when order'd by the Boatswain's Mate and Serjeant of Marines. At Noon Lat per Observation 37° 35' S, Lon made from Cape Farewell 11° 34' W; Course and distance run since Yesterday noon S 70° 15' W, 50 mi.

Sunday, April 8th 1770 Gentle breezes from the N-W and N. In thepm found the Variation to be 13° 56' E. At Noon Lat in per Observation 38° 0' S, Lon made from Cape Farewell 13° 2' W; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S 70° 15' W, 74 mi.

Monday, April 9th 1770 Gentle breezes at N-W; pleasant weather and a Smooth Sea. In theam saw a Tropic Bird, which, I believe, is uncommon in such high Lats. At Noon Lat observ'd 38° 29' S, Lon made from Cape Farewell 14° 45' W; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S 70° 15' W, 86 mi.

Tuesday, April 10th 1770 Gentle breezes at N-W by N, and clear settled weather. In theam found the Variation, by the Amplitude, to be 11° 25' E, and by Azimuth 11° 20'. At Noon the observed Lat was 38° 51' S, and Lon made from Cape Farewell 16° 45'; Lon in 202° 43' W; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S 76° 45' W, 96 mi.

Wednesday, April 11th 1770 Gentle breezes from the N-W, and pleasant weather, with some few showers of rain. In theam found the Variation to be 13° 48' E, which is 2 1/2° more than it was yesterday, altho' I should have expected to have found it less, for the observations were equally good. At Noon Lat in 39° 7' S, Lon made from Cape Farewell 17° 23'; and Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S 62° W, 34 mi.

Thursday, April 12th 1770 Calm, with now and then light Airs from the N-E and N-W; cloudy weather, but remarkably warm, and so it hath been for some days past. At Noon we were in the Lat of 39° 11', and Lon from Cape Farewell 17° 35' W; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S 66° W, 10 mi.

Friday, April 13th 1770 Light Airs next to a Calm, with Clear pleasant weather; what little wind we had was from the N-W quarter. In the Course of this day found the Variation to be  $12^{\circ} 27'$  E, being at Noon, by observation, in the Lat of  $39^{\circ} 23'$  S, and Lon  $204^{\circ} 2'$  W; Course and distance since Yesterday noon S  $62^{\circ} W$ , 26 mi, and Lon made from Cape Farewell  $18^{\circ} 4'$  W.

Saturday, April 14th 1770 Calm serene weather, with sometimes light Airs from the Northward. At sun set found the Variation to be  $11^{\circ} 28'$  E, and in the Morning to be  $11^{\circ} 30'$  E. The Sprintsail Topsail being wore to rags, it was condemn'd as not fit for its proper use, and Converted to repair the 2 Top Gallant Sails, they being of themselves so bad as not to be worth the Expence of new Canvas, but with the help of this sail may be made to last some time longer. At Noon Lat in  $39^{\circ} 25'$  S, Lon made from Cape Farewell  $18^{\circ} 21'$  W; Course and distance since Yesterday noon S  $18^{\circ} W$ , 13 mi.

Sunday, April 15th 1770 In thepm had light Airs at N, which in theam increased to a fresh Gale, with which we made the best of our way to the Westward, and by noon had run since yesterday upon a S  $86^{\circ} 15'$  W Course, 79 mi. Lat in, by Observation,  $39^{\circ} 30'$  S, and Lon made from Cape Farewell  $20^{\circ} 2'$  W. Some flying fish seen this day.

Monday, April 16th 1770 Fresh Gales at N-N-W, with Cloudy, hazey weather. In thepm saw an Egg Bird, and yesterday a Gannet was seen; these are Birds that we reckon never to go far from land. We kept the lead going all night, but found no soundings with 100 and 130 fm line. At noon we were in the Lat of  $39^{\circ} 40'$  S, and had made  $22^{\circ} 2'$  of Lon from Cape Farewell; course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon S  $82^{\circ} W$ , 108 mi.

Tuesday, April 17th 1770 At 2pm the wind came to W-S-W, at which time we Tack'd and stood to the N-W. Before 5 o'Clock we were obliged to close reef our Topsails, having a Strong gale, with very heavy squalls; about this time a Small land bird was seen to perch upon the rigging. We sounded, but had no ground with 120 fm of line. At 8 o'Clock we wore and stood to the Southward until 12 at Night, then wore and stood to the N-W until 4am, when we again stood to the Southward, having a fresh Gale at W-S-W, attended with Squalls and dark hazey unsettled weather until 9; at which time it fell little wind, and the weather soon after Clear'd up, which, a little after 11, gave us an Opportunity of taking several observations of the Sun and Moon, the Mean result of which gave  $207^{\circ} 56'$  W Lon from the Meridian of Greenwich. From these observations the Lon of the Ship at Noon was  $207^{\circ} 58'$ , and by the Log  $208^{\circ} 20'$ , the difference being only  $22'$ ; and this Error may as well be in the one as the other. Our Lat at Noon was  $39^{\circ} 36'$  S, the Lon made from Cape Farewell  $22^{\circ} 22'$  W.

Wednesday, April 18th 1770 Winds S, a hard gale, with heavy squalls, attended with Showers of rain and a great Sea from the same Quarter. At 3pm Close reefed the Topsails, handed the Main and mizen Topsail, and got down Top Gallant Yards. At 6 the Gale increased to such a height as to oblige us to take in the Foretopsail and Mainsail, and to run under the Foresail and mizen all night; Sounding every 2 hours, but found no ground with 120 fm. At 6am set the Mainsail, and soon after the Foretopsail, and before Noon the Maintopsail, both close reefed. At Noon our Lat by observation was  $38^{\circ} 45'$  S, Lon from Cape Farewell  $23^{\circ} 43'$  W; and Course and distance run since Yesterday noon N  $51^{\circ} W$ , 82 mi. Last night we saw a Port Egmont Hen, and this morning 2 More, a Pintado bird, several Albetrosses, and black sheer Waters. The first of these birds are Certain signs of the nearness of land; indeed we cannot be far from it. By our Lon we are a degree to the Westward of the E side of Van Diemen's Land, according to

Tasman, the first discoverer's, Lon of it, who could not err much in so short a run as from this land to New Zeland; and by our Lat we could not be above 50 or 55 lg to the Northward of the place where he took his departure from.

## Chapter 8: Exploration of the East Coast of New Holand

Thursday, April 19th 1770 In thepm had fresh Gales at S-S-W and Cloudy Squally weather, with a large S Sea; at 6 took in the Topsails, and at 1am brought too and Sounded, but had no ground with 130 fm of line. At 5, set the Topsails close reef'd, and 6, saw land extending from N-E to W, distance 5 or 6 lg, having 80 fm, fine sandy bottom. We continued standing to the Westward with the Wind at S-S-W until 8, at which time we got Topgallant Yards a Cross, made all sail, and bore away along shore N-E for the Eermost land we had in sight, being at this time in the Lat of  $37^{\circ} 58'$  S, and Lon of  $210^{\circ} 39'$  W. The Sermost point of land we had in sight, which bore from us W  $1/4$  S, I judged to lay in the Lat of  $38^{\circ} 0'$  S and in the Lon of  $211^{\circ} 7'$  W from the Meridian of Greenwich. I have named it Point Hicks, because Lieutenant Hicks was the first who discover'd this Land. To the Southward of this point we could see no land, and yet it was clear in that Quarter, and by our Lon compared with that of Tasman's, the body of Van Diemen's land ought to have bore due S from us, and from the soon falling of the Sea after the wind abated I had reason to think it did; but as we did not see it, and finding the Coast to trend N-E and S-W, or rather more to the Westward, makes me Doubtfull whether they are one land or no. However, every one who compares this Journal with that of Tasman's will be as good a judge as I am; but it is necessary to observe that I do not take the Situation of Vandiemens from the Printed Charts, but from the extract of Tasman's Journal, published by Dirk Rembrantse. At Noon we were in the Lat of  $37^{\circ} 50'$  and Lon of  $210^{\circ} 29'$  W. The extreams of the Land extending from N-W to E-N-E, a remarkable point, bore N  $20^{\circ}$  E, distant 4 lg. This point rises to a round hillock very much like the Ramhead going into Plymouth sound, on which account I called it by the same name; Lat  $37^{\circ} 39'$ , Lon  $210^{\circ} 22'$  W. The Variation by an Azimuth taken this morning was  $8^{\circ} 7'$  E. What we have as yet seen of this land appears rather low, and not very hilly, the face of the Country green and Woody, but the Sea shore is all a white Sand.

Friday, April 20th 1770 In thepm and most part of the night had a fresh Gale W, with Squalls, attended with Showers of rain. In theam had the Wind at S-W, with Severe weather. At 1pm saw 3 Water Spouts at once; 2 were between us and the Shore, and one at some distance upon our Larboard Quarter. At 6, shortned sail, and brought too for the Night, having 56 fm fine sandy bottom. The Nermost land in sight bore N by E  $1/2$  E, and a small Island lying close to a point on the Main bore W, distant 2 lg. This point I have named Cape Howe; it may be known by the Trending of the Coast, which is N on the one Side and S-W on the other. Lat  $37^{\circ} 28'$  S; Lon  $210^{\circ} 3'$  W. It may likewise be known by some round hills upon the main just within it. Having brought too with her head off Shore, we at 10 wore, and lay her head in until 4am, at which time we made sail along shore to the Northward. At 6, the Nermost land in sight bore N, being at this time about 4 lg from the Land. At Noon we were in the Lat of  $36^{\circ} 51'$  S and Lon of  $209^{\circ} 53'$  W, and 3 lg from the land. Course sail'd along shore since Yesterday at Noon was first N  $52^{\circ}$  E, 30 mi, then N by E and N by W, 41 mi. The weather being clear gave us an opportunity to View the Country, which had a very agreeable and promising aspect, diversified with hills, ridges, plains, and Valleys, with some few small lawns; but for the most part the whole was covered with wood, the hills and ridges rise with a gentle slope; they are not high, neither are there many of them.

Saturday, April 21st 1770 Winds S, a Gentle breeze, and Clear weather, with which we coasted along shore to the Northward. In thepm we saw the smoke of fire in several places; a Certain sign that the Country is inhabited. At 6, being about 2 or 3 lg from the land, we shortned Sail, and Sounded and found 44 fm, a sandy bottom. Stood on under an easey sail until 12 o'Clock, at which time we brought too until 4am, when we made sail, having then 90 fm, 5 lg from the land. At 6, we were abrE of a pretty high Mountain laying near the Shore, which, on account of its figure, I named Mount Dromedary (Lat  $36^{\circ} 18'$  S, Lon  $209^{\circ} 55'$  W). The shore under the foot of the Mountain forms a point, which I have named Cape Dromedary, over which is a peaked hillock. At this time found the Variation to be  $10^{\circ} 42'$  E. Between 10 and 11'Clock Mr. Green and I took several Observations of the Sun and Moon, the mean result of which gave  $209^{\circ} 17'$  W Lon from the Meridian of Greenwich. By observation made yesterday we were in the Lon  $210^{\circ} 9'$ . W 20' gives  $209^{\circ} 49'$  the Lon of the Ship to-day at noon per yesterday's observation, the Mean of which and to-day's give  $209^{\circ} 33'$  W, by which I fix the Lon of this Coast. Our Lat at Noon was  $35^{\circ} 49'$  S; Cape Dromedary bore S  $30^{\circ}$  W, distant 12 lg. An Open Bay wherein lay 3 or 4 Small Islands, bore N-W by W, distant 5 or 6 lg. This Bay seem'd to be but very little Shelter'd from the Sea Winds, and yet it is the only likely Anchoring place I have yet seen upon the Coast.

Sunday, April 22nd 1770 In thepm had a Gentle breeze at S by W with which we steer'd along shore N by E and N-N-E at the distance of about 3 lg. Saw the smoke of fire in several places near the Sea beach. At 5, we were abrE of a point of land which, on account of its perpendicular Cliffs, I call'd Point Upright; Lat  $35^{\circ} 35'$  S; it bore from us due W, distant 2 lg, and in this Situation had 31 fm, Sandy bottom. At 6, falling little wind, we hauld off E-N-E; at this time the Nermost land in sight bore N by E  $1/2$  E, and at midnight, being in 70 fm, we brought too until 4am, at which time we made sail in for the land, and at daylight found ourselves nearly in the same Place we were at 5 o'Clock in the evening, by which it was apparent that we had been drove about 3 lg to the Southward by a Tide or Current in the night. After this we steer'd along shore N-N-E, having a Gentle breeze at S-W, and were so near the Shore as to distinguish several people upon the Sea beach. They appeared to be of a very dark or black Colour; but whether this was the real Colour of their skins or the Cloathes they might have on I know not. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $35^{\circ} 27'$  and Lon  $209^{\circ} 23'$ ; Cape Dromedary bore S  $28^{\circ}$  W, distance 15 lg. A remarkable peak'd hill laying inland, the Top of which looked like a Pigeon house, and occasioned my giving it that name, bore N  $32^{\circ} 33'$  W, and a small low Island, laying close under the Shore, bore N-W, distance 2 or 3 lg; Variation of the Compass  $9^{\circ} 50'$  E. When we first discover'd this Island in the morning I was in hopes, from its appearance, that we should have found Shelter for the Ship behind it; but when we came to approach it near I did not think that there was even security for a Boat to land. But this, I believe, I should have attempted had not the wind come on Shore, after which I did not think it safe to send a Boat from the Ship, as we had a large hollow Sea from the S-E rowling in upon the land, which beat every where very high upon the Shore; and this we have had ever since we came upon the Coast. The land near the Sea coast still continues of a moderate height, forming alternately rocky points and Sandy beaches; but inland, between Mount Dromedary and the Pigeon house, are several pretty high Mountains, 2 only of which we saw but what were covered with Trees, and these lay inland behind the Pigeon House, and are remarkably flat a Top, with Steep rocky cliffs all round them. As far as we could see the Trees in this Country hath all the appearance of being stout and lofty. For these 2 days past the observed Lat hath been 12 or 14 mi to the Southward of the Ship's account given by the Log, which can be owing to nothing but a Current set to the Southward.



Monday, April 23rd 1770 In thepm had a Gentle breeze at E, which in the night veer'd to N-E and N. At 1/2 past 4pm, being about 5 mi from the Land, we Tack'd and stood off S-E and E until 4am, at which time we Tack'd and stood in, being then about 9 or 10 lg from the land. At 8, it fell little wind, and soon after Calm. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $35^{\circ} 38'$  and about 6 lg from the land, Mount Dromedary bearing S  $37^{\circ} W$ , distant 17 lg, and the Pidgeon house N  $40^{\circ} W$ ; in this situation had 74 fm.

Tuesday, April 24th 1770 In thepm had Variable light Airs and Calms until 6 o'Clock, at which time a breeze sprung up at N by W; at this time we had 70 fm Water, being about 4 or 5 lg from the land, the Pidgeon house bearing N  $40^{\circ} W$ , Mount Dromedary S  $30^{\circ} W$ , and the Nermost land in sight N  $19^{\circ} E$ . Stood to the N-E until Noon, having a Gentle breeze at N-W, at which time we Tack'd and stood to the Westward, being then, by observation, in the Lat of  $35^{\circ} 10' S$  and Lon  $208^{\circ} 51' W$ . A point of land which I named Cape St. George, we having discovered it on that Saint's day, bore W, distant 19 mi, and the Pidgeon house S  $7^{\circ} W$ , the Lat and Lon of which I found to be  $35^{\circ} 19' S$  and  $209^{\circ} 42' W$ . In the morning we found the Variation to be, by the Amplitude,  $7^{\circ} 50' E$ , by several Azimuths  $7^{\circ} 54' E$ .

Wednesday, April 25th 1770 In thepm had a fresh breeze at N-W until 3 o'Clock, at which time it came to W, and we Tack'd and stood to the Northward. At 5 o'Clock, being about 5 or 6 lg from the land, the Pidgeon house bearing W-S-W, distant 9 lg, sounded and had 86 fm. At 8, being very squally, with lightning, we close reef'd the Topsails and brought too, being then in 120 fm. At 3am made sail again to the Northward, having the advantage of a fresh Gale at S-W. At Noon we were about 3 or 4 lg from the land and in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 22'$  and Lon  $208^{\circ} 36' W$ . Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon is N by E 49 mi. In the Course of this day's run we saw the Smoke of fire in several places near the Sea beach. About 2 lg to the Northward of Cape St. George the Shore seems to form a bay, which appear'd to be shelter'd from the N-E winds; but as we had the wind it was not in my power to look into it, and the appearance was not favourable enough to induce me to loose time in beating up to it. The N point of this bay, on account of its Figure, I nam'd Long Nose. Lat  $45^{\circ} 4' S$ , 8 lg to the Northward of this, is a point which I call'd Red Point; some part of the Land about it appeared of that Colour (Lat  $34^{\circ} 29' S$ , Lon  $208^{\circ} 49' W$ ). A little way inland to the N-W of this point is a round hill, the top of which look'd like the Crown of a Hatt.

Thursday, April 26th 1770 Clear, serene weather. In thepm had a light breeze at N-N-W until 5, at which time it fell Calm, we being then about 3 or 4 lg from the land and in 48 fm. Variation by Azimuth  $8^{\circ} 48' E$ , the extreams of the land from N-E by N to S-W by S. Saw several smokes along shore before dark, and 2 or 3 times a fire. In the Night we lay becalm'd, driving in before the Sea, until one o'Clockam, at which time we got a breeze from the land, with which we steer'd N-E, being then in 38 fm water. At Noon it fell little Wind, and veer'd to N-E by N, we being then in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 10'$  and Lon  $208^{\circ} 27' W$ , and about 5 lg from the land, which extended from S  $37^{\circ} W$  to N  $1/2 E$ . In this Lat are some White Clifts, which rise perpendicular from the Sea to a moderate height.

Friday, April 27th 1770 Var'ble light Airs between the N-E and N-W, clear pleasant weather. In thepm stood off Shore until 2, then Tackt and Stood in till 6, at which time we tack'd and stood off, being then in 54 fm and about 4 or 5 mi from the land, the Extreams of which bore from S,  $28^{\circ} W$  to N  $25^{\circ} 30' E$ . At 12 we tack'd and stood in until 4am, then made a Trip off until day light, after which we stood in for the land; in all this time we lost ground, owing a good deal to the Variableness of the winds, for at Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $34^{\circ} 21' S$ , Red

Point bearing S 27° W, distant 3 lg. In this Situation we were about 4 or 5 mi from the land, which extended from S 19° 30' W to N 29° E.

Saturday, April 28th 1770 In thepm hoisted out the Pinnace and Yawl in order to attempt a landing, but the Pinnace took in the Water so fast that she was obliged to be hoisted in again to stop her leakes. At this time we saw several people a shore, 4 of whom where carrying a small Boat or Canoe, which we imagin'd they were going to put in to the Water in order to Come off to us; but in this we were mistaken. Being now not above 2 mi from the Shore Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and myself put off in the Yawl, and pull'd in for the land to a place where we saw 4 or 5 of the Natives, who took to the Woods as we approached the Shore; which disappointed us in the expectation we had of getting a near View of them, if not to speak to them. But our disappointment was heightened when we found that we no where could effect a landing by reason of the great Surf which beat everywhere upon the shore. We saw haul'd up upon the beach 3 or 4 small Canoes, which to us appeared not much unlike the Small ones of New Zeland. In the wood were several Trees of the Palm kind, and no under wood; and this was all we were able to observe from the boat, after which we return'd to the Ship about 5 in the evening. At this time it fell Calm, and we were not above a mile and a half from the Shore, in 11 fm, and within some breakers that lay to the Southward of us; but luckily a light breeze came off from the Land, which carried us out of danger, and with which we stood to the Northward. At daylight in the morning we discover'd a Bay, which appeared to be tollerably well shelter'd from all winds, into which I resolv'd to go with the Ship, and with this View sent the Master in the Pinnace to sound the Entrance, while we kept turning up with the Ship, having the wind right out. At noon the Entrance bore N-N-W, distance 1 mile.

Sunday, April 29th 1770 In thepm wind S and Clear weather, with which we stood into the bay and Anchored under the S shore about 2 mi within the Entrance in 5 fm, the S point bearing S-E and the N point E. Saw, as we came in, on both points of the bay, several of the Natives and a few hutts; Men, Women, and Children on the S Shore abrE of the Ship, to which place I went in the Boats in hopes of speaking with them, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia. As we approached the Shore they all made off, except 2 Men, who seem'd resolv'd to oppose our landing. As soon as I saw this I order'd the boats to lay upon their Oars, in order to speak to them; but this was to little purpose, for neither us nor Tupia could understand one word they said. We then threw them some nails, beads, etc., a shore, which they took up, and seem'd not ill pleased with, in so much that I thought that they beckon'd to us to come ashore; but in this we were mistaken, for as soon as we put the boat in they again came to oppose us, upon which I fir'd a musquet between the 2, which had no other Effect than to make them retire back, where bundles of their darts lay, and one of them took up a stone and threw at us, which caused my firing a Second Musquet, load with small Shott; and altho' some of the shott struck the man, yet it had no other effect than making him lay hold on a Target. Immediately after this we landed, which we had no sooner done than they throw'd 2 darts at us; this obliged me to fire a third shott, soon after which they both made off, but not in such haste but what we might have taken one; but Mr. Banks being of Opinion that the darts were poisoned, made me cautious how I advanced into the Woods. We found here a few small hutts made of the Bark of Trees, in one of which were 4 or 5 Small Children, with whom we left some strings of beads, etc. A quantity of Darts lay about the Hutts; these we took away with us. 3 Canoes lay upon the beach, the worst I think I ever saw; they were about 12 or 14 feet long, made of one piece of the Bark of a Tree, drawn or tied up at each end, and the middle kept open by means of pieces of Stick by way of Thwarts. After searching for fresh water without success, except a little in a Small hole dug in the Sand, we embarked, and went over to the N point of the bay,

where in coming in we saw several people; but when we landed now there were nobody to be seen. We found here some fresh Water, which came trickling down and stood in pools among the rocks; but as this was troublesome to come at I sent a party of men ashore in the morning to the place where we first landed to dig holes in the sand, by which means and a Small stream they found fresh Water sufficient to Water the Ship. The String of Beads, etc., we had left with the Children last night were found laying in the Hutts this morning; probably the Natives were afraid to take them away. After breakfast we sent some Empty Casks a shore and a party of Men to cut wood, and I went myself in the Pinnacle to sound and explore the Bay, in the doing of which I saw some of the Natives; but they all fled at my Approach. I landed in 2 places, one of which the people had but just left, as there were small fires and fresh Muscles broiling upon them; here likewise lay Vast heaps of the largest Oyster Shells I ever saw.

Monday, April 30th 1770 As Soon as the Wooders and Waterers were come on board to Dinner 10 or 12 of the Natives came to the watering place, and took away their Canoes that lay there, but did not offer to touch any one of our Casks that had been left ashore; and in the afternoon 16 or 18 of them came boldly up to within 100 yards of our people at the watering place, and there made a stand. Mr. Hicks, who was the Officer ashore, did all in his power to intice them to him by offering them presents; but it was to no purpose, all they seem'd to want was for us to be gone. After staying a Short time they went away. They were all Arm'd with Darts and wooden Swords; the darts have each 4 prongs, and pointed with fish bones. Those we have seen seem to be intended more for striking fish than offensive Weapons; neither are they poisoned, as we at first thought. After I had return'd from sounding the Bay I went over to a Cove on the N side of the Bay, where, in 3 or 4 Hauls with the Sean, we caught about 300 pounds weight of Fish, which I caused to be equally divided among the Ship's Company. In theam I went in the Pinnacle to sound and explore the N side of the bay, where I neither met with inhabitants or anything remarkable. Mr. Green took the Sun's Meridian Altitude a little within the S Entrance of the Bay, which gave the Lat 34° 0' S.

Tuesday, May 1st 1770 Gentle breezes, N. In thepm 10 of the Natives again visited the Watering place. I, being on board at this time, went immediately ashore, but before I got there they were going away. I follow'd them alone and unarm'd some distance along shore, but they would not stop until they got farther off than I choose to trust myself. These were armed in the same manner as those that came Yesterday. In the evening I sent some hands to haul the Saine, but they caught but a very few fish. A little after sunrise I found the Variation to be 11° 3' E. Last night Forby Sutherland, Seaman, departed this Life, and in theam his body Was buried ashore at the watering place, which occasioned my calling the S point of this bay after his name. This morning a party of us went ashore to some Hutts, not far from the Watering place, where some of the Natives are daily seen; here we left several articles, such as Cloth, Looking Glasses, Coombs, Beads, Nails, etc.; after this we made an Excursion into the Country, which we found diversified with Woods, Lawns, and Marshes. The woods are free from underwood of every kind, and the trees are at such a distance from one another that the whole Country, or at IE great part of it, might be Cultivated without being obliged to cut down a single tree. We found the Soil every where, except in the Marshes, to be a light white sand, and produceth a quantity of good Grass, which grows in little Tufts about as big as one can hold in one's hand, and pretty close to one another; in this manner the Surface of the Ground is Coated. In the woods between the Trees Dr. Solander had a bare sight of a Small Animal something like a Rabbit, and we found the Dung of an Animal which must feed upon Grass, and which, we judge, could not be less than a Deer; we also saw the Track of a Dog, or some such like

Animal. We met with some Hutts and places where the Natives had been, and at our first setting out one of them was seen; the others, I suppose, had fled upon our Approach. I saw some Trees that had been cut down by the Natives with some sort of a Blunt instrument, and several Trees that were barqued, the bark of which had been cut by the same instrument; in many of the Trees, especially the Palms, were cut steps of about 3 or 4 feet asunder for the conveniency of Climbing them. We found 2 Sorts of Gum, one sort of which is like Gum Dragon, and is the same, I suppose, Tasman took for Gum lac; it is extracted from the largest tree in the Woods.

Wednesday, May 2nd 1770 Between 3 and 4 in thepm we return'd out of the Country, and after Dinner went ashore to the watering place, where we had not been long before 17 or 18 of the Natives appeared in sight. In the morning I had sent Mr. Gore, with a boat, up to the head of the Bay to drudge for Oysters; in his return to the Ship he and another person came by land, and met with these people, who followed him at the Distance of 10 or 20 Yards. Whenever Mr. Gore made a stand and faced them they stood also, and notwithstanding they were all Arm'd, they never offer'd to Attack him; but after he had parted from them, and they were met by Dr. Monkhouse and one or 2 more, who, upon making a Sham retreat, they throw'd 3 darts after them, after which they began to retire. Dr. Solander, I, and Tupia made all the haste we could after them, but could not, either by words or Actions, prevail upon them to come near us, Mr. Gore saw some up the Bay, who by signs invited him ashore, which he prudently declined. In theam had the wind in the S-E with rain, which prevented me from making an Excursion up the head of the bay as I intended.

Thursday, May 3rd 1770 Winds at S-E, a Gentle breeze and fair weather. In thepm I made a little excursion along the Sea Coast to the Southward, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. At our first entering the woods we saw 3 of the Natives, who made off as soon as they saw us; more of them were seen by others of our people, who likewise made off as soon as they found they were discover'd. In theam I went in the Pinnacle to the head of the bay, accompanied by Drs. Solander and Monkhouse, in order to Examine the Country, and to try to form some Connections with the Natives. In our way thither we met with 10 or 12 of them fishing, each in a Small Canoe, who retir'd into Shoald water upon our approach. Others again we saw at the first place we landed at, who took to their Canoes, and fled before we came near them; after this we took Water, and went almost to the head of the inlet, were we landed and Travel'd some distance in land. We found the face of the Country much the same as I have before described, but the land much richer for instead of sand I found in many places a deep black soil, which we thought was Capable of producing any kind of grain. At present it produceth, besides Timber, as fine Meadow as ever was seen; however, we found it not all like this, some few places were very rocky, but this, I believe, to be uncommon. The stone is sandy, and very proper for building, etc. After we had sufficiently examin'd this part we return'd to the Boat, and seeing some Smoke and Canoes at another part we went thither, in hopes of meeting with the people, but they made off as we approached. There were 6 Canoes and 6 small fires near the Shore, and Muscles roasting upon them, and a few Oysters laying near; from this we conjectured that there had been just 6 people, who had been out each in his Canoe picking up the Shell fish, and come a Shore to eat them, where each had made his fire to dress them by. We tasted of their Cheer, and left them in return Strings of beads, etc. The day being now far spent, we set out on our return to the Ship.

Friday, May 4th 1770 Winds N, serene weather. Upon my return to the Ship in the evening I found that none of the Natives had Appear'd near the Watering place, but about 20 of them

had been fishing in their Canoes at no great distance from us. In theam, as the Wind would not permit us to sail, I sent out some parties into the Country to try to form some Connections with the Natives. One of the midshipmen met with a very old man and Woman and 2 Small Children; they were Close to the Water side, where several more were in their Canoes gathering of Shell fish, and he, being alone, was afraid to make any stay with the 2 old People IE he should be discover'd by those in the Canoes. He gave them a bird he had Shott, which they would not Touch; neither did they speak one word, but seem'd to be much frightned. They were quite Naked; even the Woman had nothing to cover her nudities. Dr. Monkhouse and another Man being in the Woods, not far from the watering place, discover'd 6 more of the Natives, who at first seem'd to wait his coming; but as he was going up to them he had a dart thrown at him out of a Tree, which narrowly escaped him. As soon as the fellow had thrown the dart he descended the Tree and made off, and with him all the rest, and these were all that were met with in the Course of this day.

Saturday, May 5th 1770 In thepm I went with a party of Men over to the N Shore, and while some hands were hauling the Sean, a party of us made an Excursion of 3 or 4 mi into the Country, or rather along the Sea Coast. We met with nothing remarkable; great part of the Country for some distance inland from the Sea Coast is mostly a barren heath, diversified with Marshes and Morasses. Upon our return to the Boat we found they had caught a great number of small fish, which the sailors call leather Jackets on account of their having a very thick skin; they are known in the W Indies. I had sent the Yawl in the morning to fish for Sting rays, who returned in the Evening with upwards of four hundred weight; one single one weigh'd 240 pounds Exclusive of the entrails. In theam, as the wind Continued N, I sent the Yawl again a fishing, and I went with a party of Men into the Country, but met with nothing extraordinary.

Sunday, May 6th 1770 In the evening the Yawl return'd from fishing, having Caught 2 Sting rays weighing near 600 pounds. The great quantity of plants Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander found in this place occasioned my giving it the Name of Botany Bay. It is situated in the Lat of 34° 0' S, Lon 208° 37' W. It is capacious, safe, and Commodious; it may be known by the land on the Sea Coast, which is of a pretty even and moderate height, Rather higher than it is inland, with steep rocky Cliffs next the Sea, and looks like a long Island lying close under the Shore. The Entrance of the Bay lies about the middle of this land. In coming from the Southward it is discover'd before you are abrE of it, which you cannot do in coming from the Northward; the entrance is little more than a Quarter of a mile broad, and lies in W-N-W. To sail into it keep the S shore on board until within a small bare Island, which lies close under the N Shore. Being within that Island the deepest of Water is on that side, 7, 6 and 5 fm a good way up; there is Shoald Water a good way off from the S Shore-from the inner S Point quite to the head of the harbour; but over towards the N and N-W Shore is a Channell of 12 or 14 feet at low Water, 3 or 4 lg up, to a place where there is 3 or 4 fm; but there I found very little fresh Water. We Anchor'd near the S Shore about a mile within the Entrance for the Conveniency of Sailing with a S wind and the getting of Fresh Water; but I afterwards found a very fine stream of fresh Water on the N shore in the first sandy Cove within the Island, before which the Ship might lay almost land locked, and wood for fuel may be got everywhere. Although wood is here in great plenty, yet there is very little Variety; the biggest trees are as large or larger than our Oaks in England, and grows a good deal like them, and Yields a reddish Gum; the wood itself is heavy, hard, and black like Lignum Vitae. Another sort that grows tall and Strait something like Pines-the wood of this is hard and Ponderous, and something of the Nature of America live Oak. These 2 are all the Timber trees I met with; there are a few sorts of Shrubs and several Palm Trees and Mangroves about the Head of the Harbour. The Country is woody, low, and flat as

far in as we could see, and I believe that the Soil is in general sandy. In the Wood are a variety of very beautiful birds, such as Cocatoos, Lorryquets, Parrots, etc., and crows Exactly like those we have in England. Water fowl is no less plenty about the head of the Harbour, where there is large flats of sand and Mud, on which they seek their food; the most of these were unknown to us, one sort especially, which was black and white, and as large as a Goose, but most like a Pelican. On the sand and Mud banks are Oysters, Muscles, Cockles, etc., which I believe are the Chief support of the inhabitants, who go into Shoald Water with their little Canoes and peck them out of the sand and Mud with their hands, and sometimes roast and Eat them in the Canoe, having often a fire for that purpose, as I suppose, for I know no other it can be for. The Natives do not appear to be numerous, neither do they seem to live in large bodies, but dispers'd in small parties along by the Water side. Those I saw were about as tall as Europeans, of a very dark brown Colour, but not black, nor had they woolly, frizled hair, but black and lank like ours. No sort of Cloathing or Ornaments were ever seen by any of us upon any one of them, or in or about any of their Hutts; from which I conclude that they never wear any. Some that we saw had their faces and bodies painted with a sort of White Paint or Pigment. Altho' I have said that shell fish is their Chief support, yet they catch other sorts of fish, some of which we found roasting on the fire the first time we landed; some of these they strike with Gigs, and others they catch with hook and line; we have seen them strike fish with gigs, and hooks and lines are found in their Hutts. Sting rays, I believe, they do not eat, because I never saw the IE remains of one near any of their Hutts or fire places. However, we could know but very little of their Customs, as we never were able to form any Connections with them; they had not so much as touch'd the things we had left in their Hutts on purpose for them to take away. During our stay in this Harbour I caused the English Colours to be display'd ashore every day, and an inscription to be cut out upon one of the Trees near the Watering place, setting forth the Ship's Name, Date, etc. [Off Port Jackson, New S Wales.] Having seen everything this place afforded, we, at daylight in the morning, weigh'd with a light breeze at N-W, and put to Sea, and the wind soon after coming to the Southward we steer'd along shore N-N-E, and at Noon we were by observation in the Lat of  $33^{\circ} 50'$  S, about 2 or 3 mi from the Land, and abrE of a Bay, wherein there appear'd to be safe Anchorage, which I called Port Jackson. It lies 3 lg to the Northward of Botany Bay. I had almost forgot to mention that it is high water in this Bay at the full and change of the Moon about 8 o'Clock, and rises and falls upon a Perpendicular about 4 or 5 feet.

Monday, May 7th 1770 Little wind, S, and Serene pleasant Weather. In thepm found the Variation by several Azimuths to be  $8^{\circ}$  E; at sunset the Nermost land in sight bore N  $26^{\circ}$  E; and some broken land that appear'd to form a bay bore N  $40^{\circ}$  W, distant 4 lg. This Bay I named Broken bay, Lat  $33^{\circ} 36'$  S. We steer'd along shore N-N-E all night at the distance of about 3 lg from the land, having from 32 to 36 fm, hard sandy bottom. A little after sun rise I took several Azimuths with 4 Needles belonging to the Azimuth Compass, the mean result of which gave the Variation of  $7^{\circ} 56'$  E. At Noon we were by observation in the Lat of  $33^{\circ} 22'$  S, and about 3 lg from the land, the Nermost part of which in sight bore N  $19^{\circ}$  E. Some pretty high land which projected out in 3 bluff Points, and occasioned my calling it Cape 3 Points (Lat  $33^{\circ} 33'$  S), bore S-W, distant 5 lg; Lon made from Botany Bay  $0^{\circ} 19'$  E.

Tuesday, May 8th 1770 Variable Light Airs and Clear weather. In thepm saw some smooks upon the Shore, and in the Evening found the Variation to be  $8^{\circ} 25'$  E; at this time we were about 2 or 3 mi from the land, and had 28 fm Water. Our situation at Noon was nearly the same as Yesterday, having advanced not one Step to the Northward.

Wednesday, May 9th 1770 Winds N; most part a fresh breeze, with which we stood off Shore until 12 at Night. At the distance of 5 lg from the land had 70 fm, at the distance of 6 lg 80 fm, which is the Extent of the Soundings, for at the Distance of 10 lg off we had no ground with 150 fm. Stood in Shore until 8 o'Clockam, and hardly fetched Cape Three Points; having a little wind at N-W by N, we tack'd, and stood off until Noon, at which Time we Tack'd with the wind at N-N-E, being then in the Lat of 33° 37' S, Cape Three Points bearing N W by W, distance 4 lg.

Thursday, May 10th 1770 In thepm, had the wind at N-E by N, with which we stood in Shore until near 4 o'Clock, when we Tack'd in 23 fm Water, being about a mile from the land, and as much to the Southward of Cape 3 Points. In the night the wind veer'd to N-W and W, and in the morning to S-W. Having the advantage of a light Moon, we made the best of our way along shore to the Northward. At Noon we were by observation in the Lat of 32° 53' S, and Lon 208° 0' W, and about 2 lg from the land, which extended from N 41° E to S 41° W. A small round rock or Island, laying close under the land, bore S 82° W, distance 3 or 4 lg. At sunrise in the Morning found the Variation to be 8° E. In the Lat of 33° 2' S, a little way inland, is a remarkable hill, that is shaped like the Crown of a Hatt, which we past about 9 o'Clock in the forenoon.

Friday, May 11th 1770 Winds S in the day, and in the night W; a Gentle breeze and Clear weather. At 4pm past, at the distance of one mile, a low rocky point which I named Point Stephens (Lat 32° 45'); on the N side of this point is an inlet which I called Port Stephens (Lat 32° 40'; Lon 207° 51'), that appear'd to me from the Masthead to be shelter'd from all Winds. At the Entrance lay 3 Small Islands, 2 of which are of a Tolerable height, and on the Main, near the shore, are some high round hills that make at a distance like Islands. In passing this bay at the distance of 2 or 3 mi from the Shore our soundings were from 33 to 27 fm; from which I conjectured that there must be a sufficient depth of Water for Shipping in the bay. We saw several smokes a little way in the Country upon the flat land; by this I did suppose that there were Lagoons which afforded subsistence for the Natives, such as shell-fish, etc., for we as yet know nothing else they have to live upon. At 1/2 past 5, the Nermost land in sight bore N 36° E, and Point Stephens S-W, distant 4 lg, at which time we took in our Steerings, and run under an Easey sail all night until 4am, when we made all sail; our soundings in the night were from 48 to 62 fm, at the distance of between 3 and 4 lg from the land. At 8 we were abrE of a high point of Land, which made in 2 Hillocks; this point I called Cape Hawke (Lat 32° 14' S, Lon 207° 30' W). It bore from us at this time W distant 8 mi, and the same time the Nermost land in sight bore N 6° E, and appear'd high and like an Island. At Noon this land bore N 8° E, the Nermost land in sight N 13° E, and Cape Hawke S 37° W. Lat in per Observation 32° 2' S, which was 12 mi to the Southward of that given by the Log, which I do suppose to be owing to a Current setting that way. Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon was first N-E by E, 27 mi, then N 10° E, 37 mi; Lon in 207° 20' W; Variation per morning Amplitude and Azimuth 9° 10' E.

Saturday, May 12th 1770 Winds S, a Gentle breeze in thepm As we run along Shore we saw several smokes a little way in land from the Sea, and one upon the Top of a hill, which was the first we have seen upon elevated ground since we have been upon the Coast. At sunset we were in 23 fm, and about a League and a half from the land, the Nermost part of which we had in sight bore N 13° E; and 3 remarkable large high hills lying Contiguous to each other, and not far from the shore, bore N-N-W. As these Hills bore some resemblance to each other we called them the 3 Brothers. We steer'd N-E by N all Night, having from 27 to 67 fm, from 2 to 5 and 6

lg from the Land, and at day light we steer'd N for the Nermost land we had in sight. At noon we were 4 lg from the Land, and by observation in the Lat of  $31^{\circ} 18' S$ , which was 15 mi to the Southward of that given by the Log. Our Course and distance made good since Yesterday noon was  $N 24^{\circ} E$ , 48 mi. Lon  $206^{\circ} 58' W$ ; several smokes seen a little way in land.

Sunday, May 13th 1770 In thepm stood in shore with the Wind at N-E until 6, at which time we Tack'd, being about 3 or 4 mi from the land, and in 24 fm. Stood off shore with a fresh breeze at N and N-N-W until midnight, then Tack'd, being in 118 fm and 8 lg from the Land. At 3am the wind veer'd to the Westward, and we Tack'd and stood to the Northward. At noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $30^{\circ} 43' S$ , and Lon  $206^{\circ} 45' W$ , and about 3 or 4 lg from the Land, the Nermost part of which bore from us  $N 13^{\circ} W$ ; and a point or head land, on which were fires that Caused a great Quantity of smoke, which occasioned my giving it the name of Smokey Cape, bore S-W, distant 4 lg; it is moderately high land. Over the pitch of the point is a round hillock; within it 2 others, much higher and larger, and within them very low land (Lat  $30^{\circ} 51'$ , Lon  $206^{\circ} 5' W$ ). Besides the smoke seen upon this Cape we saw more in several places along the Coast. The observed Lat was only 5 mi to the Southward of the Log.

Monday, May 14th 1770 At thepm it fell Calm, and continued so about an hour, when a breeze sprung up at N-E, with which we stood in shore until 6 o'Clock, when, being in 30 fm and 3 or 4 mi from the land, we Tack'd, having the wind at N-N-W. At this time Smoky Cape bore  $S 3/4^{\circ} W$ , distant about 5 lg, and the Nermost land in sight  $N 1/4^{\circ} E$ . At 8 we made a Trip in shore for an hour; after this the wind came off Shore, with which we stood along shore to the Northward, having from 30 to 21 fm, at the distance of 4 or 5 mi from the Land. At 5am the Wind veer'd to N, and blow'd a fresh breeze, attended with Squalls and dark cloudy weather. At 8 it began to Thunder and Rain, which lasted about an Hour, and then fell Calm, which gave us an opportunity to sound, and found 86 fm, being about 4 or 5 lg from the Land; after this we got the wind S, a fresh breeze and fair weather, and we Steer'd N by W for the Nermost land we had in sight. At noon we were about 4 lg from the land, and by observation in the Lat of  $30^{\circ} 22' S$ , which was 9 mi to the Southward of that given by the Log. Lon in  $206^{\circ} 39' W$ , and Course and distance made good since Yesterday Noon  $N 16^{\circ} E$ , 22 mi; some Tolerable high land near the Shore bore W. As I have not mentioned the Aspect of the Country since we left Botany Bay, I shall now describe it as it hath at different times appear'd to us. As we have advanced to the Northward the land hath increased in height, in so much that in this Lat it may be called a hilly Country; but between this and Botany Bay it is diversified with an agreeable variety of Hills, Ridges, and Valleys, and large plains all Cloathed with wood, which to all appearance is the same as I have before mentioned, as we could discover no Visible alteration in the Soil. Near the shore the land is in general low and Sandy, except the points which are rocky, and over many of them are pretty high hills, which at first rising out of the Water appear like a Island.

Tuesday, May 15th 1770 Fresh Gales at S-W, W-S-W, and S-S-W. In thepm had some heavy Squalls, attended with rain and hail, which obliged us to close reef our Topsails. Between 2 and 4 we had some small rocky Islands between us and the land; the Sermost lies in the Lat of  $30^{\circ} 10'$ , the Nermost in  $29^{\circ} 58'$ , and about 2 lg or more from the land; we sounded, and had 33 fm about 12 mi without this last island. At 8 we brought too until 10, at which time we made sail under our Topsails. Having the Advantage of the Moon we steer'd along shore N and N by E, keeping at the distance of about 3 lg from the land having from 30 to 25 fm. As soon as it was daylight we made all the sail we could, having the Advantage of a fresh Gale and fair weather. At 9, being about a League from the Land, we saw upon it people and Smoke in Several



places. At noon we were by observation in the Lat of  $28^{\circ} 39' S$ , and Lon  $206^{\circ} 27' W$ ; Course and distance saild since Yesterday at Noon N  $6^{\circ} 45' E$ , 104 mi. A Tolerable high point of land bore N-W by W, distant 3 mi; this point I named Cape Byron (Lat  $28^{\circ} 37' 30$  seconds S, Lon  $206^{\circ} 30' W$ ). It may be known by a remarkable sharp peaked Mountain lying in land N-W by W from it. From this point the land Trends N  $13^{\circ} W$ . Inland it is pretty high and hilly, but near the Shore it is low; to the Southward of the Point the land is low, and Tolerable level.

Wednesday, May 16th 1770 Winds S, a fresh Gale, with which we steer'd N along shore until sunset, at which time we discover'd breakers ahead, and on our Larboard bow, being at this time in 20 fm, and about 5 mi from the land. Haul'd off E until 8, at which time we had run 8 mi, and had increased our Depth of Water to 44 fm. We then brought too with her head to the Eastward, and lay on this Tack until 10 o'Clock, when, having increased our Soundings to 78 fm, we wore and lay with her head in shore until 5 o'Clockam, when we made Sail. At daylight we were surprized by finding ourselves farther to the Southward than we were in the evening, and yet it had blown strong all night S. We now saw the breakers again within us, which we passed at the distance of about 1 League; they lay in the Lat of  $28^{\circ} 8' S$ , and stretch off E 2 lg from a point under which is a small Island; their situation may always be found by the peaked mountain before mentioned, which bears S-W by W from them, and on their account I have named it Mount Warning. It lies 7 or 8 lg in land in the Lat of  $28^{\circ} 22' S$ . The land is high and hilly about it, but it is Conspicuous enough to be distinguished from everything else. The point off which these shoals lay I have named Point Danger; to the Northward of it the land, which is low, Trends N-W by N; but we soon found that it did not keep that direction long before it turn'd again to the Northward. At Noon we were about 2 lg from the land, and by observation in the Lat of  $27^{\circ} 46'$ , which was 17 mi to the Southward of the Log; Lon  $206^{\circ} 26' W$ . Mount Warning bore S  $20^{\circ} W$ , distant 14 lg; the Nermost land in sight bore N. Our Course and distance made good since yesterday N 1 degree  $45' W$ , 53 mi.

Thursday, May 17th 1770 Winds S, mostly a fresh breeze, with which in thepm we steer'd along shore N  $3/4 E$ , at the distance of about 2 lg off. Between 4 and 5 we discover'd breakers on our Larboard bow; our Depth of Water at this time was 37 fm. At sunset the Nermost land in sight bore N by W, the breakers N-W by W, distant 4 mi, and the Nermost land set at Noon, which form'd a Point, I named Point Lookout, bore W, distant 5 or 6 mi (Lat  $27^{\circ} 6'$ ). On the N side of this point the shore forms a wide open bay, which I have named Morton's Bay, in the Bottom of which the land is so low that I could but just see it from the Topmast head. The breakers I have just mentioned lies about 3 or 4 mi from Point Lookout; at this time we had a great Sea from the Southward, which broke prodigious high upon them. Stood on N-N-E until 8, when, being past the breakers, and having Deepned our water to 52 fm, we brought too until 12 o'Clock, then made sail to the N-N-E. At 4am we sounded, and had 135 fm. At daylight I found that we had in the night got much farther to the Northward and from the Shore than I expected from the Course we steer'd, for we were at IE 6 or 7 lg off, and therefore hauled in N-W by W, having the Advantage of a Fresh Gale at S-S-W. The Nermost land seen last night bore from us at this time S-S-W, distant 6 lg. This land I named Cape Morton, it being the N point of the Bay of the same Name (Lat  $26^{\circ} 56' S$ , Lon  $206^{\circ} 28'$ ). From Cape Morton the Land Trends away W, further than we could see, for there is a small space where we could see no land; some on board were of opinion that there is a River there because the Sea looked paler than usual. Upon sounding we found 34 fm fine white sandy bottom, which alone is Sufficient change, the apparent Colour of Sea Water, without the Assistance of Rivers. The land need only to be low here, as it is in a Thousand other places upon the Coast, to have made it impossible for us to have seen it at the distance we were off. Be this as it may, it was a point

that could not be clear'd up as we had the wind; but should any one be desirous of doing it that may come after me, this place may always be found by 3 Hills which lay to the Northward of it in the Lat of  $26^{\circ} 53'$  S. These hills lay but a little way inland, and not far from Each other; they are very remarkable on account of their Singular form of Elivation, which very much resembles Glass Houses, which occasioned my giving them that Name. The Nermost of the 3 is the highest and largest. There are likewise several other peaked hills inland to the Northward of these, but they are not near so remarkable. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $26^{\circ} 28'$  S, which was 10 mi to the Northward of the Log; a Circumstance that hath not hapned since we have been upon the Coast before. Our Course and distance run since Yesterday noon was N by W 80 mi, which brought us into the Lon of  $206^{\circ} 46'$ . At this time we were about 2 or 3 lg from the land, and in 24 fm Water; a low bluff point, which was the Southern point of an open Sandy bay, bore N  $52^{\circ}$  W, distant 3 lg, and the Nermost point of land in sight bore N  $1/4$  E. Several Smokes seen to-day, and some pretty far inland.

Friday, May 18th 1770 In steering along shore at the distance of 2 lg off our Soundings was from 24 to 32 fm Sandy bottom. At 6pm the N point set at Noon bore N  $1/4$  W; distant 4 lg; at 10 it bore N-W by W  $1/2$  W, and as we had seen no land to the Northward of it we brought too, not knowing which way to steer, having at this time but little wind, and continued so for the most part of the night. At 2pm we made sail with the wind at S-W, and at daylight saw the land extending as far as N  $3/4$  E. The point set last night bore S-W by W, distant 3 or 4 lg; I have named it Double Island Point, on account of its figure (Lat  $25^{\circ} 58'$  S, Lon  $206^{\circ} 48'$  W). The land within this point is of a moderate and pretty equal height, but the point itself is of such an unequal Height that it looks like 2 Small Islands laying under the land; it likewise may be known by the white Clifts on the N side of it. Here the land trends to the N-W, and forms a large open bay, in the bottom of which the land appear'd to be very low, in so much that we could but just see it from the Deck. In crossing the mouth of this bay our Depth of Water was from 30 to 32 fm, a white sandy bottom. At Noon we were about 3 lg from the Land, and in the Lat of  $25^{\circ} 34'$  S, Lon  $206^{\circ} 45'$  W; Double Island Point bore S  $3/4$  W, and the Nermost land in sight N  $3/4$  E. The land hereabouts, which is of a moderate height, appears more barren than any we have yet seen on this Coast, and the Soil more sandy, there being several large places where nothing else is to be seen; in other places the woods look to be low and Shrubby, nor did we see many signs of inhabitants.

Saturday, May 19th 1770 In thepm had Variable light Airs, and Calms; in the night had a light breeze from the land, which in theam veer'd to S-W and S-S-W. In the evening found the Variation to be  $8^{\circ} 36'$  E, and in the Morning  $8^{\circ} 20'$ ; as we had but little wind we kept to the Northward all night, having from 23 to 27 fm fine sandy bottom, at the Distance of 2 or 3 lg from the Land. At Noon we were about 4 mi from it, and by observation in the Lat of  $25^{\circ} 4'$ , and in this situation had but 13 fm; the Nermost land in Sight bore N  $21^{\circ}$  W, distant 8 mi; our Course and distance saild since yesterday at Noon was N  $13^{\circ} 15'$  E, 31 mi.

Sunday, May 20th 1770 Winds S, Gentle breezes. At 10pm we passed, at the distance of 4 mi, having 17 fm, a black bluff head or point of land, on which a number of the Natives were Assembled, which occasioned my naming it Indian Head; Lat  $25^{\circ} 0'$  N by W, 4 mi from this head, is another much like it. From this last the land Trends a little more to the Westward, and is low and Sandy next the Sea, for what may be behind it I know not; if land, it must be all low, for we could see no part of it from the Mast head. We saw people in other places besides the one I have mentioned; some Smokes in the day and fires in the Night. Having but little wind all Night, we kept on to the Northward, having from 17 to 34 fm, from 4 mi to 4 lg from the Land,

the Nermost part of which bore from us at daylight W-S-W, and seem'd to End in a point, from which we discover'd a Reef stretching out to the Northward as far as we could see, being, at this time, in 18 fm; for we had, before it was light, hauld our Wind to the Westward, and this course we continued until we had plainly discover'd breakers a long way upon our Lee Bow, which seem'd to Stretch quite home to the land. We then Edged away N-W and N-N-W, along the E side of the Shoal, from 2 to 1 mi off, having regular, even Soundings, from 13 to 7 fm; fine sandy bottom. At Noon we were, by Observation, in the Lat of  $24^{\circ} 26'$  S, which was 13 mi to the Northward of that given by the Log. The extream point of the Shoal we judged to bear about N-W of us; and the point of land above-mentioned bore S  $3/4$  W, distant 20 mi. This point I have named Sandy Cape, on account of 2 very large white Patches of Sand upon it. It is of a height Sufficient to be seen 12 lg in Clear weather (Lat  $24^{\circ} 46'$ , Lon  $206^{\circ} 51'$  W); from it the Land trends away W-S-W and S-W as far as we could see.

Monday, May 21st 1770 In thepm we kept along the E side of the Shoal until 2, when, judging there was water for us over, I sent a Boat a Head to sound, and upon her making the Signal for more than 5 fm we hauld our wind and stood over the Tail of it in 6 fm. At this time we were in the Lat of  $24^{\circ} 22'$  S, and Sandy Cape bore S  $1/2$  E, distant 8 lg; but the Direction of the Shoal is nearest N-N-W and S-S-E. At this time we had 6 fm; the boat which was not above  $1/4$  of a mile to the Southward of us had little more than 5 fm. From 6 fm we had the next Cast, 13, and then 20 immediately, as fast as the Man could heave the Lead; from this I did suppose that the W side of the Shoal is pretty steep too, whereas on the other side we had gradual Soundings from 13 to 7 fm. This Shoal I called Break Sea Spit, because now we had smooth water, whereas upon the whole Coast to the Southward of it we had always a high Sea or swell from the S-E. At 6, the Land of Sandy Cape extending from S  $17^{\circ}$  E to S  $27^{\circ}$  E, distance 8 lg; Depth of Water, 23 fm, which depth we kept all Night, as we stood to the Westward with light Airs from the Southward; but between 12 and 4am we had it Calm, after which a Gentle breeze sprung up at S, with which we still kept on upon a Wind to the Westward. At 7 we Saw from the Masthead the Land of Sandy Cape bearing S-E  $1/2$  E, distance 12 or 13 lg. At 9, we discover'd from the Mast head land to the Westward, and soon after saw smooke upon it. Our depth of Water was now decreased to 17 fm, and by Noon to 13, at which time we were by observation in the Lat of  $24^{\circ} 28'$  S, and about 7 lg from the Land, which extended from S by W to W-N-W. Lon made from Sandy Cape  $0^{\circ} 45'$  W.

For these few days past we have seen at times a sort of Sea fowl we have no where seen before that I remember; they are of the sort called Boobies. Before this day we seldom saw more than 2 or 3 at a time, and only when we were near the land. Last night a small flock of these birds passed the Ship and went away to the N-W, and this morning from  $1/2$  an hour before sun rise to half an hour after, flights of them were continually coming from the N-N-W, and flying to the S-S-E, and not one was seen to fly in any other direction. From this we did suppose that there was a Lagoon, River, or Inlet of Shallow Water to the Southward of us, where these birds resorted to in the day to feed, and that not very far to the Northward lay some Island, where they retir'd too in the night.

Tuesday, May 22nd 1770 In thepm had a Gentle breeze at S-E, with which we stood in for the land S-W until 4, when, being in the Lat of  $24^{\circ} 36'$  S, and about 2 lg from land, in 9 fm, we bore away along shore N-W by W; at the same time we could see the land extending to the S-S-E about 8 lg. Near the Sea the land is very low, but inland are some moderately high hills, and the whole appeared to be thickly Cloathed with wood. In running along shore we shoalded our Water from 9 to 7 fm, and at one time had but 6 fm, which determined me to Anchor for the

Night, and accordingly at 8 o'Clock we came too in 8 fm, fine gravelly bottom, about 5 mi from the land. This evening we saw a Water Snake, and 2 or 3 evenings ago one lay under the Ship's Stern some time; this was about 1 1/2 Yards in length, and was the first we had seen. At 6am weighed with a Gentle breeze S, and Steer'd N-W 1/4 W, edging in for the land until we got Within 2 mi of it, having from 7 to 11 fm; we then steer'd N-N-W as the land laid. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of 24° 19' S; Lon made from Sandy Cape 1 degree 14' W.

Wednesday, May 23rd 1770 Continued our Course alongshore at the distance of about 2 mi off, having from 12 to 9, 8 and 7 fm, until 5 o'Clock, at which time we were abtE of the S point of a Large open Bay, wherein I intended to Anchor. Accordingly we hauld in Close upon a Wind, and sent a boat ahead to sound; after making some Trips we Anchored at 8 o'Clock in 5 fm, a Sandy bottom. The S point of the bay bore E 3/4 S, distant 2 mi; the N point N-W 1/4 N, about 2 mi from the shore, in the bottom of the bay. Last night, some time in the middle watch, a very extraordinary affair hapned to Mr. Orton, my Clerk. He having been drinking in the evening, some Malicious person or persons in the Ship took Advantage of his being Drunk, and cut off all the Cloaths from off his back; not being satisfied with this, they some time after went into his Cabin and cut off a part of both his Ears as he lay a Sleep in his Bed. The person whom he suspected to have done this was Mr. Magra, one of the midshipmen; but this did not appear to me. Upon enquiry, however, as I had been told that Magra had once or twice before this in their drunken Frolicks cut off his cloaths, and had been heard to say (as I was told) that if it was not for the Law he would Murder him, these things consider'd, induced me to think that Magra was not Altogether innocent. I therefore for the present dismiss'd him the Quarter deck, and Suspended him from doing any duty in the Ship, he being one of those Gentlemen frequently found on board King's Ships that can very well be spared; besides, it was necessary in me to show my immediate resentment against the person on whom the suspicion fell, IE they should not have stop'd here. With respect to Mr. Orton, he is a man not without faults; yet from all the inquiry I could make, it evidently appear'd to me that so far from deserving such Treatment, he had not designed injuring any person in the Ship; so that I do-and shall always-look upon him as an injured man. Some reasons, however, might be given why this misfortune came upon him, in which he himself was in some measure to blame; but as this is only conjecture, and would tend to fix it upon some people in the Ship, whom I would fain believe would hardly be guilty of such an Action, I shall say nothing about it, unless I shall hereafter discover the Offenders, which I shall take every method in my power to do, for I look upon such proceedings as highly dangerous in such Voyages as this, and the greatest insult that could be offer'd to my Authority in this Ship, as I have always been ready to hear and redress every complaint that have been made against any Person in the Ship.

In theam I went ashore with a party of men in order to Examine the Country, accompanied by Mr. Banks and the other Gentlemen; we landed a little within the S point of the Bay, where there is a Channel leading into a large Lagoon. The first thing that I did was to sound and examine the Channell, in which I found 3 fm, until I got about a mile up it, where I met with a Shoal, whereon was little more than one fathom; being over this I had 3 fm again. The Entrance into this Channell lies close to the S point of this Bay, being form'd on the E by the Shore, and on the W by a large Spit of sand; it is about a 1/4 of a mile broad, and lies in S by W; here is room for a few Ships to lay very secure, and a small Stream of Fresh Water. After this I made a little excursion into the Woods while some hands made 3 or 4 hauls with the Sean, but caught not above a dozen very small fish. By this time the flood was made, and I imbarqued in the Boats in order to row up the Lagoon; but in this I was hindred by meeting everywhere with Shoal Water. As yet we had seen no people, but saw a great deal of Smook

up and on the W side of the Lagoon, which was all too far off for us to go by land, excepting one; this we went to and found 10 Small fires in a very small Compass, and some Cockle Shells laying by them, but the people were gone. On the windward or S side of one of the fires was stuck up a little Bark about a foot and a half high, and some few pieces lay about in other places; these we concluded were all the covering they had in the Night, and many of them, I firmly believe, have not this, but, naked as they are, sleep in the open air. Tupia, who was with us, observed that they were Taata Eno's; that is, bad or poor people. The Country is visibly worse than at the last place we were at; the soil is dry and Sandy, and the woods are free from underwoods of every kind; here are of the same sort of Trees as we found in Bottany Harbour, with a few other sorts. One sort, which is by far the most Numerous sort of any in the Woods, grow Something like birch; the Bark at first sight looks like birch bark, but upon examination I found it to be very different, and so I believe is the wood; but this I could not examine, as having no axe or anything with me to cut down a Tree. About the Skirts of the Lagoon grows the true Mangrove, such as are found in the W Indies, and which we have not seen during the Voyage before; here is likewise a sort of a palm Tree, which grows on low, barren, sandy places in the S Sea Islands. All, or most of the same sort, of Land and Water fowl as we saw at Botany Harbour we saw here; besides these we saw some Bustards, such as we have in England, one of which we kill'd that weighed 17 1/2 pounds, which occasioned my giving this place the Name of Bustard Bay (Lat 24° 4', Lon 208° 22' W); we likewise saw some black and white Ducks. Here are plenty of small Oysters sticking to the Rocks, Stones, and Mangrove Trees, and some few other shell fish, such as large Muscles, Pearl Oysters, Cockles, etc. I measured the perpendicular height of the last Tide, and found it to be 8 foot above low water mark, and from the time of low water to-day I found that it must be high Water at the full and Change of the Moon at 8 o'Clock.

Thursday, May 24th 1770 In thepm I was employ'd ashore in the Transactions before related; at 4am we weighed with a Gentle breeze at S, and made sail out of the Bay. In standing out our soundings were from 5 to 15 fm; when in this last Depth we were abrE of the N Point, and being daylight we discover'd breakers stretching out from it about N-N-E, 2 or 3 mi; at the Outermost point of them is a Rock just above Water. In passing these rocks at the distance of 1/2 a mile we had from 15 to 20 fm; being past them, we hauld along shore W-N-W for the farthest land we had in sight. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of 23° 52' S; the N part of Bustard Bay bore S 62° E, distance 10 mi, and the Nermost land in sight N 60° W. Lon in 208° 37' W, distance from the nearest shore 6 mi; in this situation had 14 fm water.

Friday, May 25th 1770 In thepm had it calm until 5, when a light breeze sprung up at S-E, and we steer'd N-W as the land lay until 10, then brought too, having had all along 14 and 15 fm. At 5am we made sail; at daylight the Nermost point of the Main bore N 70° W, and soon after we saw more land making like Islands, bearing N-W by N; at 9 we were abrE of the point, distant from it 1 mile; Depth of Water 14 fm. I found this point to lay directly under the Tropic of Capricorn, and for that reason call it by that Name. Lon 209° 0' W. It is of a Moderate height, and looks white and barren, and may be known by some Islands which lie to the N-W of it, and some small Rocks one League S-E from it; on the W side of the Cape there appeared to be a Lagoon. On the 2 Spits which form the Entrance were a great Number of Pelicans; at IE, so I call them. The most Nermost land we could see bore from Cape Capricorn N 24° W, and appeared to be an Island; but the Main land Trended W by N 1/2 N, which Course we steer'd, having from 15 to 16 fm and from 6 to 9, a hard sandy bottom. At Noon our Lat by Observation was 23° 24' S; Cape Capricorn bore S 60° E, distance 2 lg; a small Island N by E 2 mi. In this Situation had 9 fm at the distance of 4 mi from the Main land, which is here low and Sandy

next the Sea, except the points which are moderately high and rocky; in land the Country is hilly, and affords but a very indifferent prospect.

Saturday, May 26th 1770 In the pm light breezes at E-S-E, with which we stood to the N-W until 4 o'Clock, when it fell calm, and soon after we Anchored in 12 fm. Cape Capricorn bearing S 54° E, distant 4 lg, having the Main land and Islands in a manner all around us. In the night we found the tide to rise and fall near 7 feet, and the flood to set to the Westward and Ebb to the Eastward; which is quite the reverse to what we found it when at Anchor to the Eastward of Bustard Bay. At 6am we weigh'd with the Wind at S, a Gentle breeze, and stood away to the N-W, between the Outermost range of Islands and the Main land, leaving several small Islands between us and the Latter, which we passed Close by. Our soundings was a little irregular, from 12 to 4 fm, which caused me to send a Boat ahead to sound. At noon we were about 3 mi from the Main, about the same distance from the Islands without us; our Lat by Observation was 23° 7' S, and Lon made from Cape Capricorn 18 mi W. The Main land in this Lat is tolerable high and Mountainous; and the Islands which lay off it are the most of them pretty high and of a Small Circuit, and have more the appearance of barrenness than fertility. We saw smokes a good way in land, which makes me think there must be a River, Lagoon, or Inlet, into the Country, and we passed 2 places that had the Appearance of such this morning; but our Depth of Water at that Time was too little to haul in for them, where I might expect to meet with less.

Sunday, May 27th 1770 We had not stood on to the Northward quite an hour before we fell into 3 fm, upon which I anchor'd, and Sent away the Master with 2 Boats to sound the Channell, which lay to LeEastward of us between the Nermost Island and the Main Land, which appear'd to me to be pretty broad; but I suspected that it was Shoal, and so it was found, for the Master reported to me upon his return that he found in many places only 2 1/2 fm, and where we lay at Anchor we had only 16 feet, which was not 2 feet more than the Ship drew. In the Evening the wind veer'd to E-N-E, which gave us an opportunity to stretch 3 or 4 mi back the way we Came before the Wind Shifted to S, and obliged us again to Anchor in 6 fm. At 5 o'Clock in theam I sent away the Master with 2 Boats to search for a Passage out between the Islands, while the Ship got under sail. As soon as it was light the Signal was made by the boats of their having found a Passage, upon which we hoisted in the Boats, and made sail to the Northward as the land lay; soundings from 9 to 15 fm, having still Some small Islands without us. At noon we were about 2 lg from the Main Land, and by observation in the Lat of 22° 53' S, Lon made from Cape Capricorn 0° 20' W. At this time the Nermost point of Land we had in sight bore N-N-W, distance 10 mi; this point I named Cape Manyfold, from the Number of high Hills over it; Lat 22° 43' S; it lies N 20° W, distant 17 lg from Cape Capricorn. Between them the shore forms a large Bay, which I call'd Keppel Bay, and the Islands which lay in and Off it are known by the same name; in this Bay is good Anchorage, where there is a sufficient depth of Water; what refreshment it may afford for Shipping I know not. We caught no fish here, notwithstanding we were at Anchor; it can hardly be doubted but what it afforded fresh Water in several places, as both Mainland and Islands are inhabited. We saw smokes by day and fires in the night upon the Main, and people upon one of the Islands.

Monday, May 28th 1770 Winds at S-S-E, a fresh breeze. At 3 o'Clock in thepm we passed Cape Manifold, from which the Land Trends N-N-W. The land of this Cape is tolerable high, and riseth in hills directly from the Sea; it may be known by 3 Islands laying off it, one near the Shore, and the other 2 Eight mi out at Sea; the one of these is low and flat, and the other high and round. At 6 o'Clock we shortned sail and brought too; the Nermost part of the Main we had

in sight bore N-W, and some Islands lying off it bore N 31° W; our soundings since Noon were from 20 to 25 fm, and in the Night 30 and 34 fm. At day light we made Sail, Cape Manifold bearing S by E, distance 8 lg, and the Islands set last night in the same directions, distance from us 4 mi. The farthest point of the Main bore N 67° W, distant 22 mi; but we could see several Islands to the Northward of this direction. At 9 o'Clock we were abtE of the above point, which I named Cape Townshend (Lat 22° 13', Lon 209° 48' W); the land of this Cape is of a moderate and pretty even height, and is more barren than woody. Several Islands lay to the Northward of it, 4 or 5 lg out at Sea. 3 or 4 lg to the S-E the Shore forms a bay, in the bottom of which there appeared to be an inlet or Harbour to the Westward of the Coast, and Trends S-W 1/2 S; and these form a very large Bay, which turns away to the Eastward, and probably communicates with the Inlet above mentioned, and by that Means makes the land of the Cape an Island. As soon as we got round the Cape we hauld our wind to the Westward in order to get within the Islands which lay scatter'd up and down in this bay in great number, and extend out to Sea as far as we could see from the Masthead; how much farther will hardly be in my power to determine; they are as Various in their height and Circuit as they are numerous. We had not stood long upon a Wind before we meet with Shoal Water, and was obliged to Tack about to avoid it; after which I sent a boat ahead, and we bore away W by N, leaving many small Islands, Rocks, and Shoals between us and the Main, and a number of Large Islands without us; soundings from 14 to 17 fm, Sandy Bottom. A little before noon the boat made the Signal for meeting with Shoal Water, upon which we hauld close upon a Wind to the Eastward, but suddenly fell into 3 1/4 fm water, upon which we immediately let go an Anchor, and brought the Ship up with all sails standing, and had then 4 fm Coarse sandy bottom. We found here a strong Tide setting to the N-W by W 1/2 W, at the rate of between 2 and 3 mi an Hour, which was what Carried us so quickly upon the Shoal. Our Lat by Observation was 22° 8' S; Cape Townshend bore E 16° S, distant 13 mi, and the Wermost part of the Main Land in sight W 3/4 N, having a number of Islands in sight all round us.

Tuesday, May 29th 1770 Fresh gales between the S-S-E and E-S-E, Hazy weather, with some showers of rain. In thepm, having sounded about the Ship, and found that their was Sufficient Water for her over the Shoal, we at 3 o'clock weigh'd and made Sail, and stood to the Westward as the Land lay, having first sent a boat ahead to sound. At 6 we Anchor'd in 10 fm, Sandy bottom, about 2 mi from the Main Land, the Wermost part of which bore W-N-W, having still a Number of Islands in sight a long way without us. At 5am I sent away the Master with 2 Boats to sound the Entrance of an inlet, which bore from us W, distance about 1 League, into which I intended to go with the Ship to wait a few days, until the Moon increased, and in the meantime to examine the Country. By such time as we had got the Ship under Sail the Boats made the Signal for Anchorage, upon which we stood in with the Ship, and Anchor'd in 5 fm, about a League within the Entrance of the inlet, which we judged to be a River running a Good way inland, as I observed the Tides to flow and Ebb something considerable. I had some thoughts of laying the Ship a Shore to Clean her bottom. With this view both the Master and I went to look for a Convenient place for that purpose, and at the same time to look for fresh Water, not one drop of which we could find, but met with several places where a Ship might be laid ashore with safety.

Wednesday, May 30th 1770 In thepm I went again in search of Fresh Water, but had no better success than before; wherefore I gave over all thoughts of laying the Ship a Shore, being resolved to spend as little time as possible in a place that was likely to afford us no sort of refreshment. But as I had observed from the Hills the inlet to run a good way in, I thought this a good time to penetrate into the Country to see a little of the inland parts. Accordingly I

prepared for making that Excursion in the morning, but the first thing I did was to get upon a pretty high Hill, which is at the N-W entrance of the inlet, before Sunrise, in order to take a view of the Sea Coast and Islands, etc., that lay off it, and to take their bearings, having the Azimuth Compass with me for that purpose, the Needle of which differ'd from its True position something very considerable, even above 30°, in some places more, and in other less, for I try'd it in several places. I found it differ in itself above 2 points in the space of about 14 feet. The loose stones which lay upon the Ground had no effect upon the Needle; I therefore concluded that it must be owing to Iron Ore upon the Hill, visible signs of which appeared not only here, but in several other places. As soon as I had done here I proceeded up the inlet. I set out with the first of the flood, and long before high water got about 8 lg up it; its breadth thus far was from 2 to 4 or 5 mi upon a S-W by S direction; but here it spread every way, and formed a Large lake, which communicated with the Sea to the N-W. I not only saw the Sea in this direction, but found the tide of flood coming strong in from the N-W. I likewise observ'd an Arm of this Lake extending to the Eastward, and it is not at all improbable but what it Communicates with the Sea in the bottom of the bay, which lies to the Westward of Cape Townshend. On the S side of the Lake is a ridge of pretty high hills, which I was desirous of going upon; but as the day was far spent and high water, I was afraid of being bewilder'd among the Shoals in the night, which promised to be none of the best, being already rainy, dirty weather, and therefore I made the best of my way to the Ship. In this little Excursion I saw only 2 people, and those at a distance, and are all that we have seen in this place, but we have met with several fire places, and seen smokes at a distance. This inlet, which I have named Thirsty Sound, by reason we could find no fresh Water, lies in the Lat of 22° 05' S, and Lon 210° 24 W; it may be known by a Group of small Islands Laying under the shore from 2 to 5 lg N-W from it. There is likewise another Group of Islands laying right before it between 3 and 4 lg out at Sea. Over each of the Points that form the Entrance is a pretty high, round Hill; that on the N-W is a Peninsula, surrounded by the Sea at high water; the distance from the one to the other is about 2 mi bold to both Shores. Here is good Anchoring in 7, 6, 5, and 4 fm water, and very Convenient places for laying a Ship ashore, where at Spring Tides the tides doth not rise less than 16 or 18 feet, and flows at full and Change of the Moon about 11 o'Clock. We met with no fresh water, or any other kind of refreshments whatever; we saw 2 Turtle, but caught none, nor no sort of Fish or wild fowl, except a few small land birds. Here are the same sort of Water Fowl as we saw in Botany Bay, and like them, so shy that it is hardly possible to get within shott of them. No signs of Fertility is to be seen upon the Land; the Soil of the up lands is mostly a hard, redish Clay, and produceth several sorts of Trees, such as we have seen before, and some others, and clear of all underwoods. All the low lands are mostly overrun with Mangroves, and at Spring tides overflow'd by the Sea; and I believe in the rainy Seasons here are large land floods, as we saw in many places Gullies, which seem'd to have been made by torrents of Water coming from the Adjacent hills, besides other Visible signs of the Water having been a Considerable height above the Common Spring Tides. Dr. Solander and I was upon a rising Ground up the inlet, which we thought had at one time or another been overflow'd by the Sea, and if so great part of the Country must at that time been laid under Water. Up in the lakes, or lagoons, I suppose, are shell fish, on which the few Natives subsist. We found Oysters sticking to most of the Rocks upon the Shore, which were so small, as not to be worth the picking off.

Thursday, May 31st 1770 Winds S and S-E; Dark, Hazey weather, with rain. In thepm, finding no one inducement to stay longer in this place, we at 6am Weighed and put to Sea, and stood to the N-W, having the Advantage of a fresh breeze at S-S-E. We kept without the Group of Islands which lay in Shore, and to the N-W of Thirsty Sound, as there appear'd to be no safe



passage between them and the Main; at the same time we had a number of Islands without us extending out to Sea as far as we could see; as we run in this direction our depth of Water was 10, 8 and 9 fm. At Noon the N-W point of Thirsty Sound, which I have named Pier head, bore S  $36^{\circ}$  E, distant 5 lg; the E point of the other inlet, which Communicates with the former, as I have before mentioned, bore S by W, distance  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lg, the Group of Islands above mentioned laying between us and the point. The farthest part of the Main in sight, on the other side of the inlet, bore N-W; our Lat by Observation was  $21^{\circ} 53'$  S.

Friday, June 1st 1770 At  $\frac{1}{2}$  an hour After Noon, upon the Boat we had ahead sounding making the Signal for Shoal Water, we hauld our wind to the N-E, having at that time 7 fm; the Next cast 5, and then 3, upon which we let go an Anchor, and brought the Ship up. The N-W point of Thirsty Sound, or Pier Head, bore S-E, distance 6 lg, being midway between the Islands which lies off the E point of the Western inlet and 3 Small Islands directly without them, it being now the first of the flood which we found to set N-W by W  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. After having sounded about the Shoal, on which we found not quite 3 fm, but without it deep water, we got under Sail, and hauld round the 3 Islands just mentioned, and came to an Anchor under the Lee of them in 15 fm, having at this time dark, hazey, rainy weather, which continued until 7 o'Clockam, at which time we got again under sail, and stood to the N-W with a fresh breeze at S-S-E and fair weather, having the Main land in Sight and a Number of Islands all round us, some of which lay out at Sea as far as we could See. The Western Inlet before mentioned, known in the Chart by the Name of Broad Sound, we had now all open. It is at IE 9 or 10 lg wide at the Entrance, with several Islands laying in and before, and I believe Shoals also, for we had very irregular Soundings, from 10 to 5 and 4 fm. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $21^{\circ} 29'$  S, and Lon made from Cape Townshend  $59^{\circ}$  W. A point of Land, which forms the N-W Entrance into Broad Sound, bore from us at this Time W, distance 3 lg; this Cape I have named Cape Palmerston (Lat  $21^{\circ} 27'$  S, Lon  $210^{\circ} 57'$  W). Between this Cape and Cape Townshend lies the Bay of Inlets, so named from the Number of Inlets, Creeks, etc., in it.

Saturday, June 2nd 1770 Winds at S-S-E and S-E, a gentle breeze, with which we stood to the N-W and N-W by N, as the land lay, under an easy Sail. Having a boat ahead, found our Soundings at first were very irregular, from 9 to 4 fm; but afterwards regular, from 9 to 11 fm. At 8, being about 2 lg from the Main Land, we Anchor'd in 11 fm, Sandy bottom. Soon after this we found a Slow Motion of a Tide seting to the Eastward, and rode so until 6, at which time the tide had risen 11 feet; we now got under Sail, and Stood away N-N-W as the land lay. From the Observations made on the tide last Night it is plain that the flood comes from the N-W; whereas Yesterday and for Several days before we found it to come from the S-E. This is neither the first nor second time that we have observed the same thing, and in my Opinion easy accounted for; but this I shall do in another place. At sun rise we found the Variation to be  $6^{\circ} 45'$  E. In steering along shore between the Island and the Main, at the Distance of 2 lg from the Latter, and 3 or 4 from the former, our soundings were Regular, from 12 to 9 fm; but about 11 o'Clock we were again embarrassed with Shoal Water, but got clear without letting go an Anchor; we had at one time not quite 3 fm. At Noon we were about 2 lg from the Main land, and about 4 from the Islands without us; our Lat by Observation was  $20^{\circ} 56'$  S, Lon made from Cape Palmerston  $16^{\circ}$  W; a pretty high Promontory, which I named Cape Hillsborough, bore W  $\frac{1}{2}$  N, distant 7 mi. The Main Land is here pretty much diversified with Mountains, Hills, plains, and Vallies, and seem'd to be tollerably Cloathed with Wood and Verdure. These Islands, which lay Parrallel with the Coast, and from 5 to 8 or 9 lg off, are of Various Extent, both for height and Circuit; hardly any Exceeds 5 lg in Circuit, and many again are very small. Besides

the Chain of Islands, which lay at a distance from the Coast, there are other Small Ones laying under the Land. Some few smokes were seen on the Main land.

Sunday, June 3rd 1770 Winds between the S by E and S-E. A Gentle breeze and Clear weather. In thepm we steer'd along shore N-W 1/2 W, at the distance of 2 lg from the Main, having 9 and 10 fm regular soundings. At sun set the furthest point of the Main Land that we could distinguish as such bore N 48° W; to the Northward of this lay some high land, which I took to be an Island, the N W point of which bore N 41° W; but as I was not sure that there was a passage this way, we at 8 came to an Anchor in 10 fm, muddy bottom. 2 hours after this we had a tide setting to the Northward, and at 2 o'clock it had fallen 9 Feet since the time we Anchored. After this the Tide began to rise, and the flood came from the Northward, which was from the Islands out at Sea, and plainly indicated that there was no passage to the N-W; but as this did not appear at day light when we got under Sail, and stood away to the N-W until 8, at this time we discover'd low land, quite a Cross what we took for an Opening between the Main and the Islands, which proved to be a Bay about 5 or 6 lg deep. Upon this we hauld our wind to the Eastward round the Nermost point of the Bay, which bore from us at this time N-E by N, distance 4 lg. From this point we found the Main land trend away N by W 1/2 W, and a Strait or Passage between it and a Large Island or Islands laying in a Parrallel direction with the Coast; this passage we Stood into, having the Tide of Ebb in our favour. At Noon we were just within the Entrance, and by observation in the Lat of 20° 26' S; Cape Hillsborough bore S by E, distant 10 lg, and the N point of the Bay before mentioned bore S 19° W, distance 4 mi. This point I have named Cape Conway (Lat 20° 30', Lon 211° 28'), and the bay, Repulse Bay, which is formed by these 2 Capes. The greatest and IE depth of Water we found in it was 13 and 8 fm; every where safe Anchoring, and I believe, was it properly examined, there would be found some good Harbour in it, especally on the N Side within Cape Conway, for just within the Cape lay 2 or 3 Small Islands, which alone would shelter that side of the Bay from the S-E and S winds, which seem to be the prevailing or Trade Winds. Among the many islands that lay upon this Coast there is one more Remarkable than the rest, being of a Small circuit, very high and peaked, and lies E by S, 10 mi from Cape Conway at the S end of the Passage above mention'd.

Monday, June 4th 1770 Winds at S-S-E and S-E, a Gentle breeze and Clear weather. In thepm Steerd thro' the passage which we found from 3 to 6 or 7 mi broad, and 8 or 9 lg in length, N by W 1/2 W and S by E 1/2 E. It is form'd by the Main on the W, and by Islands on the E, one of which is at IE 5 lg in length. Our Depth of Water in running thro' was between 25 and 20 fm; everywhere good Anchorage; indeed the whole passage is one Continued safe Harbour, besides a Number of small Bays and Coves on each side, where ships might lay as it where in a Bason; at IE so it appear'd to me, for I did not wait to Examine it, as having been in Port so lately, and being unwilling to loose the benefit of a light Moon. The land, both on the Main and Islands, especially on the former, is Tolerably high, and distinguished by Hills and Vallies, which are diversified with Woods and Lawns that looked green and pleasant. On a Sandy beach upon one of the Islands we saw 2 people and a Canoe, with an outrigger, which appeared to be both Larger and differently built to any we have seen upon the Coast. At 6 we were nearly the length of the N end of the Passage; the N Wermost point of the Main in sight bore N 54° W, and the N end of the Island N-N-E, having an open Sea between these 2 points. [This passage I have named Whitsundays Passage, as it was discover'd on the day the Church commemorates that Festival, and the Isles which form it Cumberland Isles, in honour of His Royal Highness the Duke of Cumberland.] We kept under an Easey Sail and the Lead going all Night, having 21, 22, and 23 fm, at the distance of 3 lg from the land. At daylightam

we were abreast of the point above mentioned, which is a lofty promontory; that I named Cape Gloucester (Lat  $19^{\circ} 57' S$ , Lon  $211^{\circ} 54' W$ ). It may be known by an Island which lies out at Sea N by W  $1/2 W$ , 5 or 6 lg from it; this I called Holbourn Isle. There are also Islands lying under the Land between it and Whitsundays Passage. On the W side of the Cape the Land Trends away S-W and S-S-W, and forms a deep bay. The Sand in the bottom of this bay I could but just see from the Masthead; it is very low, and is a Continuation of the same low land as is at the bottom of Repulse Bay. Without Waiting to look into this bay, which I called Edgcumbe Bay, we continued our Course to the Westward for the Wermost land we had in sight which bore from us W by N  $1/2 N$ , and appeared very high. At Noon we were about 3 lg from the Land, and by observation in the Lat of  $19^{\circ} 47' S$ , Cape Gloucester bearing S  $63^{\circ} E$ , distant 7  $1/2$  lg.

Tuesday, June 5th 1770 Winds between the S and E, a Gentle breeze, and Serene weather. At 6am we were abreast of the Western point of Land above mentioned, distant from it 3 mi, which I have named Cape Upstart, because being surrounded with low land it starts or rises up singly at the first making of it (Lat  $19^{\circ} 39' S$ , Lon  $212^{\circ} 32' W$ ); it lies W-N-W 14 lg from Cape Gloucester, and is of a height sufficient to be seen 12 lg; but it is not so much of a Promontory as it appears to be, because on each side of it near the Sea is very low land, which is not to be seen unless you are pretty well in with the Shore. Inland are some Tolerable high hills or mountains, which, like the Cape, affords but a very barren prospect. Having past this Cape, we continued standing to the W-N-W as the land lay, under an easy Sail, having from 16 to 10 fm, until 2 o'Clockam, when we fell into 7 fm, upon which we hauled our wind to the Northward, judging ourselves to be very near the land; as so we found, for at daylight we were little more than 2 lg off. What deceived us was the Lowness of the land, which is but very little higher than the Surface of the Sea, but in the Country were some hills. At noon we were in 15 fm Water, and about 4 lg from the land. Our Lat by Observation was  $19^{\circ} 12' S$ ; Cape Upstart bore  $38^{\circ} 30' E$ , distant 12 lg. Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon N  $48^{\circ} 45'$ , 53 mi. At and before Noon some very large smokes were Seen rise up out of the low land. At sun rise I found the Variation to be  $5^{\circ} 35' E$ ; at sun set last night the same Needle gave near  $9^{\circ}$ . This being Close under Cape Upstart, I judged that it was owing to Iron ore or other Magnetical Matter Lodged in the Earth.

Wednesday, June 6th 1770 Light Airs at E-S-E, with which we Steer'd W-N-W as the Land now lay; Depth of Water 12 and 14 fm. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $19^{\circ} 1$  minute S, Lon made from Cape Gloucester 1 degree  $30' W$ ; Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon W-N-W, 28 mi. In this situation we had the Mouth of a Bay all open extending from S  $1/2 E$  to S-W  $1/2 S$ , distance 2 lg. This bay, which I named Cleveland Bay, appeared to be about 5 or 6 mi in Extent every way. The E point I named Cape Cleveland, and the W, Magnetical Head or Island, as it had much the appearance of an Island; and the Compass did not traverse well when near it. They are both Tolerable high, and so is the Main Land within them, and the whole appeared to have the most rugged, rocky, and barren Surface of any we have yet seen. However, it is not without inhabitants, as we saw smoke in several places in the bottom of the bay. The Nermost land we had in sight at this time bore N-W; this we took to be an Island or Islands, for we could not trace the Main land farther than W by N.

Thursday, June 7th 1770 Light Airs between the S and E, with which we steer'd W-N-W, keeping the Main land on board, the outermost part of which at sun set bore from us W by N; but without this lay high land, which we took to be Islands. At daylightam we were the Length of the Eastern part of this Land, which we found to Consist of a Group of Islands laying about 5

lg from the Main. We being at this time between the 2, we continued advancing Slowly to the N-W until noon, at which time we were by observation in the Lat of  $18^{\circ} 49'$ , and about 5 lg from the Main land, the N-W part of which bore from us N by W  $1/2$  W, the Island extending from N to E; distance of the nearest 2 mi. Cape Cleveland bore S  $50^{\circ}$  E, distant 18 lg. Our Soundings in the Course of this day's Sail were from 14 to 11 fm.

Friday, June 8th 1770 Winds at S-S-E and S; first part light Airs, the remainder a Gentle breeze. In thepm we saw several large smokes upon the Main, some people, Canoes, and, as we thought, Cocoa Nut Trees upon one of the Islands; and, as a few of these Nutts would have been very acceptable to us at this Time, I sent Lieutenant Hicks ashore, with whom went Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, to see what was to be got. In the Meantime we kept Standing in for the Island with the Ship. At 7 they returned on board, having met with Nothing worth Observing. The Trees we saw were a small kind of Cabbage Palms. They heard some of the Natives as they were putting off from the Shore, but saw none. After the Boat was hoisted in we stood away N by W for the Nermost land we had in sight, which we were abrE of at 3 o'Clock in the Morning, having passed all the Islands 3 or 4 hours before. This point I have named Point Hillock, on account of its Figure. The Land of this point is Tolerable high, and may be known by a round Hillock or rock that appears to be detached from the point, but I believe it joins to it. Between this Cape and Cape Cleveland the shore forms a Large bay, which I named Hallifax bay; before it lay the Groups of Islands before mentioned, and some others nearer the Shore. These Islands shelter the Bay in a manner from all Winds, in which is good Anchorage. The land near the Shore in the bottom of the bay is very low and Woody; but a little way back in the Country is a continued ridge of high land, which appear'd to be barren and rocky. Having passed Point Hillock, we continued standing to the N-N-W as the land Trended, having the Advantage of a light Moon. At 6am we were abrE of a point of Land which lies N by W  $1/2$  W, 11 mi from Point Hillick; the Land between them is very high, and of a craggy, barren surface. This point I named Cape Sandwich; it may not only be known by the high, craggy land over it, but by a small Island which lies E one mile from it, and some others about 2 lg to the Northward of it. From Cape Sandwich the Land trends W, and afterwards N, and forms a fine, Large Bay, which I called Rockingham Bay; it is well Shelter'd, and affords good Anchorage; at IE, so it appear'd to me, for having met with so little encouragement by going ashore that I would not wait to land or examine it farther, but continued to range along Shore to the Northward for a parcel of Small Islands laying off the Northern point of the Bay, and, finding a Channel of a mile broad between the 3 Outermost and those nearer the Shore, we pushed thro'. While we did this we saw on one of the nearest Islands a Number of the Natives collected together, who seem'd to look very attentively upon the Ship; they were quite naked, and of a very Dark Colour, with short hair. At noon we were by observation in the Lat of  $17^{\circ} 59'$ , and abrE of the N point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W 2 mi. This boundry of the Bay is form'd by a Tolerable high Island, known in the Chart by the Name of Dunk Isle; it lays so near the Shore as not to be distinguished from it unless you are well in with the Land. At this time we were in the Lon of  $213^{\circ} 57'$ . Cape Sandwich bore S by E  $1/2$  E, distant 19 mi, and the Nermost land in sight N  $1/2$  W. Our depth of Water in the Course of this day's Sail was not more than 16, nor less than 7, fm.

Saturday, June 9th 1770 Winds between the S and S-E, a Gentle breeze, and Clear weather, with which we steer'd N by W as the land lay, the Northern extream of which at sunset bore N  $25^{\circ}$  W. We kept on our Course under an Easey sail all night, having from 12 to 16 fm, at the distance of about 3 or 4 lg from the Land. At 6am we were abrE of Some small Islands, which we called Frankland Isles, that lay about 2 lg from the Mainland, the Northern Point of which in

sight bore N by W 1/2 W; but this we afterwards found to be an Island, tolerable high, and about 4 mi in Circuit. It lies about 2 mi from the Point on the Main between which we went with the ship, and were in the middle of the Channell at Noon, and by observation in the Lat of 16° 55', where we had 20 fm of water. The point of land we were now abrE of I called Cape Grafton (Lat 16° 55' S, Lon 214° 11' W); it is Tolerable high, and so is the whole Coast for 20 lg to the Southward, and hath a very rocky surface, which is thinly cover'd with wood. In the night we saw several fires along shore, and a little before noon some people.

Sunday, June 10th 1770 After hauling round Cape Grafton we found the land trend away N-W by W; 3 mi to the Westward of the Cape is a Bay, wherein we Anchor'd, about 2 mi from the Shore, in 4 fm, owsey bottom. The E point of the Bay bore S 74° E, the W point S 83° W, and a Low green woody Island laying in the Offing bore N 35° E. The Island lies N by E 1/2 E, distance 3 or 4 lg from Cape Grafton, and is known in the Chart by the Name of Green Island. As soon as the Ship was brought to an Anchor I went ashore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; the first thing I did was to look for fresh Water, and with that View rowed out towards the Cape, because in the bottom of the bay was low Mangrove land, and little probability of meeting with any there. But the way I went I found 2 Small streams, which were difficult to get at on account of the Surf and rocks upon the Shore. As we came round the Cape we saw, in a sandy Cove, a small stream of Water run over the beach; but here I did not go in the boat because I found that it would not be Easey to land. We hardly advanced anything into the Country, it being here hilly, which were steep and rocky, and we had not time to Visit the Low lands, and therefore met with nothing remarkable. My intention was to have stay'd here at IE one day, to have looked into the Country had we met with fresh water convenient, or any other Refreshment; but as we did not, I thought it would be only spending of time, and loosing as much of a light Moon to little purpose, and therefore at 12 o'Clock at night we weighed and stood away to the N-W, having at this time but little wind, attended with Showers of rain. At 4 the breeze freshned at S by E, with fair weather; we continued steering N-N-W 1/2 W as the Land lay, having 10, 12, and 14 fm, at a distance of 3 lg from the Land. At 11 we hauld off N, in order to get without a Small Low Island which lay about 2 lg from the Main; it being about high Water, about the time we passed it, great part of it lay under water. About 3 lg to the N Westward of this Island, close under the Main land, is another Island, Tolerable high, which bore from us at Noon N 55° W, distant 7 or 8 mi; we being at this time in the Lat of 16° 20' S, Cape Grafton bore S 29° E, distant 40 mi, and the Nermost point of Land in Sight N 20° W, and in this Situation had 15 fm Water. The Shore between Cape Grafton and the above Northern point forms a large but not very deep Bay, which I named Trinity Bay, after the day on which it was discover'd; the N point Cape Tribulation, because here began all our Troubles. Lat 16° 6' S, Lon 214° 39' W.

Monday, June 11th 1770 Wind at E-S-E, with which we steer'd along shore N by W at the distance of 3 or 4 lg off, having from 14 to 10 and 12 fm water. Saw 2 Small Islands in the Offing, which lay in the Lat of 16° 0' S, and about 6 or 7 lg from the Main. At 6 the Nermost land in sight bore N by W 1/2 W, and 2 low, woody Islands, which some took to be rocks above Water, bore N 1/2 W. At this time we shortened Sail, and hauld off shore E-N-E and N-E by E, close upon a Wind. My intention was to stretch off all Night as well to avoid the danger we saw ahead as to see if any Islands lay in the Offing, especially as we now begun to draw near the Lat of those discover'd by Quiros, which some Geographers, for what reason I know not, have thought proper to Tack to this land. Having the advantage of a fine breeze of wind, and a clear Moon light Night in standing off from 6 until near 9 o Clock, we deepned our Water from 14 to 21 fm, when all at once we fell into 12, 10 and 8 fm. At this time I had everybody at their

Stations to put about and come to an Anchor; but in this I was not so fortunate, for meeting again with Deep Water, I thought there could be no danger in standing on. Before 10 o'Clock we had 20 and 21 fm, and Continued in that depth until a few' before 11, when we had 17, and before the Man at the Lead could heave another cast, the Ship Struck and stuck fast. Immediately upon this we took in all our Sails, hoisted out the Boats and Sounded round the Ship, and found that we had got upon the S-E Edge of a reef of Coral Rocks, having in some places round the Ship 3 and 4 fm Water, and in other places not quite as many feet, and about a Ship's length from us on the starboard side (the Ship laying with her Head to the N-E) were 8, 10, and 12 fm. As soon as the Long boat was out we struck Yards and Topmast, and carried out the Stream Anchor on our Starboard bow, got the Coasting Anchor and Cable into the Boat, and were going to carry it out in the same way; but upon my sounding the 2nd time round the Ship I found the most water a Stern, and therefore had this Anchor carried out upon the Starboard Quarter, and hove upon it a very great Strain; which was to no purpose, the Ship being quite fast, upon which we went to work to lighten her as fast as possible, which seem'd to be the only means we had left to get her off. As we went ashore about the Top of High Water we not only started water, but threw overboard our Guns, Iron and Stone Ballast, Casks, Hoop Staves, Oil Jarrs, decay'd Stores, etc.; many of these last Articles lay in the way at coming at Heavier. All this time the Ship made little or no Water. At 11am, being high Water as we thought, we try'd to heave her off without Success, she not being afloat by a foot or more, notwithstanding by this time we had thrown overboard 40 or 50 Tuns weight. As this was not found sufficient we continued to Lighten her by every method we could think off; as the Tide fell the ship began to make Water as much as two pumps could free: at Noon she lay with 3 or 4 Streaks heel to Starboard; Lat observed 15° 45' S.

Tuesday, June 12th 1770 Fortunately we had little wind, fine weather, and a smooth Sea, all this 24 Hours, which in thepm gave us an Opportunity to carry out the 2 Bower Anchors, one on the Starboard Quarter, and the other right a Stern, got Blocks and Tackles upon the Cables, brought the falls in abaft and hove taught. By this time it was 5 o'Clockpm; the tide we observed now begun to rise, and the leak increased upon us, which obliged us to set the 3rd Pump to work, as we should have done the 4th also, but could not make it work. At 9 the Ship righted, and the Leak gain'd upon the Pumps considerably. This was an alarming and, I may say, terrible circumstance, and threatened immediate destruction to us. However, I resolv'd to risque all, and heave her off in case it was practical, and accordingly turn'd as many hands to the Capstan and Windlass as could be spared from the Pumps; and about 20' past 10 o'Clock the Ship floated, and we hove her into Deep Water, having at this time 3 feet 9 Inches Water in the hold. This done I sent the Long boat to take up the Stream Anchor, got the Anchor, but lost the Cable among the Rocks; after this turn'd all hands to the Pumps, the Leak increasing upon us. A mistake soon after hapned, which for the first time caused fear to approach upon every man in the Ship. The man that attended the well took the Depth of water above the Ceiling; he, being relieved by another who did not know in what manner the former had sounded, took the Depth of water from the outside plank, the difference being 16 or 18 inches, and made it appear that the leak had gained this upon the pumps in a short time. This mistake was no sooner cleared up than it acted upon every man like a Charm; they redoubled their vigour, insomuch that before 8 o'clock in the morning they gained considerably upon the leak. We now hove up the Best Bower, but found it impossible to save the small Bower, so cut it away at a whole Cable; got up the Fore topmast and Foreyard, warped the Ship to the S-E, and at 11 got under sail, and stood in for the land, with a light breeze at E-S-E. Some hands employ'd sewing Oakham, Wool, etc., into a Lower Steering sail to fother the Ship; others employ'd at the Pumps, which still gain'd upon the Leak.

Wednesday, June 13th 1770 In the pm had light Airs at E-S-E, with which we kept edging in for the Land. Got up the Maintopmast and Mainyard, and having got the Sail ready for fothering of the Ship, we put it over under the Starboard Fore Chains, where we suspected the Ship had suffer'd most, and soon after the Leak decreased, so as to be kept clear with one Pump with ease; this fortunate circumstance gave new life to every one on board.

It is much easier to conceive than to describe the satisfaction felt by everybody on this occasion. But a few' before our utmost Wishes were to get hold of some place upon the Main, or an island, to run the Ship ashore, where out of her Materials we might build a Vessel to carry us to the E Indies; no sooner were we made sensible that the outward application to the Ship's bottom had taken effect, than the field of every Man's hopes enlarged, so that we thought of nothing but ranging along Shore in search of a Harbour, when we could repair the Damages we had sustained. In justice to the Ship's Company, I must say that no men ever behaved better than they have done on this occasion; animated by the behaviour of every Gentleman on board, every man seem'd to have a just sense of the Danger we were in, and exerted himself to the very utmost. The Ledge of Rocks, or Shoal, we have been upon, lies in the Lat of  $15^{\circ} 45'$ , and about 6 or 7 lg from the Main land; but this is not the only Shoal that lay upon this part of the Coast, especially to the Northward, and one which we saw to the Southward, the tail of which we passed over when we had the uneven Soundings 2 hours before we Struck. A part of this Shoal is always above Water, and looks to be white Sand; part of the one we were upon was dry at low Water, and in that place consists of Sand and stones, but every where else Coral Rocks. At 6 we Anchored in 17 fm, about 5 or 6 lg from the land, and one from the Shoal. At this time the Ship made about 15 Inches Water per hour. At 6am weigh'd and stood to the N-W, edging in for the land, having a Gentle breeze at S-S-E. At 9 we past close without 2 small low Islands, laying in the Lat of  $15^{\circ} 41'$ , and about 4 lg from the Main; I have named them Hope Islands, because we were always in hopes of being able to reach these Islands. At Noon we were about 3 lg from the Land, and in the Lat of  $15^{\circ} 37' S$ ; the Nermost part of the Main in sight bore N  $30^{\circ} W$ , and the above Islands extending from S  $30^{\circ} E$  to S  $40^{\circ} E$ . In this situation had 12 fm water and several sandbanks without us. The Leak now decreaseeth, but for fear it should break out again we got the Sail ready fill'd for fothering; the manner this is done is thus: We mix Oacham and Wool together (but Oacham alone would do), and chop it up Small, and then stick it loosely by handfulls all over the Sail, and throw over it Sheep dung or other filth. Horse Dung for this purpose is the best. The Sail thus prepared is hauld under the Ship's bottom by ropes, and if the place of the Leak is uncertain, it must be hauld from one part of her bottom to another until one finds the place where it takes effect. While the Sail is under the Ship the Oacham, etc., is washed off, and part of it carried along with the water into the Leak, and in part stops up the hole. Mr. Monkhouse, one of my midshipmen, was once in a Merchant Ship which Sprung a Leak, and made 48 Inches Water per hour; but by this means was brought home from Virginia to London with only her proper crew; to him I gave the direction of this, who executed it very much to my satisfaction.

Thursday, June 14th 1770pm, had a Gentle breeze at S-E by E. Sent the Master, with 2 Boats as well, to sound ahead of the Ship, as to look out for a Harbour where we could repair our defects, and put the Ship on a proper Trim, both of which she now very much wanted. At 3 saw an Opening that had the appearance of a Harbour; stood off and on while the Boats were examining it, who found that there was not a sufficient depth of Water for the Ship. By this time it was almost sun set, and seeing many shoals about us we Anchored in 4 fm about 2 mi from the Shore, the Main land extending from N  $1/2 E$  to S by E  $1/2 E$ . At 8 o'clock the Pinnacle, in

which was one of the Mates, return'd on board, and reported that they had found a good Harbour about 2 lg to leEastward. In consequence of this information we, at 6am, weigh'd and run down to it, first sending 2 Boats ahead to lay upon the Shoals that lay in our way; and notwithstanding this precaution, we were once in 3 fm with the Ship. Having pass'd these Shoals, the Boats were sent to lay in the Channell leading into the Harbour. By this time it begun to blow in so much that the Ship would not work, having missed stays Twice; and being entangled among Shoals, I was afraid of being drove to LeEastward before the Boats could place themselves, and therefore Anchored in 4 fm about a mile from the Shore, and then made the Signal for the Boats to come on board, after which I went myself and Buoy'd the Channell, which I found very narrow, and the Harbour much smaller than I had been told, but very convenient for our Purpose. At Noon Lat observed 15° 26' S. Note: this day I restor'd Mr. Magra to his Duty, as I did not find him guilty of the crimes laid to his charge.

Friday, June 15th 1770 A fresh Gale at S-E and Cloudy weather, attended with Showers of Rain. In the Night, as it blow'd too fresh to break the Ship loose to run into the Harbour, we got down the Topgallant yards, unbent the Mainsail, and some of the Small sails; got down the Foretopgallant mast, and the Jibb Boom and Spritsailyard in, intending to lighten the Ship Forward as much as possible, in order to lay her ashore to come at the Leak.

Saturday, June 16th 1770 Strong Gales at S-E, and Cloudy, hazey weather, with Showers of Rain. At 6 o'Clock in theam it moderated a little, and we hove short, intending to get under sail, but was obliged to desist, and veer away again; some people were seen ashore to-day.

Sunday, June 17th 1770 Most part strong Gales at S-E, with some heavy showers of rain in thepm At 6am, being pretty moderate, we weigh'd and run into the Harbour, in doing of which we run the Ship ashore Twice. The first time she went off without much Trouble, but the Second time she Stuck fast; but this was of no consequence any farther than giving us a little trouble, and was no more than what I expected as we had the wind. While the Ship lay fast we got down the Foreyard, Foretopmast, booms, etc., overboard, and made a raft of them alongside.

Monday, June 18th 1770 Fresh Gales and Cloudy, with Showers of Rain. At 1pm the Ship floated, and we warped her into the Harbour, and moor'd her alongside of a Steep Beach on the S side; got the Anchors, Cables, and all the Hawsers ashore. In theam made a Stage from the Ship to the Shore, Erected 2 Tents, one for the Sick, and the other for the Stores and Provisions; Landed all the empty Casks and part of the Provisions, and sent a boat to haul the Sean, which return'd without Success.

Tuesday, June 19th 1770 Fresh Gales at S-E and Cloudy weather, with frequent showers of Rain. pm, landed all the Provisions and Part of the Stores; got the Sick ashore, which amounted, at this time, to 8 or 9, afflicted with different disorders, but none very dangerously ill. This afternoon I went upon one of the highest Hills over the Harbour, from which I had a perfect View of the inlet or River, and adjacent country, which afforded but a very indifferent prospect. The Low lands near the River is all over run with Mangroves, among which the salt water flows every tide, and the high land appear'd to be barren and Stoney. am, got the 4 remaining Guns out of the hold, and mounted them on the Quarter Deck; got a spare Anchor and Stock ashore, and the remaining part of the Stores and ballast that were in the Hold; set up the Forge, and set the Armourer and his Mate to work to make Nails, etc., to repair the Ship.



Wednesday, June 20th 1770 Winds at S-E, a fresh breeze, Fore and middle parts rainy, the Latter fair. This day got out all the Officers' stores and the ground Tier of Water, having now nothing in the Fore and Main Hold But the Coals and a little Stone ballast.

Thursday, June 21st 1770pm, landed the Powder, got out the stone ballast, wood, etc., which brought the Ship's Draught of water to 8 feet 10 inches Forward, and 13 feet abaft. This I thought, by trimming the Coals aft, would be sufficient, as I find the Tides will rise and fall upon a Perpendicular 8 feet at Spring tides; but after the Coals was trimm'd away from over the Leak we Could hear the Water come Gushing in a little abaft the Foremast about 3 feet from her Keel. This determin'd me to clear the hold intirely; accordingly very early in the Morning we went to work to get out the Coals, which was Employment for all hands.

Friday, June 22nd 1770 Winds at S-E, fair weather. At 4pm, having got out most of the Coals, cast loose the Ship's moorings, and warped her a little higher up the Harbour to a place I had pitched upon to lay her ashore to stop the Leak; draught of water Forward 7 feet 9 inches and abaft 13 feet 6 inches. At 8, being high water, hauld her bow close ashore, but Keep her stern afloat, because I was afraid of Neaping her and yet it was necessary to lay the whole of her as near the ground as possible. At 2am the Tide left her, which gave us an Opportunity to Examine the Leak, which we found to be at her Floor Heads, a little before the Starboard Fore Chains; here the Rocks had made their way thro' 4 planks, quite to, and even into the Timbers, and wounded 3 more. The manner these planks were damaged – or cut out, as I may say—is hardly credible; scarce a Splinter was to be seen, but the whole was cut away as if it had been done by the Hands of Man with a blunt-edge Tool. Fortunately for us the Timbers in this place were very close; other wise it would have been impossible to have saved the Ship, and even as it was it appeared very extraordinary that she made no more water than what she did. A large peice of Coral rock was sticking in one Hole, and several peices of the Fothering, small stones, etc., had made its way in, and lodged between the Timbers, which had stopped the Water from forcing its way in in great Quantities. Part of the Sheathing was gone from under the Larboard bow, part of the False Kiel was gone, and the remainder in such a Shatter'd Condition that we should be much better off if it was gone also; her Forefoot and some part of her Main Kiel was also damaged, but not Materially. What damage she may have received abaft we could not see, but believe not much, as the Ship makes but little water, while the Tide Keeps below the Leak forward. At 9 the Carpenters went to work upon the Ship, while the Armourers were buisy making Bolts, Nails, etc.

Saturday, June 23rd 1770 Winds S E, a fresh Gale and fair weather. Carpenters employed Shifting the Damaged planks as long as the tide would permit them to work. At low waterpm we examined the Ship's bottom under the Starboard side, she being dry as far aft as the After-part of the Fore Chains; we could not find that she had received any other damage on this side but what has been mentioned. In the morning I sent 3 Men into the Country to shoot Pidgeons, as some of these birds had been seen flying about; in the evening they return'd with about 1/2 a Dozen. One of the Men saw an Animal something less than a greyhound; it was of a Mouse Colour, very slender made, and swift of Foot.am, I sent a Boat to haul the Sean, who return'd at noon, having made 3 Hauls and caught only 3 fish; and yet we see them in plenty Jumping about the harbour, but can find no method of catching them.

Sunday, June 24th 1770 Winds and weather as Yesterday.pm, the Carpenters finished the Starboard side, and at 9 heeld the Ship the other way, and hauld her off about 2 feet for fear of

Neaping. In theam they went to work repairing the Sheathing under the Larboard bow, where we found 2 planks cut about half thro'. Early in the morning I sent a party of Men into the Country under the direction of Lieutenant Gore to seek for refreshments; they return'd about noon with a few Palm Cabbages and a Bunch or 2 of wild Plantains; these last were much Smaller than any I had ever seen, and the Pulp full of small Stones; otherwise they were well tasted. I saw myself this morning, a little way from the Ship, one of the Animals before spoke off; it was of a light mouse Colour and the full size of a Grey Hound, and shaped in every respect like one, with a long tail, which it carried like a Grey hound; in short, I should have taken it for a wild dog but for its walking or running, in which it jump'd like a Hare or Deer. Another of them was seen to-day by some of our people, who saw the first; they described them as having very small Legs, and the print of the Feet like that of a Goat; but this I could not see myself because the ground the one I saw was upon was too hard, and the length of the Grass hindered my seeing its legs.

Monday, June 25th 1770 At low water in thepm While the Carpenters were buisey in repairing the Sheathing and plank under the Larboard bow I got people to go under the Ship's bottom, to examine all her Larboard side, she only being dry Forward, but abaft were 9 feet water. They found part of the Sheathing off abrE of the Mainmast about her floor heads, and a part of one plank a little damaged. There were 3 people who went down, who all agreed in the same Story; the Master was one, who was positive that she had received no Material Damage besides the loss of the Sheathing. This alone will be sufficient to let the worm into her bottom, which may prove of bad consequence. However, we must run all risque, for I know of no method to remedy this but by heaving her down, which would be a work of Emence Labour and time, if not impractical in our present situation.

The Carpenters continued hard at work under her bottom until put off by the Tide in the evening, and the morning Tide did not Ebb out far enough to permit them to work upon her, for here we have only one Tolerable low and high tide in 24 Hours.am, a party of Men were employ'd ashore filling water, while others were employ'd overhauling the rigging.

Tuesday, June 26th 1770 Fair weather, a S-E wind, and a fresh Gale; at low Waterpm the Carpenters finished under the Larboard bow and every other place the tide would permit them to come at. Lashed some Casks under the Ship's bows in order to help to float her, and at high water in the Night attempted to heave her off, but could not, she not being afloat partly owing to some of the Casks not holding that were Lashed under her.am, employed getting more Casks ready for the same purpose; but I am much afraid that we shall not be able to float her now the Tides are Taking off.

Wednesday, June 27th 1770 A fresh breeze of Wind at S-E and Cloudy weather.pm, lashed 38 empty Butts under the Ship's Bottom in order to float her off, which proved ineffectual, and therefore gave over all hopes of getting her off until the Next spring tides. At daylight we got a Considerable weight of sundry Articles from Aft forward to ease the Ship; the Armourer at work at the Forge repairing Iron work, etc., Carpenters caulking and Stocking one of the Spare Anchors, Seamen employ'd filling of Water and overhauling the rigging, and I went in the pinnace up the Harbour, and made several hauls with the Sean, but caught only between 20 and 30 pound of fish, which were given to the sick and such as were weak and Ailing.

Thursday, June 28th 1770 Fresh breezes and Cloudy. All hands employ'd as Yesterday.

Friday, June 29th 1770 Wind and weather as Yesterday, and the employment of the People the same, Lieutenant Gore having been 4 or 5 mi in the Country, where he met with nothing remarkable. He saw the footsteps of Men, and likewise those of 3 or 4 sorts of wild bEs, but saw neither Man nor bE. Some others of our people who were out Yesterday on the N side of the River met with a place where the Natives have just been, as their fires was then burning; but they saw nobody, nor have we seen one since we have been in port. In these excursions we found some Wild Yamms or Cocos growing in the Swampy grounds, and this Afternoon I sent a Party of Men to gather some. The Tops we found made good greens, and eat exceedingly well when Boil'd, but the roots were so bad that few besides myself could eat them. This night Mr. Green and I observ'd an Emersion of Jupiter's first Satellite, which hapned at 2 hours 58' 53 seconds in theam; the same Emersion hapnd at Greenwich, according to Calculation, on the 30th at 5 hours 17' 43 secondsam The differance is 14 hours 18' 50 seconds, equal to  $214^{\circ} 42' 30$  seconds of Lon, which this place is W of Greenwich, and its Lat  $15^{\circ} 26'$  S.am, I sent some hands in a Boat up the River to haul the Sean, while the rest were employ'd about the rigging and sundry other Dutys.

Saturday, June 30th 1770 Moderate breezes at S-E, and clear serene weather.pm, the Boat returned from hauling the Sean, having caught as much fish as came to a pound and a half a Man.am, I sent her again to haul the Sean, and some hands to gather greens, while others were employ'd about the rigging, etc., etc. I likewise sent some of the Young Gentlemen to take a plan of the Harbour, and went myself upon the hill, which is near the S point to take a view of the Sea. At this time it was low water, and I saw what gave me no small uneasiness, which were a Number of Sand Banks and Shoals laying all along the Coast; the innermost lay about 3 or 4 mi from the Shore, and the outermost extended off to Sea as far as I could see without my glass, some just appeared above water. The only hopes I have of getting clear of them is to the Northward, where there seems to be a Passage, for as the wind blows constantly from the S-E we shall find it difficult, if not impractical, to return to the Southward.

Sunday, July 1st 1770 Gentle breezes at S-E, and Cloudy weather, with some Gentle Showers in the morning.pm, the People return'd from hauling the Sean, having caught as much fish as came to 2 1/2 pound per Man, no one on board having more than another. The few Greens we got I caused to be boil'd among the pease, and makes a very good Mess, which, together with the fish, is a great refreshment to the people.am, a party of Men, one from each Mess, went again a fishing, and all the rest I gave leave to go into the Country, knowing that there was no danger from the Natives. To-day at Noon the Thermometer in the Shade rose to  $87^{\circ}$ , which is 2 or  $3^{\circ}$  higher than it hath been on any day before in this place.

Monday, July 2nd 1770 Ditto weather.pm, the fishing-party caught as much fish as came to 2 pounds a Man. Those that were in the Country met with nothing New. Early in theam I sent the Master in the pinnacle out of the Harbour, to sound about the Shoals in the Offing and to look for a Channel to the Northward. At this time we had a breeze of wind from the land, which continued till about 9. What makes me mention this is, that it is the first Land breeze we have had since we have been in this River. At low water lashed empty Casks under the Ship's bows, being in some hopes of floating her the next high Water, and sent some hands a fishing, while others were employ'd in refitting the Ship.

Tuesday, July 3rd 1770 Winds at S-E, Fore and middle part gentle breeze, the remainder a fresh gale. In the evening the fishing Party return'd, having got as much fish as came to 2 pounds a Man. At high water we attempted to heave the Ship off, but did not succeed. At Noon

the Master return'd, and reported he had found a passage out to Sea between the Shoals, which passage lies out E-N-E or E by N from the River mouth. He found these Shoals to Consist of Coral Rocks; he landed upon one, which dries at low Water, where he found very large cockles and a Variety of other Shell fish, a quantity of which he brought away with him. He told me that he was 5 lg out at Sea, having at that distance 21 fm water, and judg'd himself to be without all the Shoals, which I very much doubted. After this he came in Shore, and Stood to the Northward, where he met with a Number of Shoals laying a little distance from the Shore. About 9 in the evening he landed in a Bay about 3 lg to the Northward of this Place, where he disturbed some of the Natives, whom he supposed to be at supper; they all fled upon his approach, and Left him some fresh Sea Eggs, and a fire ready lighted behind them; but there was neither House nor Hut near. Although these Shoals lay within sight of the Coast, and abound very much with Shell fish and other small fish, which are to be caught at Low water in holes in the Rocks, yet the Natives never visit them, for if they did we must have seen of these Large shells on shore about their fire places. The reason I do suppose is, that they have no Boats that they dare Venture so far out at Sea in.

Wednesday, July 4th 1770 Strong gales at S-E and fair weather. pm, the fishing party return'd with the usual success; at High water hove the ship Afloat. am, employ'd trimming her upon an even Kiel, intending to lay her ashore once more, to come at her bottom under the Larboard Main Chains.

Thursday, July 5th 1770 Strong breezes at S-E and fair weather. pm Warped the Ship over, and at high Water laid her ashore on the Sandbank on the S side of the River, for I was afraid to lay her broad side to the Shore where she lay before, because the ground lies upon too great a decent, and she hath already received some Damage by laying there these last Niep Tides, at IE she still makes water.

Friday, July 6th 1770 Ditto weather. At low water in the pm had hardly 4 feet water under the Ship; yet could not repair the Sheathing that was beat off, the place being all under water. One of the Carpenter's crew, a Man I could trust, went down and Examin'd it, and found 3 Streakes of the Sheathing gone about 7 or 8 feet long, and the Main Plank a little rubbed; this account agrees with the report of the Master and others that were under her bottom before. The Carpenter, who I look upon to be well skill'd in his profession, and a good judge in these matters, was of Opinion that this was of little consequence; and as I found that it would be difficult, if not impractical, for us to get under her bottom to repair it, I resolved to spend no more time about it. Accordingly at high water hove her off, and moor'd her alongside the beach, where the Stores, etc., lay, and in the am got everything in readiness for taking them on board, and at the same time got on board 8 Tuns of Water, and stow'd in the ground Tier in the after Hold. In the Morning Mr. Banks and Lieutenant Gore with 3 Men went in a small Boat up the Harbour, with a View to stay 2 or 3 days to try to Kill some of the Animals we have seen about this place.

Saturday, July 7th 1770 Fresh breezes at S-E and fair weather. Employ'd getting on board Coals, Ballast, etc., and caulking the Ship; a work that could not be done while she lay aground. The Armourer and his Mate are Still employ'd at the Forge making and repairing sundry Articles in the Iron way.

Sunday, July 8th 1770 Gentle breeze and S-E, and clear weather. Early I sent the Master in a Boat out to Sea to sound again about the Shoals, because the account he had given of the

Channell before mentioned was to me by no means Satisfactory; likewise sent some hands to haul the Sean, who caught near 80 pounds of fish; the rest of the people I gave leave to go into the Country.

Monday, July 9th 1770 In the Day Ditto Winds, but in the night Calm.pm, Mr. Gore and Mr. Banks return'd, having met with nothing remarkable; they were about 3 or 4 lg up in the Country without finding hardly any Variation either in the Soil or Produce. In the Evening the Master return'd, having been several lg out at Sea, and at that Distance off saw Shoals without him, and was of opinion there was no getting out to Sea that way. In his return he touched upon one of the Shoals, the same as he was upon the first time he was out; he here saw a great number of Turtle, 3 of which he Caught weighing 791 pounds. This occasion'd my sending him out again this morning provided with proper gear for Striking them, he having before nothing but a Boat Hook. Carpenters, Smiths, and Coopers at their respective Employments, and the Seamen employed getting on board stones, ballast, etc. This day all hands fEed upon Turtle for the First time.

Tuesday, July 10th 1770 Winds and weather as yesterday. Employ'd hoisting on board and stowing away the ground Tier of Water.pm, saw 7 or 8 of the Natives on the S side of the River, and 2 of them came down upon the Sandy point opposite the Ship; but as soon as I put off in a Boat in order to speak with them they run away as fast as they could. At 11 Mr. Banks, who had gone out to Sea with Mr. Molineux, the Master, return'd in his own Small Boat, and gave but a Very bad account of our Turtlecatchers. At the time he left them, which was about 6 o'Clock, they had not got one, nor were they likely to get any; and yet the Master was so obstinate that he would not return, which obliged me to send Mr. Gore out in the Yawl this morning to order the Boat and People in, in Case they could not be employ'd there to some Advantage. In theam 4 of the Natives came down to the Sandy point on the N side of the Harbour, having along with them a small wooden Canoe with Outriggers, in which they seem'd to be employed striking fish, etc. Some were for going over in a Boat to them; but this I would not suffer, but let them alone without seeming to take any Notice of them. At length 2 of them came in the Canoe so near the Ship as to take some things we throw'd them. After this they went away, and brought over the other 2, and came again alongside, nearer than they had done before, and took such Trifles as we gave them; after this they landed close to the Ship, and all 4 went ashore, carrying their Arms with them. But Tupia soon prevailed upon them to lay down their Arms, and come and set down by him, after which most of us went to them, made them again some presents, and stay'd by them until dinner time, when we made them understand that we were going to eat, and asked them by signals to go with us; but this they declined, and as soon as we left them they went away in their Canoe. One of these Men was something above the middle Age, the other 3 were young; none of them were above 5 1/2 feet high, and all their Limbs proportionately small. They were wholly naked, their Skins the Colour of Wood soot, and this seem'd to be their Natural Colour. Their Hair was black, lank, and cropt short, and neither wooly nor Frizled; nor did they want any of their Fore Teeth, as Dampier has mentioned those did he saw on the Western side of this Country. Some part of their Bodys had been painted with red, and one of them had his upper lip and brE painted with Streakes of white, which he called Carbanda. Their features were far from being disagreeable; their Voices were soft and Tunable, and they could easily repeat any word after us, but neither us nor Tupia could understand one word they said.

Wednesday, July 11th 1770 Gentle land and Sea breezes. Employed Airing the Bread, stowing away water, Stores, etc. In the night the Master and Mr. Gore returned with the Long Boat, and

brought with them one Turtle and a few Shell fish; the Yawl Mr. Gore left upon the Shoal with 6 Men to endeavour to strike more Turtle. In the morning 4 of the Natives made us another Short Visit; 3 of them had been with us the preceeding day, the other was a stranger. One of these men had a hole through the Bridge of his nose, in which he stuck a peice of Bone as thick as my finger. Seeing this we examin'd all their Noses, and found that they had all holes for the same purpose; they had likewise holes in their Ears, but no Ornaments hanging to them; they had bracelets on their Arms made of hair, and like Hoops of small Cord. They sometimes may wear a kind of fillet about their Heads, for one of them had applied some part of an old shirt which I had given them to this use.

Thursday, July 12th 1770 Winds and weather as Yesterday, and the Employment of the People the same. At 2am the Yawl came on board, and brought 3 Turtle and a large Skeat, and as there was a probability of succeeding in this kind of fishery, I sent her out again after breakfast. About this time 5 of the Natives came over and stay'd with us all the Forenoon. There were 7 in all – 5 Men, 1 Woman, and a Boy; these 2 last stay'd on the point of Land on the other side of the River about 200 Yards from us. We could very clearly see with our Glasses that the Woman was as naked as ever she was born; even those parts which I always before now thought Nature would have taught a woman to Conceal were uncovered.

Friday, July 13th 1770 Gentle breezes from the S-E in day, and Calm or light Airs from the Land in the Night. Employ'd taking on board water, Stores, etc. At Noon the Yawl return'd with one Turtle and a large Sting ray.

Saturday, July 14th 1770 Gentle breezes at S-E and Hazy weather. In thepm compleated our water; got on board all the Bread, and part of our Stores; in the evening sent the Turtles out again.am, employ'd getting on board stone ballast and Airing the spare Sails. Mr. Gore, being in the Country, shott one of the Animals before spoke of; it was a small one of the sort, weighing only 28 pound clear of the entrails; its body was \_\_\_\_ long; the head, neck, and Shoulders very Small in proportion to the other parts. It was hair lipt, and the Head and Ears were most like a Hare's of any Animal I know; the Tail was nearly as long as the body, thick next the Rump, and Tapering towards the End; the fore Legs were 8 Inches long, and the Hind 22. Its progression is by Hopping or Jumping 7 or 8 feet at each hop upon its hind Legs only, for in this it makes no use of the Fore, which seem to be only design'd for Scratching in the ground, etc. The Skin is cover'd with a Short, hairy furr of a dark Mouse or Grey Colour. It bears no sort of resemblance to any European animal I ever saw; it is said to bear much resemblance to the Jerboa, excepting in size, the Jerboa being no larger than a common rat.

Sunday, July 15th 1770 Gentle breezes at S-E and E.pm, got on board the Spare Sails and sundry other Articles. In theam, as the people did not work upon the Ship, one of the Petty Officers was desirous of going out to Catch Turtles. I let him have the Pinnace for that purpose, and sent the Long boat to haul the Sean, who caught about 60 fish.

Monday, July 16th 1770 Fore and Latter parts gentle breezes at E-N-E; in the night had light Airs and Calm. In the evening the Yawl came in with 4 Turtle and a Large Sting ray, and soon after went out again; but the Pinnace did not return as I expected.am, employ'd getting on board Cables; at the same time I went upon one of the high hills on the N side of the River, from which I had an extensive view of the inland Country, which consisted of hills, Valleys, and Large plains, agreeably diversified with Woods and Lawns.

Tuesday, July 17th 1770 Wind at S-E, a fresh breeze; people employed as yesterday setting up the rigging. In the evening the Pinnacle returned with 3 Turtles, 2 of which the Yawl caught and sent in. At 7 hours 41' 17 seconds pm observ'd the first Satellite of Jupiter to Emerge, and the same Emersion hapned at Greenwich at 10 hours 00' 52 seconds in theam; the difference is 14 hours 19' 35 seconds equal to  $214^{\circ} 53' 45$  seconds of Lon. The observation made on the 29th of last Month gave  $214^{\circ} 42' 30$  seconds; the mean is  $214^{\circ} 48' 7 \frac{1}{2}$  seconds, which this place is W of Greenwich.

Wednesday, July 18th 1770 Wind at E-S-E, a Gentle breeze. pm, I sent the Master and one of the Mates in the Pinnacle to the Northward to look for a Channell that way clear of the Shoal. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and myself took a turn into the woods on the other side of the water, where we met with 5 of the Natives; and although we had not seen any of them before, they came to us without showing any signs of fear. 2 of these wore Necklaces made of Shells, which they seem'd to Value, as they would not part with them. In the evening the Yawl came in with 3 Turtle, and early in theam she went out again. About 8 we were Visited by several of the Natives, who now became more familiar than ever. Soon after this Mr. Banks and I went over to the S side of the River, and Travel'd 6 or 8 mi along shore to the Northward, where we ascended a high hill, from whence I had an extensive view of the Sea Coast; it afforded us a melancholy prospect of the difficulties we are to encounter, for in whatever direction we looked it was cover'd with Shoals as far as the Eye could see; after this we return'd to the Ship without meeting with anything remarkable, and found several of the Natives on board. At this time we had 12 tortoise or Turtle upon our Decks, which they took more Notice of than anything Else in the Ship, as I was told by the officers, for their Curiosity was Satisfied before I got on board, and they went away soon after.

Thursday, July 19th 1770 Gentle breezes and fair weather. Employ'd getting everything in readiness for Sea.am, we were Visited by 10 or 11 of the Natives; the most of them came from the other side of the Harbour, where we saw 6 or 7 more, the most of them Women, and, like the men, quite naked. Those that came on board were very desirous of having some of our Turtles, and took the liberty to haul 2 of them to the Gangway to put over the side; being disappointed in this, they grew a little Troublesome, and were for throwing every thing overboard they could lay their hands upon. As we had no Victuals dress'd at this time, I offer'd them some bread to Eat, which they rejected with Scorn, as I believe they would have done anything else excepting Turtle; soon after this they all went ashore, Mr. Banks, myself, and 5 or 6 of our people being their at same time. Immediately upon their Landing one of them took a Handful of dry grass and lighted it at a fire we had ashore, and before we well know'd what he was going about he made a larger Circuit round about us, and set fire to the grass in his way, and in an instant the whole place was in flames. Luckily at this time we had hardly anything ashore, besides the Forge and a Sow with a litter of young Pigs, one of which was scorched to Death in the fire. As soon as they had done this they all went to a place where some of our people were washing, and where all our nets and a good deal of linnen were laid out to dry; here with the greatest obstinacy they again set fire to the grass, which I and some others who were present could not prevent, until I was obliged to fire a Musquet load with small Shott at one of the Ring leaders, which sent them off. As we were apprised of this last Attempt of theirs we got the fire out before it got head, but the first spread like wild fire in the Woods and grass. Notwithstanding my firing, in which one must have been a little hurt, because we saw a few drops of blood on some of the linnen he had gone over, they did not go far from us; for we soon after heard their Voices in the woods, upon which Mr. Banks and I and 3 or 4 more went to look for them, and very soon met them coming toward us. As they had each 4 or 5 Darts,

and not knowing their intention, we seized upon 6 or 7 of the first darts we met with. This alarm'd them so much that they all made off, and we follow'd them for near 1/2 a mile, and then set down and called to them, and they stop'd also; after some little unintelligible conversation had passed they laid down their darts, and came to us in a very friendly manner. We now return'd the Darts we had taken from them, which reconcil'd everything. There were 4 Strangers among them that we had not seen before, and these were interduced to us by name by the others; the Man which we supposed to have been Struck with small Shott was gone off, but he could not be much hurt as he was at a great distance when I fir'd. They all came along with us abR of the Ship, where they stay'd a short time, and then went away, and soon after set the woods on fire about a mile and a half or two mi from us.

Friday, July 20th 1770 Fresh breezes at S-E and Cloudy weather.pm, got everything on board the Ship, new berth'd her, and let her swing with the tide. In the night the Master return'd with the pinnace, and reported that there was no safe Passage for the Ship to the Northward at low water.am, I went and Sounded and buoy'd the Bar, being now ready to put to sea the first opportunity.

Saturday, July 21st 1770 Strong breezes at S-E and Cloudy weather.pm, sent a Boat to haul the Sean, which return'd with as much fish as came to 1 3/4 pounds per Man; the Yawl return'd with only one Turtle, which was caught in the Net, for it blew too hard for the Boat to strike any. In the morning I sent her out again, but she was obliged to return, not being able to get to Windward. The Carpenters employ'd in repairing the Boats and overhauling the Pumps, and as the Wind would not permit us to sail, I sent the Boatswain with some hands ashore to make rope, and a petty Officer with 2 Men to gather Greens for the Ship's Company.

Sunday, July 22nd 1770 Fresh breezes at S-E and E-S-E. Employ'd as Yesterday.am, the weather would not permit us to Sail; sent the Turtlers out again. In opening of one to-day we found sticking thro' both Shoulder bones a wood Harpoon, or Turtle Peg, 15 Inches long, bearded at the end, such as we have seen among the Natives; this proves to a Demonstration that they strike Turtle, I suppose at the Time they come ashore to lay their Eggs, for they certainly have no boat fit to do this at Sea, or that will carry a Turtle, and this Harpoon must have been a good while in, as the wound was quite heal'd up.

Monday, July 23rd 1770 Fresh breezes in the S-E quarter, which so long as it continues will confine us in Port. Yesterday.am, I sent some people in the Country to gather greens, one of which stragled from the rest, and met with 4 of the Natives by a fire, on which they were broiling a Fowl, and the hind leg of one of the Animals before spoke of. He had the presence of mind not to run from them (being unarm'd), IE they should pursue him, but went and set down by them; and after he had set a little while, and they had felt his hands and other parts of his body, they suffer'd him to go away without offering the IE insult, and perceiving that he did not go right for the Ship they directed him which way to go.

Tuesday, July 24th 1770 Winds and weather continues. The Seamen employ'd making ropes, Caulking the Ship, Fishing, etc.

Wednesday, July 25th 1770 Fresh gales at S-E and fair weather. In the evening the Yawl came in, having not been able to Strike one Turtle on account of the blowing weather, nor can we catch much fish with the Sean in the Harbour.



Thursday, July 26th 1770 Winds and weather as Yesterday. Such people as can be spared from the necessary Dutys of the Ship are employ'd fishing and gathering greens and other refreshments.

Friday, July 27th 1770 Very fresh Gales at S-E by S and fair weather.am, caught as much fish as served 3/4 pounds a man, and Mr. Gore shott one of the Animals before spoke of, which weighed 80 pounds and 54 pounds, exclusive of the entrails, Skin, and head; this was as large as the most we have seen.

Saturday, July 28th 1770 Winds and weather as above, without the IE Variation the whole of the 24 hours. The Carpenters finish'd caulking the Ship.

Sunday, July 29th 1770 Winds at S-E, a fresh breeze until 5am, at which time it fell calm, and soon after had a light breeze from the land. Upon this I sent a Boat to see what water was upon the bar (it being 2 hours Ebb), and hove up the Anchor in order to put to Sea; but upon the return of the Boat came too again, as there were only 13 feet water on the Bar, which was 6 Inches less water than what the Ship Draw'd. After this I sent the Yawl to look for Turtle, as those we had got before were nearly all expended. About 8 the Sea breeze set in again, which put an end to our Sailing this day; after which I sent the Pinnace to haul the Sean; she return'd with only 20 pounds of Fish.

Monday, July 30th 1770 Winds at S-E, a fresh Gale and fair weather in thepm, the remainder Hazey, with rain, but the winds, tho more moderate, kept in the S-E quarter.

Tuesday, July 31st 1770 Fresh Gales at S-E, and hazey with rain allpm and most part of the Night. At 2am I had thoughts of trying to Warp the Ship out of the Harbour, but upon my going first out in a Boat I found it blow too fresh for such an Attempt.

Wednesday, August 1st 1770 Strong Gales from the S-E, with Squalls attended with Rain.pm, the Yawl came in with 2 Rays, which together weighed 265 pounds; it blow'd too hard all the time they were out for striking Turtle. Carpenters employ'd overhauling the Pumps, all of which we find in a state of decay; and this the Carpenter says is owing to the Sap having been left in, which in time has decay'd the sound wood. One of them is quite useless, and was so rotten when hoisted up as to drop to peices. However, I cannot complain of a Leaky Ship, for the most water She makes is not quite an Inch an Hour.

Thursday, August 2nd 1770 Winds and weather as yesterday, or rather more Stormy; we have now no Success in the Sein fishing, hardly getting above 20 or 30 pounds a day.

Friday, August 3rd 1770 Strong breezes, and hazey until 6am, when it moderated, and we unmoor'd, hove up the Anchor, and began to Warp out; but the Ship tailing upon the Sand on the N side of the River, the Tide of Ebb making out, and a fresh breeze setting in, we were obliged to desist and moor the Ship again just within the Barr.

Saturday, August 4th 1770 In thepm, having pretty moderate weather, I order'd the Coasting Anchor and Cable to be laid without the barr, to be ready to warp out by, that we might not loose the IE opportunity that might Offer; for laying in Port spends time to no purpose, consumes our Provisions, of which we are very Short in many Articles, and we have yet a long Passage to make to the E Indies through an unknown and perhaps dangerous Sea; these

Circumstances consider'd, make me very Anxious of getting to Sea. The wind continued moderate all night, and at 5am it fell calm; this gave us an opportunity to warp out. About 7 we got under sail, having a light Air from the Land, which soon died away, and was Succeeded by the Sea breezes from S-E by S, with which we stood off to Sea E by N, having the Pinnacle ahead sounding. The Yawl I sent to the Turtle bank to take up the Net that was left there; but as the wind freshen'd we got out before her, and a little After Noon Anchor'd in 15 fm water, Sandy bottom, for I did not think it safe to run in among the Shoals until I had well view'd them at low Water from the Mast head, that I might be better Able to Judge which way to Steer; for as yet I had not resolved whether I should beat back to the Southward round all the Shoals, or seek a Passage to the Eastward or Northward, all of which appeared to be equally difficult and dangerous. When at Anchor the Harbour sail'd from bore S 70° W, distant 4 or 5 lg; the Nermost point of the Main land we have in sight, which I named Cape Bedford (Lat 15° 17' S, Lon 214° 45' W), bore N 20° W, distant 3 1/2 lg; but we could see land to the N-E of this Cape, which made like 2 high islands; the Turtle banks bore E, distant one mile. Lat by Observation 15° 23' S; our depth of Water, in standing off from the land, was from 3 1/2 to 15 fm.

I shall now give a Short description of the Harbour, or River, we have been in, which I named after the Ship, Endeavour River. It is only a small Barr Harbour or Creek, which runs winding 3 or 4 lg in land, at the Head of which is a small fresh Water Brook, as I was told, for I was not so high myself; but there is not water for Shipping above a mile within the barr, and this is on the N side, where the bank is so steep for nearly a quarter of a mile that ships may lay afloat at low water so near the Shore as to reach it with a stage, and is extreamly Convenient for heaving a Ship down. And this is all the River hath to recommend it, especially for large Shipping, for there is no more than 9 or 10 feet Water upon the Bar at low water, and 17 or 18 feet at high, the Tides rises and falling about 9 feet at spring Tide, and is high on the days of the New and full Moon, between 9 and 10 o'Clock. Besides, this part of the Coast is barrocaded with Shoals, as to make this Harbour more difficult of access; the safest way I know of to come at it is from the S, Keeping the Main land close on board all the way. Its situation may always be found by the Lat, which hath been before mentioned. Over the S point is some high Land, but the N point is formed by a low sandy beach, which extends about 3 mi to the Northward, then the land is again high.

The refreshments we got here were Chiefly Turtle, but as we had to go 5 lg out to Sea for them, and had much blowing weather, we were not over Stocked with this Article; however, what with these and the fish we caught with the Sean we had not much reason to Complain, considering the Country we were in. Whatever refreshment we got that would bear a Division I caused to be equally divided among the whole Company, generally by weight; the meanest person in the Ship had an equal share with myself or any one on board, and this method every commander of a Ship on such a Voyage as this ought ever to Observe. We found in several places on the Sandy beaches and Sand Hills near the Sea, Purslain and beans, which grows on a Creeping kind of a Vine. The first we found very good when boiled, and the latter not to be dispised, and were at first very serviceable to the Sick; but the best greens we found here was the Tarra, or Coco Tops, called in the W Indies Indian Kale, which grows in most Boggy Places; these eat as well as, or better, than Spinnage. The roots, for want of being Transplanted and properly Cultivated, were not good, yet we could have dispensed with them could we have got them in any Tolerable plenty; but having a good way to go for them, it took up too much time and too many hands to gather both root and branch. The few Cabage Palms we found here were in General small, and yielded so little Cabage that they were not worth the Looking after, and this was the Case with most of the fruit, etc., we found in the woods.

Besides the Animals which I have before mentioned, called by the Natives Kangooroo, or Kanguru, here are Wolves, Possums, an Animal like a ratt, and snakes, both of the Venemous and other sorts. Tame Animals here are none except Dogs, and of these we never saw but one, who frequently came about our Tents to pick up bones, etc. The Kanguru are in the greatest number, for we seldom went into the Country without seeing some. The land Fowls we met here, which far from being numerous, were Crows, Kites, Hawkes, Cockadores of 2 Sorts, the one white, and the other brown, very beautiful Loryquets of 2 or 3 Sorts, Pidgeons, Doves, and a few other sorts of small Birds. The Sea or Water fowl are Herns, Whisling Ducks, which perch and, I believe, roost on Trees; Curlews, etc., and not many of these neither. Some of our Gentlemen who were in the Country heard and saw Wild Geese in the Night.

The Country, as far as I could see, is diversified with Hills and plains, and these with woods and Lawns; the Soil of the Hills is hard, dry, and very Stoney; yet it produceth a thin Coarse grass, and some wood. The Soil of the Plains and Valleys are sandy, and in some places Clay, and in many Parts very Rocky and Stoney, as well as the Hills, but in general the Land is pretty well Cloathed with long grass, wood, Shrubs, etc. The whole Country abounds with an immense number of Ant Hills, some of which are 6 or 8 feet high, and more than twice that in Circuit. Here are but few sorts of Trees besides the Gum tree, which is the most numerous, and is the same that we found on the Southern Part of the Coast, only here they do not grow near so large. On each side of the River, all the way up it, are Mangroves, which Extend in some places a mile from its banks; the Country in general is not badly water'd, there being several fine Rivulets at no very great distance from one another, but none near to the place where we lay; at IE not in the Dry season, which is at this time. However we were very well supply'd with water by springs which were not far off.

Sunday, August 5th 1770 In thepm had a Gentle breeze at S-E and Clear weather. As I did not intend to weigh until the morning I sent all the Boats to the Reef to get what Turtle and Shell fish they could. At low water from the Mast head I took a view of the Shoals, and could see several laying a long way without this one, a part of several of them appearing above water; but as it appear'd pretty clear of Shoals to the N-E of the Turtle Reef, I came to a Resolution to stretch out that way close upon a wind, because if we found no Passage we could always return back the way we went. In the Evening the Boats return'd with one Turtle, a sting ray, and as many large Clams as came to 1 1/2 pounds a Man; in each of these Clams were about 20 pounds of Meat; added to this we Caught in the night several Sharks. Early in the morning I sent the Pinnace and Yawl again to the Reef, as I did not intend to weigh until half Ebb, at which time the Shoals began to appear. Before 8 it came on to blow, and I made the Signal for the Boats to come on Board, which they did, and brought with them one Turtle. We afterwards began to heave, but the wind Freshening obliged us to bear away again and lay fast.

Monday, August 6th 1770 Winds at S-E. At 2 o'Clockpm it fell pretty Moderate, and we got under sail, and stood out upon a wind N-E by E, leaving the Turtle Reef to windward, having the Pinnace ahead sounding. We had not stood out long before we discovered shoals ahead and on both bows. At half past 4 o'Clock, having run off 8 mi, the Pinnace made the Signal for Shoal water in a place where we little Expected it; upon this we Tack'd and Stood on and off while the Pinnace stretched farther to the Eastward, but as night was approaching I thought it safest to Anchor, which we accordingly did in 20 fm water, a Muddy bottom. Endeavour River bore S 52° W; Cape Bedford W by N 1/2 N, distant 5 lg; the Nermost land in sight, which made like an Island, N; and a Shoal, a small, sandy part of which appear'd above water, N-E,

distance 2 or 3 mi. In standing off from this Turtle Reef to this place our soundings were from 14 to 20 fm, but where the Pinnacle was, about a mile farther to the E-N-E, were no more than 4 or 5 feet of water, rocky ground; and yet this did not appear to us in the Ship. In the morning we had a strong Gale from the S-E, that, instead of weighing as we intended, we were obliged to bear away more Cable, and to Strike Top Gallant yards.

Tuesday, August 7th 1770 Strong Gales at S-E, S-E by S, and S-S-E, with cloudy weather at Low water in thepm I and several of the Officers kept a look out at the Mast head to see for a Passage between the Shoals; but we could see nothing but breakers all the way from the S round by the E as far as N-W, extending out to Sea as far as we could see. It did not appear to be one continued Shoal, but several laying detached from each other. On the Eermost that we could see the Sea broke very high, which made one judge it to be the outermost; for on many of those within the Sea did not break high at all, and from about 1/2 flood to 1/2 Ebb they are not to be seen, which makes the Sailing among them more dangerous, and requires great care and Circumspection, for, like all other Shoals, or Reefs of Coral Rocks, they are quite steep too. Altho' the most of these Shoals consist of Coral Rocks, yet a part of some of them is sand. The Turtle Reef and some others have a small Patch of Sand generally at the N end, that is only cover'd at high water. These generally discover themselves before we come near them. Altho' I speak of this as the Turtle Reef, yet it is not to be doubted but what there are Turtle upon the most of them as well as this one. After having well viewed our situation from the Mast Head, I saw that we were surrounded on every side with Dangers, in so much that I was quite at a loss which way to steer when the weather will permit us to get under sail, for to beat back to the S-E the way we came, as the Master would have had me done, would be an endless peice of work, as the winds blow constantly from that Quarter, and very Strong, without hardly any intermission; on the other hand, if we do not find a passage to the Northward we shall have to come back at last. At 11 the Ship drove, and obliged us to bear away to a Cable and one third, which brought us up again; but in the morning the Gale increasing, she drove again. This made us let go the Small Bower Anchor, and bear away a whole Cable on it and 2 on the other; and even after this she still kept driving slowly, until we had got down Top gallant Masts, struck Yards and Top masts close down, and made all snug; then she rid fast, Cape Bedford bearing W-S-W, distant 3 1/2 lg. In this situation we had Shoals to the Eastward of us extending from the S-E by S to the N-N-W, distant from the nearest part of them about 2 mi.

Wednesday, August 8th 1770 Strong gales at S-S-E all this day, in so much that I durst not get up Yards and Topmasts.

Thursday, August 9th 1770 In thepm, the weather being something moderate, we got up the Top masts, but kept the Lower yards down. At 6 in the morning we began to heave in the Cable, thinking to get under sail; but it blow'd so fresh, together with a head sea, that we could hardly heave the ship a head, and at last was obliged to desist.

Friday, August 10th 1770 Fresh Gales at S-S-E and S-E by S.pm, the wind fell so that we got up the small Bower Anchor, and hove into a whole Cable on the Best Bower. At 3 in the morning we got up the Lower Yards, and at 7 weighed and stood in for the Land (intending to seek for a passage along Shore to the Northward), having a Boat ahead sounding; depth of water as we run in from 19 to 12 fm. After standing in an hour we edged away for 3 Small Islands that lay N-N-E 1/2 E, 3 lg from Cape Bedford. To these Islands the Master had been in the Pinnacle when the Ship was in Port. At 9 we were abrE of them, and between them and the Main, having another low Island between us and the latter, which lies W-N-W, 4 mi from the 3

Islands. In this Channell had 14 fm water; the Nermost point of the Main we had in sight bore from us N-N-W 1/2 W, distant 2 lg. 4 or 5 lg to the N-E of this head land appeared 3 high Islands, with some smaller ones near them, and the Shoals and Reefs without, as we could see, extending to the Northward as far as these Islands. We directed our Course between them and the above headland, leaving a small Island to the Eastward of us, which lies N by E, 4 mi from the 3 Islands, having all the while a boat ahead sounding. At Noon we were got between the head Land and the 3 high Islands, distant from the former 2, and from the latter 4 lg; our Lat by observation was 14° 51' S. We now judged ourselves to be clear of all Danger, having, as we thought, a Clear, open Sea before us; but this we soon found otherwise, and occasioned my calling the Headland above mentioned Cape Flattery (Lat 14° 55' S, Lon 214° 43' W). It is a high Promontory, making in 2 Hills next the sea, and a third behind them, with low sandy land on each side; but it is better known by the 3 high Islands out at Sea, the Nermost of which is the Largest, and lies from the Cape N-N-E, distant 5 lg. From this Cape the Main land trends away N-W and N-W by W.

Saturday, August 11th 1770 Fresh breezes at S-S-E and S-E by S, with which we steer'd along shore N-W by W until one o'Clock, when the Petty Officer at the Masthead called out that he saw land ahead, extending quite round to the Islands without, and a large reef between us and them; upon this I went to the Masthead myself. The reef I saw very plain, which was now so far to windward that we could not weather it, but what he took for Main land ahead were only small Islands, for such they appeared to me; but, before I had well got from Mast head the Master and some others went up, who all asserted that it was a Continuation of the Main land, and, to make it still more alarming, they said they saw breakers in a Manner all round us. We immediately hauld upon a wind in for the Land, and made the Signal for the Boat, which was ahead sounding, to come on board; but as she was well to leEastward, we were obliged to edge away to take her up, and soon after came to an Anchor under a point of the Main in 1/4 less than 5 fm, about a mile from the Shore, Cape Flattery bearing S-E, distant 3 1/2 lg. After this I landed, and went upon the point, which is pretty high, from which I had a View of the Sea Coast, which trended away N-W by W, 8 or 10 lg, which was as far as I could see, the weather not being very clear. I likewise saw 9 or 10 Small, Low Islands and some Shoals laying off the Coast, and some large Shoals between the Main and the 3 high Islands, without which, I was now well assured, were Islands, and not a part of the Mainland as some had taken them to be. Excepting Cape Flattery and the point I am now upon, which I have named point Lookout, the Main land next the sea to the Northward of Cape Bedford is low, and Chequer'd with white sand and green Bushes, etc., for 10 or 12 mi inland, beyond which is high land. To the Northward of Point Lookout the shore appear'd to be shoal and flat some distance off, which was no good sign of meeting with a Channell in with the land, as we have hitherto done. We saw the footsteps of people upon the sand, and smoke and fire up in the Country, and in the evening return'd on board, where I came to a resolution to visit one of the high Islands in the Offing in my Boat, as they lay at IE 5 lg out at Sea, and seem'd to be of such a height that from the Top of one of them I hoped to see and find a Passage out to sea clear of the Shoals. Accordingly in the Morning I set out in the Pinnacle for the Nermost and largest of the 3, accompanied by Mr. Banks. At the same time I sent the Master in the Yawl to leEastward, to sound between the Low Islands and the Main. In my way to the Island I passed over a large reef of Coral Rocks and sand, which lies about 2 lg from the Island; I left another to leEastward, which lays about 3 mi from the Island. On the N part of this is a low, sandy Isle, with Trees upon it; on the reef we pass'd over in the Boat we saw several Turtle, and Chased one or Two, but caught none, it blowing too hard, and I had no time to spare, being otherways employ'd. I did not reach the Island until half an hour after one o'Clock in thepm on

Sunday, August 12th 1770 when I immediately went upon the highest hill on the Island, where, to my Mortification, I discover'd a Reef of Rocks laying about 2 or 3 lg without the Island, extending in a line N-W and S-E, farther than I could see, on which the sea broke very high. This, however, gave one great hopes that they were the outermost shoals, as I did not doubt but what I should be able to get without them, for there appeared to be several breaks or Partitions in the Reef, and Deep Water between it and the Islands. I stay'd upon the Hill until near sun set, but the weather continued so Hazy all the time that I could not see above 4 or 5 lg round me, so that I came down much disappointed in the prospect I expected to have had, but being in hopes the morning might prove Clearer, and give me a better View of the Shoals. With this view I stay'd all night upon the Island, and at 3 in the Morning sent the Pinnacle, with one of the Mates I had with me, to sound between the Island and the Reefs, and to Examine one of the breaks or Channels; and in the mean time I went again upon the Hill, where I arrived by Sun Rise, but found it much Hazier than in the Evening. About Noon the pinnacle return'd, having been out as far as the Reef, and found from 15 to 28 fm water. It blow'd so hard that they durst not venture into one of the Channels, which, the Mate said, seem'd to him to be very narrow; but this did not discourage me, for I thought from the place he was at he must have seen it at disadvantage. Before I quit this Island I shall describe it. It lies, as I have before observed, about 5 lg from the Main; it is about 8 mi in Circuit, and of a height sufficient to be seen 10 or 12 lg; it is mostly high land, very rocky and barren, except on the N-W side, where there are some sandy bays and low land, which last is covered with thin, long grass, Trees, etc., the same as upon the Main. Here is also fresh Water in 2 places; the one is a running stream, the water a little brackish where I tasted it, which was close to the sea; the other is a standing pool, close behind the sandy beach, of good, sweet water, as I daresay the other is a little way from the Sea beach. The only land Animals we saw here were Lizards, and these seem'd to be pretty Plenty, which occasioned my naming the Island Lizard Island. The inhabitants of the Main visit this Island at some Seasons of the Year, for we saw the Ruins of Several of their Hutts and heaps of Shells, etc. S-E, 4 or 5 mi from this Island, lay the other 2 high Islands, which are very small compared to this; and near them lay 3 others, yet smaller and lower Islands, and several Shoals or reefs, especially to the S-E. There is, however, a clear passage from Cape Flattery to those Islands, and even quite out to the outer Reefs, leaving the above Islands to the S-E and Lizard Island to the N-W.

Monday, August 13th 1770 At 2pm I left Lizard Island in order to return to the Ship, and in my way landed upon the low sandy Isle mentioned in coming out. We found on this Island a pretty number of Birds, the most of them sea Fowl, except Eagles; 2 of the Latter we shott and some of the others; we likewise saw some Turtles, but got none, for the reasons before mentioned. After leaving Eagle Isle I stood S-W direct for the Ship, sounding all the way, and had not less than 8 fm, nor more than 14. I had the same depth of Water between Lizard and Eagle Isle. After I got on board the Master inform'd me he had been down to the Islands I had directed him to go too, which he judged to lay about 3 lg from the Main, and had sounded the Channel between the 2, found 7 fm; this was near the Islands, for in with the Main he had only 9 feet 3 mi off, but without the Islands he found 10, 12, and 14 fm. He found upon the islands piles of turtle shells, and some finns that were so fresh that both he and the boats' crew eat of them. This showed that the natives must have been there lately. After well considering both what I had seen myself and the report of the Master's, I found by experience that by keeping in with the Mainland we should be in continued danger, besides the risk we should run in being lock'd in with Shoals and reefs by not finding a passage out to LeEastward. In case we persever'd in keeping the Shore on board an accident of this kind, or any other that might happen to the

ship, would infallibly loose our passage to the E India's this Season, and might prove the ruin of both ourselves and the Voyage, as we have now little more than 3 Months' Provisions on board, and that at short allowance. Wherefore, after consulting with the Officers, I resolved to weigh in the morning, and Endeavour to quit the Coast altogether until such time as I found I could approach it with less danger. With this View we got under sail at daylight in the morning, and stood out N-E for the N-W end of Lizard Island, having Eagle Island to windward of us, having the pinnacle ahead sounding; and here we found a good Channell, wherein we had from 9 to 14 fm. At Noon the N end of Lizard Island bore E-S-E, distant one mile; Lat observed  $14^{\circ} 38' S$ ; depth of water 14 fm. We now took the pinnacle in tow, knowing that there were no dangers until we got out to the Reefs.

Tuesday, August 14th 1770 Winds at S-E, a steady gale. By 2pm we got out to the outermost reefs, and just fetched to Windward of one of the openings I had discover'd from the Island; we tacked and Made a short trip to the S-W, while the Master went in the pinnacle to examine the Channel, who soon made the signal for the Ship to follow, which we accordingly did, and in a short time got safe out. This Channel lies N-E  $1/2 N$ , 3 lg from Lizard Island; it is about one-third of a mile broad, and 25 or 30 fm deep or more. The moment we were without the breakers we had no ground with 100 fm of Line, and found a large Sea rowling in from the S-E. By this I was well assured we were got with out all the Shoals, which gave us no small joy, after having been intangled among Islands and Shoals, more or less, ever since the 26th of May, in which time we have sail'd above 360 lg by the Lead without ever having a Leadsman out of the Chains, when the ship was under sail; a Circumstance that perhaps never hapned to any ship before, and yet it was here absolutely necessary. I should have been very happy to have had it in my power to have kept in with the land, in order to have explor'd the Coast to the Northern extremity of the Country, which I think we were not far off, for I firmly believe this land doth not join to New Guinea. But this I hope soon either to prove or disprove, and the reasons I have before assign'd will, I presume, be thought sufficient for my leaving the Coast at this time; not but what I intend to get in with it again as soon as I can do it with safety. The passage or channel we now came out by, which I have named, \_\_\_ lies in the Lat of  $14^{\circ} 32' S$ ; it may always be found and known by the 3 high Islands within it, which I have called the Islands of Direction, because by their means a safe passage may be found even by strangers in within the Main reef, and quite into the Main. Lizard Island, which is the Nermost and Largest of the 3, Affords snug Anchorage under the N-W side of it, fresh water and wood for fuel; and the low Islands and Reefs which lay between it and the Main, abound with Turtle and other fish, which may be caught at all Seasons of the Year (except in such blowing weather as we have lately had). All these things considered there is, perhaps, not a better place on the whole Coast for a Ship to refresh at than this Island. I had forgot to mention in its proper place, that not only on this Island, but on Eagle Island, and on several places of the Sea beach in and about Endeavour River, we found Bamboos, Cocoa Nutts, the seeds of some few other plants, and Pummice-stones, which were not the produce of the Country. From what we have seen of it, it is reasonable to suppose that they are the produce of some lands or Islands laying in the Neighbourhood, most likely to the Eastward, and are brought hither by the E trade winds. The Islands discover'd by Quiros lies in this parrallel, but how far to the Eastward it's hard to say; for altho' we found in most Charts his discoveries placed as far to the W as this country yet from the account of his Voyage, compared with what we ourselves have seen, we are Morally certain that he never was upon any part of this Coast. As soon as we had got without the Reefs we Shortened sail, and hoisted in the pinnacle and Long boat, which last we had hung alongside, and then stretched off E-N-E, close upon a wind, as I did not care to stand to the Northward until we had a whole day before us, for which reason we keep making short boards

all night. The large hollow sea we have now got into acquaints us with a Circumstance we did not before know, which is that the Ship hath received more Damage than we were aware of, or could perceive when in smooth Water; for now she makes as much water as one pump will free, kept constantly at work. However this was looked upon as trifling to the Danger we had lately made an Escape from. At day light in the morning Lizard Island bore S by W, distant 10 lg. We now made all the sail we could, and stood away N-N-W 1/2 W, but at 9 we steer'd N-W 1/2 N, having the advantage of a Fresh Gale at S-E; at Noon we were by observation in the Lat of 13° 46' S, the Lizard Island bore S 15° E, distant 58 mi, but we had no land in sight.

Wednesday, August 15th 1770 Fresh Trade at S-E and Clear weather. At 6 in the evening shortned sail and brought too, with her head to the N-E. By this time we had run near 12 lg upon a N-W 1/2 N Course since Noon. At 4am wore and lay her head to the S-W, and at 6 made all Sail, and steer'd W, in order to make the land, being fearful of over shooting the passage, supposing there to be one, between this land and New Guinea. By noon we had run 10 lg upon this Course, but saw no land. Our Lat by observation was 13° 2' S, Lon 216° 00' W, which was 1 degree 23' to the W of Lizard Island.

Thursday, August 16th 1770 Moderate breezes at E-S-E and fair weather. A little after Noon saw the Land from the Mast head bearing W-S-W, making high; at 2 saw more land to the N-W of the former, making in hills like Islands; but we took it to be a Continuation of the Main land. An hour after this we saw a reef, between us and the land, extending away to the Southward, and, as we thought, terminated here to the Northward abtE of us; but this was only on op'ning, for soon after we saw it extend away to the Northward as far as we could distinguish anything. Upon this we hauld close upon a Wind, which was now at E-S-E, with all the sail we could set. We had hardly trimm'd our sails before the wind came to E by N, which made our weathering the Reef very doubtful, the Northern point of which in sight at sun set still bore from us N by W, distant about 2 lg. However, this being the best Tack to Clear it, we kept standing to the Northward, keeping a good look out until 12 at night, when, fearing to run too far upon one Course, we tack'd and stood to the Southward, having run 6 lg N or N by E since sun set; we had not stood above 2 mi to the S-S-E before it fell quite Calm. We both sounded now and several times before, but had not bottom with 140 fm of line. A little after 4 o'clock the roaring of the surf was plainly heard, and at daybreak the Vast foaming breakers were too plainly to be seen not a mile from us, towards which we found the ship was carried by the Waves surprisingly fast. We had at this time not an air of Wind, and the depth of water was unfathomable, so that there was not a possibility of anchoring. In this distressed Situation we had nothing but Providence and the small Assistance the Boats could give us to trust to; the Pinnace was under repair, and could not immediately be hoisted out. The Yawl was put in the Water, and the Longboat hoisted out, and both sent ahead to tow, which, together with the help of our sweeps abaft, got the Ship's head round to the Northward, which seemed to be the best way to keep her off the Reef, or at IE to delay time. Before this was effected it was 6 o'clock, and we were not above 80 or 100 yards from the breakers. The same sea that washed the side of the ship rose in a breaker prodidgiously high the very next time it did rise, so that between us and destruction was only a dismal Valley, the breadth of one wave, and even now no ground could be felt with 120 fathom. The Pinnace was by this time patched up, and hoisted out and sent ahead to Tow. Still we had hardly any hopes of saving the ship, and full as little our lives, as we were full 10 lg from the nearest Land, and the boats not sufficient to carry the whole of us; yet in this Truly Terrible Situation not one man ceased to do his utmost, and that with as much Calmness as if no danger had been near. All the dangers we had escaped were little in comparison of being thrown upon this reef, where the Ship must be



dashed to pieces in a Moment. A reef such as one speaks of here is Scarcely known in Europe. It is a Wall of Coral Rock rising almost perpendicular out of the unfathomable Ocean, always overflown at high Water generally 7 or 8 feet, and dry in places at Low Water. The Large Waves of the Vast Ocean meeting with so sudden a resistance makes a most Terrible Surf, breaking Mountains high, especially as in our case, when the General Trade Wind blows directly upon it. At this Critical juncture, when all our endeavours seemed too little, a Small Air of Wind sprung up, but so small that at any other Time in a Calm we should not have observed it. With this, and the Assistance of our Boats, we could observe the Ship to move off from the Reef in a slanting direction; but in less than 10' we had as flat a Calm as ever, when our fears were again renewed, for as yet we were not above 200 Yards from the Breakers. Soon after our friendly Breeze visited us again, and lasted about as long as before. A Small Opening was now Seen in the Reef about a 1/4 of a mile from us, which I sent one of the Mates to Examine. Its breadth was not more than the Length of the Ship, but within was Smooth Water. Into this place it was resolved to Push her if Possible, having no other Probable Views to save her, for we were still in the very Jaws of distruction, and it was a doubt wether or no we could reach this Opening. However, we soon got off it, when to our Surprise we found the Tide of Ebb gushing out like a mill Stream, so that it was impossible to get in. We however took all the Advantage Possible of it, and it Carried us out about a 1/4 of a mile from the breakers; but it was too Narrow for us to keep in long. However, what with the help of this Ebb, and our Boats, we by Noon had got an Offing of 1 1/2 or 2 mi, yet we could hardly flatter ourselves with hopes of getting Clear, even if a breeze should Spring up, as we were by this time embay'd by the Reef, and the Ship, in Spite of our Endeavours, driving before the Sea into the bight. The Ebb had been in our favour, and we had reason to Suppose the flood which was now made would be against us. The only hopes we had was another Opening we saw about a mile to the Westward of us, which I sent Lieutenant Hicks in the Small Boat to Examine. Lat observed 12° 37' S, the Main Land in Sight distant about 10 lg.

Friday, August 17th 1770 While Mr. Hicks was Examining the opening we struggled hard with the flood, sometime gaining a little and at other times loosing. At 2 o'Clock Mr. Hicks returned with a favourable Account of the Opening. It was immediatly resolved to Try to secure the Ship in it. Narrow and dangerous as it was, it seemed to be the only means we had of saving her, as well as ourselves. A light breeze soon after sprung up at E-N-E, with which, the help of our Boats, and a Flood Tide, we soon entered the Opening, and was hurried thro' in a short time by a Rappid Tide like a mill race, which kept us from driving against either side, though the Channel was not more than a 1/4 of a mile broad, having 2 Boats ahead of us sounding. Our depth of water was from 30 to 7 fm; very irregular soundings and foul ground until we had got quite within the Reef, where we Anchor'd in 19 fm, a Coral and Shelly bottom. The Channel we came in by, which I have named Providential Channell, bore E-N-E, distant 10 or 12 mi, being about 8 or 9 lg from the Main land, which extended from N 66° W to S-W by S.

It is but a few days ago that I rejoiced at having got without the Reef; but that joy was nothing when Compared to what I now felt at being safe at an Anchor within it. Such are the Visissitudes attending this kind of Service, and must always attend an unknown Navigation where one steers wholly in the dark without any manner of Guide whatever. Was it not from the pleasure which Naturly results to a man from his being the first discoverer, even was it nothing more than Land or Shoals, this kind of Service would be insupportable, especially in far distant parts like this, Short of Provisions and almost every other necessary. People will hardly admit of an excuse for a Man leaving a Coast unexplored he has once discovered. If dangers are his excuse, he is then charged with Timerousness and want of Perseverance, and at once

pronounced to be the most unfit man in the world to be employ'd as a discoverer; if, on the other hand, he boldly encounters all the dangers and Obstacles he meets with, and is unfortunate enough not to succeed, he is then Charged with Temerity, and, perhaps, want of Conduct. The former of these Aspersions, I am confident, can never be laid to my Charge, and if I am fortunate to Surmount all the Dangers we meet with, the latter will never be brought in Question; altho' I must own that I have engaged more among the Islands and Shoals upon this Coast than perhaps in prudence I ought to have done with a single Ship and every other thing considered. But if I had not I should not have been able to give any better account of the one half of it than if I had never seen it; at best, I should not have been able to say wether it was Mainland or Islands; and as to its produce, that we should have been totally ignorant of as being inseparable with the other; and in this case it would have been far more satisfaction to me never to have discover'd it. But it is time I should have done with this Subject, which at best is but disagreeable, and which I was lead into on reflecting on our late Dangers.

In thepm, as the wind would not permit us to sail out by the same Channel as we came in, neither did I care to move until the pinnace was in better repair, I sent the Master with all the other Boats to the Reef to get such refreshments as he could find, and in the meantime the Carpenters were repairing the pinnace. Variations by the Amplitude and Azimuth in the morning  $4^{\circ} 9' E$ ; at noon Lat observed  $12^{\circ} 38' S$ , Lon in  $216^{\circ} 45' W$ . It being now about low water, I and some other of the officers went to the Masthead to see what we could discover. Great part of the reef without us was dry, and we could see an Opening in it about two lg farther to the S-E than the one we came in by; we likewise saw 2 large spots of sand to the Southward within the Reef, but could see nothing to the Northward between it and the Main. On the Mainland within us was a pretty high promontary, which I called Cape Weymouth (Lat  $12^{\circ} 42' S$ , Lon  $217^{\circ} 15'$ ); and on the N-W side of this Cape is a Bay, which I called Weymouth Bay.

Saturday, August 18th 1770 Gentle breezes at E and E-S-E. At 4pm the Boats return'd from the Reef with about 240 pounds of Shell-fish, being the Meat of large Cockles, exclusive of the Shells. Some of these Cockles are as large as 2 Men can move, and contain about 20 pounds of Meat, very good. At 6 in the morning we got under sail, and stood away to the N-W, as we could not expect a wind to get out to Sea by the same Channel as we came in without waiting perhaps a long time for it, nor was it advisable at this time to go without the Shoals, IE we should by them be carried so far off the Coast as not to be able to determine wether or no New Guinea joins to or makes a part of this land. This doubtful point I had from my first coming upon the Coast, determined, if Possible, to clear up; I now came to a fix'd resolution to keep the Main land on board, let the Consequence be what it will, and in this all the Officers concur'd. In standing to the N-W we met with very irregular soundings, from 10 to 27 fm, varying 5 or 6 fm almost every Cast of the Lead. However, we kept on having a Boat ahead sounding. A little before noon we passed a low, small, sandy Isle, which we left on our Starboard side at the distance of 2 mi. At the same time we saw others, being part of large Shoals above water, away to the N-E and between us and the Main land. At Noon we were by observation in the Lat of  $12^{\circ} 28' S$ , and 4 or 5 lg from the Main, which extended from S by W to N  $71^{\circ} W$ , and some Small Islands extending from N  $40^{\circ} W$  to N  $54^{\circ} W$ , the Main or outer Reef seen from the Masthead away to the N-E.

Sunday, August 19th 1770 Gentle breezes at S-E by E and Clear wether. At 2pm, as we were steering N-W by N, saw a large shoal right ahead, extending 3 or 4 points on each bow, upon which we hauld up N-N-E and N-E by N, in order to get round to N Point of it, which we

reached by 4 o'clock, and then Edged away to the Westward, and run between the N end of this Shoal and another, which lays 2 mi to the Northward of it, having a Boat all the time ahead sounding. Our depth of Water was very irregular, from 22 to 8 fm. At 1/2 past 6 we Anchor'd in 13 fm; the Nermost of the Small Islands mentioned at Noon bore W 1/2 S, distant 3 mi. These Islands, which are known in the Chart by the name of Forbes's Isles, lay about 5 lg from the Main, which here forms a moderate high point, which we called Bolt head, from which the Land trends more W, and is all low, sandy Land, but to the Southward it is high and hilly, even near the Sea. At 6am we got under sail, and directed our Course for an Island which lay but a little way from the Main, and bore from us at this time N 40° W, distant 5 lg; but we were soon interrupted in our Course by meeting with Shoals, but by the help of 2 Boats ahead and a good lookout at the Mast head we got at last into a fair Channel, which lead us down to the Island, having a very large Shoal on our Starboard side and several smaller ones betwixt us and the Main land. In this Channel we had from 20 to 30 fm. Between 11 and 12 o'Clock we hauld round the N-E side of the Island, leaving it between us and the Main from which it is distant 7 or 8 mi. This Island is about a League in Circuit and of a moderate height, and is inhabited; to the N-W of it are several small, low Islands and Keys, which lay not far from the Main, and to the Northward and Eastward lay several other Islands and Shoals, so that we were now incompassed on every side by one or the other, but so much does a great danger Swallow up lesser ones, that these once so much dreaded spots were now looked at with less concern. The Boats being out of their Stations, we brought too to wait for them. At Noon our Lat by observation was 12° 0' S, Lon in 217° 25' W; depth of Water 14 fm; Course and distance sail'd, reduced to a strait line, since yesterday Noon is N 29° W, 32 mi. The Main land within the above Islands forms a point, which I call Cape Grenville (Lat 11° 58', Lon 217° 38'); between this Cape and the Bolt head is a Bay, which I Named Temple Bay. E 1/2 N, 9 lg from Cape Grenville, lay some tolerable high Islands, which I called Sir Charles Hardy's Isles; those which lay off the Cape I named Cockburn Isles.

Monday, August 20th 1770 Fresh breezes at E-S-E. About onepm the pinnace having got ahead, and the Yawl we took in Tow, we fill'd and Steer'd N by W, for some small Islands we had in that direction. After approaching them a little nearer we found them join'd or connected together by a large Reef; upon this we Edged away N-W, and left them on our Starboard hand, steering between them and the Island laying off the Main, having a fair and Clear Passage; Depth of Water from 15 to 23 fm. At 4 we discover'd some low Islands and Rocks bearing W-N-W, which we stood directly for. At half Past 6 we Anchor'd on the N-E side of the Nermost, in 16 fm, distant from the Island one mile. This Isle lay N-W 4 lg from Cape Grenville. On the Isles we saw a good many Birds, which occasioned my calling them Bird Isles. Before and at Sunset we could see the Main land, which appear'd all very low and sandy, Extends as far to the Northward as N-W by N, and some Shoals, Keys, and low sandy Isles away to the N-E of us. At 6am we got again under sail, with a fresh breeze at E, and stood away N-N-W for some low Islands we saw in that direction; but we had not stood long upon this Course before we were obliged to haul close upon a wind in Order to weather a Shoal which we discover'd on our Larboard bow, having at the same time others to the Eastward of us. By such time as we had weathered the Shoal to LeEastward we had brought the Islands well upon our Leebow; but seeing some Shoals spit off from them, and some rocks on our Starboard bow, which we did not discover until we were very near them, made me afraid to go to windward of the Islands; wherefore we brought too, and made the signal for the pinnace, which was a head, to come on board, which done, I sent her to LeEastward of the Islands, with Orders to keep along the Edge off the Shoal, which spitted off from the S side of the Sermost Island. The Yawl I sent to run over the Shoals to look for Turtle, and appointed them a Signal to make in case they saw

many; if not, she was to meet us on the other side of the Island. As soon as the pinnacle had got a proper distance from us we wore, and stood After her, and run to LeEastward of the Islands, where we took the Yawl in Tow, she having seen only one small Turtle, and therefore made no Stay upon the Shoal. Upon this Island, which is only a Small Spott of Land, with some Trees upon it, we saw many Hutts and habitations of the Natives, which we supposed come over from the Main to these Islands (from which they are distant about 5 lg) to Catch Turtle at the time these Animals come ashore to lay their Eggs. Having got the Yawl in Tow, we stood away after the pinnacle N-N-E and N by E to 2 other low Islands, having 2 Shoals, which we could see without and one between us and the Main. At Noon we were about 4 lg from the Main land, which we could see Extending to the Northward as far as N-W by N, all low, flat, and Sandy. Our Lat by observation was  $11^{\circ} 23'$  S, Lon in  $217^{\circ} 46'$  W, and Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon N  $22^{\circ}$  W, 40 mi; soundings from 14 to 23 fm. But these are best seen upon the Chart, as likewise the Islands, Shoals, etc., which are too Numerous to be Mentioned singly.

Tuesday, August 21st 1770 Winds at E by S and E-S-E, fresh breeze. By one o'Clock we had run nearly the length of the Sermost of the 2 Islands before mentioned, and finding that we could not well go to windward of them without carrying us too far from the Main land, we bore up, and run to LeEastward, where we found a fair open passage. This done, we steer'd N by W, in a parrallel direction with the Main land, leaving a small Island between us and it, and some low sandy Isles and Shoals without us, all of which we lost sight of by 4 o'Clock; neither did we see any more before the sun went down, at which time the farthest part of the Main in sight bore N-N-W  $1/2$  W. Soon after this we Anchor'd in 13 fm, soft Ground, about five lg from the Land, where we lay until day light, when we got again under sail, having first sent the Yawl ahead to sound. We steer'd N-N-W by Compass from the Nermost land in sight; Variation  $3^{\circ} 6'$  E. Seeing no danger in our way we took the Yawl in Tow, and made all the Sail we could until 8 o'Clock, at which time we discover'd Shoals ahead and on our Larboard bow, and saw that the Nermost land, which we had taken to be a part of the Main, was an Island, or Islands, between which and the Main their appeared to be a good Passage thro' which we might pass by running to LeEastward of the Shoals on our Larboard bow, which was now pretty near us. Whereupon we wore and brought too, and sent away the Pinnacle and Yawl to direct us clear of the Shoals, and then stood after them. Having got round the S-E point of the Shoal we steer'd N-W along the S-W, or inside of it, keeping a good lookout at the Masthead, having another Shoal on our Larboard side; but we found a good Channel of a mile broad between them, wherein were from 10 to 14 fm. At 11 o'Clock, being nearly the length of the Islands above mentioned, and designing to pass between them and the Main, the Yawl, being thrown a stern by falling in upon a part of the Shoal, She could not get over. We brought the Ship too, and Sent away the Long boat (which we had a stern, and rigg'd) to keep in Shore upon our Larboard bow, and the Pinnacle on our Starboard; for altho' there appear'd nothing in the Passage, yet I thought it necessary to take this method, because we had a strong flood, which carried us on end very fast, and it did not want much of high water. As soon as the Boats were ahead we stood after them, and got through by noon, at which time we were by observation in the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 36' 30$  seconds S. The nearest part of the Main, and which we soon after found to be the Nermost, bore W S, distant 3 or 4 mi; the Islands which form'd the passage before mentioned extending from N to N  $75^{\circ}$  E, distant 2 or 3 mi. At the same time we saw Islands at a good distance off extending from N by W to W-N-W, and behind them another chain of high land, which we likewise judg'd to be Islands. The Main land we thought extended as far as N  $71^{\circ}$  W; but this we found to be Islands. The point of the Main, which forms one side of the Passage before mentioned, and which is the Northern Promontory of this Country, I have

named York Cape, in honour of his late Royal Highness, the Duke of York. It lies in the Lon of  $218^{\circ} 24'$  W, the N point in the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 37'$  S, and the E point in  $10^{\circ} 41'$ . The land over and to the Southward of this last point is rather low and very flatt as far inland as the Eye could reach, and looks barren. To the Southward of the Cape the Shore forms a large open bay, which I called Newcastle bay, wherein are some small, low Islands and shoals, and the land all about it is very low, flatt, and sandy. The land on the Northern part of the Cape is rather more hilly, and the shore forms some small bays, wherein there appear'd to be good Anchorage, and the Vallies appear'd to be tolerably well Cloathed with wood. Close to the E point of the Cape are 3 small Islands, and a small Ledge of rocks spitting off from one of them. There is also an Island laying close to the N Point. The other Islands before spoke of lay about 4 mi without these; only two of them are of any extent. The Sermost is the largest, and much higher than any part of the Main land. On the N-W side of this Island seem'd to be good Anchorage, and Vallies that to all appearance would afford both wood and fresh Water. These Isles are known in the Chart by the name of York Isles. To the Southward and S-E of them, and even to the Eastward and Northward, are several low Islands, rocks, and Shoals. Our depth of Water in sailing between them and the Main was 12, 13, and 14 fm.

Wednesday, August 22nd 1770 Gentle breezes at E by S and clear weather. We had not steer'd above 3 or 4 mi along shore to the Westward before we discover'd the land ahead to be Islands detached by several Channels from the main land; upon this we brought too to Wait for the Yawl, and called the other Boats on board, and after giving them proper instructions, sent them away again to lead us thro' the Channell next the Main, and as soon as the Yawl was on board made sail after them with the Ship. Soon after we discover'd rocks and Shoals in this Channell, upon which I made the Signal for the boats to lead thro' the next Channel to the Northward laying between the Islands, which they accordingly did, we following with the Ship, and had not less than 5 fm; and this in the narrow part of the Channel, which was about a mile and a 1/2 broad from Island to Island. At 4 o'Clock we Anchor'd about a mile and a 1/2 or 2 mi within the Entrance in 6 1/2 fm, clear ground, distance from the Islands on each side of us one mile, the Main land extending away to the S-W; the farthest point of which we could see bore from us  $S 48^{\circ} W$ , and the Sermost point of the Islands, on the N-W side of the Passage, bore  $S 76^{\circ} W$ . Between these 2 points we could see no land, so that we were in great hopes that we had at last found out a Passage into the Indian seas; but in order to be better informed I landed with a party of men, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, upon the Islands which lies at the S-E point of the Passage. Before and after we Anchor'd we saw a Number of People upon this Island, Arm'd in the same manner as all the others we have seen, Except one man, who had a bow and a bundle of Arrows, the first we have seen upon this Coast. From the appearance of the people we expected they would have opposed our landing; but as we approached the shore they all made off, and left us in peaceable possession of as much of the Island as served our purpose. After landing I went upon the highest hill, which, however, was of no great height, yet no less than twice or thrice the height of the Ship's Mastheads; but I could see from it no land between S-W and W-S-W, so that I did not doubt but there was a passage. I could see plainly that the lands laying to the N-W of this passage were compos'd of a number of Islands of Various extent, both for height and Circuit, ranged one behind another as far to the Northward and Westward as I could see, which could not be less than 12 or 14 lg. Having satisfied myself of the great Probability of a passage, thro' which I intend going with the Ship, and therefore may land no more upon this Eastern coast of New Holland, and on the Western side I can make no new discovery, the honour of which belongs to the Dutch Navigators, but the Eastern Coast from the Lat of  $38^{\circ} S$  down to this place, I am confident, was never seen or Visited by any European before us; and notwithstanding I had in the Name of his

Majesty taken possession of several places upon this Coast, I now once More hoisted English Colours, and in the Name of His Majesty King George the Third took possession of the whole Eastern coast from the above Lat down to this place by the Name of New Wales, together with all the Bays, Harbours, Rivers, and Islands, situated upon the said Coast; after which we fired 3 Volleys of small Arms, which were answer'd by the like number from the Ship.

This done, we set out for the Ship, but were some time in getting on board on account of a very Rapid Ebb Tide, which set N-E out of the Passage. Ever since we came in amongst the Shoals this last time we have found a Moderate Tide; the flood setting to the N-W and Ebb to the S-E; at this place is high water at full and change of the moon, about 1 or 2 o'Clock, and riseth and falleth upon a perpendicular about 10 or 12 feet. We saw upon all the Adjacent Lands and Islands a great number of smokes – a certain sign that they are inhabited – and we have daily seen smokes on every part of the Coast we have lately been upon. Between 7 and 8 o'Clockam we saw several naked people, all or most of them Women, down upon the beach picking up Shells, etc.; they had not a single rag of any kind of Cloathing upon them, and both these and those we saw yesterday were in every respect the same sort of People we have seen everywhere upon the Coast. 2 or 3 of the Men we saw Yesterday had on pretty large brE plates, which we supposed were made of pearl Oyster Shells; this was a thing, as well as the Bow and Arrows, we had not seen before. At low water, which hapned about 10 o'Clock, we got under sail, and stood to the S-W, with a light breeze at E, which afterwards veer'd to N by E, having the Pinnacle ahead; depth of Water from 6 to 10 fm, except in one place, where we passed over a Bank of 5 fm. At Noon Possession Island, at the S-E entrance of the Passage, bore N 53° E, distant 4 lg; the Western extream of the Main land in sight S 43° W, distant 4 or 5 lg, being all exceeding low. The S-W point of the largest Island on the N-W side of the passage bore N 71° W, distant 8 mi; this point I named Cape Cornwall (Lat 10° 43' S, Lon 218° 59' W), and some low Islands lying about the middle of the Passage, which I called Wallace's Isles, bore W by S 1/2 S, distance about 2 lg. Our Lat by Observation was 10° 46' S.

Thursday, August 23rd 1770 In thepm had little wind and Variable, with which and the Tide of Flood we kept advancing to the W-N-W; depth of Water 8, 7, and 5 fm. At 1/2 past 1 the pinnacle, which was ahead, made the Signal for Shoal Water, upon which we Tackt and sent away the Yawl to sound also, and then Tack'd again, and stood after them with the Ship; 2 hours after this they both at once made the Signal for having Shoal water. I was afraid to stand on for fear of running aground at that time of the Tide, and therefore came to an Anchor in 1/4 less 7 fm, sandy ground. Wallace's Islands bore S by W 1/2 W, distant 5 or 6 mi, the Islands to the Northward extending from N 73° E to N 10° E, and a small island just in sight bearing N-W 1/2 W. Here we found the flood Tide set to the Westward and Ebb to the Contrary. After we had come to Anchor I sent away the Master with the Long boat to sound, who, upon his return in the evening, reported that there was a bank stretching N and S, upon which were 3 fm Water, and behind it 7 fm. We had it Calm all Night and until 9 in the morning, at which time we weigh'd, with a light breeze at S-S-E, and steer'd N-W by W for the Small Island above mentioned, having first sent the Boats ahead to sound; depth of Water 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, and 3 fm when upon the Bank, it being now the last Quarter Ebb. At this time the most Nermost Islands we had in sight bore N 9° E; the S-W point of the largest Islands on the N-W side of the Passage, which I named Cape Cornwall, bore E; distant 3 lg. This bank, at IE so much as we sounded, extends nearly N and S, how far I cannot say; its breadth, however, is not more than 1/4 or at most 1/2 a mile. Being over the Bank, we deepned our water to a 1/4 less 7 fm, which depth we carried all the way to the small Island ahead, which we reached by Noon, at which time it bore S, distant near 1/2 a mile; depth of Water 5 fm. The most Nermost land we had in

sight (being part of the same Chain of Islands we have had to the Northward of us since we entered the Passage) bore N 71° E; Lat in, by Observation, 10° 33' S, Lon 219° 22' W. In this situation we had no part of the Main land in sight. Being now near the island, and having but little wind, Mr. Banks and I landed upon it, and found it to be mostly a barren rock frequented by Birds, such as Boobies, a few of which we shott, and occasioned my giving it the name of Booby Island. I made but very short stay at this Island before I return'd to the Ship; in the meantime the wind had got to the S-W, and although it blow'd but very faint, yet it was accompanied with a Swell from the same quarter. This, together with other concurring Circumstances, left me no room to doubt but we had got to the Westward of Carpentaria, or the Northern extremity of New Holland, and had now an open Sea to the Westward; which gave me no small satisfaction, not only because the danger and fatigues of the Voyage was drawing near to an end, but by being able to prove that New Holland and New Guinea are 2 separate Lands or Islands, which until this day hath been a doubtful point with Geographers.

The N-E entrance of this passage or Strait lies in the Lat of 10° 27' S, and in the Lon of 218° 36' W from the Meridian of Greenwich. It is form'd by the Main, or the Northern extremity of New Holland, on the S-E, and by a Congeries of Islands to N-W, which I named Prince of Wales's Islands. It is very Probable that the Islands extend quite to New Guinea; they are of Various Extent both for height and Circuit, and many of them seem'd to be indifferently well Cloath'd with wood, etc., and, from the smokes we saw, some, if not all of them, must be inhabited. It is also very probable that among these Islands are as good, if not better, passages than the one we have come thro', altho' one need hardly wish for a better, was the access to it from the Eastward less dangerous; but this difficulty will remain until some better way is found out than the one we came, which no doubt may be done was it ever to become an object to be looked for. The Northern Extent of the Main or outer reef, which limit or bounds the Shoals to the Eastward, seems to be the only thing wanting to Clear up this point; and this was a thing I had neither time nor inclination to go about, having been already sufficiently harrass'd with dangers without going to look for more.

This passage, which I have named Endeavour Straits, after the Name of the Ship, is in length N-E and S-W 10 lg, and about 5 lg broad, except at the N-E entrance, where it is only 2 mi broad by reason of several small Islands which lay there, one of which, called Possession Island, is of a Moderate height and Circuit; this we left between us and the Main, passing between it and 2 Small round Islands, which lay N-W 2 mi from it. There are also 2 Small low Islands, called Wallice's Isles, laying in the middle of the S-W entrance, which we left to the Southward; the depth of Water we found in the Straits was from 4 to 9 fm. Every where good Anchorage, only about 2 lg to the Northward of Wallice's Islands is a Bank, whereon is not more than 3 fm at low Water, but probable there might be found more was it sought for. I have not been particular in describing this Strait, no more than I have been in pointing out the respective Situations of the Islands, Shoals, etc., on the Coast of New Wales; for these I refer to the Chart, where they are deliniated with all the accuracy that Circumstances would admit of.

With respect to the Shoals that lay upon this Coast I must observe, for the benefit of those who may come after me, that I do not believe the one 1/2 of them are laid down in my Chart; for it would be Absurd to suppose that we Could see or find them all. And the same thing may in some Measure be said of the Islands, especially between the Lat of 20 and 22°, where we saw Islands out at Sea as far as we could distinguish any thing. However, take the Chart in general, and I believe it will be found to contain as few Errors as most Sea Charts which have not

undergone a horough correction. The Lat and Lon of all, or most of, the principal head lands, Bays, etc., may be relied on, for we seldom fail'd of getting an Observation every day to correct our Lat by, and the Observation for settling the Lon were no less Numerous, and made as often as the Sun and Moon came in play; so that it was impossible for any Material error to creep into our reckoning in the intermediate times. In justice to Mr. Green, I must say that he was indefatigable in making and calculating these observations, which otherwise must have taken up a great deal of my time, which I could not at all times very well spare; not only this, but by his instructions several of the petty Officers can make and calculate these observations almost as well as himself. It is only by such Means that this method of finding the Lon at Sea can be put into universal practice; a Method that we have generally found may be depended upon within 1/2 a degree, which is a degree of Accuracy more than sufficient for all Nautical purposes. Would Sea Officers once apply themselves to the making and calculating these Observations they would not find them so very difficult as they at first imagine, especially with the Assistance of the Nautical Almanack and Astronomical Ephemeris, by the help of which the Calculation for finding the Lon takes up but little more time than that of an Azimuth for finding the Variation of the Compass; but unless this Ephemeris is Published for some time to come, more than either one or 2 Years, it can never be of general use in long Voyages, and in short Voyages it's not so much wanted. Without it the Calculations are Laborious and discouraging to beginners, and such as are not well vers'd in these kind of Calculations.

In the Course of this Journal I have at different times made mention of the Appearance or Aspect of the face of the Country, the Nature of the Soil, its produce, etc. By the first it will appear that to the Southward of 33 or 34° the land in general is low and level, with very few Hills or Mountains; further to the Northward it may in some places be called a Hilly, but hardly anywhere can be called a Mountainous, Country, for the Hills and Mountains put together take up but a small part of the Surface in Comparison to what the Planes and Valleys do which intersect or divide these Hills and Mountains. It is indifferently well water'd, even in the dry Seasons, with small brooks and Springs, but no great Rivers, unless it be in the Wet Season, when the low lands and Vallies near the Sea, I do suppose, are mostly laid under Water. The Small Brooks may then become large Rivers; but this can only happen with the Tropick. It was only in Thirsty Sound that we could find no fresh Water, and that no doubt was owing to the Country being there very much intersected with Salt Creeks and Mangrove land.

The low land by the Sea, and even as far in land as we were, is for the most part friable, loose, sandy Soil yet indifferently fertile, and Cloathed with woods, long grass, shrubs, plants, etc. The Mountains or Hills are checquer'd with woods and Lawns; some of the Hills are wholly cover'd with Flourishing Trees; others but thinly, and the few that are upon them are small, and the spot of Lawns or Savannahs are rocky and barren, especially to the Northward, where the Country did not afford or produce near the Vegetation that it does to the Southward, nor were the Trees in the Woods half so tall and stout. The Woods do not produce any great variety of Trees; there are only 2 or 3 sorts that can be called Timber. The largest is the gum Tree, which grows all over the country; the wood of this Tree is too hard and ponderous for most common uses. The Tree which resembles our Pines I saw nowhere in perfection but in Botany Bay; this wood, as I have before observed, is something of the same Nature as American Live Oak; in short, most of the large Trees in this Country are of a hard and ponderous nature, and could not be applied to many purposes. Here are several sorts of the Palm kind, Mangrove, and several other sorts of small Trees and Shrubs quite unknown to me, besides a very great number of Plants hitherto unknown; but these things are wholly out of my way to describe, nor will this be of any loss, since not only plants, but every thing that can be of use to the Learned



World will be very accurately described by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. The Land naturally produces hardly anything fit for Man to eat, and the Natives know nothing of Cultivation. There are, indeed, growing wild in the wood a few sorts of Fruit (the most of them unknown to us), which when ripe do not eat amiss, one sort especially, which we called Apples, being about the size of a Crab Apple it is black and pulpey when ripe, and tastes like a Damson; it hath a large hard stone or Kernel, and grows on Trees or Shrubs.

In the Northern parts of the Country, as about Endeavour River, and probably in many other places, the Boggy or watery Lands produce Taara or Cocos, which, when properly cultivated, are very good roots, without which they are hardly eatable; the Tops, however, make very good greens.

Land Animals are scarce, so far as we know confin'd to a very few species; all that we saw I have before mentioned. The sort which is in the greatest Plenty is the Kangaroo or Kanguru, so called by the Natives; we saw a good many of them about Endeavour River, but kill'd only 3, which we found very good Eating. Here are likewise Lizards, Snakes, Scorpions, Centapees, etc., but not in any plenty. Tame Animals they have none but Dogs, and of these we saw but one, and therefore must be very scarce, probably they eat them faster than they breed them; we should not have seen this one had he not made us frequent Visits while we lay in Endeavour River.

The land Fowls are Bustards, Eagles, Hawks, Crows, such as we have in England, Cockatoes of 2 sorts, White and Brown, very beautiful Birds of the Parrot kind, such as Lorryquets, etc., Pidgeons, Doves, Quails, and several sorts of smaller birds. The Sea and Water Fowls are Herons, Boobies, Noddies, Guls, Curlews, Ducks, Pelicans, etc., and when Mr. Banks and Mr. Gore were in the Country, at the head of Endeavour River, they saw and heard in the Night great numbers of Geese. The Sea is indifferently well stocked with fish of Various sorts, such as Sharks, Dog-fish, Rockfish, Mulletts, Breams, Cavallies, Mack'rel, old wives, Leather Jackets, Five Fingers, Sting rays, Whip rays, etc., all excellent in their kind. The Shell fish are Oysters of 3 or 4 sorts, viz., Rock Oysters and Mangrove Oysters, which are small, Pearl Oysters and Mud Oysters; these last are the best and Largest I ever saw. Cockles and Clams of several sorts, many of those that are found upon the Reefs are of a prodigious size, Craw fish, Crabs, Muscles, and a variety of other sorts. Here are also upon the Shoals and Reefs great Numbers of the finest Green Turtle in the world, and in the River and Salt Creeks are some Aligators.

The Natives of this Country are of a middle Stature, streight Bodied and Slender limb'd; their Skins the Colour of Wood soot, their Hair mostly black, some Lank and others curled; they all wear it Cropt Short; their Beards, which are generally black, they likewise crop short, or Singe off. Their features are far from being disagreeable, and their Voices are soft and Tunable. They go quite Naked, both Men and Women, without any manner of Cloathing whatever; even the Women do not so much as cover their privities, altho' None of us was ever very near any of their Women, one Gentleman excepted, yet we are all of us as well satisfied of this as if we had lived among them. Notwithstanding we had several interviews with the Men while we lay in Endeavour River, yet, wether through Jealousy or disregard, they never brought any of their women along with them to the Ship, but always left them on the Opposite side of the River, where we had frequent Opportunities viewing them thro' our Glasses. They wear as Ornaments, Necklaces made of Shells, Bracelets, or Hoops, about their Arms, made mostly of Hair Twisted and made like a Cord Hoop; these they wear tight about the upper parts of their

Arms, and some have Girdles made in the same manner. The Men wear a bone, about 3 or 4 Inches long and a finger's thick, run thro' the Bridge of their Nose; they likewise have holes in their Ears for Ear Rings, but we never saw them wear any; neither are all the other Ornaments wore in Common, for we have seen as many without as with them. Some of these we saw on Possession Island wore brE plates, which we supposed were made of Mother of Pearl Shells. Many of them paint their Bodies and faces with a Sort of White paste or Pigment; this they apply different ways, each according to his fancy.

Their offensive weapons are Darts; some are only pointed at one end, others are barb'd, some with wood, others with Stings of rays, and some with Sharks' Teeth, etc.; these last are stuck fast on with Gum. They throw the Darts with only one hand, in the doing of which they make use of a piece of wood about 3 feet long, made thin like the blade of a Cutlass, with a little hook at one End to take hold of the End of the dart, and at the other end is fix'd a thin piece of bone about 3 or 4 Inches long; the use of this is, I believe, to keep the dart steady, and to make it quit the hand in a proper direction. By the helps of these throwing sticks, as we call them, they will hit a mark at the Distance of 40 or 50 yards, with almost, if not as much, Certainty as we can do with a Musquet, and much more so than with a ball. These throwing sticks we at first took for wooden swords, and perhaps on some occasions they may use them as such; that is, when all their darts are expended. Be this as it may, they never Travel without both them and their Darts, not for fear of Enemies, but for killing of Game, etc., as I shall show hereafter. Their defensive weapons are Targets, made of wood; but these we never saw used but once in Botany Bay.

I do not look upon them to be a warlike people; on the contrary, I think them a Timorous and inoffensive race, no ways inclined to Cruelty, as appear'd from their behaviour to one of our people in Endeavour River, which I have before mentioned, neither are they very numerous. They live in small parties along by the Sea Coast, the banks of Lakes, Rivers, Creeks, etc. They seem to have no fixed habitation, but move about from place to place like wild bEs in search of Food, and, I believe, depend wholly upon the Success of the present day for their Subsistance. They have wooden fish Gigs, with 2, 3, or 4 prongs, each very ingeniously made, with which they strike fish. We have also seen them strike both fish and birds with their Darts. With these they likewise kill other Animals; they have also wooden Harpoons for striking Turtle, but of these I believe they get but few, except at the seasons they come ashore to lay. In short, these people live wholly by fishing and hunting, but mostly by the former, for we never saw one Inch of Cultivated land in the whole Country. They know, however, the use of Taara, and sometimes eat them; we do not know that they Eat anything raw, but roast or broil all they eat on slow small fires. Their Houses are mean, small Hovels, not much bigger than an Oven, made of Peices of Sticks, Bark, Grass, etc., and even these are seldom used but in the Wet seasons, for in the daytimes we know they as often sleep in the Open Air as anywhere else. We have seen many of their Sleeping places, where there has been only some branches or pieces of Bark, grass, etc., about a foot high on the Windward side.

Their Canoes are as mean as can be conceived, especially to the Southward, where all we saw were made of one peice of the Bark of Trees about 12 or 14 feet long, drawn or Tied together at one end. As I have before made mention, these Canoes will not Carry above 2 people, in general there is never more than one in them; but, bad as they are, they do very well for the purpose they apply them to, better than if they were larger, for as they draw but little water they go in them upon the Mud banks, and pick up Shell fish, etc., without going out of the Canoe. The few Canoes we saw to the Northward were made out of a Log of wood hollow'd

out, about 14 feet long and very narrow, with outriggers; these will carry 4 people. During our whole stay in Endeavour River we saw but one Canoe, and had great reason to think that the few people that resided about that place had no more; this one served them to cross the River and to go a Fishing in, etc. They attend the Shoals, and flats, one where or another, every day at low water to gather Shell fish, or whatever they can find to eat, and have each a little bag to put what they get in; this bag is made of net work. They have not the IE knowledge of Iron or any other Metal that we know of; their working Tools must be made of Stone, bone, and Shells; those made of the former are very bad, if I may judge from one of their Adzes I have seen.

Bad and mean as their Canoes are, they at Certain seasons of the Year (so far as we know) go in them to the most distant Islands which lay upon the Coast, for we never landed upon one but what we saw signs of People having been there before. We were surprized to find Houses, etc., upon Lizard Island, which lies 5 lg from the nearest part of the Main; a distance we before thought they could not have gone in their Canoes.

The Coast of this Country, at IE so much of it as lays to the Northward of 25° of Lat, abounds with a great Number of fine bays and Harbours, which are Shelter'd from all winds; but the Country itself, so far as we know, doth not produce any one thing that can become an Article in Trade to invite Europeans to fix a settlement upon it. However, this Eastern side is not that barren and miserable country that Dampier and others have described the Western side to be. We are to consider that we see this country in the pure state of nature; the Industry of Man has had nothing to do with any part of it, and yet we find all such things as nature hath bestow'd upon it in a flourishing state. In this Extensive Country it can never be doubted but what most sorts of Grain, Fruit, roots, etc., of every kind would flourish here were they once brought hither, planted and Cultivated by the hands of Industry; and here are Provender for more Cattle, at all seasons of the Year, than ever can be brought into the Country. When one considers the Proximity of this Country with New Guinea, New Britain, and several other Islands which produce Cocoa Nutts and many other fruits proper for the support of man, it seems strange that they should not long ago be Transplanted here; by its not being done it should seem that the Natives of this Country have no commerce with their Neighbours, the New Guineans. It is very probable that they are a different people, and speak a different Language. For the advantage of such as want to Clear up this point I shall add a small Vocabulary of a few Words in the New Holland Language which we learnt when in Endeavour River.

English, New Holand

The Head, Whageegee

The Hair of the head, Morye or More

The Eyes, Meul

The Ears, Melea

The Lips, Yembe or Jembi

The Teeth, Mulere or Moile

The Chinn, Jaeal

The Beard, Waller

The Tongue, Unjar

The Nose, Bonjoo

The Naval, Toolpoor or Julpur

The Penis, Keveil or Kerrial

The Scrotum, Coonal or Kunnol

The Arms, Aw or Awl  
 The Hand, Marigal  
 The Thumb, Eboorbalga  
 The Fore, middle and Ring fingers, Egalbaiga  
 Little Finger, Nakil or Eboonakil  
 The Thighs, Coman  
 The Knees, Ponga  
 The Legs, Peegoorgo  
 The Feet, Edamal  
 The Nails, Kolke or Kulke  
 A Stone, Walba  
 Sand, Joo'wal, Yowall, or Joralba  
 A Rope or Line, Goorgo or Gurka  
 Fire, Maianang or Meanang  
 The Sun, Galan or Gallan  
 The Sky, Kere or Kearre  
 A Father, Dunjo  
 A Son, Jumurre  
 A Man, Bamma or Ba ma  
 A Dog, Cotta or Kota  
 A Lorryquet, Perpere or Pier-pier  
 A Cocatoo, Wanda  
 Male Turtle, Poonja or Poinja  
 Female, Mamingo  
 A great Cockle, Moenjo or Moingo  
 Cocos Yams, Maracotu  
 A Canoe, Maragan

From what I have said of the Natives of New Holland they may appear to some to be the most wretched People upon Earth; but in reality they are far more happier than we Europeans, being wholly unacquainted not only with the Superfluous, but with the necessary Conveniences so much sought after in Europe; they are happy in not knowing the use of them. They live in a Tranquility which is not disturbed by the Inequality of Condition. The earth and Sea of their own accord furnishes them with all things necessary for Life. They covet not Magnificent Houses, Household-stuff, etc.; they live in a Warm and fine Climate, and enjoy every wholesome Air, so that they have very little need of Cloathing; and this they seem to be fully sencible of, for many to whom we gave Cloth, etc., left it carelessly upon the Sea beach and in the Woods, as a thing they had no manner of use for; in short, they seem'd to set no Value upon anything we gave them, nor would they ever part with anything of their own for any one Article we could offer them. This, in my opinion, Argues that they think themselves provided with all the necessaries of Life, and that they have no Superfluities.

I shall conclude the account of this Country with a few observations on the Currents and Tides upon the Coast, because I have mentioned in the Course of this Journal that the latter hath sometimes set one way and sometimes another, which I shall Endeavour to account for in the best manner I can. From the Lat of 32°, or above dowNorthwards to Sandy Cape in the Lat of 24° 46', we constantly found a Current setting to the Southward at the rate of 10 or 15 mi per Day, more or less, according to the distance we were from the land, for it runs stronger in shore than in the Offing. All this time I had not been able to satisfy myself whether the flood-

tide came from the Southward, Eastward, or Northward, but judged it to come from the S-E; but the first time we anchor'd upon the coast, which was in the Lat of  $24^{\circ} 30'$ , and about 10 lg to the S-E of Bustard Bay, we found there the flood to come from the N-W. On the Contrary, 30 lg further to the N-W, on the S side of Keppel Bay, we found the Flood to come from the E, and at the Northern part of the said Bay we found it come from the Northward, but with a much Slower Motion than the E Tide. Again, on the E side of the Bay of Inlets we found the flood to set strong to the Westward as far as the Op'ning of Broad sound, but on the N side of that sound the flood come with a Slow motion from the N-W; and when at Anchor before Repulse bay we found the flood to come from the Northward. We need only admit the flood tide to come from the E or S-E, and then all these seeming Contradictions will be found to be conformable to reason and experience. It is well known that where there are deep Inlets, large Creeks, etc., into low lands, that it is not occasioned by fresh water Rivers; there is a very great indraught of the Flood Tide, the direction of which will be determin'd according to the position or direction of the Coast which forms the Entrance into such Inlets; and this direction the Tide must follow, let it be ever so contrary to their general Course out at Sea, and where the Tides are weak, as they are in general upon this Coast, a large Inlet will, if I may so call it, attract the Flood tide for many lg. Any one need only cast an Eye over the Chart to be made sencible of what I have advanced. To the Northward of Whitsundays Passage there are few or no large Inlets, and consequently the Flood sets to the Northward or N-W, according to the direction of the Coast, and Ebb the Contrary; but this is to be understood at a little distance from land, or where there is no Creeks or Inlets, for where such are, be they ever so small, they draw the flood from the Southward, Eastward, and Northward, and, as I found by experience, while we lay in Endeavour River. Another thing I have observed upon the Tides which ought to be remarked, which is that there is only one high Tide in 24 Hours, and that is the night Tide. On the Spring Tides the difference between the perpendicular rise of the night and day Tides is not less than 3 feet, which is a great deal where the Tides are so inconsiderable, as they are here. This inequality of the Tide I did not observe till we run ashore; perhaps it is much more so to the Northward than to the Southward. After we had got within the Reefs the second time we found the Tides more considerable than at any time before, except in the Bay of Inlets. It may be owing to the water being confin'd in Channels between the Shoals, but the flood always set to the N-W to the extremity of New Wales, from thence W and S-W into the India Seas.

### **Chapter 9: Torres Strait to Batavia**

Friday, August 24th 1770 In thepm had light Airs from the S-S-W, with which, after leaving Booby Island, as before mentioned, we steer'd W-N-W until 5 o'clock, when it fell Calm, and the Tide of Ebb which sets to the N-E soon after making, we Anchor'd in 8 fm soft sandy bottom, Booby Island bearing  $S 50^{\circ} E$ , distant 5 mi; Prince of Wales Isles extending from N-E by N to S  $55^{\circ} E$ . There appear'd to be an open clear passage between these Islands extending from N  $64^{\circ} E$  to E by N. At 1/2 past 5 in the morning in purchasing the Anchor, the Cable parted about 8 or 10 fm from the Anchor; I immediately order'd another Anchor to be let go, which brought the ship up before she

had drove a cable's length from the Buoy; after this we carried out a Kedge, and warped the ship nearer to it, and then endeavour'd to sweep the Anchor with a Hawser, but miss'd it, and broke away the Buoy rope. We made several Attempts afterwards, but did not succeed. While the Boats were thus employed we hove up the Kedge Anchor, it being of no more use. At Noon Lat observed  $10^{\circ} 30' S$ . Winds at N-E, a fresh breeze; the Flood Tide here comes from the same Quarter.

Saturday, August 25th 1770 Winds at N-E and E-N-E, a gentle breeze. Being resolv'd not to leave the Anchor behind while there remain'd the IE probability of getting of it, after dinner I sent the Boats again to sweep for it first with a small line, which succeeded, and now we know'd where it lay we found it no very hard matter to sweep it with a Hawser. This done, we hove the Ship up to it by the same Hawser, but just as it was almost up and down the Hawser slip'd, and left us all to do over again. By this time it was dark, and obliged us to leave off until daylight in the morning, when we sweep'd it again, and hove it up to the bows, and by 8 o'Clock weigh'd the other anchor, got under sail, and stood away N-W, having a fresh breeze at E-N-E. At Noon we were by observation in the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 18' S$ , Lon  $219^{\circ} 39' W$ , having no land in sight, but about 2 mi to the Southward of us lay a Shoal, on which the Sea broke, and I believe a part of it dry. At low Water it extended N-W and S-E, and might be about 4 or 5 lg in Circuit; depth of Water at this time and since we weigh'd 9 fm.

Sunday, August 26th 1770 Fresh breezes at E in standing to the N-W. We began to Shoalden our water from 9 to 7 fm, and at 1/2 past one, having run 11 mi since Noon, the boat which was a head made the signal for Shoal Water, immediately upon which we let go an Anchor, and brought the Ship up with the sails standing as the boats was but a little way ahead, having but just relieved the Crew, and at same time we saw from the Ship Shoal Water in a manner all round us, and both wind and Tide setting upon it. We lay in 6 fm with the Ship, but upon sounding about her found hardly 2 fm, a very rocky bottom, not much above 1/2 a cable's length from us from the E round by the N and W as far as S-W, so that there was no way to get clear but the way we came. This was one of the many Fortunate Escapes we have had from Shipwreck, for it was near high water, and there run a short cockling sea that would soon have bulged the Ship had she struck. These Shoals that lay a fathom or 2 under Water are the most dangerous of any, for they do not shew themselves until you are close upon them, and then the water upon them looks brown like the reflection of dark clouds. Between 3 and 4 the Ebb began to make, when I sent the Master to sound to the Southward and S Westward, and in the meantime, as the Ship tended, hove up the Anchor, and with a little Sail stood to the Southward and afterwards edged away to the Westward, and got once more out of danger, where at sun set we Anchor'd in 10 fm Sandy bottom. Having a fresh of wind at E-S-E, at 6 o'clock in the morning we weighed and stood W, with a fresh of wind at E, having first sent a boat ahead to sound. I did intend to have steer'd N-W until we had made the Coast of New Guinea, designing if Possible to touch upon that Coast, but the meeting with these Shoals last night made me Alter the Course to W, in hopes of meeting with fewer dangers and deeper Water; and this we found, for by Noon we had deepned our water gradually to 17 fm, and this time we were by observation in the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 10' S$ , Lon  $220^{\circ} 12' W$ . Course and distance sail'd since yesterday at noon N  $76^{\circ} W$ , 11 lg, no land in sight.

Monday, August 27th 1770 Fresh breezes between the E by N and E-S-E, with which we steer'd W until sun set; depth of Water from 27 to 23 fm. We now Reef'd the Topsails, shortened Sail, and hoisted in the pinnace and Long boat up alongside, and afterwards kept upon a Wind all night under our Topsails, 4 hours on one Tack and four hours on the other; depth of Water 25 fm, very even soundings. At daylight made all the Sail we could, and steer'd W-N-W until 8 o'clock, then N-W; at Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $9^{\circ} 56' S$ , Lon  $221^{\circ} 00' W$ ; Variation  $2^{\circ} 30' E$ . Course and distance sail'd since yesterday at Noon N  $73^{\circ} 33' W$ , 49 mi.

Tuesday, August 28th 1770 Fresh breezes at E and E by S and fair weather. Continued a N-W Course until sun set, at which time we shortned sail, and haul'd close upon a Wind to the Northward; depth of Water 21 fm. At 8 Tack'd and stood to the Southward until 12, then stood to the Northward under little Sail until daylight, sounding from 25 to 17 fm; Shoalding as we stood to the Northward. At this time we made sail and steer'd N in order to make the land of New Guinea; from the time of our making sail until noon the depth of Water gradually decreased from 17 to 12 fm, a stony and shelly bottom. We were now by Observation in the Lat of  $8^{\circ} 52'$  S, which is in the same Parrallel as the Southern parts of New Guinea as it is laid down in the Charts; but there are only 2 points so far to the S, and I reckon we are a degree to the Westward of both, and for that reason do not see the Land which trends more to the Northward. Our Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday is N-N-W, 69 mi; Lon in  $221^{\circ} 27'$  W. The Sea in many places is here cover'd with a kind of a brown scum, such as Sailors generally call spawn; upon our first seeing it it alarm'd us, thinking we were among Shoals, but we found the same depth of Water were it was as in other places; neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could tell what it was, altho' they had of it to Examine.

Wednesday, August 29th 1770 Continued standing to the Northward, with a fresh gale at E by S and S-E until 6 o'clock, having very irregular and uncertain soundings from 24 to 7 fm. At 4 we made the Land from the Mast head, bearing N-W by N, and which appear'd to be very low. At 6 it extended from W-N-W to N-N-E, distant 4 or 5 lg. At this time haul'd close upon a wind to the Eastward until 7 o'clock, then Tack'd and stood to the Southward until 12, at which time we wore and stood to the Northward until 4, then lay her Head off until daylight, when we again saw the Land, and stood N-N-W directly for it, having a fresh gale at E by S. Our Soundings in the night were from 17 to 5 fm, very irregular, without any sort of Rule with respect to our distance from the Land. At 1/2 past 6 a small low island, laying about a League from the Main, bore N by W, distant 5 mi; this island lays in the Lat of  $8^{\circ} 13'$  S, Lon  $221^{\circ} 25'$  W. I find it laid down in the Charts by the Name of St. Bartholomew or Whermoyesen. We now steer'd N-W by W, W-N-W, W by N, W by S, and S-W by W, as we found the land to lay, having a Boat ahead of the Ship sounding; depth of water from 5 to 9 fm. When in 7, 8 or 9 fm we could but just see the Land from the Deck; but I did not think we were at above 4 lg off, because the land is exceeding low and level, and appeared to be well cover'd with wood; one sort appeared to us to be Cocoa Nutt Trees. By the Smookes we saw in different parts as we run along shore we were assured that the Country is inhabited. At Noon we were about 3 lg from the land, the Wermost part of which that we could see bore S  $79^{\circ}$  W; our Lat by Observation was  $8^{\circ} 19'$  S, Lon  $221^{\circ} 44'$  W. The Island, St. Bartholomew, bore N  $74^{\circ}$  E, distant 20.

Thursday, August 30th 1770 Fresh breezes at S-E, E-S-E, and E by S. After steering S-W by W, 6 mi, we discover'd on our Starboard bow and ahead a Strong appearance of Shoal Water, and by this time we had Shoald our water from 10 to 5 fm; upon which I made the Pinnacle Signal to Edge down to it, but she not going far enough, we sent the Yawl to sound in it, and at the same time haul'd off close upon a Wind, with the Ship until 4, at which time we had run 6 mi, but did not depen our water anything. We then Edged away S-W, 4 mi more, but finding still Shoal Water we brought too, and call'd the Boats on board by Signal, hoisted them in, and then haul'd off close upon a wind, being at this time about 3 or 4 mi from the Land. The Yawl found only 3 fm water in the place where I sent her to sound, which place I weather'd about 1/2 a mile. Between 1 and 2 we passed a Bay or Inlet, before which lies a small Island that seems to Shelter it from the S winds; but I very much doubt their being Water behind it for Shipping. I could not attempt it because the S-E Trade wind blows right in, and we have not as yet had any land breezes. We stretched off to Sea until 12 o'Clock, at which time we were 10 and 11 lg

from the Land, and had depen'd our Water to 29 fm; we now tack'd and stood in until 4 o'Clock, when, being in 6 1/2 fm, we tack'd and lay her head off until day light, at which time we saw the land bearing N-W by W, distant about 4 lg. We now made sail and steer'd W-S-W, and then W by S, but coming into 54 fm we haul'd off S-W until we depen'd our Water to 8 fm; we then kept away W by S and W, having 9 fm and the Land just in sight from the Deck, which we judged not above 3 or 4 lg off, as it is everywhere exceeding low. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of 8° 38' S, Lon 222° 34' W. St. Bartholomew Isle bore N 69° E, distant 74 mi.

Friday, August 31st 1770 Between 12 and 1 in the pm Steer'd N-N-W, in which time we Shoalded our Water from 8 to 5 1/2, which I thought was little enough, and therefore kept away again W, and soon depen'd it to 7 fm, which depth we kept until 6, having the land just in sight from the Deck. At this time the Western Extream bore N, distant about 4 lg, and Seem'd to end in a point and turn away to the Northward; we took it to be Point St. Augustine or Walsche Caep, Lat 8° 24' S, Lon 222° 55' W. We now shortned sail and haul'd off S-S-W and S by W, having the wind at S-E and S-E by E, a Gentle breeze; we stood off 16 mi, having from 7 to 27 fm, deepning gradually as we run off. At midnight we Tacked and stood in until daylight, at which time we could see no land, and yet we had only 5 1/2 fm. We now Steer'd N-W, having the same depth of Water until near 9 o'Clock, when we began to Depen our Water to 6 1/2 and 7 fm. By this I thought that we were far Enough to the Westward of the Cape, and might haul to the Northward with Safety, which we now did, having the Wind at N-E by E, a light breeze. By Noon we had increased our Water to 9 fm, and were by Observation in the Lat of 8° 10' S, which was 10 mi to the Northward of that given by the Log; by which I conjectur'd that we had meet with a strong Current setting round the Cape, not only to the Northward, but to the Westward also, otherwise we ought to have seen the Land, which we did not.

Saturday, September 1st 1770 In the pm and most part of the night had a fresh breeze from the S-E with which we kept standing in for the land N-E and E-N-E, close upon a wind, until half past 6, when we Anchor'd in 4 1/2 fm, soft muddy bottom, as we have every where found upon the Coast. About an hour before we Anchor'd we saw the land from the Mast head extending from the E by N to S-S-E, all very low; at the time we Anchor'd we found a small dreen of a Tide setting away to the N-W, which continued until 2 in the morning, when the Water had fell 9 feet or better. This Tide of Ebb was then succeeded by the Flood, which came from the S-W; yet we did not find the Water to rise much upon a perpendicular, or else the greatest fall of the Tide had not been well attended to in the night, for at 6, when we got under sail, we had no more than 3 fm under the ship, and yet we could not see the land from the Deck. After getting under sail we stood to the Northward with a light breeze at E, and deepned our Water by noon to 10 fm, having the Land just in sight from the Mast head to the S-E. At this time we were in the Lat of 7° 39' S, Lon 222° 42' W; Port St. Augustine bore S 10° W, distant 15 lg.

Sunday, September 2nd 1770 In the pm had Calm until 2, when a light breeze sprung up at N by E, and we stood in for the Land E by N until 5, at which time we got the wind from the S-W, a light breeze, with which we steer'd N-E, edging in for the land, having it in sight from the Deck, and which I judged to be about 3 or 4 lg off, being very low land. Found the Variation to be 2° 34' E, and a little before 8 o'Clock, having but little wind, we Anchor'd in 7 fm, soft Muddy bottom. In the Afternoon and evening we saw several Sea Snakes, some of which the people in the Boat alongside took up by hand. At daylight in the Morning we got under sail, and stood away to the N-N-E, having a fresh gale at E, which by noon brought us into the Lat of 7° 14' S, Lon 222° 30' W; Depth of Water 13 fm. Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday Noon is N



24° E, 27 mi, having at this time no land in sight, for the Land, according to the Charts, trends more E than the Wind would permit us to sail.

Monday, September 3rd 1770 Steer'd N by E, with a fresh breeze at E by N until 7 in the Evening, when the wind came to S-E by S, with which we kept standing to the Eastward close upon a wind all Night, having from 17 to 10 fm pretty even Soundings. At daylight we saw the land extending from N by E to S-E, distant about 4 lg. We still kept standing in for it, having the advantage of a fresh gale at E-S-E and E by S, until near 9, when, being about 3 or 4 mi off, and in 3 fm, we brought too and I went ashore in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, having a mind to land once in this Country before we quit it Altogether, which I now am determin'd to do without delay; for I found that it is only spending time to little purpose, and carrying us far out of our way, staying upon this Coast, which is so shallow that we can hardly keep within sight of land.

At the time we put off from the Ship we saw not the IE sign of inhabitants; but we had no sooner landed than we saw the print of Men's feet fresh upon the sand, and a little way farther we found a small Shed or Hutt, about which lay green shells of Cocoa Nutts. By this we were well assured that the inhabitants were not far off; nay, we thought we heard their Voices in the woods, which were so close and thick that we did not think it safe to venture in, for fear of an Ambuscade, as we had only a Boat's crew with us, a part of which were left to look after the boat, which lay about a 1/4 of a mile from the Shore. We therefore took a walk upon the Sea beach, but had not gone above 200 Yards before we were attack'd by 3 or 4 Men, who came out of the woods a little before us, but upon our firing upon them they retir'd. Finding that we could not search the Country with any degree of Safety, we return'd to the boat, and was followed by 60, or, as some thought, about 100, of the Natives, who had advanced in small parties out of the woods; but they suffer'd us to go to our boats without giving us any trouble. We had now time to view them attentively; we thought them to be about the size and Colour of the New Hollanders, with short, Cropt Hair, and quite naked like them. I thought these of a lighter Colour; but that may be owing to a whitish Pigment with which we thought their bodies were painted, because some appeared darker than others.

Their Arms were ordinary darts of about 4 feet long, made of a kind of reed, and pointed at one end with hard wood; but what appear'd more extraordinary to us was something they had which caused a flash of fire or Smoak, very much like the going off of a pistol or small Gun, but without any report. The deception was so great that the people in the Ship actually thought that they had fire Arms; indeed, they seem'd to use these things in imitation of such, for the moment the first man we saw made his appearance he fir'd off one of these things, and while we lay looking at them in the boat 4 or 5 would let them off all at once, which had all the appearance in the world of Volleys of Small Arms; but I am confident that nothing came from them but smook, but by what means this was done, or what purpose it answer'd, we were not able to Guess. I thought the Combustable matter was contain'd in a reed or piece of small Bamboo, which they gave a Swing round in the hand and caused it to go off.

This place lies in the Lat of 6° 15' S, about 65 lg to the N-E of Point St. Augustine, or Walsche Caep, and is near to what is called in the Charts by the long name of Cape de la Colta de St. Bonaventura. The land is very low, like every other part of the Coast we have seen here; it is thick and Luxuriously cloathed with woods and Verdure, all of which appear Green and flourishing. Here were Cocoa nutt Trees, Bread Fruit Trees, and Plantain Trees, but we saw no

fruit but on the former, and these were small and Green; the other Trees, Shrubs, Plants, etc., were likewise such as is common in the S Sea Islands and in New Holland.

Upon my return to the Ship we hoisted in the boat and made sail to the Westward, with a design to leave the Coast altogether. This, however, was contrary to the inclination and opinion of some of the Officers, who would have had me send a Party of Men ashore to cut down the Cocoa Nutt Trees for the sake of the Nutts; a thing that I think no man living could have justified, for as the Natives had attacked us for meer landing without taking away one thing, certainly they would have made a Vigerous effort to have defended their property; in which case many of them must have been kill'd, and perhaps some of our own people too, and all this for 2 or 300 Green Cocoa Nutts, which, when we had got them, would have done us little service; besides nothing but the utmost necessity would have obliged me to have taken this method to come at refreshments.

It's true I might have gone farther along the Coast to the Northward and Westward until we had found a place where the Ship could lay so near the Shore as to cover the people with her Guns when landed; but it is very probable that before we had found such a place we should have been carried so far to the W as to have been obliged to have gone to Batavia by the way of the Moluccas, and on the N side of Java, where we were all utter Strangers. This I did not think was so safe a Passage as to go to the S of Java and thro' the Straits of Sunda, the way I propose to myself to go. Besides, as the Ship is leakey, we are not yet sure wether or no we shall not be obliged to heave her down at Batavia; in this case it becomes the more necessary that we should make the best of our way to that place, especially as no new discovery can be Expected to be made in these Seas, which the Dutch have, I believe, long ago narrowly examin'd, as appears from 3 Maps bound up with the French History of Voyages to the Terra Australis, published in 1756, which Maps, I do suppose, by some means have been got from the Dutch, as we found the Names of many of the places are in that Language.

It should likewise seem from the same Maps that the Spaniards and Dutch have at one time or another circumnavigated the whole of the Island of New Guinea, as the most of the Names are in these 2 Languages; and such part of the Coast as we were upon I found the Chart tolerable good, which obliges me to give some Credit to all the rest, notwithstanding we neither know by whom or when they were taken, and I always understood, before I had a sight of these Maps, that it was unknown whether or no New Holland and New Guinea was not one continued land, and so it is said in the very History of Voyages these Maps are bound up in. However, we have now put this wholly out of dispute; but, as I believe, it was known before, tho' not publicly, I claim no other Merit than the Clearing up of a doubtful point. Another doubtfull point I should have liked to have clear'd up, altho' it is of very little, if of any Consequence, which is, whether the Natives of New Holland and those of New Guinea are, or were, Original, one People, which one might well suppose, as these 2 Countrys lay so near to each other, and the intermediate space fill'd up with Islands. On the other hand, if these 2 people have or ever had any friendly communication with Each other it seems strange, as I have before observed, that they should not have transplanted from New Guinea over to New Holland Cocoa Nutts, Bread fruit, Plantains, etc., etc., all very useful Articles for the support of Man, that We never saw grow in the latter, and which we have now seen in the former. La Maire hath given us a Vocabulary of Words spoken by the People of New Britain (which before Dampier's time was taken to be a part of New Guinea), by which it appears that the people of New Britain speak a very different Language from those of New Holland. Now should it be found that the Natives of New Britain

and those of New Guinea have had One Origin, and speak the same Language, it will follow, of Course, that the New Hollanders are a different People from both.

Tuesday, September 4th 1770 Stood to the Westward all this day, having at first a moderate breeze S, which afterwards freshned and Veered to S-E and E-S-E. We kept on sounding all the time, having from 14 to 30 fm not regular, but sometimes more and sometimes less. At noon we were in 14 fm; by observation in the Lat of  $6^{\circ} 44'$  S, Lon  $223^{\circ} 51'$  W. Course and distance sail'd since Yesteday Noon S  $76'$  W, 120 mi.

Wednesday, September 5th 1770 Winds at E by S and S-E by E, a fresh gale and Clear weather, with which were run 118 mi upon a S  $69^{\circ} 15'$  W Course, which at Noon brought us into the Lat of  $7^{\circ} 25'$  S, Lon  $225^{\circ} 41'$  W; depth of Water 28 fm, having been in soundings the whole of this day's run, generally between 10 and 20 fm. At half an hour past one in the Morning we past by a small low Island, which bore from us at that time N-N-W, distant 3 or 4 mi; depth of Water 14 fm, and at daylight we discover'd another low Island extending from N-N-W and N-N-E, distant 2 or 3 lg. I believe I should have landed upon this Island to have known its produce, as it did not appear to be very small, had not the wind blown too fresh for such an undertaking, and at the time we passed the Island we had only 10 fm Water, a rocky bottom; I was therefore afraid of running down to leEastward for fear of meeting with Shoal Water and foul ground. These Islands have no place on the Charts, unless they are the Arrow Isles, which, if they are, they are laid down much too far from New Guinea. I found the S part of these to lay in the Lat  $7^{\circ} 6'$  S, Lon  $225^{\circ} 0'$  W.

Thursday, September 6th 1770 A steady fresh gale at E by S and clear weather, with which we steer'd W-S-W. At 7 in the Evening we took in the small Sails, reefd the Topsails, and sounded, having 50 fm; we still kept W-S-W all night, going at the rate of  $4 \frac{1}{2}$  mi an hour. At 10 had 42 fm; at 11, 37; and at 12 o'Clock 45; 1 o'Clock 49; and at 3, 120; after which we could get no ground. In the evening we caught 2 Boobies, which settled upon the rigging, and these were the first of the kind we have caught in this manner the voyage, altho' I have heard of them being caught this way in great numbers. At daylight, in the Morning, we made all the sail we could, and at 10 o'Clock saw land extending from N-N-W to W by N, distant 5 or 6 League. At Noon it bore from N to W about the same distance; our Lat by observation was  $8^{\circ} 15'$  S, Lon  $227^{\circ} 47'$  W. This land is of an even and moderate height, and by our run from New Guinea ought to be a part of the Arrow Isles; but it lays a degree farther to the S than any of these Islands are laid down in the Charts. We sounded, but had no ground, with 50 fm of Line.

Friday, September 7th 1770 As I was not able to satisfy myself from any Chart what land it was we saw to LeEastward of us, and fearing it might trend away more S, and the weather being hazey so that we could not see far, we steer'd S-W, which Course by 4 o'Clock run us out of sight of the land; by this I was assured that no part of it lay to the Southward of  $8^{\circ} 15'$  S. We continued standing to the S-W all night under an Easey sail, having the advantage of a fresh gale at S-E by E and E-S-E, and clear moon light; we sounded every hour, but had no bottom with 100 and 120 fm of line. At daylight in the Morning we steer'd W-S-W, and afterwards W by S, which by Noon brought us into the Lat of  $9^{\circ} 30'$  S, and Lon  $229^{\circ} 34'$  W, and by our run from New Guinea ought to be in sight of Wessels Isle, which, according to the Chart is laid down about 20 or 25 lg from the coast of New Holland; but we saw nothing, by which I conclude that it is wrong laid down; and this is not to be wonder'd at when we consider that not only these Islands, but the lands which bound this Sea have been discover'd and explored by different people and at different times, and compiled and put together by others, perhaps some Ages

after the first discoveries were made. Navigation formerly wanted many of these helps towards keeping an Accurate Journal which the present Age is possessed of; it is not they that are wholly to blame for the faultiness of the Charts, but the Compilers and Publishers, who publish to the world the rude Sketches of the Navigator as Accurate surveys, without telling what authority they have for so doing; for were they to do this we should then be as good or better judge than they, and know where to depend upon the Charts, and where not. Neither can I clear Seamen of this fault; among the few I have known who are Capable of drawing a Chart or Sketch of a Sea Coast I have generally, nay, almost always, observed them run into this error. I have known them lay down the line of a Coast they have never seen, and put down Soundings where they never have sounded; and, after all, are so fond of their performances as to pass the whole off as Sterling under the Title of a Survey Plan, etc. These things must in time be attended with bad Consequences, and cannot fail of bringing the whole of their works in disrepute. If he is so modest as to say, Such and such parts, or the whole of his plan is defective, the Publishers or Vendures will have it left out, because they say it hurts the sale of the work; so that between the one and the other we can hardly tell when we are possessed of a good Sea Chart until we ourselves have proved it.

Saturday, September 8th 1770 Winds E, with a high Sea from the same Quarter. Our Course and distance sail'd this 24 Hours is S 86° 30' W, 102 mi; Lat in 9° 36' S, Lon 231° 17' W.

Sunday, September 9th 1770 Light Airs and Clear weather the most part of this 24 Hours. In the evening found the Variation by several Azimuths to be 0° 12' W, and by the Amplitude 0° 5' W. At Noon we were by observation in the Lat of 9° 46' S, Lon 232° 7' W. Course and distance sail'd since yesterday at Noon S 78° 45' W, 52 mi. For these 2 days past we have steer'd due W, and yet we have by observation made 16 mi Sing – 6 mi Yesterday and 10 to-day; from which it should seem that there is a Current setting to the Southward and Westward withall, as I should suppose.

Monday, September 10th 1770 Light Airs E, except in the morning, when we had it at N; at sunset found the Variation to be 0° 2' W, at the same time saw, or thought we saw, very high land bearing N-W, and in the Morning saw the same appearances of land in the same Quarter, which left us no room to doubt but what it was land, and must be either the Island of Timor land or Timor, but which of the 2 I cannot as yet determine. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of 10° 1 minute S, which was 15 mi to the Southward of that given by the Log. Lon in per Observation 233° 27' W.

Tuesday, September 11th 1770 Variable light Airs and Clear weather. Steer'd N-W, in order to discover the Land plainer until 4 in the morning, at which time the wind came to N-W and W, with which we stood to the Southward until 9 o'Clock, when we Tack'd and stood N-W, having the wind at W-S-W. At sun rise in the morning we could see the land extend from W-N-W to N-E; at noon we could see it extend to the Westward as far as W by S 1/2 S, but no farther to the Eastward than N by E. We were now well assured that this was part of the Island of Timor, in consequence of which the last Island we saw must have been Timor land, the S part of which lies in the Lat of 8° 15' S, Lon 228° 10', whereas in the Charts the S Point is laid down in Lat 9° 30'. It is possible that the Land we saw might be some other Island; but then I cannot see how we could have miss'd seeing Timor land, sopping it to be right laid down in Lat, as we were never to the Southward of 9° 30'; for my design was to have made that Island, and to have landed upon it to have seen what it produced, as it is (according to the Charts) a large Island, and not settled by the Dutch that I ever heard off. We were now in the Lat of 9° 37', Lon 233°

54' W by observation of the Sun and Moon, and Yesterday we were by Observation in  $233^{\circ} 27'$  W. The difference is 27', which is exactly the same as what the Log gave; this, however, is a degree of accuracy in observation that is seldom to be expected.

Wednesday, September 12th 1770 Winds between the S and W, a light breeze and Clear weather in thepm; stood in shore until 8 o'Clock, then Tack'd and stood off, being about 6 lg from the Land, which at dark extend from S-W  $1/2$  W to N-E; at this time we sounded and had no ground with 140 fm of line, being not above 4 lg from the Land. At 12 o'Clock we Tack'd and stood in, having but little wind, and continued so until noon, at which time we were by Observation in Lat  $9^{\circ} 36'$  S; the Log this 24 Hours gave 18 mi Wing, but it did not appear by the land that we had made so much. We saw several Smoaks upon the Land by day, and fires in the Night.

Thursday, September 13th 1770 Stood in shore, with a light breeze at S by W until  $1/2$  past 5 o'Clock in thepm, when, being a mile and a  $1/2$  from the Shore, and in 16 fm, we tack'd and stood off. At this time the Extrems of the Land extended from N-E by E to W by S  $1/2$  S; this last was a low point, distant from us about 3 lg. We were right before a small Creek or Inlet into the low land, which lies in the Lat of  $9^{\circ} 34'$  S. Probably it might be the same as Dampier went into in his Boat, for it did not seem to have depth of Water sufficient for anything else. In standing in shore we sounded several times, but found no soundings until we got within  $2 1/2$  mi of the Shore, where we had 25 fm, soft bottom. We stood off Shore until 12 o'Clock, with the wind at S, then Tack'd and stood to the Westward 2 Hours, when the wind veer'd to the S-W and W-S-W, and then we stood to the Southward. In the Morning found the Variation to be 1 degree  $10'$  W by the Amplitude, and by the Azimuth 1 degree  $27'$  W; at Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $9^{\circ} 45'$  S, Lon  $234^{\circ} 12'$  W, and about 6 or 7 lg from the land, which extended from N  $31^{\circ}$  E to W-S-W  $1/2$  W. Winds at S-S-W, a Gentle breeze.

Friday, September 14th 1770 Light Land and Sea breezes; the former we had from W by N, and only a few hours in the morning, the latter we had from the S-S-W and S. With these winds we advanced but slowly to the Westward. At Noon we were about 6 or 7 lg from the Land, which extended from N by E to S  $78^{\circ}$  W; our Lat by Observation was  $9^{\circ} 54'$  S. Course and Distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S  $68^{\circ}$  W, 24 mi. We saw several Smoakes ashore in thepm, and fires in the night, both upon the Low land and up in the Mountains.

Saturday, September 15th 1770 In thepm had the Sea breezes at S-S-W and S, with which we stood to the Westward until 8 o'Clock, when being about 3 lg from the Land, and having very little wind, we tack'd and lay her Head off Shore. At 11 o'Clock we got the Land wind at N by W, with which we steer'd S-W by W along shore, keeping about 4 or 5 mi from the Land on which in the morning we saw several Houses, Plantations, etc. At 9 o'Clock we got the wind at N-E by E, a light breeze; at Noon we were about 2 lg from the Land, which extended as far to the Southward as S-W by W; our Lat by observation was  $10^{\circ} 1$  minute S. Course and Distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon S  $78^{\circ} 45'$  W, 36 mi.

Sunday, September 16th 1770 Light breezes from the N-E by E, with clear weather, except in the morning, when we had it cloudy, with a few small Showers of Rain. Steer'd along shore S-W and S-W by W until 6 o'Clock in the morning, when we steer'd W-S-W, and at 9, W, at which time we saw the Island Rotte right ahead. At Noon we were in the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 39'$ , Lon  $235^{\circ} 57'$ ; the S end of Timor bore N-N-W, distant 5 or 6 lg; the Island of Rotte extending from S  $75^{\circ}$  W to N  $67^{\circ}$  W, and the Island of Anaboa as Dampier calls it, or Seman as it is called in the Charts,

which lies of the S end of Timor, bore N-W. Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday noon S 55° 15' W, 67 mi. Dampier, who has given us a large and, so far as I know, an Accurate discription of the Island of Timor, says that it is 70 lg long and 16 Broad, and that it lies N-E and S-W. I found the E side to lie nearest N-E by E and S-W by W, and the S end to lie in the Lat 10° 23' S, Lon 236° 5' W from Greenwich. We run about 45 lg along the E side, which I observed to be free from Danger, and, excepting near the S end, the Land which bounds the Sea is low for 2, 3, or 4 mi inland, and seem'd in many places to be intersected with Salt Creeks. Behind the low land are Mountains, which rise one above another to a considerable height. We continually saw upon it smoakes by day and fires by night, and in many places houses and plantations. I was strongly importuned by some of my Officers to go to the Dutch settlement at Concordia, on this Island, for refreshments; but this I refused to comply with, knowing that the Dutch look upon all Europeans with a Jealous Eye that come among these Islands, and our necessities were not so great as to oblige me to put into a place where I might expect to be but indifferently treated.

Monday, September 17th 1770 Winds E, with which we steer'd W-N-W until 2 o'Clock, when being pretty near the N end of Rotte, we hauled up N-N-W, in order to go between it and Anaboa. After steering 3 lg upon this Course we edged away N-W by W, and by 6 we were clear of all the Islands; at this time the S part of Anaboa, which lies in the Lat of 10° 15' S, bore N-E, distant 4 lg, and the Island of Rotte extending as far to the Southward as S 36° W. The N End of this Island and the S end of Timor lies N 1/2 E and 1/2 W, distant about 3 or 4 lg from each other. At the W end of the Passage between Rotte and Anaboa are two Small Islands; the one lays near the Rotte shore and the other off the S-W point of Anaboa; there is a good Channel between the 2 of 5 or 6 mi broad, which we came thro'. Being now clear of the Islands we steer'd a W course all night until 6am, when we unexpectedly saw an Island bearing W-S-W, for by most of the Maps we had on board we were to the Southward of all the Islands that lay between Timor and Java; at IE there were none laid down so near Timor in this Lat by almost one half, which made me at first think it a new discovery; but in this I was mistaken. We now steer'd directly for it, and by 10 o'Clock were close in with the N side, where we saw Houses, Cocoa Nutt Trees, and a Flock of Cattle grazing; these were Temptations hardly to be withstood by people in our situation, especially such as were but in a very indifferent State of Health, and I may say mind too, for in some this last was worse than the other, since I refused to touch at the Island of Timor, whereupon I thought I could not do less than to try to procure some refreshments here, as there appeared to be plenty. With this View we hoisted out the Pinnacle, in which I sent Lieutenant Gore in shore to see if there were any Convenient place to land, sending some trifles along with him to give to the Natives in case he saw any. Mr. Gore landed in a small sandy cove near to some Houses, and was met on the beach by 8 or 10 of the people, who from both their behaviour and what they had about them shew'd that they had Commerce with Europeans; upon Mr. Gore's returning with this report, and likewise that there was No Anchorage for the Ship, I sent him away with both money and goods to try to purchase some refreshments, while we kept standing on and off with the Ship. At Noon we were about a mile from the Shore of the Island, which extends from S-E to W-N-W, Lat 10° 27', Lon 237° 31' W.

Tuesday, September 18th 1770 As soon as Mr. Gore landed he was meet on the beach by several people, both Horse and Foot, who gave him to understand that there was a Bay to LeEastward where we could Anchor, and likewise get refreshments. Upon Mr. Gore's return with this intelligence we bore away for the Bay, in which we Anchor'd at 7 o'Clock in 38 fm Water, Clean sandy bottom. About a mile from Shore the N point of the Bay bore N 30° E, 2

1/2 mi, and the S point or W end of the Island bore S 63° W. Two hours before we Anchor'd we saw Dutch Colours hoisted in a Village which stands about a mile inland, and at day light in the Morning the same Colours were hoisted on the beach abE of the Ship. By this I was no longer in doubt but what here was a Dutch settlement, and accordingly sent Lieutenant Gore on shore to wait upon the Governor, or chief person residing here, to acquaint him with the reasons that induced us to touch at this Island. Upon Mr. Gore's landing we could perceive that he was received by a Guard of the Natives, and not Dutch Troops, and Conducted up to the Village where the Colours were hoisted last night. Some time after this I received a message from him, acquainting me that he was there with the king of the Island, who had told him that he could not supply him with anything without leave from the Dutch Governor, who resided at another part of the Island, but that he had sent to acquaint him of our Arrival and request.

Wednesday, September 19th 1770 At 2pm the Dutch Governor, and king of this part of the Island, with his attendance, came on board with Mr. Gore (he having left 2 Gentlemen ashore as Hostages). We entertained them at Dinner in the best Manner we could, gave them plenty of good Liquor, made them some considerable presents, and at their going away Saluted them with 9 Guns. In return for these favours they made many fair Promises that we should be immediately supplied with everything we wanted at the same price the Dutch E India Company had it; and that in the morning Buffaloes, Hogs, Sheep, etc., should be down on the beach for us to look at, and agree upon a price. I was not at all at a loss for Interpreters, for both Dr. Solander and Mr. Sporing understood Dutch enough to keep up a Conversation with the Dutchman, and several of the Natives could speak Portuguese, which language 2 or 3 of my people understood. In the morning I went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and several of the Officers and Gentlemen, to return the King's Visit; but my Chief Business was to see how well they would perform their Promises in regard to the things I wanted. We had not been long ashore before we found that they had promised more than they ever intended to perform; for, instead of finding Buffaloes upon the beach, we did not so much as see one, or the IE preparations making for bringing any down, either by the Dutch Factor or the King. The former pretended he had been very ill all night, and told us that he had had a letter from the Governor of Concordia in Timor, acquainting him that a ship (meaning us) had lately passed that Island, and that if she should touch at this, and be in want of anything, he was to supply her; but he was not to suffer her to make any stay, nor to distribute, or leave behind her to be distributed, any valuable presents to the inferior Natives. This we looked upon to be Afection that hardly answer'd any purpose, unless it was letting us see how the Dutch had insinuated themselves into favour with these people, which never could be his intention. However, both he and the King still promised we should have what we wanted, but pretended the Buffaloes were far in the Country, and could not be brought down before night. With these excuses we were obliged to be satisfied. The King gave us a dinner of boil'd Pork and Rice, served up in Baskets after their manner, and Palm wine to drink; with this, and some of our own Liquor, we fair'd Tolerable well. After we had dined our Servants were called in to partake of what remain'd, which was more than they could Eat.

Thursday, September 20th 1770 We stay'd at the King's Pallace all the Afternoon, and at last were obliged to return on board without doing anything farther than a promise of having some Buffaloes in the morning; which we had now no great reason to rely on. In the morning I went on shore again, and was showed one small Buffalo, which they asked 5 Guineas for. I offer'd 3, which the man told me he would gladly take, and sent a Message to the king to let him know what I had offer'd. The Messenger soon return'd, and let me know that I could not have it under 5 Guineas; and this I refused to give, knowing it was not worth one fifth part of the money. But

this, my refusal, had like to have overset all we had before done, for soon after about 100 Men, some Arm'd with Musquets, others with Lances, came down to the Landing Place. Besides the officer that commanded this party, there came along with them a Man who spoke Portuguese, and I believe was born of Portuguese Parents. This man is here (as we afterwards Understood) as an Assistant to the Dutch Factor. He deliver'd to me the King's order, or rather those of the Dutch Factor, the purport of which was that we were to stay no longer than this day, pretending that the people would not trade with us because we wanted their provisions for nothing, etc.; whereas the Natives shew'd the greatest inclination imaginable to supply us with whatever they had, and were far more desirous of goods than money, and were, before this man came, selling us Fowls and Syrup as fast as they could bring these things down. From this and other Circumstances we were well Assured that this was all the Dutchman's doing, in order to extort from us a sum of Money to put into his own pocket. There hapned to be an old Raja at this time upon the beach, whose Interest I had secured in the Morning by presenting him with a Spy-glass; this man I now took by the hand, and presented him with an old broad sword. This effectually secured him in our Interest, for the Moment he got it he began to flourish it over the old Portuguese, and made him and the Officer commanded the party to sit down at his back side. Immediately after this trade was restored again for Fowls, etc., with more Spirit than ever; but before I could begin a Trade for Buffaloes, which was what we most wanted, I was obliged to give 10 Guineas for 2, one of which weigh'd only 160 pounds. After this I bought 7 more at a more reasonable price, one of which we lost after he was paid for. I might now have purchased as many as I pleased, for they now drove them down to the Water side by Herds; but having got as many as I well know'd what to do with, and likewise a number of Fowls, and a large quantity of Syrup, I resolved to make no longer stay.

Friday, September 21st 1770 We got under sail, and stood away to the Westward along the N side of the Island, and another smaller Island, which lies farther to the Westward, which last bore from us at Noon S-S-E, distant 2 lg.

Before we proceed any further it will be proper in this place to say something of the Island we have been last at, which is called by the Natives Savu. The middle of it lies in about the Lat of  $10^{\circ} 35' S$ , Lon  $237^{\circ} 30' W$ . It may be about 8 lg in length from E to W, but of what breadth I know not, because I only saw the N side. There are, as I am told, 3 Bays where Ships can Anchor; the best is on the S-W side of the S-E point; the one we lay in, called Seba, lies on the N-W side of the Island. This bay is very well sheltered from the S-E Trade wind, but lays wholly open to the N-W. The Land of this Island which bounds the Sea is, in general, low, but in the middle of the Island are Hills of a moderate height, and the whole is agreeably diversified with woods and Lawns, which afford a most pleasing prospect from the Sea. We were told that the Island is but indifferently water'd in the dry Season, especially towards the latter end of it, at which time there is no running Stream upon the whole Island, only small Springs, which are all at a distance from the Sea side. The dry seasons commences in March or April, and ends in November; the remaining 3 or 4 Months they have W winds with rain, and this the time their Crops of Rice, Calivances, and Indian Corn are brought forth, which are Articles that this Island produceth.

They also breed a great Number of Cattle, viz., Buffaloes, Horses, Hogs, Sheep, and Goats. Many of the former are sent to Concordia, where they are kill'd and salted, in order to be sent to the more Northern Islands, which are under the Dominion of the Dutch. Sheep and Goats' flesh is dried upon this Island, packed up in Bales, and sent to Concordia for the same purpose. The Dutch resident, from whom we had this information, told us that the Dutch at



Concordia had lately behaved so ill to the Natives of Timor that they were obliged to have recourse to this Island and others Adjacent for provisions for their own subsistence, and likewise Troops (Natives of this Island) to assist the Dutch against those of Timor. Besides the above productions, here are an Emence Number of Palm Trees, from which is extracted the Palm Wine, as it is called, a very sweet, agreeable, cooling Liquor. What they do not immediately use they boil down and make Syrup or Sugar of, which they keep in Earthen Jars. Here are likewise Cocoa Nutts, Tamerind Trees, Limes etc., but in no great plenty; Indico, Cotton, and Cinnamon, sufficient to serve the Natives; these last Articles, we were told, the Dutch discourage the growth of.

The Island is divided into 5 Kingdoms, which have lived in Peace and Amity with each other for these hundred Years. At present the whole Island is partly under the direction of the Dutch E India Company, who have a Resident or Factor who constantly lives here, without whose leave the Natives are not to supply any other Nation with anything whatever; but the whole produce of the Island, besides what serves themselves, is in a manner the property of the Company. The Company by way of a Tribute oblige them to raise and pay Annually a certain quantity of Rice, Indian Corn, and Callivances, for which the Company makes Each of the Kings a yearly present of a Cask of Arrack, and some other Trifles; the live stock, Sheep and Goats' flesh, etc., they pay for in goods. The small Islands which lie about a League to the Westward of this pays Annually a Certain quantity of Arica Nutts, which is almost the only produce of that Island. The Island of Rotte is upon the same footing as this of Savu; both these Islands, and the 3 Solors, belong to the Government of Concordia. From what we could learn of the Island of Timor, it seems to be much upon the same footing as it was in Dampier's time, which is that the Dutch possess little more of that Island than what lies under the Command of the Fort Concordia; the rest is in possession either of the Native Indians or the Portuguese. We were likewise told that the Island of Ende belongs to the Portuguese; that the principal settlement is at Larentucha, where there is a Fort and a good Harbour. We were told that the Concordia, on the Island Timor, is a free Port for Ships of any nation to touch at, where they would not only be supplied with refreshments, but Naval Stores also. Trading ships might probably meet with a good reception, but Kings' ships, I am perswaded, would be looked upon as Spys. For my own part was I only in want of refreshments, and obliged to touch at any of these Islands, I should prefer going to a Portuguese settlement before any of the Dutch, and when I was solicited by the Officers to call at Timor, I proposed going to one of the Portuguese settlements; but this Mr. Hicks made some Objections to, which was sufficient for me to lay it aside, as I had not the IE inclination to touch any where till we arriv'd at Batavia, for my falling in with Savu was more chance and not design.

But to return to this Island, the Natives of which are of a Dark brown Colour, with long lank Hair; their Cloathing is a peice of Calicoe or other Cotton Cloath wrapped about their middle; the better sort have another peice, which they wear over their Shoulders, and the most of them wear Turbands or Handkercheifs tyed round their Heads. They Eat of all the Tame Animals they have got, viz., Hogs, Horses, Buffaloes, Cocks and Hens, Dogs, Catts, Sheep and Goats, and are esteem'd much in the same order, as I have mentioned; that is, their Hog flesh, which is certainly as good as any in the world, they prefer before anything else; next to Hogs, Horses, and so on. Fish is not esteem'd by them, and is only eat by the common or poor people, who are allowed little else of meat kind.

They have a Custom among them, that whenever a king dies all the Cattle, etc., that are upon his Estate are kill'd, with which the Successor makes a fE, to which is invited all the principal

people of the Island, who stay until all is consumed; after this they every one, according to his Abilities, make the young King a present, by which means he gets a fresh stock, which he is obliged to Husband for some time. The other principal men make also fEs, which are as extraordinary as these, for they seldom end so long as the giver has got anything left alive upon his Estate. They are said to be a people of good Morals, Virtuous and Chaste, each man having only one wife, which he keeps for life; Fornication and Adultry is hardly known among them. When a great Man marrys he makes presents to all his Wife's relations of European and other Foreign commodities to the value of 100 Rix Dollars. This Custom the Dutch E India Company find it to their Interest to incourage. They speak a Language peculiar to themselves, into which the Dutch have caus'd the new Testament to be Translated, and have introduced it, with the use of letters and writing, among them. By this means several hundred of them have been converted to Christianity; the rest are some heathens, and others of no religion at all, and yet they all stick up to the strict rules of Morality. They all, both Men and Women, Young and Old, Chew of the Beetle Leaf, Areca Nutts, and a sort of white lime, which I believe is made from Coral stone; this has such an effect upon the Teeth that very few, even of the Young people, have hardly any left in their Heads, and those they have are as black as Ink. Their houses are built on posts about 4 feet from the Ground; we asked the reason why they built them so, and was told that it was only Custom; they are, however, certainly the Cooler for it. They are thatched with Palm Leaves, and the Floors and sides are boarded.

The man who resides upon this Island in behalf of the Dutch E India Company is a German by birth. His name is Johan Christopher Lange. It is hard to say upon what footing he is here. He is so far a Governor that the Natives dare do nothing without his consent, and yet he can transact no sort of business with Foreigners either in his own or that of the Company's name; nor can it be a place of either Honour or Profit. He is the only white man upon the Island, and has resided there ever since it has been under the direction of the Dutch, which is about 10 Years. He is allowed 50 Slaves (Natives of the Island) to attend upon him. These belong to, and are Maintained by, the Company. He goes the Circuit of the Island once in 2 Months; but on what account he did not tell us. When he makes these rounds he carries with him a certain quantity of Spirit to treat the great men with, which, he says, he is obliged to look well after, otherwise they would steal it and get drunk; and yet, at another time, he told us that he never knew a theft committed in the Island; but some of the Natives themselves contradicted him in this by stealing from us an Axe. However, from their behaviour to us in general I am of opinion that they are but seldom guilty of these Crimes. This going round the Island once in Two Months is most likely to see that the Natives make the necessary preparations for fulfilling their engagements with the Dutch, and to see that the Large Boats or small Vessels are taken proper care of, which the Dutch keep in all the Bays of this Island in order to collect and carry the grain, etc., to the Ship which comes Annually here. They are likewise employed in carrying cattle, grain, etc., to Timor; and, when not wanted, they are hauled a Shore into Houses or Sheds built on purpose. As I have mentioned Slaves, it is necessary to observe that all the great men have Slaves which are the Natives of the Island. They can dispose of them one to another, but cannot sell them to go out of the Island. The price of a Slave is a good, large, fatt Hogg, Horse, etc. I have before mentioned that many of the people can speak Portuguese, but hardly any one Dutch. From this it is probable that this Island was formerly under the Jurisdiction of the Portuguese, tho' the Dutch Government never own'd as much, but said that the Dutch had Traded here these hundred years past.

Saturday, September 22nd 1770 Winds at S-S-E, S-E, and E; a gentle breeze, which we steer'd W-S-W by Compass. At 4 o'Clock we discover'd a small low Island bearing S-S-W,

distant 3 lg. The Island hath no place in any of our Charts: Lat  $10^{\circ} 47'$  S, Lon  $238^{\circ} 28'$  W. At Noon we were in the Lat of  $11^{\circ} 9'$  S, Lon  $239^{\circ} 26'$  W. Course and distance sail'd since yesterday noon, S  $63^{\circ} W$ , 67 mi.

Sunday, September 23rd 1770 Winds E; a moderate breeze, which by noon brought us into the Lat of  $11^{\circ} 10'$  S, Lon  $240^{\circ} 48'$  W. Course and distance sail'd since yesterday at noon is W, 8 mi.

Monday, September 24th 1770 Winds at E and S-E; a moderate breeze, and fine, pleasant weather. In the evening found the Variation to be  $2^{\circ} 44'$  W. At noon our Lat was  $11^{\circ} 8'$  S, Lon  $242^{\circ} 13'$  W. Since we have been clear of the Islands we have had constantly a swell from the Southward which I do not suppose is owing to the winds blowing anywhere from thence, but to the Sea, being so determined by the portion of the Coast of New Holland.

Tuesday, September 25th 1770 Moderate breezes at S-E, and clear, pleasant weather. At Noon our Lat was  $11^{\circ} 13'$  S, and Lon  $244^{\circ} 41''$  W.

Wednesday, September 26th 1770 Winds and weather as yesterday. At Noon Lat in  $11^{\circ} 10'$ , Lon  $245^{\circ} 41''$  W.

Thursday September 27th 1770 Winds at S-S-E; a fresh breeze. In the evening found the variation to be  $3^{\circ} 10'$  W. At noon we were in the Lon of  $247^{\circ} 42'$  W, and Lat  $10^{\circ} 47'$ , which is 25 mi to the Northward of the Log, which I know not how to account for.

Friday September 28th 1770 Winds at S-S-E and S-E; a fresh breeze and Cloudy, with some Showers of rain. At Noon Lat observed  $10^{\circ} 51'$  S, which is agreeable to the Logg, Lon in  $250^{\circ} 9'$ , W.

Saturday, September 29th 1770 Moderate breeze at S-E and clear pleasant weather, Steer'd N-W all this day, in order to make the land of Java. At Noon we were by Observation in the Lat of  $9^{\circ} 31'$  S and Lon  $251^{\circ} 40'$  W.

Sunday, September 30th 1770 Fresh gales and fair weather. In theam I took into my possession the Officers', Petty Officers' and Seamen's Log Books and Journals, at IE all that I could find, and enjoin'd every one not to divulge where they had been. At noon our Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at noon, is N  $20^{\circ} W$ , 126 mi, which brought us into the Lat of  $7^{\circ} 34'$  S and Lon  $252^{\circ} 23'$  W.

Monday, October 1st 1770 First and latter parts fresh breezes at S-E and fair weather; the middle squally with Lightning and rain. At 7pm, being then in the Lat of Java head, and not seeing any land, assured us that we had got too far to the Westward; upon which we haul'd up E-N-E, having before Steerd N by E. At 12 o'Clock saw the Land bearing E, Tack'd, and stood to the S-W until 4, then stood again to the Eastward, having very unsettled squally weather which split the Main Topsail very much, and obliged us to bend the other; many of our Sails are now so bad that they will hardly stand the IE puff of Wind. At 6 o'Clock Java head, on the W end of Java, bore S-E by E, distant 5 lg; soon after this saw Princes Island, bearing E  $1/2$  S. At 10 o'Clock saw the Island of Cracatoa bearing N-E, distant 7 lg; Princes Island extending from S  $53^{\circ} E$  to S by W, distant 3 lg. Course and distance sail'd since Yesterday at Noon is N  $24^{\circ} 30'$  E, 70 mi. Lat in per Observation,  $6^{\circ} 29'$  S, Lon  $251^{\circ} 54'$ ; but either our Lon must be

erroneous or the Straits of Sunda must be faltily laid down in all Books and Charts; but this no doubt we shall have an opportunity to settle.

Tuesday, October 2nd 1770 In thepm, had the wind at S-S-E, S-E by S and S-S-E, with which we stood to the Eastward close upon a wind. At 6 o'Clock the Hill on Princes Island bore S-W by S, and Cracatoa Island, N 10 mi; in this situation had 58 fm, standing still to the Eastward. At 8 o'Clock had 52 fm, muddy bottom, at 10 23 fm. By 4 in the morning we fetched close in with the Java shore in 15 fm, then steer'd along shore. At 5 it fell Calm, which continued with some Variable light Airs until noon, at which time Anger Point bore N-E, distant 1 League, and Thwart-the-way Island N. In the morning I sent a Boat ashore to try to get some fruits for Tupia, who is very ill, and, likewise, to get some grass, etc., for the Buffaloes we have still left. The Boats return'd with only 4 Cocoa Nutts, a small bunch of Plantains, which they purchased of the Natives for a Shilling, and a few Shrubs for the Cattle.

Wednesday, October 3rd 1770 Soon after 12 o'Clock it fell quite Calm, which obliged us to Anchor in 18 fm, Muddy bottom, about 2 mi from shore, where we found a strong Current setting to the S-W. Not long before we Anchor'd we saw a Dutch Ship laying off Anger Point, on board which I sent Mr. Hicks to enquire after News. Upon his return he inform'd me that there were 2 Dutch Ships from Batavia, one bound for Ceylon, and the other to the Coast of Mallabar, besides a small Fly-boat or Packet, which is stationed here to carry all Packets, Letters, etc., from all Dutch Ships to Batavia; but it seems more Probable that she is stationed here to examine all Ships that pass and repass these Straits. We now first heard the agreeable news of His Majesty's Sloop The Swallow being at Batavia about 2 Years ago. At 7 o'Clock a breeze sprung up at S-S-W, with which we weighed and stood to the N-E between Thwart-the-way Island and the Cap: soundings from 18 to 26 fm. We had but little Wind all night, and having a Strong Current against us, we got no further by 8 o'Clock in the morning than under Bantam Point. At this time the wind came to N-E, and obliged us to Anchor in 22 fm about 2 mi from the Shore. The above point bore N-E by E, distant 1 League. Here we found a strong Current setting to the N-W. In the morning we saw the Dutch packet standing after us, but after the wind Shifted to the N-E she bore away. One of the Dutch Captains told Mr. Hicks yesterday that the Current sets constantly to the S-Westward, and that it would continue to set so for a Month or Six Weeks longer.

Thursday, October 4th 1770 In thepm had the wind at N-E by N, which obliged us to lay fast. About 6 o'Clock in the evening one of the Country Boats came alongside in which was the Commander of the Packet before mentioned; he seem'd to have 2 Motives for coming, one to take an account of the Ship, and the other to sell us refreshments, for in the Boat were Turtle, Fowls, Birds, etc., all of which they held at a pretty high Price, and had brought to a bad market, as our Savu stock was not all expended. I gave a Spanish Dollar for a small Turtle which weighed only 36 pounds. With respect to the Ship, he wanted to know her name, the Captain's, the place we came last from and were bound, as I would not see him myself. I order'd that no account should be given him from whence we came; but Mr. Hicks, who wrote the Ship's name down in his book, put down from Europe. Seeing this he expressed some surprise, and said that we might write down what we pleased, for it was of no other use than for the information of such of our Country men as might pass these Streights. At 7 o'Clock a light breeze sprung up at S-S-E, with which we got under sail. At 1am Anchor'd again, having not wind to stem the Current which we found to run 3 Knotts; at 2 o'Clock we weighed again, but, finding that we lost ground, we were obliged to Anchor in 18 fm, the Island Pulo Morack,

which lies close under the Shore 3 mi to the Westward of Bantam Point: bore S-E by S, distance 1 1/2 mi. Lat observed, 5° 55' S.

Friday, October 5th 1770 At 5 in thepm we weighed with a light breeze at S-W by S, which continued not long before it fell Calm, and obliged us to Anchor again. At 1 o'Clock we weigh'd with the Land wind at S-S-E, which died away in the Morning, and the Current running strong against us we Anchor'd in 17 fm. A little before this, a Proe came alongside, wherein was a Dutch Officer who came upon the same business as the other. He sent me down a printed paper in English containing 9 Articles or Questions, of which this is a Copy.

"The Commanders and Officers of the Ships where this Paper may be presented, will be pleased to answer on the following Questions: viz.,

1. "To what Nation the Ship belongs, and its Name.
2. "If it comes from Europe or any other place.
3. "From what place it lastly departed from.
4. "Where unto design'd to go.
5. "What, and how many, ships of the Dutch Company by departure from the last shore there lay'd, and their names.
6. "If one or more of these ships in Company with this is departed for this or any other place.
7. "If during the Voyage any particularity is hapned or seen.
8. "If not any ships in Sea, or the Streights of Sunda have seen or Hail'd in, and which.
9. "If any other News worth Attention at the place from whence the Ship lastly departed or during the vorage is hapned.

"Batavia in the Castle, the By Order of the Governor General and the Counselors of India.

"J. BRANDER BUNGL, Sect."

The first and fourth of these Questions I only answer'd, which when the Officer saw, he made use of the very same words the other had done before, viz.: that we might write what we pleased, for it was of no consequence, etc., and yet he immediately said that he must send that very paper away to Batavia by water, and that it would be there by to-morrow noon, which shows that the Governor and Counselors of India look upon such papers to be of some consequence. Be this as it may, my reason for taking notice of it in this Journal, is because I am well inform'd that it is but of very late years that the Dutch have taken upon them to examine all Ships that pass these Streights. At 10 o'Clock we weigh'd with a light breeze at S-W, but did little more than stem the Current. At Noon, Bantam Point and Pula Baba, in one bearing E by N, distant from the Point 1 1/2 mile. Lat observed, 5° 53' S.

Saturday, October 6th 1770 At 2 o'Clockpm, finding we could not stem the Current, we anchor'd, with the Kedge Anchor, under Bantam Point, where we lay until 9, at which time Current made Slowly to the Eastward, and at the same time a light breeze springing up, we weigh'd and stood to the E until 10 o'Clock in theam, when the Current oblig'd us again to Anchor in 22 fm, Pula Baba bearing E by S 1/2 S, distant 3 or 4 mi. Our sounding from Bantam Point to this place was from 36 to 22 fm.

Sunday October 7th 1770 Light Air from the Southward with frequent Calms. At 6 o'Clockpm, weighed with a light breeze at S-S-W, which was not sufficient to stem the current, and was therefore obliged to come too again, in 15 fm. At 10 o'Clock weighed again and stood to the Eastward with the Wind at S-S-E. At 11am, Anchor'd in 21 fm, the W end of Wapping Island bore S, distant 3 mi, and the Thousand Islands N by E 1/2 E, distant 3 or 4 mi. Found the Current still set to the Westward.

Monday, October 8th 1770 Had it Calm until 4 in thepm, when we got the Sea breeze at N-E very faint, with which we weighed and stood to the Eastward, past Wapping Island, and the first Island to the Eastward of it. Falling little wind we were carried by the Current between this last Island and the 2nd Island, to the Eastward of Wapping Island, where we were obliged to Anchor in 30 fm, being very near a ledge of Rocks which spitted out from one of the Islands. At 1/2 past 2 o'Clock in theam, weighed with the land wind at S and stood out clear of the shoal, where we were again obliged to come to an Anchor, having Variable light winds attended with Thunder and rain. At 5 o'Clock the weather being fair, and a light breeze at S, we weighed, but making little or no way against the Current, we soon came too again, in 28 fm, near a small Island not laid down in the Charts; Pulo Pare bore E-N-E, distant 6 or 7 mi. While we lay here a Proe came alongside, where in were 2 Malays, who sold us 3 Turtles, weighing 147 pounds, for a Spanish Dollar. Some on board thought them dear, but I thought they were cheap, founding my Judgment on the price the two Dutchmen that were on board before set upon those they had, one of which we paid a Dollar for, that weighed only 36 pounds.

Tuesday, October 9th 1770 A little past Noon weigh'd with a light breeze at N-E, and stood to the Eastward until 5 o'Clock, when, not being able to weather Pulo Pare, we Anchor'd in 30 fm, the said Island extending from S-E to S-S-W, distant 1 mile. At 10 got the land wind at S, with which we weighed and stood to the E-S-E all night; depth of water, from 30 to 22 fm, and from 22 to 16 fm. When we Anchor'd at 10 o'Clock in theam to wait for the Sea breeze, the Island of Edam bore S-W by W, distant 6 or 7 mi. At Noon we weighed and stood in for Batavia Road, having the advantage of the Sea breeze at N-N-E.

Wednesday, October 10th 1770 according to our reckoning, but by the people here Thursday, 11th. At 4 o'Clock in thepm Anchor'd in Batavia road, where we found the Harcourt Indiaman from England, 2 English Country Ships, 13 Sail of large Dutch Ships, and a number of small Vessels. As soon as we Anchor'd I sent Lieutenant Hicks a shore to acquaint the Governor of our Arrival, and to make an excuse for not Saluting; as we could only do it with 3 Guns I thought it was better let alone.

The Carpenter now deliver'd me in the defects of the ship, of which the following is a copy:

"The Defects of His Majesty's Bark Endeavour, Lieutenant James Cook, Commander.

"The Ship very leaky (as she makes from 12 to 6 Inches water per hour), occasioned by her Main Kiel being wounded in many places and the Scarfe of her Stem being very open. The false Kiel gone beyond the midships (from Forward and perhaps further), as I had no opportunity of seeing for the water when hauld ashore for repair. Wounded on her Starboard side under the Main Chains, where I imagine is the greatest leakes (but could not come at it for the water). One pump on the Starboard side useless, the others decayed within 1 1/2 Inch of the bore, otherwise Masts, Yards, Boats, and Hull in pretty good condition.

"Dated in Batavia Road, this 10th of October, 1770.

"J. SATTERLY."

Previous to the above, I had consulted with the Carpenter and all the other Officers concerning the Leake, and they were all unanimously of Opinion that it was not safe to proceed to Europe without first seeing her bottom; accordingly I resolved to apply for leave to heave her down at this place, and, as I understood that this was to be done in writing, I drew up the following request to be presented to the Governor, etc.,

"Lieutenant James Cook, commander of His Brittannick Majesty's Bark Endeavour, Requests of the Right Hon'ble Petrus Albertus Van der Parra, Governor-General, etc., etc., etc., the Indulgence of the following Articles, viz.:

"Firstly, That he may be allow'd a proper and convenient place to heave down and repair His Brittannick Majesty's Ship under his command.

"Secondly, That he may have leave to purchase such few Trifling Naval stores as he may be in want of.

"Thirdly, That he may be permitted daily to purchase such provisions as he may want; also such an Additional quantity as may enable him to proceed on his passage home to England.

"Dated on board His Brittannick Majesty's Bark Endeavour, in Batavia Road, the 11th October, 1770.

"JAMES COOK"

In the morning I went on shore myself and had the foregoing request Translated into Dutch by a Scotch Gentleman, a Merchant here.

Friday, October 12th 1770 At 5 o'clockpm I was introduced to the Governor-General, who received me very politely and told me that I should have every thing I wanted, and that in the Morning my request should be laid before the Council where I was desir'd to attend.

About 9 o'clock in the Evening we had much rain, with some very heavy Claps of Thunder, one of which carried away a Dutch Indiaman's Main Mast by the Deck, and split it, the Maintopmast and Topgallantmast all to shivers. She had had an Iron Spindle at the Main top gallant Mast head which had first attracted the Lightning. The ship lay about 2 Cable lengths from us, and we were struck with the Thunder at the same time, and in all probability we should have shared the same fate as the Dutchman, had it not been for the Electrical Chain which we had but just before got up; this carried the Lightning or Electrical matter over the side clear of the

Ship. The Shock was so great as to shake the whole ship very sencibly. This instance alone is sufficient to recommend these Chains to all Ships whatever, and that of the Dutchman ought to Caution people from having Iron Spindles at their Mast heads.

In the morning I went on shore to the Council Chamber and laid my request before the Governour and Council, who gave me for answer that I should have every thing I wanted.

Saturday, October 13th 1770 Received on board a Cask of Arrack and some Greens for the Ship's Company.

Sunday, October 14th 1770 Early this morning a ship sail'd from hence for Holland by which I had just time to write 2 or 3 lines to Mr. Stephens, Secretary of the Admiralty, to acquaint him of our Arrival, after which I went on shore and waited upon the Shabander, who has the direction of the Town, Port, etc., to get an order to the Superintendent at Onrust to receive us at that Island, but this, I was told, would not be ready before Tuesday next. Received from the Shore Fresh Beef and Greens for the Ship's Company.

Monday, October 15th 1770 Fresh Sea and land breezes and fair weather. I had forgot to mention, that upon our arrival here I had not one man upon the Sick List; Lieut. Hicks, Mr. Green, and Tupia were the only people that had any complaints occasioned by a long continuance at Sea.

Tuesday, October 16th 1770 Finding, by a strict inquiry, that there were no private person or persons in the place that could at this time advance me a sufficient sum of money to defray the charge I might be at in repairing and refitting the Ship – at IE, if there were any, they would be afraid to do it without leave from the Governor – wherefore I had nothing left but to apply to the Governor himself, and accordingly drew up the following request, which I laid before the Governor and Council this morning, in consequence of which the Shebander had orders to supply me with what money I wanted out of the Company's Treasure:

"Lieutenant James Cook, Commander of His Brittannick Majesty's Bark the Endeavour, begs leave to represent to His Excellency the Right Honourable Petrus Albertus Van der Parra, Governor-General, etc., etc., That he will be in want of a Sum or Sums of Money in order to defray the Charge he will be at in repairing and refiting His Brittannick Majesty's Ship at this place; which sum or sums of money he is directed by his Instructions, and empower'd by his commission, to give Bills of Exchange on the respective Offices which Superintend His Brittannick Majesty's Navy.

"The said Lieutenant James Cook Requests of His Excellency, That he will be pleased to order him to be supply'd with such sum or sums of money, either out of the Company's Treasure, or permit such private persons to do it as may be willing to advance money for Bills of Exchange on the Honourable and Principal Officers and Commissioners of His Brittannick Majesty's Navy, the Commissioners for Victualling His Majesty's Navy, and the Commissioners for taking care of the Sick and Hurt.

"Dated on board His Brittannick Majesty's Bark the Endeavour, in Batavia Road, the 16th of October, 1770.

"JAMES COOK."



Wednesday, October 17th 1770 In thepm I waited upon the Superintendent of Onrust, with an order from the Shebander, to receive us at that Island, but this order, the Superintendent told me, was not sufficient to empower him to give me the conveniences and assistance I wanted, and when I came to call upon the Shebander, I found this mistake was owing to the word "heave down" being wrong translated; this Circumstance, trifling as it is, will cause a delay of some days, as it cannot be set to rights until next Council day, which is not till Friday.

Thursday, October 18th 1770 In thepm received on board 2 live Oxen, 150 Gallons of Arrack, 3 Barrels of Tar, and one of Pitch; at daylight in theam took up our Anchor and run down to Onrust.

At 9 Anchor'd in 7 fm off Coopers Island, which lies close to Onrust. There are wharfs at both of these Islands, and ships land there stores, sometimes on the one and sometimes on the other, but it is only at Onrust where the proper conveniences are for heaving down. Soon after we Anchor'd I went on shore to the Officer of the Yard, to see if they could not allow us some place to land our stores, but this could not be granted without orders.

Friday, October 19th 1770 In thepm I sent a Petty Officer to Mr. Hicks, who Lodges ashore at Batavia for the recovery of his health, with orders to desire him to wait upon the Shebander, in order to get the necessary orders respecting us dispatched to this place as soon as possible.

Saturday, October 20th 1770 Employ'd unrigging the ship, etc.

Sunday, October 21st 1770 In thepm orders came down to the Officers of the yard to comply with everything I wanted, but we could not yet get a Wharfe to land our Stores, they being all taken up by shipping.

Monday, October 22nd 1770 In theam two ships went from the Wharfes at Coopers Island, when we prepared to go along side one of them.

Tuesday, October 23rd 1770 In thepm hauled along side one of the Wharfes, in order to take out our stores, etc., after which the Ship is to be deliver'd into the Charge of the proper Officers at Onrust, who will (as I am inform'd) heave her down, and repair her, with their own people, while ours must stand and look on, who, if we were permitted, could do every thing wanting to the Ship ourselves.

Wednesday, October 24th 1770 Employ'd clearing the Ship, having a Store House to put our Stores, etc., in. In thepm I went up to Town in order to put on board the first Dutch Ship that Sails, a paquet for the Admiralty containing a Copy of my Journal, a Chart of the S Sea, another of New Zealand, and one of the E Coast of New Holland. In the morning the General, accompanied by the Water Fiscall, some of the Council, and the Commodore, each in their respective Boats, went out into the Road on board the oldest Captain, in order to appoint him Commodore of the Fleet, ready to Sail for Holland. The Ships was drawn up in 2 Lines, between which the General past to the new Commodore's Ship, which lay the farthest out. Each ship as he passed and repassed gave him 3 Cheers, and as soon as he was on board, and the Dutch Flag Hoisted at the Main Topmast Head, the other Commodore Saluted him with 21 Guns, and immediately after Struck his Broad Pendant, which was again hoisted as soon as the General left the other Ship; he was then Saluted with 17 Guns by the new made

Commodore, who now hoisted a Common Pendant. This Ceremony of appointing a Commodore over the Grand Fleet, as they call it, we were told is Yearly perform'd. I went out in my Boat on purpose to see it, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, because we were told it was one of the Grandest sights Batavia afforded; that may be too, and yet it did not recompense us for our trouble. I thought that the whole was but ill conducted, and the Fleet appear'd to be very badly mann'd. This fleet consists of 10 or 12 stout Ships; not only these, but all or most of their other Ships are pierced for 50 Guns, but have only their upper Tier mounted, and these are more by half than they have men to fight.

Thursday, October 25th 1770 In the evening I sent the Admiralty Packet on board the Kronenburg, Captain Fredrick Kelger, Commodore, who, together with another Ship, sails immediately for the Cape, where she waits for the remainder of the Fleet.

Friday, October 26th 1770 Set up the Ship's Tent for the reception of the Ship's Company, several of them begin to be taken ill, owing, as I suppose, to the extream hot weather.

Saturday, October 27th 1770 Employed getting out Stores, Ballast, etc.

Sunday, October 28th 1770 Employ'd as above.

Monday, October 29th to Wednesday November 31st 1770 Employ'd clearing the Ship.

Thursday, November 1st 1770 Got every thing out of the Ship, and all clear for going alongside of the Carreening, but about Noon I received a message from the Officer at Onrust acquainting me that they could not receive us there until they had first despatched the Ships bound to Europe, which were down here taking in pepper.

Friday, November 2nd to Sunday, November 4th 1770 Employ'd overhauling the rigging, and making rope, making and repairing Sails.

Monday, November 5th 1770 Clear, hot sultry weather. In theam transported the ship over to Onrust, alongside one of the Carreening Wharfs.

Tuesday, November 6th 1770 In theam the officers of the Yard took the Ship in hand, and sent on board a number of Carpenters, Caulkers, Riggers, Slaves, etc., to make ready to heave down.

Wednesday, November 7th 1770 Employ'd getting ready to heave down in thepm We had the misfortune to loose Mr. Monkhouse, the Surgeon, who died at Batavia of a Fever after a short illness, of which disease and others several of our people are daily taken ill, which will make his loss be the more severely felt; he was succeeded by Mr. Perry, his mate, who is equally as well skilled in his profession.

Thursday, November 8th 1770 In the night had much Thunder, Lightning, and Rain; during the day fair weather, which gave us time to get everything in readiness for heaving down.

Friday, November 9th 1770 In thepm hove the Larboard side of the Ship, Kiel out, and found her bottom to be in a far worse condition than we expected; the false kiel was gone to within 20 feet of the Stern post, the main Kiel wounded in many places very considerably, a great

quantity of Sheathing off, and several planks much damaged, especially under the Main Channell near the Kiel, where 2 planks and a 1/2, near 6 feet in length, were within 1/8th of an inch of being cutt through; and here the worms had made their way quite into the timbers, so that it was a matter of surprise to every one who saw her bottom how we had kept her above water, and yet in this condition we had sailed some hundreds of lg, in as dangerous a Navigation as in any part of the World, happy in being ignorant of the continual danger we were in. In the evening righted the Ship, having only time to patch up some of the worst places to prevent the water getting in in large quantities for the present. In the morning hove her down again, and most of the Carpenters and Caulkers in the Yard (which are not a few) were set to work upon her Bottom, and at the same time a number of Slaves were employ'd bailing the water out of the Hold. Our people, altho' they attend, were seldom called upon; indeed, by this time we were so weakned by sickness that we could not muster above 20 Men and Officers that were able to do duty, so little should we have been able to have hove her down and repair'd her ourselves, as I at one time thought us capable of.

Saturday, November 10th 1770 In thepm we were obliged to righten the ship before night, by reason of her making water in her upper works faster than we could free; it made it necessary to have her weather works inside and out caulked, which before was thought unnecessary.

Sunday, November 11th 1770 In theam, having caulked her upper works, hove out the Larboard side again, which a number of Workmen were employ'd repairing.

Monday, November 12th 1770 In thepm finished the Larboard side, and in theam began to get ready to heave out the other.

Tuesday, November 13th 1770 This day they hove the Starboard side Kiel out, which we found very little damaged, and was therefore soon done with.

Wednesday, November 14th 1770 Employ'd clearing the Ship of the Carreening gear, her bottom being now thoroughly repair'd, and very much to my satisfaction. In justice to the Officers and Workmen of this Yard, I must say that I do not believe that there is a Marine Yard in the World where work is done with more alertness than here, or where there are better conveniences for heaving Ships down both in point of safety and despatch. Here they heave down by 2 masts, which is not now Practised by the English; but I hold it to be much safer and more expeditious than by heaving down by one mast; a man must not only be strongly bigotted to his own customs, but in some measure divested of reason, that will not allow this, after seeing with how much ease and safety the Dutch at Onrust heave down their largest ships.

Thursday, November 15th 1770 In theam transported the Ship from Onrust to Cooper's Island, and moored her alongside the Wharf.

Friday, November 16th 1770 Employ'd taking in Coals and Ballast; sent one of the decay'd Pumps up to Batavia to have a new one made by it.

Saturday, November 17th to Sunday, November 25<sup>th</sup> 1770 Employ'd rigging the Ship, getting on board Stores and Water, which last we have sent from Batavia at the rate of Six shillings and 8 pence a Leager, or 150 Gallons. We are now become so sickly that we seldom can muster above 12 or 14 hands to do duty.

Monday, November 26th 1770 In the night had much rain, after which the W Monsoons set in, which blow here generally in the night from the S-W or from the land, in the day from the N-W or N.

Tuesday, November 27th to Friday, December 7<sup>th</sup> 1770 Employ'd getting on board Stores, Provisions, Water, rigging the Ship, repairing and bending the Sails. On the last of these days, having got all the Sick on board, and every other thing from the Island, we hauled off from the Wharfe with a design to run up to Batavia road, but the Wind proving scant obliged us to lay at anchor.

Saturday, December 8th 1770 Fresh breezes W, and fair weather. At 10am weigh'd and run up to Batavia road, where we anchor'd in 4 1/2 fm water.

Sunday, December 9th 1770 First and latter parts ditto weather, middle squally with rain. In thepm sent on shore a Boat load of empty casks, and at the same time went myself in order to forward the things we wanted, and in the evening sent on board the new Pump, with some other stores that were immediately wanting.

Monday, December 10th 1770 For the most part Squally, with rain; the people employ'd scraping the paint work.

Tuesday, December 11th to Friday, December 14th 1770 For the most part of these days fair weather. Employ'd taking on board Provisions and Water; this last is put on board at 5 shillings a Leager or 150 Gallons.

Saturday, December 15th 1770 In thepm anchor'd here the Earl of Elgin, Captain Cooke, an English E India Company Ship from Madras, bound to China, but having lost her passage, put in here to wait for the next Season.

Sunday, December 16th to Monday, December 17th 1770 Employ'd taking on board Provisions; Scraping and Painting the Ship.

Tuesday, December 18th 1770 Gentle breezes and fair weather. Anchored here the Phoenix, Captain Black, an English Country Ship from Bencoolen.

Wednesday, December 19th to Monday, December 24th 1770 Fresh breezes, and for the most part fair weather. Completed taking on board Provisions, Water, etc., and getting the Ship ready for sea.

Tuesday, December 25th 1770 Having now compleatly refitted the ship, and taken in a sufficient quantity of Provisions of all kinds, I this afternoon took leave of the General, and such others of the principal Gentlemen as I had any connection with, all of whom upon every occasion gave me all the assistance I required. A small dispute, however, now hapned between me and some of the Dutch Naval Officers about a Seaman that had run from one of the Dutch Ships in the Road, and enter'd on board mine; this man the General demanded as a Subject of Holland, and I promised to deliver him up provided he was not an English Subject, and sent the necessary orders on board for that purpose. In the morning the Commodore's Captain came and told me that he had been on board my ship for the man, but that the Officer had refused to give him up, alledging that he was an Englishman, and that he, the Captain,

was just then come from the General to demand the man of me as a Deanish Subject, he standing upon their Ship's books as born at Elsinore. I told him that I believed there must be some mistake in the General's message, for I apprehended he would not demand a Deanish Seaman from me who had committed no other crime than preferring the English Service before that of the Dutch; but to convince him how unwilling I was to disoblige any one concerned, I had sent orders on board to deliver the man to him in case he was found to be a Foreigner; but as that was not done I suspected that the man was a Subject of England, and if I found him to be such I was resolved to keep him. Soon after this I received a letter from Mr. Hicks, which I carried to the Shabander, and desired that it might be shewn to the General, and at the same time to acquaint him that, after my having such unanswerable proof of the man's being an English Subject, as was mentioned in that letter, it was impossible for me to deliver him up. After this I heard no more about it.

Wednesday, December 26th 1770 In thepm myself, Mr. Banks, and all the Gentlemen came on board, and at 6am weigh'd and came to sail with a light breeze at S-W. The Elgin Indiaman saluted us with 3 cheers and 13 Guns, and soon after the Garrison with 14, both of which we return'd. Soon after this the Sea breeze set in at N by W, which obliged us to Anchor just without the Ships in the Road. The number of Sick on board at this time amounts to 40 or upwards, and the rest of the Ship's Company are in a weakly condition, having been every one sick except the Sailmaker, an old Man about 70 or 80 years of age; and what is still more extraordinary in this man is his being generally more or less drunk every day. But notwithstanding this general sickness, we lost but 7 men in the whole: the Surgeon, 3 Seamen, Mr. Green's Servant, and Tupia and his Servant, both of which fell a sacrifice to this unwholesome climate before they had reached the object of their wishes. Tupia's death, indeed, cannot be said to be owing wholly to the unwholesome air of Batavia; the long want of a Vegetable Diet, which he had all his life before been used to, had brought upon him all the Disorders attending a Sea life. He was a shrewd, sensible, ingenious man, but proud and obstinate, which often made his situation on board both disagreeable to himself and those about him, and tended much to promote the diseases which put a Period to his Life.

Batavia is a place that hath been so often visited by Europeans, and so many accounts of it extant, that any discription I could give would seem unnecessary; besides, I have neither abilities nor materials sufficient for such an undertaking, for whoever gives a faithful account of this place must in many things contradict all the Authors I have had an opportunity to consult; but this task I shall leave to some abler hand, and only take notice of such things that seem to me necessary for Seamen to know.

The City of Batavia is situated on a low flatt near the Sea, in the Bottom of a large Bay of the same name, which lies on the N side of Java, about 8 lg from the Straits of Sunda; it lies in 6° 10' S Lat, and 106° 50' E Lon from the Meridian of Greenwich, settled by Astronomical Observations made on the spot by the Reverend Mr. Mohr, who has built a very elegant Observatory, which is as well furnished with Instruments as most in Europe. Most of the Streets in the City have canals of water running through them, which unite into one Stream about 1/2 a mile before they discharge themselves into the Sea; this is about 100 feet broad, and is built far enough out into the Sea to have at its entrance a sufficient depth of Water to admit Small Craft, Luggage boats, etc. The communication between the Sea and the City is by this Canal alone, and this only in the day; for it is shut up every night by a Boom, through which no Boats can pass from about 6 o'clock in the evening to between 5 and 6 the next morning. Here stands the Custom house, where all goods, either imported or exported, pay the

Customary Dutys; at IE, an Account is here taken of them, and nothing can pass without a Permit, wether it pays duty or no. All kinds of refreshments, Naval Stores, and Sea Provisions are to be had here; but there are few Articles but what bear a very high Price, especially if you take them of the Company, which you are obliged to do if you want any Quantity; that is, of such Articles as they monopolie to themselves, which are all manner of Naval Stores and Salted Provisions.

The Road of Batavia, or place where Shipping Anchor, lies right before the City, and is so large as to contain any number of Shipping. You anchor with the Dome of the Great Church, bearing about S in 7, 6, or 5 fm water, about 1 1/2 or 2 mi from the Shore; and nearer you cannot come with Large Ships, by reason of a Mud bank which lines all the Shore of the Bay. The ground that you Anchor in is of such a nature that the Anchors buries themselves so deep that it is with difficulty they are got out; for this reason Ships always lays at Single Anchor, being in no manner of danger of fouling them. You lay apparently open to the winds from the N-W to the E-N-E; but the Sea that is caused by these winds is a good deal broke before it reaches the Road by the small Islands and Shoals without. These Shoals have all of them either Buoys or Beacons upon them; but if these Guides should be moved, there is a very good Chart of this Bay and the Coast of Java as far as the Straits of Sunda, bound up in the English E India Pilot, sold by Mount & Page. In this Chart everything seems to be very accurately delineated.

Fresh water and wood for fuel must be purchased here. The water is put on board the Ship in the Road at a Spanish Dollar, or 5 shillings a Leager, containing 150 Gallons; but if sent to Onrust, which is one League from the Road, it cost a Duccatoon, or 6 shillings 8 pence. The supplying shipping with water, especially Foreigners, is a perquisite of the Commodore, who is always an Officer in the State's Service, but acts here under the Company. He takes care to tell you that the Water is very good, and will keep sweet at Sea; whereas everybody else tells you that it is not so.

Be this as it will, Batavia is certainly a place that Europeans need not covet to go to; but if necessity obliges them, they will do well to make their stay as short as possible, otherwise they will soon feel the effects of the unwholesome air of Batavia, which, I firmly believe, is the Death of more Europeans than any other place upon the Globe of the same extent. Such, at IE, is my opinion of it, which is founded on facts. We came in here with as healthy a Ship's Company as need go to Sea, and after a stay of not quite 3 months left it in the condition of an Hospital Ship, besides the loss of 7 men; and yet all the Dutch Captains I had an opportunity to converse with said that we had been very lucky, and wondered that we had not lost half our people in that time.

## **Chapter 10: Batavia to Cape of Good Hope**

Thursday, December 27th 1770 Moderate breezes at W and N-W, with fair weather. At 6am weighed, and stood out to Sea; at Noon the Island of Edam bore N by E, distant 3 mi.

Friday, December 28th 1770 Winds variable between the N and W. At 6 in the Evening anchored in 13 fm, Edam Island bearing E, distant 1 1/2 mi. At day light in the morning weighed again, and kept plying to windward between Edam and Duffin's Island, but gained very little owing to the variableness of the winds.

Saturday, December 29th 1770 In thepm anchored in 12 fm water in the Evening until daylight, when we got again under Sail, with the wind at W-S-W, and stood out N-W for the Thousand Islands. Before noon the wind veer'd to N-W, and we endeavour'd to turn through between Pulo Pare and Wapping Island.

Sunday, December 30th 1770 After making a short trip to the N-E, we tacked, and weather'd Pulo Pare, and stood in for the Main, having the wind at N-W, a fresh breeze. We fetched Maneaters Island (a small island laying under the Main midway between Batavia and Bantam) after making a trip to the N-E, and finding that we lost ground, we stood in shore again and anchored in 13 fm, the above mentioned Island bearing S-W by W, distant 1 mile, and in one with Bantam Hill. At 7am weigh'd, with the wind at W-S-W, and stood to the N-W, and weather'd Wapping Island, having the current in our favour.

Monday, December 31st 1770 At 1pm the wind veer'd to the Northward; we tack and stood to the Westward, and weather'd Pulo Baby. In the Evening Anchor'd between this Island and Bantam Bay, the Island bearing N, distant 2 mi, and Bantam Point W; at 5am weigh'd with the wind at W by S, which afterwards proved variable; at noon Bantam Point S-W 1/2 W, distant 3 lg.

Tuesday, January 1st 1771 In thepm stood over for the Sumatra Shore, having the wind at S-S-W, a fresh breeze, and the current in our favour; but this last shifted and set to the Eastward in the Evening, and obliged us to Anchor in 30 fm, under the Islands which lay off Verekens point, which point constitutes the narrow part of the Straits of Sunda. Here we found the current set to the S-W the most part of the night; at 5am weigh'd with the wind at N-W, and stood to the S-W between the Island Thwart-the-way and Sumatra; the wind soon after coming to the Westward we stood over for the Java Shore. At noon the S point of Peper Bay bore S-W by S, and Anger Point N-E 1/2 E, distant 2 lg; tacked and stood to the N-W.

Wednesday, January 2nd 1771 First and middle parts fresh breezes at S-W, and fair the remainder, squally with rain; plying to windward between Cracatoa and the Java shore without gaining anything.

Thursday, January 3rd 1771 In thepm had it very squally, with heavy showers of rain; at 1/2 past 7 anchor'd in 19 fm, Cracatoa Island S-W, distance 3 lg. In the morning came to sail, having very squally variable weather; at Noon Cracatoa W 2 lg.

Friday, January 4th 1771 Most part of these 24 hours squally, rainy weather, winds variable between the N-N-W and S-S-W; at 5pm anchor'd in 28 fm water, Cracatoa W, distant 3 mi. Some time after the wind veer'd to N-W, with which we got under sail, but the wind dying away we advanced but little to the S-W before noon, at which time Princes Island bore S-W, distance 8 or 9 lg.

Saturday, January 5th 1771 Had fresh breezes at S-W, with squally, rainy weather until the evening, when it clear up, and the wind veer'd to S and S-E, with which we stood to the S-W all night. In the morning the wind veer'd to N-E, which was still in our favour; at noon Princes Island bore W 1/2 S, distant 3 lg.

Sunday, January 6th 1771 At 3 o'clock in thepm anchor'd under the S-E side of Princes Island in 18 fm water, in order to recruite our wood and water, and to procure refreshments for the

people, which are now in a much worse state of health than when we left Batavia. After coming to an anchor I went on shore to look at the watering place, and to speak with the Natives, some of whom were upon the Beach. I found the watering place convenient, and the water to all appearance good, Provided proper care is taken in the filling of it. The Natives seemed inclined to supply us with Turtle, Fowls, etc.; Articles that I intended laying in as great a stock as possible for the benefit of the Sick, and to suffer every one to purchase what they pleased for themselves, as I found these people as easy to traffick with as Europeans. In the morning sent the Gunner ashore with some hands to fill water, while others were employ'd putting the whole to rights, sending on shore Empty Casks, etc. Served Turtle to the Ship's Company. Yesterday was the only Salt meat day they have had since our arrival at Java, which is now near 4 months.

Monday, January 7th to Monday January 14th 1771 we were employ'd wooding and watering, being frequently interrupted by heavy rains. Having now compleated both we hoisted in the Long boat, and made ready to put to Sea, having on board a pretty good stock of refreshments, which we purchased of the natives, such as Turtle, Fowls, Fish, two species of Deer, one about as big as a small sheep, the other no bigger than a Rabbit; both sorts eat very well, but are only for present use, as they seldom lived above 24 hours in our possession. We likewise got fruit of several sorts, such as Cocoa Nutts, plantains, Limes, etc. The Trade on our part was carried on chiefly with money (Spanish Dollars); the natives set but little value upon any thing else. Such of our people as had not this Article traded with Old Shirts, etc., at a great disadvantage.

Tuesday, January 15th 1771 Had variable light airs of wind, with which we could not get under sail until the morning, when we weighed with a light breeze at N-E, which was soon succeeded by a calm.

Wednesday, January 16th 1771 Had it calm allpm, which at 5 o'clock obliged us to Anchor under the S Point of Princes Island, the said Point bearing S-W by W, distance 2 mi. At 8 o'clock in theam a light breeze sprung up at N, with which we weigh'd and stood out to Sea. At noon Java Head bore S-E by S, distance 2 lg, and the W Point of Princes Island N-N-W, distance 5 lg; Lat Observed 6° 45' S. Java Head, from which I take my departure, lies in the Lat of 6° 49' S, and Lon 255° 12' W from the Meridian of Greenwich, deduced from several Astronomical Observations made at Batavia by the Reverend Mr. Mohr.

Thursday, January 17th 1771 Little wind and fair at 6pm Java head bore E-N-E, distant 4 or 5 lg; at 6am it bore N-N-E, 12 lg. Wind N-E; course S 27° 15' W; distance 48 mi; Lat 7° 32' S; Lon 255° 35' W.

Friday, January 18th 1771 Light Airs and Calms, with Showers of Rain. Wind Variable; course S-W 1/2 S; distance 30 mi; Lat 7° 55' S; Lon 255° 54' W.

Saturday, January 19th 1771 For the most part of these 24 hours had little wind and fair weather. Wind W; course S 3° E; distance 53 mi; Lat 8° 48' S; Lon 255° 51' W.

Sunday, January 20th 1771 Light Airs and Calms, with some Showers of Rain. Saw 2 Sail in the N-W Quarter standing to the S-W; one of them shew'd Dutch Colours. Wind N W; course S 44° W; distance 36 mi; Lat 9° 14' S; Lon 256° 15' W.



Monday, January 21st 1771 First part Little wind, the remainder a Gentle breeze; the 2 Sail in sight. Wind E; course S 57° W; distance 58 mi; Lat 9° 46' S; Lon 257° 5' W.

Tuesday, January 22nd 1771 Little wind and fair weather. Wind S-W; course N 10° W; distance 17 mi; Lat 9° 29' S; Lon 257° 8' W.

Wednesday, January 23rd 1771 Ditto weather; a swell from the Southward, and which we have had ever since we left the Straits of Sunda. Wind Ditto; course E S; distance 18 mi; Lat 9° 30' S; Lon 256° 50' W.

Thursday, January 24th 1771 First part Light Airs, the remainder Calm. In theam died John Trusslove, Corporal of Marines, a man much esteem'd by every body on board. Many of our people at this time lay dangerously ill of Fevers and Fluxes. We are inclinable to attribute this to the water we took in at Princes Island, and have put lime into the Casks in order to purifie it. Wind S-W by S to S-S-E; course S; distance 4 mi; Lat 9° 34' S; Lon 256° 50' W.

Friday, January 25th 1771 Light Airs and Calms; hot, sultry weather. Departed this life Mr. Sporing, a Gentleman belonging to Mr Banks's retinue. Wind Variable and Calms; course S 30° E; distance 12 mi; Lat 9° 44' S; Lon 256° 44' W.

Saturday, January 26th 1771 First part little wind, the remainder calm and very hot; set up the Topmast Rigging, and clear'd ship between Decks, and wash her with Vinegar. Wind S W; course S-E; distance 17 mi; Lat 9° 56' S; Lon 256° 32' W.

Sunday, January 27th 1771 Little wind, and sometimes calm. In the evening found the Variation to be 2° 51' W. Departed this life Mr. Sydney Parkinson, Natural History Painter to Mr. Banks, and soon after John Ravenhill, Sailmaker, a man much advanced in years. Wind Variable; course S 30° W; distance 19 mi; Lat 10° 12' S; Lon 256° 41' W.

Monday, January 28th 1771 Moderate breezes, with some Squalls, attended with Showers of Rain. Wind W-N-W, N-E; course S 43° W; distance 66 mi; Lat 11° 0' S; Lon 257° 27 W.

Tuesday, January 29th 1771 Very variable weather; sometimes squally, with rain, other times little wind and calms. In the Night died Mr. Charles Green, who was sent out by the Royal Society to observe the Transit of Venus. He had long been in a bad state of health, which he took no care to repair, but, on the contrary, lived in such a manner as greatly promoted the disorders he had had long upon him; this brought on the Flux, which put a period to his life. Wind N W; course S 40° W; distance 74 mi; Lat 11° 57' S; Lon 258° 15' W.

Wednesday, January 30th 1771 First and Latter parts moderate breezes and Cloudy weather; the middle Squally, with rain, Thunder, and Lightning. Died of the Flux Samuel Moody and Francis Haite, 2 of the Carpenter's Crew. Wind E; course S 40° W; distance 67 mi; Lat 12° 48' S; Lon 258° 59' W.

Thursday, January 31st 1771 First part Moderate and fair, the remainder frequent Squalls, attended with Showers of Rain. In the course of this 24 Hours we have had 4 men died of the Flux, viz., John Thompson, Ship's Cook; Benjamin Jordan, Carpenter's Mate; James Nickolson and Archibald Wolf, Seamen; a melancholy proof of the calamitiously situation we are at present in, having hardly well men enough to tend the Sails and look after the Sick, many of

whom are so ill that we have not the IE hopes of their recovery. Wind E-S-E; course S-W; distance 80 mi; Lat 13° 42' S; Lon 259° 55' W.

Friday, February 1st 1771 Fresh Gales, with flying showers of rain. Clean'd between Decks, and washed with Vinegar. Wind S-E by S; course S 58 1/2° W; distance 119 mi; Lat 14° 44' S; Lon 261° 40' W.

Saturday, February 2nd 1771 A Fresh Trade, and mostly fair weather. Departed this life Daniel Roberts, Gunner's Servant, who died of the Flux. Since we have had a fresh Trade Wind this fatal disorder hath seem'd to be at a stand; yet there are several people which are so far gone, and brought so very low by it, that we have not the IE hopes of their recovery. Wind E-S-E; course S 61° W; distance 131 mi; Lat 15° 48' S; Lon 264° 16' W.

Sunday, February 3rd 1771 Ditto weather. In the Evening found the variation to be 2° 56' W. Departed this life John Thurman, Sailmaker's Assistant. Wind Ditto; course S 65° W; distance 128 mi; Lat 16° 40' S; Lon 266° 16' W.

Monday, February 4th 1771 A fresh Trade and hazy weather, with some Squalls, attended with Small Rain; unbent the Main Topsail to repair, and bent another. In the night died of the Flux Mr. John Bootie, midshipman, and Mr. John Gathrey, Boatswain. Wind S-E; course S 69° W; distance 141 mi; Lat 17° 30' S; Lon 268° 32' W.

Tuesday, February 5th 1771 A fresh Trade wind, and hazy, cloudy weather. Employ'd repairing Sails; appointed Samuel Evans, one of the Boatswain's Mates, and Coxswain of the Pinnace, to be Boatswain, in the room of Mr. Gathrey, deceased, and order'd a Survey to be taken of the Stores. Wind E by S; course W 15° S; distance 141 mi; Lat 18° 6' S; Lon 270° 54' W.

Wednesday, February 6th 1771 A Fresh Trade wind and fair weather. In the night died Mr. John Monkhouse, midshipman, and Brother to the late Surgeon. Wind S-E; course W 12° S; distance 126 mi; Lat 18° 30' S; Lon 272° 28' W.

Thursday, February 7th 1771 Gentle Gales, with some Showers in the night. In the Evening found the variation to be 3° 24' W, and in the Morning I took several observations of the Sun and Moon, the mean result of which, carried on to Noon, gave 276° 19' W Lon from Greenwich, which is 2° to the Westward of that given by the Log; this, I believe, is owing to a following Sea, which I have not as yet allowed, for I judge it to be 6 mi a day since we have had the S-E Trade wind. Wind S-E; course S 75° 15' W; distance 110 mi; Lat 18° 58' S; Lon 274° 20' per Log, 276° 19' per Observation.

Friday, February 8th 1771 Winds as Yesterday; clear weather in the day, and Showrey in the Night. In the morning took Observations again of the Sun and Moon, the mean result of which, reduced to noon, gave 278° 50' W, which is 2° 31' W of Yesterday's Observation; the log gives 2° 20'. Wind S-E; course S 78° W; distance 127 mi; Lat 19° 24' S; Lon 276° 40' per Log, 278° 50' per Observation.

Saturday, February 9th 1771 Gentle Gales and fair weather in the morning. Saw a Ship on our Larboard Quarter, which hoisted Dutch Colours. Wind S-E; course S 74° 30' W; distance 127 mi; Lat 19° 58' S.

Sunday, February 10th 1771 Fresh breezes and Hazy weather. Lost sight in the night of the Dutch Ship, she having out sail'd us. Wind S-E quarter; course S 77° 15' W; distance 136 mi; Lat 20° 28' S; Lon 281° 12' W.

Monday, February 11th 1771 Winds and weather as Yesterday. Some hands constantly employ'd repairing Sails. Wind Ditto; course S 75° W; distance 126 mi; Lat 20° 58' S; Lon 283° 22' W.

Tuesday, February 12th 1771 Gentle breezes and fair weather. At 7am died of the Flux, after a long and painful illness, Mr. John Satterly, Carpenter, a man much Esteem'd by me and every Gentleman on board. In his room I appoint George Nowell, one of the Carpenter's Crew, having only him and one more left. Wind S-S-E; course S 71' W; distance 83 mi; Lat 21° 25' S; Lon 284° 46' W.

Wednesday, February 13th 1771 Weather as Yesterday. Employ'd Surveying the Carpenter's Stores and repairing Sails. Wind Ditto; course S 72° 30' W; distance 87 mi; Lat 21° 51' S; Lon 286° 15' W.

Thursday, February 14th 1771 Moderate breezes and Cloudy, with some Showers of Rain. Variation per Azimuth 4° 10' W. Died Alexander Lindsay, Seaman; this man was one of those we got at Batavia, and had been some time in India. Winds Ditto; course S 73° 15' W; distance 105 mi; Lat 22° 21' S; Lon 288° 3' W.

Friday, February 15th 1771 Ditto Weather. Died of the Flux Daniel Preston, Marine. Wind S-E by E; course S 81° 15' W; distance 123 mi; Lat 22° 40'; Lon 290° 15' W.

Saturday, February 16th 1771 A Fresh Trade and Cloudy weather. Employ'd repairing Sails, rigging, etc. Wind Ditto; course S 84° W; distance 115 mi; Lat 22° 52' S; Lon 292° 20' W.

Sunday, February 17th 1771 Fresh Gales, with some Showers of rain. Variation per Azimuth 10° 20' W. Wind S-E by S; course S 79° 45' W; distance 157 mi; Lat 23° 20' S; Lon 295 8' W.

Monday, February 18th 1771 Fair and pleasant weather. Wind S-E by E; course S 75° 30' W; distance 148 mi; Lat 23° 57' S; Lon 297° 46' W.

Tuesday, February 19th 1771 Ditto weather. Wind S-E by E and S; course S 77° W; distance 130 mi; Lat 24° 26' S; Lon 300° 5' W.

Wednesday, February 20th 1771 Fresh Gales and clear weather. Variation per Azimuth 12° 15' W. This morning the Carpenter and his Mate set about repairing the Long boat, being the first day they have been able to work since we left Princes Island. Wind S; course S 75° 45' W; distance 127 mi; Lat 24° 57' S; Lon 302° 21' W.

Thursday, February 21st 1771 First and middle parts fair weather; Latter Squally, attended with Showers of Rain. Between 2 and 3 o'Clockpm took several Observations of the Sun and Moon; the mean result of them gave 306° 33' W Lon from Greenwich, which is 1 degree 55' W of account, and corresponds very well with the last Observations, for at that time the Ship was 2° 10' W of account. In the Night died of the Flux Alexander Simpson, a very good Seaman. In

the Morning punished Thomas Rossiter with 12 lashes for getting Drunk, grossly assaulting the Officer of the Watch, and beating some of the Sick. Wind S to E-S-E; course W by S; distance 126 mi; Lat 25° 21' S; Lon 304° 39' per Account, 306° 34' per Observation.

Friday, February 22nd 1771 Fresh Trade and fair weather. Nothing remarkable. Wind S-E by S; course S 70° 45' W; distance 133 mi; Lat 26° 5' S; Lon 306° 59' W, 308° 54' per Observation.

Saturday, February 23rd 1771 Ditto Winds and weather. Variation per Evening Amplitude 17° 30' W. Wind Ditto; course S 64° 14' W; distance 124 mi; Lat 26° 59'; Lon 309° 6' W, 311° 28' per Observation.

Sunday, February 24th 1771 Gentle breezes and fair weather. In theam took the opportunity of a fine morning to stay the Main Mast, and set up the Topmast Rigging. Saw an Albatross. Wind Ditto; course S 66° 45' W; distance 117 mi; Lat 27° 45' S; Lon 311° 7' W, 313° 41' per Observation.

Monday, February 25th 1771 Gentle Gales, and fair weather. Variation per Evening Azimuth 24° 20' W, and by the Morning Amplitude 24° W Lon; by Observation of the [circle around a dot, sun] and [crescent, moon] is 3° to the Wwarn of the Log, which shews that the Ship has gain'd upon the Log 1 degree 5' in 3 Days, in which time we have always found the Observ'd Lat to the Southward of that given by the Log. These Joint Observations proves that there must be a current setting between the S and W. Wind E by S; course S 58° 30' W; distance 122 mi; Lat 28° 49' S; Lon 313° 6' W, 316° 6' per Observation.

Tuesday, February 26th 1771 Fresh Gales. Variation by Azimuth in the Evening 26° 10' W. Wind S-E by E; course S 82° W; distance 122 mi; Lat 29° 6' S; Lon 315° 24' W.

Wednesday, February 27th 1771 Ditto Gales and Cloudy. In theam died of the Flux Henry Jeffs, Emanuel Parreyra, and Peter Morgan, Seamen; the last came Sick on board at Batavia, of which he never recover'd, and the other 2 had long been past all hopes of recovery, so that the death of these 3 men in one day did not in the IE alarm us. On the contrary, we are in hopes that they will be the last that will fall a sacrifice to this fatal disorder, for such as are now ill of it are in a fair way of recovering. Wind E by S, E by N-N-E; course S 77° 15' W; distance 108 mi; Lat 29° 30' S; Lon 317° 25' W.

Thursday, February 28th 1771 Moderate breezes and fair weather until near 5 o'Clock in theam, when a heavy Squall from the S-W, attended with rain, took us all aback, and obliged us to put before the wind, the better to take in our Sails; but before this could be done the Foretopsail was split in several places. By 6 o'clock the Topsails and Mainsail were handed, and we brought too under the Foresail and mizen; at 8 it fell more moderate, and we set the Mainsail, and brought another Foretopsail to the Yard; at Noon had strong Gales and Cloudy weather. Wind N-E by E, N, and S-W; course S 85 1/2° W; distance 88 mi; Lat 29° 37' S; Lon 319° 5' W.

Friday, March 1st 1771 Fresh Gales and Cloudy. Found the Bitts which secures the foot of the Bowsprit, loose; this obliged us to put before the wind until they were secured in the best manner our situation would admit; this done, we hauld our wind again to the Westward under

the Courses and close Reef'd Topsails. Wind S-W to S by W; course S 86° 45' W; distance 71 mi; Lat 29° 41' S; Lon 320° 26' W.

Saturday, March 2nd 1771 First part fresh Gales and Cloudy; remainder little wind, with some few showers of rain; a Sea from the S-W. Wind S; course S 60° W; distance 80 mi; Lat 30° 21' S; Lon 321° 46' W.

Sunday, March 3rd 1771 First part little wind; remainder Gentle gales and clear weather, and the Sea pretty smooth. Wind N-E; course S 58° 15' W; distance 71 mi; Lat 31° 1 minute S; Lon 323° 2' W.

Monday, March 4th 1771 In thepm had a moderate breeze, which continued until 5 o'clock in theam, when it fell calm, and soon after a breeze sprung up at S-W. In the Evening, and most part of the Night, the weather was dark and cloudy, with much Lightning to the Westward. Variation 25° 35' W. Winds N-E to S-W; course S 67° 45' W; distance 87 mi; Lat 31° 54' S; Lon 324° 36' W.

Tuesday, March 5th 1771 Fresh Gales from the S-S-W, with squally, rainy weather, with which we stood to the Westward. In the evening some people thought they saw the appearance of land to the Northward; but this appear'd so improbable that I, who was not on deck at this time, was not acquainted with it until dark, when I order'd them to sound, but found no ground with 80 fm, upon which we concluded that no land was near. But daylight in the Morning proved this to be a mistake by shewing us the land at the distance of about 2 lg off. We had now the wind at S-E, blowing fresh right upon the land. When we made the land we were standing to the Westward; but, thinking the other the best tack to get off on, we wore, and hauld off to the Eastward, and by Noon had got an Offing of about 4 lg, the land at this time extending from N-E by N to W-S-W. This part of the Coast of Africa which we fell in with lies in about the Lat of 32° 0' S, and Lon 331° 29' W, and near to what is called in the Charts Point Nattall. It was a steep, craggy point, very much broke, and looked as if the high, craggy rocks were Islands. To the N-E of this point the land in General appear'd to rise, sloping from the Sea to a Moderate height; the Shore, alternately Rocks and Sands. About 2 lg to the N-E of the Point appear'd to be the mouth of a River, which probably may be that of St. Johns. At this time the weather was very hazey, so that we had but a very imperfect view of the land, which did not appear to great advantage. Wind S-S-W to S-E; course per Log N 31° W; distance 32 mi; Lat 31° 5' S per Observation, 31° 7' per Reckoning; Lon 331° 19' per Observation, 324° 56' per Reckoning.

Wednesday, March 6th 1771 Moderate Gales, with hazey, rainy weather. Stood to the Eastward all the day, having the land in sight, which at 4pm extended from N-E by N to S-W by W, distant 5 lg. At 6 in the Morning we could only see it at W distant 7 or 8 lg. At Noon found the Ship by Observation 90 mi to the Southward of account. Thus far the current has carried us to the S since the last observation, which was only 2 days ago; but it is plain, from the position of the Coast, that we have been carried full as far to the W also, notwithstanding we have been standing all the time to the E-N-E. Wind S; course S 54° E; distance 37 mi; Lat 32° 4' S; 330° 44' per Observation, 323° 36' per Reckoning.

Thursday, March 7th 1771 Cloudy, hazey weather; winds varying between the S-W by S and S-E by S; a light breeze at 1pm Tack'd, and stood to the Westward, land at N, distant about 8 lg. At 6 saw it extending from N by W to W by N, distant 5 or 6 lg; at 8 tack'd, and stood to the Eastward till 12; then again to the Westward, standing 4 hours on one tack, and 4 on the other.

At Noon very cloudy; had no observation; saw the land extending from N by W to W by N. Wind S; course S 156° 5' W; distance 72 mi; Lat 32° 54' S; Lon 331° 56' W per Observation, 323° 54' per Reckoning.

Friday, March 8th 1771 In thepm stood to the Westward, with the wind at S by W until 4 o'clock; then again to the Eastward, having the land in sight, extending from N-N-E to W by N, distant 8 lg. At 12 the wind veer'd to the Eastward, and before Noon blow'd a fresh breeze, with which we steer'd S-W. At 7, the land extending from N-N-W to E-N-E, distant 10 or 12 lg, found the Variation by the Amplitude to be 28° 30' W, and by an Azimuth 28° 8' W. At Noon Lat observ'd 34° 18', which is 93 mi to the Southward of that given by the Log, or dead reckoning since the last observation. Wind E; course S 39 1/2° W; distance 109 mi; Lat 34° 18' S; Lon 333° 19' W per Observation, 324° 23' per Reckoning.

Saturday, March 9th 1771 A steady, fresh Gale, and settled weather. At 4 in thepm had high land in sight, bearing N-E by N. At Noon had little wind and clear weather; the observed Lat 46 mi to the Southward of the Log, which is conformable to what has hapned the 4 preceeding days; and by Observation made of the Sun and Moon this morning found that the Ship had gain'd 7° 4' W of the Log since the last observation, 13 days ago. Wind Ditto; course S 65° W; distance 210 mi; Lat 35° 44' S; Lon 337° 6' W per Observation, 326° 53' per Reckoning.

Sunday, March 10th 1771 In thepm had a light breeze at N-E until 4 o'clock, when it fell calm, and continued so until 11, at which time a breeze sprung up at W-N-W, with which we stood to the Northward. In the Morning found the Variation to be 22° 46'; at Noon the observ'd Lat was 14 mi to the Northward of the Log, which shews that the current must have shifted. Wind N-E W; course N 17° 15' W; distance 55 mi; Lat 34° 52' S; Lon 337° 25' W per Observation, 327° 12' per Reckoning.

Monday, March 11th 1771 First part light Airs at W; the remainder had a fresh gale at S-E, with which we steer'd W and W-N-W, in order to make the Land, which was seen from the Deck at 10am At Noon it extended from N-E to N-W, distant 5 lg; the middle appear'd high and mountainous, and the two Extremes low. Took several Observations of the Sun and Moon, which gave the Lon, reduced to Noon, as per Column. Wind Ditto S-E; course N 85° W; distance 79 mi; Lat 34° 45' S; Lon 338° 48' W per Observation, 328° 35' per Reckoning.

Tuesday, March 12th 1771 In thepm had the wind at S-E and E, with which we steer'd along shore W and W-S-W. At 6 Cape Laguillas bore W, distance 3 lg. At 8, the wind being then at S, we tack'd and stood off, being about 2 lg from the Cape, which bore about W-N-W. In this Situation had 33 fm water; the Wind continued between S-W and S all night, in times very Squally, with rain. At 2am tacked to the Westward until near 8, when we again stood off Cape Laguillas, N-W, distance 2 or 3 lg. At 9 the weather clear'd up, and the wind fix'd at S by W. We tack'd, and stood to the Westward. At Noon Cape Laguillas bore N-E by N, distant 4 lg. The land of this Cape is very low and sandy next the Sea; inland it is of a moderate height. Lat 34° 50' S, Lon 339° 23' W, or 20° 37' E, deduced from Yesterday's Observations. Wind E-S-E S; course S 69° 30' W; distance 37 mi; Lat 34° 58' S; Lon 339° 30' per Observation, 329° 17' per Reckoning.

Wednesday, March 13th 1771 In thepm, having the wind at S, we steer'd along shore W by S 1/2 S until 3 o'clock, when, finding this course carried us off from the land, we steer'd W by N; at 6 o'clock Cape Laguillas, or the high land over it, bore E by N 12 lg distance, and the

Wermost land in sight N-W 1/2 W. We continued a W by N course, with the wind at S-E until day light in the Morning, when we haul'd in N-W and N-W by N; at 8 the Cape of Good Hope N-W by N, and at 10 we were abrE of it, and distance off about 1 League or little more. We passed close without a rock, on which the Sea broke very high; it lies about a League right out to Sea from the Cape. After passing the Cape we kept along shore at the distance of about 1 League off, having a fresh Gale at S-E; at noon the Cape bore S-E, distance 4 lg. Lat observed  $34^{\circ} 15' S$ , Lon in, by our reckoning, corrected by the last observation,  $341^{\circ} 7' W$ , or  $18^{\circ} 53' E$  from Greenwich, by which the Cape lies in  $34^{\circ} 25' S$  Lat, and  $19^{\circ} 1$  minute E Lon from Greenwich, which nearly agrees with the observations made at the Cape Town by Messrs. Mason and Dixon in 1761; a proof that our observations have been well made, and that as such they may always be depended upon to a surprizing degree of accuracey. If we had had no such guide we should have found an error of  $10^{\circ} 13'$  of Lon, or perhaps more to the E, such an effect the current must have had upon the ship.

Thursday, March 14th 1771 Winds at S-E, a fresh Gale, but as we approached the Lyons Tail or W point, Table Bay, we had flurries of wind from all Points of the Compass; this was occasioned by the high land, for clear of it the wind was still at S-E, and bbow'd so strong out of the Bay that we could not work the Ship in; we were therefore obliged to Anchor a good way without all the Ships at Anchor in the Road, in the whole 16 Sail, viz., 8 Dutch, 3 Danes, 4 French, a Frigate, and 3 Store Ships, and one English E Indiamen, who saluted us with 11 Guns; we returned 9. The Gale continued, which obliged us to lay fast all the morning.

Friday, March 15th 1771 Strong Gales at S-E all the Afternoon and most part of the Night, though in the Evening it fell a little moderate, which gave the Indiaman's Boat an opportunity to come on board us, with a Complement of a Basket of Fruit, etc.; she was the Admiral Pocock, Captain Riddell, homEastward bound from Bombay. In the morning we got under sail, and stood into the Road, having variable light airs mostly from the Sea. A Dutch boat from the Shore came on board, in which were the Master Attendant and some other Gentlemen; the former directed us to a proper birth, where about 10 o'clock we anchored in 7 fm water, a Ouzey bottom; the Lyon Tail, or W point of the Bay, bore W-N-W, and the Castle S-W, distance 1 1/2 mi. I now sent a Petty Officer on shore to know if they would return our Salute, but before he return'd we Saluted, which was immediately return'd with the same number of Guns; after this I waited myself upon the Governour, who was pleased to tell me that I should have everything I wanted that the place afforded. My first care was to provide a proper place ashore for the reception of the Sick, for which purpose I order'd the Surgeon to look out for a House where they could be lodged and dieted. This he soon found, and agreed with the people of the house for 2 shillings a day per man; which I found was the customary Price and method of proceeding. I afterwards gave the Surgeon an order to superintend the whole.

Few remarks have hapned since we left Java Head that can be of much use to the Navigator, or any other Person, into whose hand this Journal may fall; such, however, as have occur'd I shall now insert. After our leaving Java head we were 11 days before we got the General S-E Trade wind, in which time we did not advance above  $5^{\circ}$  to the S and  $3^{\circ}$  to the W, having all the time Variable light Airs of Wind, interrupted by frequent Calms, the weather all the time hot and sultry, and the Air unwholesome, occasioned most probably by the Vast Vapours brought into these Lats by the E Trade wind and W Monsoons, both of which blow at this time of the Year in this Sea. The E winds prevail as far as  $12$  or  $10^{\circ} S$ , and the W winds as far as  $6$  or  $8^{\circ}$ ; between them the winds are Variable, and I believe always more or less unwholesome, but to us it was remarkable from the Fatal Consequences that attended it, for whatever might be the cause of

First bringing on the Flux among our people, this unwholesome Air had a Great share in it, and increased it to that degree that a Man was no sooner taken with it than he look'd upon himself as Dead. Such was the Despondency that reigned among the Sick at this time, nor could it be by any Means prevented, when every Man saw that Medicine, however skillfully Administered, had not the IE effect. I shall mention what Effect only the imaginary approach of this disorder had upon one man. He had long tended upon the Sick, and enjoyed a tolerable good State of Health; one morning, coming upon Deck, he found himself a little griped, and immediately began to stamp with his feet, and exclaim, "I have got the Gripes, I have got the Gripes; I shall die, I shall die!" In this manner he continued until he threw himself into a fit, and was carried off the Deck, in a manner, Dead; however he soon recover'd, and did very well.

We had no sooner got into the S-E Trade wind than we felt its happy Effect, tho' we lost several men after, but they were such as were brought so low and weak that there were hardly a possibility of there recovery; and yet some of them linger'd out in a State of Suspence a month after, who, in all Probability, would not have lived 24 Hours before this Change hapned. Those that were not so far gone remained in the same state for some time, and at last began to recover; some few, however, were seized with the disorder after we got into the Trade wind, but they had it but slightly, and soon got over it. It is worth remarking, that of all those who had it in its last stage only one man lived, who is now in a fair way of recovering; and I think Mr. Banks was the only one that was cured at the first Attack'd that had it to a great degree, or indeed at all, before we got into the S-E Trade, for it was before that time that his Cure was happily effected.

It is to be wished, for the good of all Seamen, and mankind in general, that some preventative was found out against this disease, and put in practice in Climates where it is common, for it is impossible to Victual and water a Ship in those Climates but what some one article or another, according to different Peoples opinions, must have been the means of bringing on the Flux. We were inclinable to lay it to the water we took in at Princes Island, and the Turtle we got their, on which we lived several days; but there seems to be no reason for this when we consider that all the Ships from Batavia this Year suffer'd by the same disorder as much as we have done, and many of them arrived at this place in a far worse State; and yet not one of the Ships took any water in at Princes Island. The same may be said of the Harcourt Indiaman, Captain Paul, who sail'd from Batavia soon after our arrival, directly for the Coast of Sumatra; we afterwards heard that she, in a very short time, lost by Sickness above 20 men; indeed, this seem to have been a year of General Sickness over most parts of India, the Ships from Bengal and Madrass bring Melancholly Accounts of the Havock made there by the united force of Sickness and famine.

Some few days after we left Java we saw, for 3 or 4 evenings succeeding one another, boobies fly about the ship. Now, as these birds are known to roost every night on land they seem'd to indicate that some Island was in our neighbourhood; probably it might be the Island Selam, which Island I find differently laid down in different Charts, both in Name and Situation. The variation of the Compass off the W Coast of Java is about  $3^{\circ}$  W, which Variation continues, without any sencible difference in the Common Track of Ships, to the Lon of  $288^{\circ}$  W, Lat  $22^{\circ} 0'$  S. After this it begins to increase apace, in so much that in the Lon of  $295^{\circ}$ , Lat  $23^{\circ}$ , the Variation was  $10^{\circ} 20'$  W; in  $7^{\circ}$  more of Lon and one of Lat it increased  $2^{\circ}$ ; in the same space farther to the W it increased  $5^{\circ}$ ; in the Lat of  $28^{\circ}$  and Lon  $314^{\circ}$  it was  $24^{\circ} 20'$ ; in the Lat  $29^{\circ}$  and Lon  $317^{\circ}$  it was  $26^{\circ} 10'$ , and continued to be much the same for the space of  $10^{\circ}$  farther to the W; but in the Lat of  $34^{\circ}$ , Lon  $333^{\circ}$  we observed it twice to be  $28 \frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$  W; but this



was the greatest Variation we observed, for in the Lat of  $35\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , Lon  $337^{\circ}$ , it was  $24^{\circ}$ , and continued decreasing, so that of Cape Laguillas it was  $22^{\circ} 30'$  and in Table Bay it was  $20^{\circ} 30'$  W.

From what I have observed of the Current it doth not appear that they are at all considerable until you draw near the Meridian of Madagascar, for after we had made  $52^{\circ}$  of Lon from Java head we found, by observation, our Error in Lon was only  $2^{\circ}$ , and it was the same when we had made only  $19^{\circ}$ . This Error might be owing partly to a Current setting to the Westward, or, what I thought most likely, that we did not make sufficient allowance for the set of the Sea before when we run, and, lastly, the assum'd Lon of Java head might be wrong. If any Error lays there it Arises from the imperfection of the Charts I made use of in reducing the Lon from Batavia to the above mentioned Head, for it cannot be doubted but the Lon of Batavia is well Determined. After we had passed the Lon of  $307^{\circ}$  we began to find the Effects of the W Currents, for in 3 days our Error in Lon was 1 degree 5'; its Velocity kept increasing as we got to the Westward, in so much that for 5 days successively, after we had made the land, we were drove to the S-W or S-W by W by the Currents not less than 20 lg a day; and this continued until we were within 60 or 70 lg of the Cape, where we found the Current to set sometimes one way and sometimes another, but mostly to the Westward.

After the Boobies above mentioned left us we saw no more birds till we got nearly abrE of Madagascar, where, in the Lat of  $27\frac{3}{4}^{\circ}$ , we saw an Albatross. After that time we saw more of these birds every day, and in greater numbers, together with several other sorts; one sort about as big as a Duck, of a very Dark brown Colour, with a yellowish bill. The number of these birds increased upon us as we approached the Shore. As soon as we got into Soundings we saw Gannets, which we continued to see as long as we were on the Bank, which stretches off Laguillas 40 lg, and Extends along shore to the Eastward from Cape False, according to some charts, 160 lg; the Extent of this Bank is not well known, however, it is useful in directing Shipping when to haul in to make the land.

Saturday, March 16th 1771 Variable light Airs all this day. Moor'd the Ship and Struck Yards and Topmast, and in the morning got all the Sick (28) ashore to Quarters provided for them, and got off fresh meat and Greens for the People on board.

Sunday, March 17th 1771 In theam sail'd for England the Admiral Pocock, Captain Riddle, by whom I sent Letters to the Admiralty and Royal Society. About noon came on a hard, dry Gale from the S-E.

Monday, March 18th 1771 In thepm anchored in the offing an English Ship, which March proved to be the Houghton Indiaman from Bengal. In theam it fell moderate, and we began to water the Ship.

Tuesday, March 19th 1771 Variable Gentle breezes. All this day employ'd repairing Sails, Rigging, Watering, etc.

Wednesday, March 20th 1771 In thepm Sail'd the Houghton Indiaman, who saluted us with 11 Guns, which Complement we returned; this Ship, during her stay in India, lost by sickness between 30 and 40 men, and had at this time a good many down with the Scurvey. Other Ships suffer'd in the same proportion. Thus we find that Ships which have been little more than 12 months from England have suffer'd as much or more by Sickness than we have done, who

have been out near 3 Times as long. Yet their sufferings will hardly, if at all, be mentioned or known in England; when, on the other hand, those of the Endeavour, because the Voyage is uncommon, will very probably be mentioned in every News Paper, and, what is not unlikely, with many Additional hardships we never Experienced; for such are the disposition of men in general in these Voyages that they are seldom content with the Hardships and Dangers which will naturally occur, but they must add others which hardly ever had existence but in their imaginations by magnifying the most trifling accidents and circumstances to the greatest Hardships and unsurmountable dangers without the immediate interposition of Providence, as if the whole merit of the Voyage consisted in the Dangers and Hardships they underwent, or that real ones did not happen often enough to give the mind sufficient anxiety. Thus Posterity are taught to look upon these Voyages as hazardous to the highest degree.

Thursday, March 21st 1771 Fine Pleasant Weather. Employ'd getting on board water, overhauling the rigging, and repairing Sails. Sail'd for Batavia a Dutch Ship.

Friday, March 22nd 1771 to Tuesday, March 26th 1771 Mostly Fine pleasant weather. On the 23rd completed our water, after which I gave as many of the People leave to go on shore to refresh themselves as could be spared at one time.

Wednesday, March 27th 1771 Winds variable and clear. Pleasant weather. Sailed for Holland 4 Sail Dutch Ships.

Thursday, March 28th 1771 and Friday, March 29th 1771 Ditto weather. Employ'd fixing new Topmast and Backstays, repairing Sails, etc.

Saturday, March 30th 1771 In the pm anchor'd here the Duke of Gloucester, English E India Ship from China. In the Evening a prodigious hard gale of wind came on at S-E, which continued till about 3 o'clock in the Morning. During the Gales the Table Mountains and Adjacent Hills were cap'd with Extraordinary white Clouds; the remainder of the Day light Airs and pleasant weather.

Sunday, March 31st 1771 Clear pleasant weather all this day. In the Morning we got on board a whole Ox, which we cut up and salted. I had eat ashore some of as good and Fat Beef as ever I eat in my life, and was told that I might have as good to salt; but in this I was very much disappointed. The one I got was thin and Lean, yet well tasted; it weighed 408 pounds.

Monday, April 1st 1771 In the pm I observed a dark, dense haze like a Fog bank in the S-E Horizon, and which clouds began to gather over the Table Mountain; certain signs of an approaching gale from the same Quarter, which about 4 o'clock began to blow with great violence, and continued more or less so the Remainder of these 24 Hours, the Table Mountain cap'd with White Clouds all the time. The weather dry and clear.

Tuesday, April 2nd 1771 First part fresh Gales at S-E, the remainder little wind and calms. In the pm sail'd for England the Duke of Gloucester Indiaman, who Saluted us at his departure. In the am anchored here 2 Dutch Ships from Batavia, and a third at Anchor under Penguin Island in distress. Put on shore some Sick People.

Wednesday, April 3rd 1771 Fine, pleasant weather. Some people on shore on Liberty to refresh; the rest Employ'd repairing Sails and overhauling the Rigging.

Thursday, April 4th 1771 Ditto Weather. Employ'd Painting the Ship and paying her sides.

Friday, April 5th 1771 Var'ble light winds. Sail'd for Holland 3 Dutch Ships. Employ'd as above, and getting on board Provisions, etc.

Saturday, April 6th 1771 Gentle breezes, with some rain in the Night.

Sunday, April 7th 1771 Gentle breezes, and fine, pleasant weather; a Signal for some Ships being in the offing.

Monday, April 8th 1771 Gentle Breezes from the Westward. In the Night Anchor'd here the Europa, an English E Indiaman from Bengal, and in the Morning she saluted us with 11 Guns, which Complement we return'd.

Tuesday, April 9th 1771 Little wind at S-W, with Foggy, hazey weather. Employ'd making ready for Sea.

Wednesday, April 10th 1771 Gentle breezes at S-S-E and fair weather. Took on board 11 of our people from Sick Quarters.

Thursday, April 11th 1771 Ditto weather. Employ'd getting on board various Articles of Provisions from the Shore.

Friday, April 12th 1771 Wind at S-W, fair weather. Set up the Topmast rigging, and bent the Sails.

Saturday, April 13th 1771 Fresh breezes at S-W, and Cloudy, hazey weather, in the night Anchor'd here a Dutch Ship from Holland; she sail'd about 3 months ago in company with 2 more. The news brought by this Ship is that a War is dayley expected between England and Spain; Signals out for 4 or 5 Sail more being in the Offing, one of which is said to be a ship from England; took leave of the Gouvernour, intending to Sail to-morrow.

Sunday, April 14th 1771 Wind W, gentle breezes. In thepm got all the Sick on board, many of whom are yet in a very bad state of health; 3 died here, but this loss was made up by the opportunity we had of compleating our full complement. In the morning unmoor'd and got ready for Sailing.

Monday, April 15th 1771 None of the Ships in the Offing are yet arrived. Desirous as we must be of hearing news from England, I detemmin'd not to wait the arrival of these Ships, but took the advantage of a breeze of wind from the W-S-W; weigh'd and stood out of the Bay, saluted with 13 Guns, which Complement was return'd both by the Castle and Dutch Commodore. The Europa Saluted us as we passed her, which we return'd. This Ship was to have sail'd with or before us, but not liking the opportunity she lay fast. At 5 in the Evening anchor'd under Penguin or Robin Island in 10 fm water, the Island extending from W-N-W to S-S-W, distant 1 1/2 or 2 mi.

In the Morning saw a Ship standing into Table Bay, under English Colours, which we took to be an Indiaman; at Noon Lat observed 33° 49' S; Cape Town S 20° E, distant 7 mi. As we

could not Sail in the Morning for want of wind, I sent a Boat to the Island for a few Trifling Articles we had forgot to take in at the Cape, but the people on shore would not permit her to land, so that she return'd as she went, and I gave myself no further Trouble at it. Mr. Banks, who was in the Boat, was of opinion that it was owing to a mistake made respecting the rank of the Officer commanding the Boat; be this as it may, it seems probable that the Dutch do not admit of strangers landing upon this Island IE they should carry off some of those people which, for certain crimes, they Banish here for Life, as we were told was done by a Danish Ship a few years ago. But they might have a better reason for refusing our Boat to land, for it is not improbable but what there might be some English Seamen upon this Island whom they had sent from the Cape while we lay there, well knowing that if they came in my way I should take them on board; and this, I am told, is frequently done when any of His Majesty's Ships are in the Bay, for it is well known that the Dutch E India Ships are mostly mann'd by Foreigners.

The Cape of Good Hope hath been so often discribed by Authors, and is so well known to Europeans, that any discription I can give of it may appear unnecessary. However, I cannot help observing that most Authors, particularly the Author of Mr. Byron's voyage, have heightened the picture to a very great degree above what it will bear; so that a Stranger is at once struck with surprise and disappointment, for no Country we have seen this voyage affords so barren a prospect as this, and not only so in appearance, but in reality.

The land over the Cape which constitutes the Peninsula form'd by Table Bay on the N, and False Bay on the S, consists of high barren Mountains; behind these to the E, or what may be called the Isthmus, is a vast extensive plane, not one thousand part of which either is or can be cultivated. The Soil consists mostly of a light kind of Sea sand, producing hardly anything but heath; every inch of Ground that will bear Cultivation is taken up in Small Plantations, consisting of Vineyards, Orchards, Kitchen Gardens, etc. Hardly any 2 lay together, but are dispers'd from one another at some Distance. If we may judge from circumstances, the Interior Parts of this Country is not more fertile; that is, the fertile land bears a very small proportion to the whole. We were told that they have settlements 28 days' journey inland, which is computed at 900 English mi, and thus far they bring Provisions to the Cape by land. It is also said that the Dutch Farmers are so dispers'd about the country that some have no neighbours within 4 or 5 days' Journeys of them. Admitting these to be facts, and it will at once appear that the Country in General cannot be very fertile, for it would be absurd to suppose that they would raise provisions at such an immense distance, where the trouble and expence of bringing them to Market must increase, in proportion, could it be done nearer. The Dutch assign another reason for being obliged to extend their Scattered Settlements so far in land; which is, they never disturb the Original native, but always leave them in peaceable possession of whatever lands they may have appropriated to their own use, which in some places is pretty Extensive, and that probably none of the worst, by which good Policy the new Settlers very seldom if ever meet with any Disturbance from the Natives; on the contrary, many of them become their Servants, and mix among them, and are useful members to Society.

Notwithstanding the many disadvantages this Country labours under, such is the industry, economy, and good management of the Dutch that not only the necessary, but all the Luxuries, of Life are raised here in as great abundance, and are sold as cheap, if not cheaper, then in any part of Europe, some few Articles excepted. Naval Stores, however, do not want for price any more here than they do at Batavia; these are only sold by the company, who have a certain fix'd exorbitant Price, from which they never deviate.

The inhabitants of the Cape Town are in General well bred and Extreamly Civil and Polite to all Strangers; indeed, it is their Interest so to do, for the whole Town may be considered as one great Inn fitted up for the reception of all Comers and goers. Upon the whole, there is perhaps not a place in the known World that can Equal this in Affording refreshments of all kinds to Shipping. The Bay is Capacious, pretty safe, and Commodious; it lies open to the N-W winds, which winds, we are told, very seldom blow very Strong, but sometimes sends in a Great Sea, for which reason Ships moor N-E and S-W, and in such a manner as to have an Open Hawse with N-W winds. The S-E winds blow frequently with great Violence; but as this is right out of the Bay it is attended with no danger. Near the Town is a wharfe built of wood, run out a proper Distance into the Sea for the Conveniency of landing and Shipping off goods. To this wharfe water is convey'd in pipes and by means of Cocks. Several Boats may fill water at one and the same time. The Company keeps several large Boats or Hoys to carry goods, provisions, water, etc., to and from Shipping, as well Strangers as their own. Fuel is one of the Scarcest articles they have, and is brought a long way out of the Country, and Consists of Roots of Trees, Shrubs, etc. Except a few English Oaks which they have planted, this Country is wholly destitute of wood, except at too great a distance to be brought to the Cape. In the Article Timber, Boards, etc., they are chiefly supply'd from Batavia.

Three of the winter months, viz., from the middle of May to the middle of August, the Dutch do not allow any of their Ships to lay in Table Bay, but oblige them to go into False Bay, where there is a very safe Harbour, and every other Conveniency both for their own Shipping and Strangers, and where every produce of the Country can be had as cheap as at the Cape Town. The Dutch, I am told, never Deviate from this custom of sending their ships to False Bay at this Season of the Year, notwithstanding there had not a Gale of wind hapned for many years that would have put them in the IE Danger in Table Bay.

Table Bay is defended by a Square Fort, situated on the E side of the Town, close to the Sea beach, together with several other out works and Batterys along the Shore of the Bay on each side of the Town. They are so situated as to be cannonaded by Shipping, and are in a manner defenceless against a superior land force. The Garrison at present consists of 800 regulars, besides militia of the Country, which comprehend every man able to bear Arms. They can, by means of Signals, alarm the whole Country in a very short time, and then every man is immediately to repair to the Cape Town. The French at Mauritius are supply'd with large Quantities of Provisions from the Cape, viz., Salted Beef, Biscuit, Flour, and wine. While we lay in the Bay 2 Store Ships belonging to the King, of the Burthen of 50 or 60 Gun Ships, and a Snow, sail'd for that Island Loaded with Provisions, besides a large (King's) Frigate we left in the Bay taking in her Cargo. The Provisions contracted for this Year by the French were Salt Beef, 500,000 pounds; Flour, 400,000 pounds; Biscuit, 400,000 pounds; and Wine, 1,200 Leagers.

## **Chapter 11: Cape of Good Hope to England**

Tuesday, April 16th 1771 At 2 o'clock in thepm saw a large Ship behind the Island, under French Colours, standing into Table Bay; at 3 weigh'd with a Light breeze at S-E, and put to Sea; at 4 departed this Life Mr. Robert Molineux Master, a young man of good parts, but had unfortunately given himself up to Extravagancy and intemperance, which brought on disorders that put a Period to his Life. At 6 we had the Table Mountain and the Penguin Island in one bearing S-S-E, distant from the latter about 4 or 5 lg; had it calm most part of the night. In the morning a light breeze sprung up S, with which we steer'd N-W; at noon we were by

Observation in Lat 33° 30' S. The Table Mountain bore S 54° E, distant 14 lg. N.B. The Table Mountain lies directly over the Cape Town, from which last I take my departure; it lies in the Lat of 33° 56' S, and Lon 341° 37' W from Greenwich.

Wednesday, April 17th 1771 Fresh breezes and fair weather, with a swell from the S-W. Wind S; course N 50° W; distance 118 mi; Lat 32° 14' S, Lon 344° 8' W.

Thursday, April 18th 1771 Gentle breezes and clear weather. Swell as before. Wind Ditto; course N-W; distance 85 mi; Lat 31° 14' S, Lon 345° 19' W.

Friday, April 19th 1771 Little wind and Sometimes calm. Swell from the Southward. Wind S-E to N-W; course N 50° W; distance 16 mi; Lat 31° 14' S, Lon 345° 33' W.

Saturday, April 20th 1771 Gentle breezes and Clear weather. Wind W; Lat 29° 40' S, Lon 346° 10' W.

Sunday, April 21st 1771 A moderate trade wind and Pleasant weather. Wind S; course N 54° W; distance 100 mi; Lat 28° 43' S, Lon 347° 42' W.

Monday, April 22nd 1771 A Fresh Trade, and Pleasant weather. Exercised the People at Small Arms. Observations for Lon with the Sun and Moon agree with the Log. Wind S-E; course N 50° W; distance 118 mi; Lat 27° 27' S, Lon 349° 24' W.

Tuesday, April 23rd 1771 Gentle breezes, and Clear weather. Found the Variation in the Evening, by the Amplitude, to be 17° 40' W, and by Azimuth in the Morning 18° 37'. Employ'd repairing Boats and Sails. Exercis'd Great Guns and Small Arms. Wind S-E by S to W-S-W; course N 46° W; distance 98 mi; Lat 26° 19' S, Lon 350° 42' W.

Wednesday, April 24th 1771 Ditto weather. Found the Variation to be 17° 30' W. Employ'd as yesterday. Wind W, W-N-W; course N 20° W; distance 78 mi; Lat 25° 6' S, Lon 351° 16' W.

Thursday, April 25th 1771 First part, moderate and Clear; middle, Squally, with Rain; Latter, fresh Gales and Cloudy. Employ'd as above. Wind N-W, S-W; course N 20' W; distance 105 mi; Lat 23° 28' S, Lon 351° 52' W.

Friday, April 26th 1771 Fresh Gales, and a large Swell from the Southward. Wind S-S-W, S-E by S; course N 50° W; distance 168 mi; Lat 21° 40' S, Lon 354° 12' W.

Saturday, April 27th 1771 Fresh Gales and Cloudy. Employ'd repairing Sails. Wind S-E 1/2 S; course N 55° W; distance 168 mi; Lat 20° 4' S, Lon 356° 40' W.

Sunday, April 28th 1771 Ditto weather. Variation per Azimuth 14° W. Wind S-E; course N 56° 30' W; distance 152 mi; Lat 18° 41' S, Lon 358° 54' W.

Monday, April 29th 1771 Ditto Gales. Variation 13° 53' W. In theam crossed the line of our first Meridian, viz., that of Greenwich, having now Circumnavigated the Globe in a W direction. Wind S-E; course N 53° W; distance 136 mi; Lat 17° 19' S, Lon 0° 50' W.

Tuesday, April 30th 1771 Fresh Gales and Pleasant weather. Exercised the people at Great Guns and Small Arms. Wind S-E; course N 58° W S, distance 126 mi; Lat 16° 11' S, Lon 2° 42' W.

Wednesday, May 1st 1771 Fresh Trade and Pleasant weather. At 6am saw the Island of St. Helena bearing W, distant 8 or 9 lg. At Noon Anchor'd in the Road, before James's Fort, in 24 fm water. Found riding here His Majesty's Ship Portland and Swallow Sloop, and 12 Sail of Indiaman. At our first seeing the Fleet in this Road we took it for granted that it was a War; but in this we were soon agreeably deceived. The Europa Indiaman Anchor'd here a little before us; she sail'd from the Cape 2 days after us, and brings an account the French Ship we saw standing into Table Bay was a French Man of War, of 64 Guns, bound to India, and that there were 2 more on their Passage. Wind S-E. At noon at Anchor in St. Helena Road.

Thursday, May 2nd 1771 Clear, Pleasant weather. In thepm moor'd with the Kedge Anchor, and in theam received some few Officers' stores from the Portland. Wind Ditto. At noon at Anchor in St. Helena Road.

Friday, May 3rd 1771 Clear, Pleasant weather. Employ'd repairing Sails, overhauling the Rigging, etc. Wind S-E. At noon at Anchor in St. Helena Road.

Saturday, May 4th 1771 Little wind and pleasant weather. At 6am the Portland made the Signal to unmoor, and at Noon to Weigh, at which time the Ships began to get under Sail. Wind Ditto. At noon at Anchor in St. Helena Road.

Sunday, May 5th 1771 Gentle breezes and Clear weather. At 1pm weigh'd, and stood out of the Road in company with the Portland and 12 Sail of Indiamen. At 6 o'clock James Fort, St. Helena, bore E 1/2 S, distant 3 lg. In theam found the Variation to be 13° 10' W. Wind E by S; course N 50° 30' W; distance 71 mi; Lat 15° 5' S, Lon 6° 46' W.

Monday, May 6th 1771 Moderate breezes and Cloudy weather. Sailing in Company with the Fleet. Wind E-S-E; course N 47 1/2° W; distance 122 mi; Lat 13° 42' S, Lon 8° 27' W.

Tuesday, May 7th 1771 Ditto Weather. In theam found the Variation to be 12° 5' W. Exercised the people at Great Guns and Small Arms. Wind S-E; course N 46° W; distance 137 mi; Lat 12° 5' S, Lon 10° 9' W.

Wednesday, May 8th 1771 A Steady breeze and Pleasant Weather. All the Fleet in Company. Wind S-E; course N 46° 45' W; distance 126 mi; Lat 10° 39' S, Lon 11° 42' W.

Thursday, May 9th 1771 Ditto Weather. In the Evening found the Variation to be 11° 42' W. Wind S-E by S; course N-W; distance 118 mi; Lat 9° 16', Lon 13° 17' W.

Friday, May 10th 1771 At 6 in theam saw the Island of Ascention bearing N-N-W, distant 7 lg. Made the Signal to speak with the Portland, and soon after Captain Elliott himself came on board, to whom I deliver'd a Letter for the Admiralty, and a Box containing the Ship's Common Log Books, and some of the Officers' Journals, etc. I did this because it seem'd probable that the Portland would get home before us, as we sail much heavier than any of the Fleet. At Noon the Island of Ascention bore E by S, distant 4 or 5 lg. By our Observations it lies in the Lat of 7° 54' S, and Lon of 14° 18' W. A N-W by N course by Compass, or N-W a little W by the Globe

from St. Helena, will bring you directly to this Island. Wind Ditto; course N-W; distance 120 mi; Lat 7° 51' S, Lon 14° 32' W.

Friday, May 11th 1771 A steady Trade wind and pleasant Weather. At 1/2 past 6pm the Island of Ascention bore S-E 3/4 E, distant 11 or 12 lg. Sailing in Company with the Fleet. Wind Ditto; course N 42° W, distance 117 mi; Lat 6° 24' S, Lon 15° 51' W.

Saturday, May 12th 1771 First and middle parts a Steady breeze, and fair the Latter; light Squalls, with rain. Wind S-E by S to S-E by E; course N 31° 15' W; distance 123 mi; Lat 4° 38' S, Lon 16° 54' W.

Sunday, May 13th 1771 Gentle breezes and Clear Weather; hott and Sultry. Sailing in Company with the fleet. Variation 10° W. Wind S-E by S; course N 32 1/2° W; distance 119 mi; Lat 2° 58' S, Lon 17° 58' W.

Monday, May 14th 1771 Ditto Weather. Wind S-E by S; course N 32 1/2° W; distance 109 mi; Lat 1 degree 26' S, Lon 18° 57' W.

Tuesday, May 15th 1771 Little wind and hot, Sultry weather. In thepm observed, mE for the sake of Observing, an Eclipse of the Sun. In theam brought another Foretopsail to the Yard, the old one being quite wore out. Wind E-S-E; course N 32 1/2° W; distance 85 mi; Lat 0° 14' S, Lon 19° 43' W.

Wednesday, May 16th 1771 Light breezes and fair weather. Variation 9° 30' W. Wind S-E by S; course N 31° W; distance 71 mi; Lat 0° 47' N, Lon 20° 20' W.

Thursday, May 17th 1771 Ditto Weather. Sailing in Company with the Fleet. Wind Ditto; course N 31° W; distance 61 mi; Lat 1 degree 39' N, Lon 20° 50' W.

Saturday, May 18th 1771 First part ditto weather; remainder Squally, with Thunder and Rain. The observ'd Lat is 14 mi to the Northward of the Log. Sailing in Company with the Fleet. Wind S-S-E to E; course N 20° W; distance 86 mi; Lat 3° 0' N, Lon 21° 22' W.

Sunday, May 19th 1771 Cloudy, unsettled weather, with some rain. In theam found the Variation by the Amplitude and Azimuth 7° 40' W. Hoisted a Boat out, and sent on board the Houghton for the Surgeon, Mr. Carret, in order to look at Mr. Hicks, who is so far gone in a Consumption that his Life is dispair'd of. Observation at Noon 16 mi to the Northward of the Log. Wind S-E to S by E; course N 20° W; distance 98 mi; Lat 4° 32' N, Lon 21° 58' W.

Monday, May 20th 1771 Dark, cloudy, unsettled weather, with rain. At Noon the Observ'd Lat was 27 mi to the Northward of the Log. Sailing in Company with the Fleet. Wind Variable between the S and E; course N 19° W; distance 70 mi; Lat 5° 38' N, Lon 22° 21' W.

Tuesday, May 21st 1771 Little wind, with some heavy showers of rain. At 2pm had some Observations of the Sun and Moon, which gave the Lon 24° 50' W, 2° 28' W of Account. In the morning it was Calm, and the Ships, being near one another, several of them had their Boats out to tow. We Observed the Portland to carry out a long Warp. I, being desirous to see the Machine they made use of, we hoisted out a Boat, and Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and myself went on board her, where we was show'd it. it was made of Canvas, in every respect like an



Umbrello; its Circumference, if extended to a Circle, was 24 feet, tho' this was a Small one of the Sort; yet Captain Elliot told me that it would hold as much as 150 Men could haul. I was so well satisfied of the Utility of this Machine that I would not have delayed a moment in having one Made had not our Forge been render'd Useless by the loss of some of its parts. Winds Variable; course N 31° W; distance 35 mi; Lat 6° 8' N, Lon 25° 8' W.

Wednesday, May 22nd 1771 Variable, unsettled weather, with rain. About 9 o'clock in theam the Portland shorten'd Sail for the Sternmost Ships to come up. As we imagin'd, this gave us an Opportunity to get a Head of the Fleet, after which we made such sail as was necessary to keep in Company. Wind Variable; course N-N-W 3/4 W; distance 58 mi; Lat 6° 58' N, Lon 25° 38' W.

Thursday, May 23rd 1771 Little wind from the Eastward, with frequent showers of Rain, and hazey weather. The Fleet astern of us all this day. At Noon we Shortned Sail for them to come up, the headmost being about 2 lg off. Wind E to N-E; course N 25° W; distance 56 mi; Lat 7° 49' N, Lon 26° 2' W.

Friday, May 24th 1771 First part Moderate breezes, and hazey, with rain; the latter, fresh breezes and fair. At 3pm, finding the Fleet to come fast up with us, we made all the Sail we could. Soon after it became hazey, and we lost sight of them until near 6, when it clear'd up a little, and we saw 3 Sail abrE of us, bearing E about 2 or 3 mi' Distance; by this we saw that they not only kept a better wind, but out sail'd us upon a wind. It became again hazey, and we lost Sight of them, and notwithstanding we kept close upon a wind all night, with as much Sail out as we could bear, there was not one Sail in sight in the Morning. Wind N-E and N-N-E; course N 54° W; distance 92 mi; Lat 8° 42' N, 27° 18' W.

Saturday, May 25th 1771 Moderate Trade Wind and Cloudy weather. Wind N-N-E; course N 50° 15' W; distance 92 mi; Lat 9° 41' N, Lon 28° 30' W.

Sunday, May 26th 1771 A Steady Trade and Cloudy Weather. About 1 o'Clockpm departed this Life Lieutenant Hicks, and in the Evening his body was committed to the Sea with the usual ceremonys. He died of a Consumption which he was not free from when we sail'd from England, so that it may be truly said that he hath been dying ever since, tho' he held out tolerable well until we got to Batavia. Wind N-E by N; course N 46° W; distance 92 mi; Lat 20° 47' N, Lon 29° 35' W.

Monday, May 27th 1771 A Steady, fresh Trade and Cloudy weather. This day I gave Mr. Charles Clerk an order to act as Lieutenant in the room of Mr. Hicks, deceased, he being a Young Man extremely well qualified for that Station. Wind N-E; course N 39° W; distance 103 mi; Lat 12° 7' N, Lon 30° 40' W.

Tuesday, May 28th 1771 A steady Trade and fair weather. Wind N E; course N 40° W; distance 108 mi; Lat 13° 30' N, Lon 31° 51' W.

Wednesday, May 29th 1771 Fresh Gales and Hazey. Wind Ditto; course N 31 1/2° W; distance 128 mi; Lat 15° 19' N, Lon 33° 2' W.

Thursday, May 30th 1771 Ditto Gales and Cloudy. Fix'd a new maintopmast Backstay, the old one having broke several times. Wind Ditto; course N 31° 15' W; distance 124 mi; Lat 17° 5' N, Lon 34° 9' W.

Friday, May 31st 1771 Strong Gales and Cloudy in the Evening. Got down Top Gallant Yards, and in the Morning found the Variation 5° 9' W. Wind N-E and N-E by E; course N 39 1/2° W; distance 136 mi; Lat 18° 50' N, Lon 35° 40' W.

Saturday, June 1st 1771 Fresh Trade, and Cloudy weather. In theam got up Top Gallant Yards. Wind N-E; course N 35° W; distance 100 mi; Lat 20° 12' N, Lon 36° 41' W.

Sunday, June 2nd 1771 Moderate Gales and Clear weather. Variation 5° 4' W. Wind N-E to N-N-E; course N 49° W; distance 104 mi; Lat 21° 20' N, Lon 38° 5' W.

Monday, June 3rd 1771 A Gentle Trade Wind, and Pleasant weather. Wind N-E; course N 44° W; distance 85 mi; Lat 22° 21' N, Lon 39° 9' W.

Tuesday, June 4th 1771 Ditto weather. In theam found the Variation to be 4° 30' W. Wind N-E; course N 34° W; distance 91 mi; Lat 23° 40' N, Lon 40° 4' W.

Wednesday, June 5th 1771 Gentle breezes, with some Showers of Small Rain. Wind Ditto; course N 52° W; distance 83 mi; Lat 24° 31' N, Lon 41° 11' W.

Thursday, June 6th 1771 Ditto weather. In theam found the Variation by the mean of the Amplitude and Azimuth to be 5° 34' W, and by Observation of the Sun and Moon found the Ship in Lon 43° 18' W of Greenwich, 2° 51' W of the Log since the last Observations; this I judge to be owing to a W Current. Wind E-N-E to E; course N 3/4 W; distance 90 mi; Lat 26° 1 minute N, Lon, per Observation Sun and Moon, 43° 18' W.

Friday, June 7th 1771 Moderate breezes, and Cloudy.am, Variation per mean of 20 Azimuths 5° 20' W. Wind E-N-E; course N 15° W; distance 84 mi; Lat 27° 22' N, Lon 43° 42' W.

Saturday, June 8th 1771 Moderate breezes and Pleasant weather. In theam found the Variation to be 5° 24' W. By the Observation of the Sun and Moon the Lon of the Ship at Noon was 43° 42' W. Wind E; course N; distance 88 mi; Lat 28° 50' N, Lon 43° 42' W.

Sunday, June 9th 1771 Clear, pleasant weather and a Smooth Sea. In theam found the Variation to be 7° 33' W. Some Tropick birds flying about the Ship; we have seen of these birds every day since we passed the Tropick. Wind Ditto; course N by W 1/2 W; distance 81 mi; Lat 30° 11' N, Lon 44° 9' W.

Monday, June 10th 1771 Little wind and Clear weather. Exercised the people at Small Arms. Wind Ditto; course N 30° W; distance 71 mi; Lat 31° 12' N, Lon 44° 50' W.

Tuesday, June 11th 1771 Ditto weather. A Smooth Sea. Wind N-E by E; course N 18' W; distance 67 mi; Lat 32° 16' N, Lon 45° 14' W.

Wednesday, June 12th 1771 Light breezes and clear weather. Variation by the Amplitude in the Evening  $7^{\circ} 0'$  W, and by Azimuth in the Morning  $6^{\circ} 55'$  W. Exercised Great Guns and Small Arms. Wind E by S; course N-N-E; distance 48 mi; Lat  $33^{\circ} 8'$  N, Lon  $44^{\circ} 53'$  W.

Thursday, June 13th 1771 Little wind and pleasant weather. Found the Variation by the Amplitude in the Evening to be  $8^{\circ} 23'$ ; in the Morning  $8^{\circ} 15'$ , and by Azimuth soon after  $8^{\circ} 14'$  W. Wind Ditto; Course N by E  $1/2$  E; distance 77 mi; Lat  $34^{\circ} 14'$  N, Lon  $44^{\circ} 25'$  W.

Friday, June 14th. 1771 A Gentle Gale, and pleasant weather. In theam saw 2 Turtle laying a Sleep upon the water. Wind E-S-E; course N  $18^{\circ}$  E; distance 99 mi; Lat  $35^{\circ} 48'$  N, Lon  $43^{\circ} 48'$  W.

Saturday, June 15th 1771 Ditto Weather at Daylight. In the Morning saw a Sloop to Windward standing to the Eastward, which we run out of sight by Noon. Wind S-E; course N-E  $1/2$  E; distance 119 mi; Lat  $37^{\circ} 2'$  N, Lon  $41^{\circ} 54'$  W.

Sunday, June 16th 1771 A Steady breeze and pleasant weather, with some rain in the Night. At daylight in the Morning saw a Sail a head, which we came up and spoke with a little after 10 o'clock. She proved a Portoguese Ship from Rio de Janeiro, bound to Lisbon. Wind Ditto; course N-E  $1/2$  E; distance 119 mi; Lat  $38^{\circ} 18'$  N, Lon  $40^{\circ} 38'$  W.

Monday, June 17th 1771 Steady, Gentle Gales and pleasant weather. Variation in the Evening  $9^{\circ}$  W. Wind S-S-E; course N  $68^{\circ}$  E; distance 104 mi; Lat  $38^{\circ} 57'$  N, Lon  $38^{\circ} 36'$  W.

Tuesday, June 18th 1771 Little wind, and clear weather. At 2pm found the Ship to be by Observation 1 degree 22' to the Westward of Account carried on from the last Observation; in the Evening the Variation was  $14^{\circ} 15'$  W, and in the Morning  $14^{\circ} 24'$ . Wind S; course N  $66^{\circ}$  E; distance 82 mi; Lat  $39^{\circ} 52'$  N, Lon  $36^{\circ} 59'$  W.

Wednesday, June 19th 1771 Fresh Gales and Cloudy. At 2pm found by observation the same Error in our Lon as Yesterday, which I have now corrected. The Lon of this day is that resulting from Observation. At 10am saw a Sail a head, which we soon came up with, and sent a Boat on board. She was a Schooner from Rhoad Island out upon the Whale fishery. From her we learnt that all was peace in Europe, and that the America Disputes were made up; to confirm this the Master said that the Coat on his back was made in old England. Soon after leaving this Vessel we spoke another from Boston, and saw a third, all out on the same account. Wind S to S-W; course N  $73^{\circ}$  E; distance 127 mi; Lat  $40^{\circ} 9'$  N, Lon  $36^{\circ} 44'$  W.

Thursday, June 20th 1771 Fresh Gales and Cloudy, with some Showers of rain. At day light in the Morning saw a Sail ahead standing to the E. A Swell from the N-N-W. Wind S-W, N-W, N; course N  $80 1/2^{\circ}$  E; distance 121 mi; Lat  $40^{\circ} 29'$  N, Lon  $33^{\circ} 10'$  W.

Friday, June 21st 1771 Fresh Gales and Cloudy. In thepm saw a Sail astern standing to the S-E, and at 11 o'Clockam saw from the Mast head 13 Sail of Stout Ships, which we took to be the E India Fleet. Wind N; course E by N; distance 128 mi; Lat  $40^{\circ} 33'$  N, Lon  $30^{\circ} 20'$  W.

Saturday, June 22nd 1771 Fresh Gales, with Squalls, attended with rain. In the Evening had 14 Sail in sight, 13 upon our lee Quarter, and a Snow upon our lee Bow. In the Night split both Topgallant Sails so much that they were obliged to be unbent to repair. In the Morning the

Carpenter reported the Maintopmast to be Sprung in the Cap, which we supposed hapned in thepm, when both the Weather Backstays broke. Our Rigging and Sails are now so bad that something or another is giving way every day. At Noon had 13 Sail in sight, which we are well assured are the India Fleet, and are all now upon our Weather Quarter. Wind N to N-E; course N 81° E; distance 114 mi; Lat 41° 11', Lon 27° 52' W.

Sunday, June 23rd 1771 Fresh Gales and Squally, attended with Showers of rain. In the Evening all the Fleet were to Windward of us, and in the Morning not one was to be seen. Wind N-E by N to E-N-E; course S 69 1/2° E; distance 80 mi; Lat 40° 43' N, Lon 26° 13' W.

Monday, June 24th 1771 First part, moderate breezes; remainder, Squally. At Noon Tack'd. Wind N-E to E-S-E; course S 82° E; distance 64 mi; Lat 40° 34' N, Lon 24° 49' W.

Tuesday, June 25th 1771 First part and remainder a fresh breeze and Cloudy. Wind N-E to N-N-E; course S 85° E; distance 58 mi; Lat 40° 39' N, Lon 23° 33' W.

Wednesday, June 26th 1771 First part, breezes; remainder, little wind. Wind N by E; course N 86° 45' E; distance 72 mi; Lat 40° 43' N, Lon 21° 58' W.

Thursday, June 27th 1771 Moderate breezes and Cloudy weather. Wind W; course N 54' E; distance 54 mi; Lat 41° 14' N, Lon 20° 59' W.

Friday, June 28th 1771 Fresh breezes, with Showers of Rain. Wind W to N-N-W; course N 38° E; distance 123 mi; Lat 42° 55' N, Lon 19° 18' W.

Saturday, June 29th 1771 First part, little wind; remainder, Fresh Gales and Squally, with Showers of Rain. Wind S-W to W and N-E; course N 59° 15' E; distance 86 mi; Lat 43° 39' N, Lon 17° 36' W.

Sunday, June 30th 1771 Gentle breezes and fair weather. Variation in the Evening 18° 30' W, and in the Morning 19° 30'. Wind N; course N 50° 45' E; distance 87 mi; Lat 44° 34' N, Lon 16° 2' W.

Monday, July 1st 1771 Ditto weather. In the Night passed 2 Sail Standing to the S-W. Wind Ditto; course N 77° 15' E; distance 90 mi; Lat 44° 54' N, Lon 13° 59' W.

Tuesday, July 2nd 1771 Little wind and Cloudy, hazy weather. One Sail in Sight to the N-E. Wind Ditto; course E; distance 42 mi; Lat 45° 54' N, Lon 13° 2' W.

Wednesday, July 3rd 1771 Little wind and pleasant weather. At 9am found the Ship by Observation of the Sun and Moon 1 degree 14' E of Account. Six Sail in Sight. Wind N and N-W; course N 56° E; distance 54 mi; Lat 45° 24' N, Lon 11° 59' W per Log, 10° 45' per Observation.

Thursday, July 4th 1771 Gentle breezes and Cloudy weather. Variation per Azimuth and Amplitude in the Evening 21° 25 1/2 W, and in the Morning 20° 10' W. Wind W, N, and N-E; course S 85° E; distance 55 mi; Lat 45° 29' N, Lon 10° 44' W per Log, 9° 27' per Observation.

Friday, July 5th 1771 Little wind and Cloudy. At 1pm spoke a Dutch Galliot bound to Riga. At 5 Tack't, and stood to the Westward till 8am, then to the Eastward. Wind N-E; course N 50° E; distance 8 mi; Lat 45° 34' N, Lon 10° 32' W per Log, 9° 18' per Observation.

Saturday, July 6th 1771 Gentle breezes and Cloudy. At 1pm sent a Boat on board a Brig belonging to Boston, last from Gibraltar, and bound to Falmouth. Wind N-N-E; course N 72° 30' E; distance 37 mi; Lat 44° 45' N, Lon 9° 42' W per Log, 8° 28' per Observation.

Sunday, July 7th 1771 Gentle breezes and Clear weather. In the Evening found the Variation by the Amplitude to be 22° 30' W. At 9am Spoke a Brig from Liverpool bound to Porto, and some time after another from London, bound to the Granades. She had been 3 days from Scilly, and reckoned herself in the Lon of about 10' W, which was about 40' to the Westward of what we found ourselves to-day by Observation. We learnt from this Vessel that no account had been received in England from us, and that Wagers were held that we were lost. It seems highly improbable that the Letters sent by the Dutch Ships from Batavia should not come to hand, as it is now 5 months since these Ships sail'd from the Cape of Good Hope. Wind N-N-E and N-W; course N 50° E; distance 49 mi; Lat 46° 16' N, Lon 9° 39' W per Account, 9° 29' per Observation.

Monday, July 8th 1771 Little wind and hazey weather. Swell from the Northward. Wind N-N-W to S-W; course N 46° 45' E; distance 43 mi; Lat 46° 45' N, Lon 8° 54' W.

Tuesday, July 9th 1771 Fore and middle parts a Gentle breeze, and thick, Foggy weather; remainder, a fresh Breeze and Cloudy. A swell from the N-N-W all day. Wind S W; course N 21° E; distance 100 mi; Lat 48° 19' N, Lon 8° 1 minute W per Account, 8° 7' per Observation.

Wednesday, July 10th 1771 Pleasant breezes and Clear weather. At 6 o'Clock in the Morning sounded, and Struck ground in 60 fm Shells and Stones, by which I judged we were the length of Scilly Isles. At Noon we saw land from the Mast Head, bearing N, which we judged to be about the Land's End. Soundings 54 fm, Coarse, Grey Sand. wind W; course N 44° E; distance 97 mi; Lat 49° 29' N, Lon 6° 18' W.

Friday, July 11th 1771 Steady fresh breezes and clear weather. At 2 in thepm saw the Lizardland, and at 6 o'clock the lighthouse bore N-W, distant 5 lg, we being at this time, by my reckoning, in the Lon of 5° 30' W; soon after 2 Ships under their Topsails between us and the land, which we took for Men of War. At 7 o'clock in the morning the Start Point bore N-W by N, distant 3 lg, and at Noon we reckon'd ourselves about 5 lg short of Portland. This Forenoon a small cutter built vessel came under our Stern, and inquir'd after the India Fleet, which, they said, they were cruising for and had not seen.

Friday, July 12th 1771 Winds at S-W, a fresh Gale, with which we run briskly up Channel. At 1/2 past 3pm passed the Bill of Portland, and at 7 Peverell Point; at 6am passed Beachy head at the distance of 4 or 5 mi; at 10 Dungeness, at the distance of 2 mi, and at Noon we were abtE of Dover.

Saturday, July 13th 1771 At 3 o'clock in thepm anchor'd in the Downs, and soon after I landed in order to repair to London.

I have made mention of 2 Spanish Ships touching at Georges Island some months before our Arrival there. Upon our arrival at Batavia we were inform'd that 2 French Ships, commanded by the Sieur de Bougainville, had put in there about 2 years before us in their way home from the S Seas. We were told many Circumstances relating to the 2 Ships, all tending to prove beyond a doubt that they were the same 2 as were at George's Island as above mentioned, which we then conjectur'd to be Spaniards, being lead into that mistake by the Spanish Iron, etc., we saw among the Natives, and by Toobouratomita pitching upon the Colours of that Nation for those they wore, in which he might very easily be mistaken; but as to the Iron, etc., there might be no mistake, for we were told that either one or both of these Ships had put into the River de la Plata, where they disposed of all their European goods brought for that purpose, and purchased others to Trade with the Islanders in the S Sea; and I think we were told that they also touched upon the Spanish Main in the South Sea. As a proof of their having been trading with the Spaniards, Bougainville's Ship had on board a great Quantity of Spanish Dollars at the time she arrived at and left Batavia, some days after our arrival at the Cape of Good Hope. I was told by some French Officers, lately come from the Island Mauritius, that Orette, the Native of George's Island which Bougainville brought away with him, was now at the Maritius, and that they were going to fit out a Ship to carry him to his Native country, where they intend to make a Settlement; 100 Troops for that purpose were to go out in the same Ship. This account is confirmed by a French Gentleman we have on board, who has very lately been at the Maritius. As I have no reason to doubt the truth of this account, it leads me to consider the rout that this Ship must take, which I think can be no other than that of Tasmans as far as the Coast of New Zeland; and if she fall in with that Coast to the Southward of Cape Farewell will very probably put into Admiralty Bay, or Queen Charlotte's sound, as Tasman's track will in some measure point out to her one or the other of these places. I think it is not likely she will venture through the Strait, even suppose she discovers it, but will follow Tasman's Track to the North Cape, where no doubt she will leave him, and follow the direction of the Coast to the S-E, as it will not be out of her way; by which means she will fall in with the most fertile part of that Country, and as they cannot know anything of the Endeavour's voyage, they will not hesitate a moment to declare themselves the first discoverers. Indeed, I cannot see how they can think otherwise, unless the Natives inform them to the contrary, which they may not choose to understand. The French Officers before spoke of would not allow that George's Island was first discover'd by the Dolphin, though no doubt Bougainville did; but it was not for the Interest of his Country, nor perhaps his own, to own it. Thus this Island, though of little value, may prove a Bone of Contention between the 2 Nations, especially if the French make a Settlement upon it, and the Dolphin's voyage, and this of ours, published by Authority to fix the prior right of discovery beyond disputes.

Now I am upon the Subject of discoveries, I hope it will not be taken amiss if I give it as my opinion that the most feasible method of making further discoveries in the S Sea is to enter it by the way of New Zeland, first touching and refreshing at the Cape of Good Hope; from thence proceed to the Southward of New Holland for Queen Charlotte's Sound, where again refresh Wood and water, taking care to be ready to leave that place by the latter end of September, or beginning of October at farthest, when you would have the whole Summer before you, and after getting through the Strait, might, with the prevailing W Winds, run to the Eastward in as high a Lat as you please, and if you meet with no lands would have time enough to get round Cape Horne before the Summer was too far spent; but if after meeting with no Continent, and you had other objects in view, then haul to the Northward, and after visiting some of the Islands already discovered, after which proceed with the trade wind back

to the Westward in search of those before mentioned-thus the discoveries in the South Sea would be complete.

### **Appendix 1: Persons who Left England in HMS Endeavor**

James Cook, Lieutenant in Command.

William Howson, Captain's Servant; died June 30th, 1771.

John Gore, Lieutenant.

Nathiel Morey, Lieutenant's Servant.

Zachary Hicks, Lieutenant; died, May 25th, 1771.

William Harvey, Lieutenant's Servant; made Midshipman on February 8th, 1771.

Robert Molineux, Master; died, April 15th 1771.

Isaac Manley, Master's Servant; made Midshipman on February 5th, 1771.

Richard Pickersgill, Master's Mate; made Master on April, 16th 1771.

Charles Clerke, Master's Mate; made Able Bodied Seaman on August 20th 1768; made Master's Mate on April 17th 1771; made Lieutenant on May 26th 1771.

Sam Evans, Quarter Master; made Boatswain on February 6th, 1771.

Alexandre Weir, Quarter Master; drowned on September 14th, 1768.

John Bootie, Midshipman; died on February 4th 1771.

Jonathan Monkhouse, Midshipman; died on February 6th, 1771.

Patrick Saunders, Midshipman; made Able Bodied Seaman on May 24th, 1770; deserted on December 25th, 1770.

Isaac Smith, Able Bodied Seaman; made Midshipman on May 24th, 1770; made Master's Mate on May 27th, 1771.

Robert Anderson, Able Bodied Seaman; made Quarter Master on September 16th, 1768.

James Gray, Able Bodied Seaman; made Quarter Master on February 6th, 1771.

Isaac Parker, Able Bodied Seaman; made Boatswain's Mate on November 26th, 1769.

Richard Hutchins, Able Bodied Seaman; made Boatswain's Mate on September 1st, 1769.

George Nowell, Able Bodied Seaman; made Carpenter on February 14th, 1771.

Richard Hughes, Able Bodied Seaman; made Carpenter's Mate on February 14th, 1771.

Joseph Childs, Able Bodied Seaman; made Cook on February 1st, 1771.

Francis Wilkinson, Able Bodied Seaman; made Master's Mate on August 20th 1768.

Joseph Magra, Able Bodied Seaman; made Midshipman on May 27th, 1771.

John Rainsay, Able Bodied Seaman.

William Dawson, Able Bodied Seaman.

Thomas Simmonds, Able Bodied Seaman.

Sam Jones, Able Bodied Seaman.

Isaac Johnson, Able Bodied Seaman.

Robert Stainsby, Able Bodied Seaman.

William Collett, Able Bodied Seaman.

Matthew Cox, Able Bodied Seaman.

Charles Williams, Able Bodied Seaman.

Thomas Knight, Able Bodied Seaman.

Henry Stevens, Able Bodied Seaman.

Thomas Jones II, Able Bodied Seaman.

Antony Ponto, Able Bodied Seaman.

Jason Tunley, Able Bodied Seaman.

michael Littleboy, Able Bodied Seaman.

John Goodjohn, Able Bodied Seaman.

William Peckover, Able Bodied Seaman.

Robert Littleboy, Able Bodied Seaman.

Francis Haite, Able Bodied Seaman; died on February 1st, 1771.

James Nicholson, Able Bodied Seaman; died on January 31st, 1771.



Forby Sutherland, Able Bodied Seaman; died, April 30th, 1770.

Peter Flowers, Able Bodied Seaman; died on December 2nd, 1768.

Timothy Rearden, Able Bodied Seaman; died on December 24th, 1770.

Sam Moody, Able Bodied Seaman; died on January 31st, 1771.

Archibald Wolfe, Able Bodied Seaman; died on January 31st, 1771.

Alexander Simpson, Able Bodied Seaman; died on January 31st, 1771.

Jeremiah Dozey, Able Bodied Seaman; died on April 7th, 1771.

John Woodworth, Able Bodied Seaman; died on December 24th, 1770.

Henry Jeffs, Able Bodied Seaman; died on February 27th, 1771.

John Thurmand, Able Bodied Seaman; died on February 3rd, 1771.

John Gathray, Boatswain; died on February 4th, 1771.

Thomas Jordan, Boatswain's Servant.

Thomas Hardman, Boatswain's Mate; made Able Bodied Seaman on March 26th, 1769; made Sailmaker on February 2nd, 1771.

John Reading, Boatswain's Mate; died on August 29th, 1769.

John Satterly, Carpenter; died on February 12th, 1771.

Edward Terrell, Carpenter's Servant; made Able Bodied Seaman on September 1st, 1769.

Benjamin Jordan, Carpenter's Mate; died on January 31st, 1771.

William Monkhouse, Surgeon; died on November 5th, 1770.

Thomas Jones, Surgeon's Servant; discharged on November 5th, 1770.

William Perry, Surgeon's Mate; made Surgeon on November 6th, 1770.

John Thompson, Cook; died on January 31st, 1771.

Thomas Matthews, Cook's Servant.

Robert Taylor, Armourer; died on August 1st, 1771.

Stephen Forwood, Gunner.

Daniel Roberts, Gunner's Servant; died on February 3rd, 1771.

John Ravenhill, Sailmaker; died on January 27th, 1771.

Richard Orton, Clerk.

John Edgecombe, Marine Sergeant RM.

John Trusslove, Marine Corporal; died on January 24th, 1771.

Thomas Rossiter, Marine Drummer.

William Judge, Marine Private.

Henry Paul, Marine Private.

Daniel Preston, Marine Private; died on February 16th, 1771.

William Wiltshire, Marine Private.

William Greenslade, Marine Private; drowned on April 6th, 1769.

Samuel Gibson, Marine Private; made Corporal on January 26th, 1771.

Thomas Dunster, Marine Private; died on January 26th, 1771.

Clement Webb, Marine Private.

John Bowles, Marine Private.

Joseph Banks, Esquire.

Charles Solander, Naturalist.

Charles Green, Astronomer; died on January 29th, 1771.

John Reynolds, Artist; died on December 18th, 1770.

Sydney Parkinson, Artist; died on January 26th, 1771.

Alexander Buchan, Artist; died on April 17th, 1769.

Herman Sporing, Artist; died on January 24th, 1771.

James Roberts, Servant.

Peter Briscoe, Servant.

Thomas Richmond, Negro Servant; froze to death on January 16th, 1769.

George Durlton, Negro Servant; froze to death on, January 16th, 1769.

Those not otherwise disposed of were paid off on 1st August, 1771.